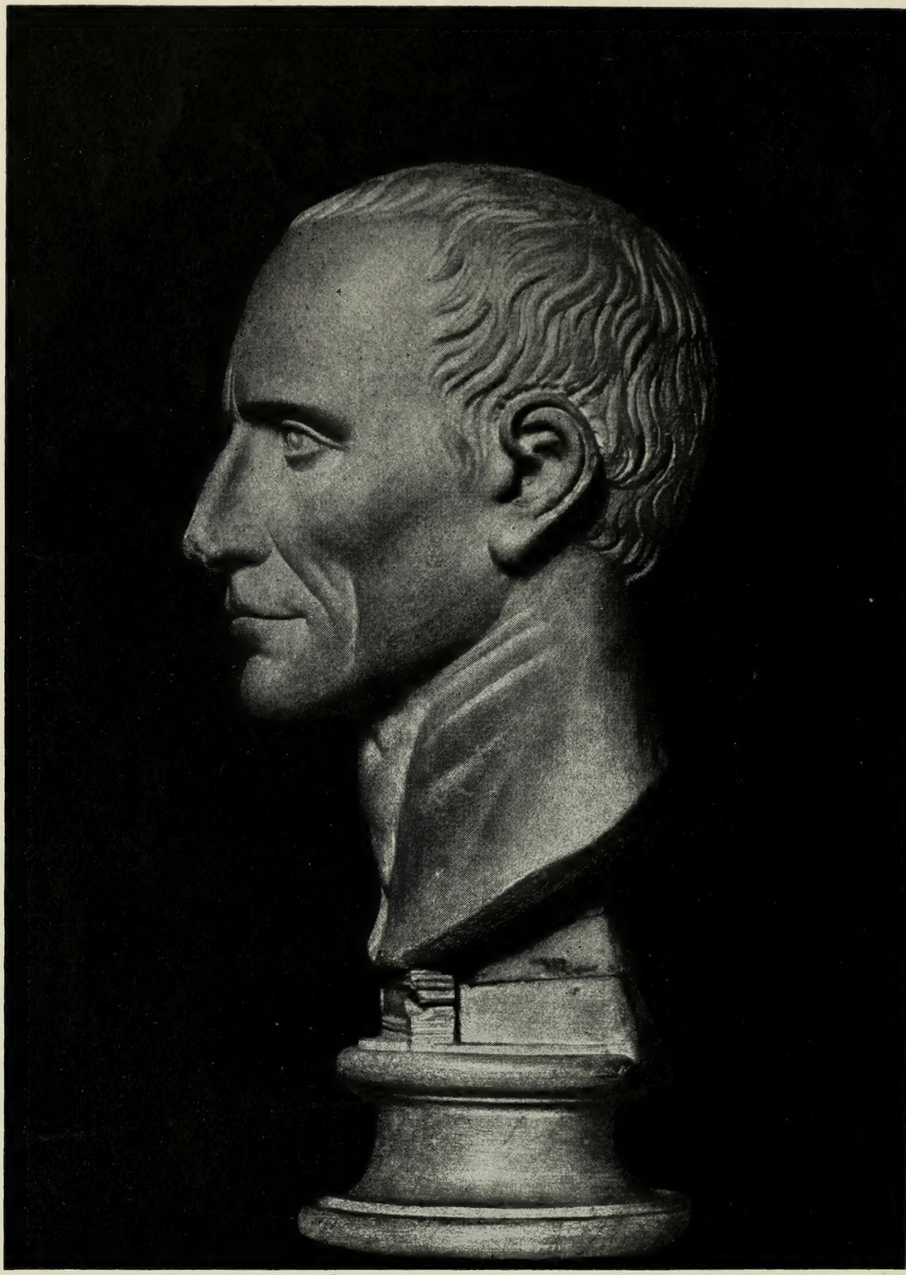
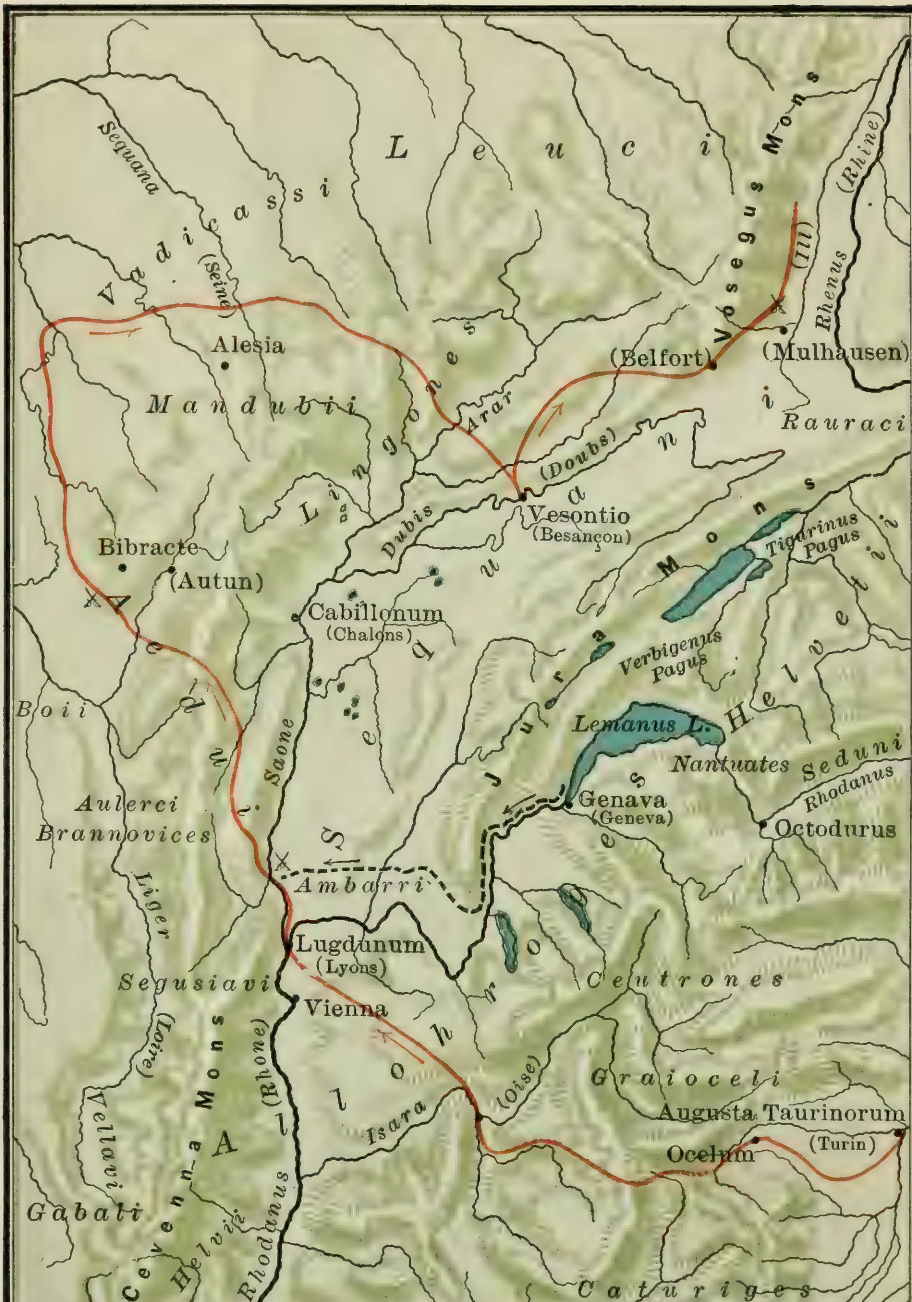


GAIVS IVLIVS CAESAR.

From the marble bust in the British Museum.


MAP OF GAUL
ENGLISH MILES
0 50 100 150
ROMAN MILES
0 50 100 150
Modern names in parenthesis
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS GERMANICUS
Londinium (London)
Tamesis (Thames)
Belgæ
Atrebatii
Cantii
Damnonii
Durotriges
Regni
(Dover)
Present Coast-line
(Wissant)
(Calais)
Itius Portus (Boulogne)
(Rhine)
(Meuse)
(Scheldt)
Grudii
Levaci
Morini
Menapii
Scaldis
Atrebates
Aduatuca (Tongres)
(Namur)
Nervii
Eburones
Sabis (Sambre)
Ambivariti
Condrusi
Segni
Pæmani
Cœroesi
Aduatuci
Arduenna Silva
Treveri
(Moselle)
Mosa
Lippia (Lippe)
Usipetes et Tencteri
Sugambri
Rhenus
Ubii
Wesera
GERMANIA
Bacenis Silva
(Coblenz)
Moenus
(Main)
Vangiones
Ambiani
Samarobriva (Amiens)
Caleti
BELGAE
Viromandui
Remi
Axona
Mosella
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
Civitates Armoricae
Sequana
(Rouen)
Veliocasses
(Seine)
Lexovii
Ambibarii
Unelli
Noviodunum (Soissons)
Bibrax
Bellovaci
Suessiones
Lutetia (Paris)
Parisii
Meldi
Matrona
Mediomatrici
Vosegus Mons
Triboci
Nemetes
Osismi
Coriosolites
Veneti
Esuvii
Aulerci Eburovices
Aulerci Diablintes
Aulerci Cenomani
Redones
Carnutes
Melodunum
Sequana
Tricasses
Agedincum (Sens)
Vadicassi
Leuci
Hercynia Silva
Danubius
(Danube)
Isara
(Isar)
(Inn)
Latobrigi
Tulingi
Lechus
(Lech)
Vellaunodunum
Senones
Namnetes
Andes
Genabum (Gien)
Alesia
Mandubii
Lingones
(Belfort)
Rauraci
Oenus
Liger (Loire)
Liger
Turones
Noviodunum
Noviodunum
Noviodunum
Arar
Dubis (Doubs)
Vesontio (Besançon)
Sequani
Tigurinus Pagus
Pictones
Avaricum (Bourges)
Bituriges
(Autun)
Bibracte
Aedui
Cabillonum (Chalons)
Verbigenus Pagus
Helvetii
Lepontii
CELTAE
Limonum (Poitiers)
Elaver
Boii
Lemanus L.
Nantuates
Seduni
Rhodanus
Verbanus L.
Alpes
Santones
Lemovices
Aulerci Brannovices
Genava
Octodurus
Veragri
Garumna (Garonne)
Gergovia
Lugdunum (Lyons)
Ambarri
Jura Mons
Segusiavi
Arverni
Vienna
Allobroges
Ceutrones
Graioceli
Bituriges
Petrocorii
Cadurci
Uxellodunum
Gabali
Cevenna Mons
Helvii
Isara
Ocelum
Augusta Taurinorum (Turin)
CITERIOR
Padus
(Po)
PROVINCIA
MARE ADRIATICUM
Vocates
Nitiobriges
Ruteni
Rhodanus (Rhone)
Caturiges
Apenninus Mons
Sotiates
Tarusates
Cocosates
Elusates
Carites
Tarbelli
AQUITANI
Bigerriones
Garumni
Tolosa (Toulouse)
Tectosages
PROVINCIA ULTERIOR
Volcae Arecomici
Vocontii
Albioi
Aquae Sextiae (Aix)
Massilia (Marseilles)
Carcaso
Narbo
HISPANIA
Pyrenaei Montes
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA
ITALIA
L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.



CAMPAIGN OF 58 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50 100

ROMAN MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50 100

L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

C. IVLI CAESARIS
DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

With Introduction, Notes, Appendix and Vocabulary

BY
HARRY F. TOWLE
AND
PAUL R. JENKS
BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL, BROOKLYN

BOSTON, U.S.A.
D. C. HEATH & CO., PUBLISHERS
1908

PREFACE

The second year of the Latin course, in which Caesar's Gallic War is usually read, is confessedly the crucial period in the pupil's career. The work of the first year is devoted principally to learning the forms and acquiring as large a vocabulary as possible. But little attention is paid to syntax, and the reading material is carefully selected to suit the stage of progress of the learner. In the second year, on the other hand, not only must he review his forms, and enlarge his knowledge of syntax, but he must make his first acquaintance with a world-renowned classic, written for mature minds and of all grades of difficulty. To meet the needs of pupils at this period in their course this edition has been prepared, and the editors have endeavored to embody in it the results of many years experience in the class room.

A large proportion of any school commentary on the Gallic War must be devoted to the explanation of syntactical difficulties. The usual practice is to refer for detailed treatment of any construction to some grammar in common use. This is open to two objections. The first and most important is that the grammar is of secondary importance to most pupils. Their principal attention is given to the translation of the text, and every teacher knows how difficult it is to get them to follow up the references given in the notes. The second difficulty is that the most of the class are as yet unable to make discriminating use of the comprehensive treatment found in the grammar, so that a confusion frequently results. To meet

these difficulties a complete treatise on the Syntax of the Gallic War has been inserted in this edition in the shape of an appendix to the commentary. Here every construction found in the text is explained in the simplest manner, and illustrated by examples, all of which are taken from the text, with references to the passages where they occur. Many hints as to differences between Latin and English idiom are also given, so that this Appendix is an important adjunct to the commentary in every way. For further study, references to the standard grammars are added under every heading.

In the conviction that the student should be encouraged to work out things for himself, but little assistance in the way of translation is provided. Instead, suggestive analyses of the thought have been inserted, with sufficient references to the Appendix, when the construction seems to demand it, to make the meaning of the author clear. The editors also believe that too much attention is usually paid in the early chapters to Indirect Discourse, and that it can be readily handled in translation without changing it to the direct form; they have, however, provided the direct form of several chapters in the notes, and those who prefer to make an exhaustive study of it will find it fully discussed in the Appendix, with a careful comparison of the rules for Indirect Discourse in English.

In illustrating the subject matter of the narrative the constant aim of the editors has been to interest and stimulate the pupil, but not to overload the commentary with unimportant details.

Much of the material often found in the notes is given in the Vocabulary. Here, too, the student is assisted to choose the right meaning of a word by references to its occurrence in the text, and phrases and idiom are explained, and, when necessary, translated.

The Introduction contains a brief discussion of Caesar's career and a sketch of the conditions of Roman society before his rise to power. The customary information as to the military system of the Romans is also added.

The Sixth and Seventh books are edited with footnotes for sight reading.

The text is based upon the recent editions of Meusel (Berlin, 1894) and Du Pontet (Oxford, 1900).

The thanks of the editors are due to Professor Lodge, who has read all the proofs and made many helpful suggestions, and to Miss Mary A. Cogswell, of Wellesley College, for material assistance in the preparation of the Vocabulary.

HARRY F. TOWLE.
PAUL R. JENKS.

BOYS' HIGH SCHOOL,
BROOKLYN, *May* 15, 1903.

MAPS AND CAMPAIGN PLANS

Map of Gaul	*Facing page*	vii
Campaign of 58 B.C.	"	1
Map of Helvetia	"	16
Battle with Ariovistus	"	34
Campaign of 57 B.C.	"	38
Battle on the Aisne	"	43
Battle with the Nervii	"	48
Siege of Aduatuca	"	54
Campaign of 56 B.C.	"	58
Campaign of 55–54 B.C.	"	76
Bridge across the Rhine	"	85
Campaign of 54 B.C.	"	98
Campaign of 52 B.C.	"	163
Siege of Avaricum	"	176
Siege of Gergovia	"	184
Expedition of Labienus	"	199
Victory over Vercingetorix	"	205
Siege of Alesia	"	208

INTRODUCTION

Before entering upon the study of the literary work of Caesar it is well for the student to acquire some knowledge of the man and the times in which he lived. Too often is the reader of the Gallic War left under the impression that the fame of Caesar rests mainly on his having written a history of his campaigns in foreign lands, a book which has made young people more or less miserable, however it may have commanded the admiration of scholars. The character and achievements of this man are worthy of study quite apart from his career in Gaul.

As a writer, it is true, he will be famous to the end of time; but as an orator he was also conspicuous in an age of orators; as a successful military leader he has no superior; as a statesman neither ancient nor modern times have furnished his equal; and as an example of success due to a fixed purpose in life, prosecuted with an unyielding will and with restless energy, he has left a name that dominates history.

The Roman Commonwealth.

During the four hundred years which elapsed from the expulsion of the kings to the birth of Caesar, the Roman Commonwealth underwent many changes in its government, in its moral and social life, and in the extent of its dominion.

The Roman Government.—At the beginning, the offices of the state were restricted to the aristocracy or patricians alone, while the plebeians, or common people, had almost no voice; hence arose political strife; the plebeians striving con-

tinually to improve their political status, the patricians striving as pertinaciously to retain their privileges unimpaired. To the determined assaults of the plebeians, however, the patricians gradually yielded, and one office after another was opened to plebeian candidacy until, finally, in 367 B.C. the consulship was brought within the grasp of the humblest citizen in the state. From that time, so far as appearances and law went, the Roman Commonwealth was a democracy, though not of the modern pattern.

The Roman Empire.—The city of Rome was situated in the midst of a fertile valley, in a location commanding the surrounding country, and it was thus brought into conflict with adjoining peoples at the very beginning of its life. In the course of years, however, by an uninterrupted series of wars, the dominion of the city gradually extended, and first one section of Italy and then another was brought under its influence, until in 275 B.C. the Roman government extended over the whole of Italy south of the river Aesis.

Shortly afterwards, the Romans came into contact with the rapidly expanding Carthaginian power by reason of the attempts of the Carthaginians to obtain control of Sicily. The result of this contact was the First Punic War (264–224 B.C.), which ended in Roman victory and the establishment of the Roman power in Sicily, the first of the long roll of Roman provinces.

Later, the Romans obtained a foothold in Spain, and they were reaching out in still other directions when the Second Punic War (219–202 B.C.) stopped their progress for a time, and brought them almost to the verge of destruction. The end of this war, however, was the complete overthrow of the Carthaginian power, and Rome became the dominating force in the Mediterranean.

Having obtained by the victory over the Carthaginians the control of the West, her attention was now directed toward the East. Here country after country was gradually subdued until, at the time when Caesar was born, the Roman Empire extended from Spain to Asia Minor, and embraced the whole coast of the Mediterranean without a break.

The Character of the Romans.—The effect of this perpetually expanding power upon the moral and political life of the people of Rome was demoralizing. In the earliest period they had been a brave, patriotic and thrifty people, fighting among themselves to decide the questions of political supremacy, but sinking all their internal differences to present a united front to foreign attack. With increasing power and dominion came a vast increase in wealth and luxury. This was particularly the case after the Second Punic War, when the control of so many subject states brought into Rome a steady stream of wealth from the East and the South and, at the same time, flooded the city with the dregs of Eastern and Southern populations: idle, indolent and vicious.

The great losses in the Roman Commonwealth during the Second Punic War had been repaired by the admission to citizenship of slaves and freedmen, men of entirely different quality from that of the sturdy old Roman stock. Almost all the farmers of Italy had been driven from their homes by Hannibal, and vast districts had been left desolate. These were bought up by the rich nobles of Rome and farmed with great companies of slaves. Accordingly there ensued a steady decrease in the number of free landed proprietors, the class which formed the real strength of the nation.

The increase in wealth had caused a decay in the morals of the leading citizens, and political rivalry for the best

interest of the state had given way to political rivalry for personal aggrandizement. Roman nobles now strove with each other for themselves, and not for Rome, and, as a consequence, made use of their wealth to corrupt still further the commonwealth, to destroy the independent spirit of the old democracy and to make the voting population a tool in the hands of the highest bidder.

The Gracchi.—In the year 133 B.C. a public-spirited Roman tribune, Tiberius Gracchus, attempted to remedy some of these evils by the passage of an Agrarian law to distribute the public lands now occupied by the nobles into small farms for the poor people. Great dissension was the result, which finally culminated in a bloody riot in which Gracchus and three hundred of his followers were killed. Ten years later Gaius Gracchus, brother of Tiberius, tried a similar scheme; but he, too, was killed in 121 B.C. with many of his partisans. After that time the spirit of bitter partisanship and of rivalry between the nobility on the one hand and the democratic rabble on the other grew rapidly more and more intense, and it became evident to every discerning eye that it would not be long before the Roman Government would fall a prey to the strongest in arms. The first man to come to the front in this way was Gaius Marius.

Marius.—Marius was a man of humble birth who very early, as an officer in the army of Metellus, during the war in Africa against Jugurtha showed exceptional military talent. With this he combined such influence with the people that he was made consul in 106 B.C., and was sent to replace Metellus in the African war. He returned to Rome in triumph in 104 B.C. with Jugurtha as a captive. This success made him not merely general of the army, but leader of the popular party. Such was his strength that he was elected consul year after

year until 102 B.C., when he defeated the Teutones and Cimbri in two great battles—and after quelling the invaders returned to Rome supreme over all rivals.

Sulla.—At this time a young noble, Lucius Cornelius Sulla, who had done honorable service with the army of Marius in Africa, began to be looked upon as a rising man. But his bearing was modest and he continued to live in an unpretentious way, all the while rising in reputation and extending his influence. During the supremacy of Marius we hear but little of him, although from his aristocratic connections we can understand that he looked with no favorable eye upon the excessive power and demagogic actions of Marius in the government. As Marius was the recognized head of the popular party, so Sulla was coming to be regarded as the one about whom the nobles must rally in order to oppose Marius should occasion arise.

Life of Caesar.

Birth.—Gaius Iulius Caesar was born July 12, 100 B.C. His family, on his father's side, was of the noblest blood of the aristocrats, tracing its origin back to Aeneas, the leader of the Trojan exiles, and through him to Venus, goddess of Love and Beauty, and thus to Jupiter himself. His mother, Aurelia, was of a prominent plebeian family, while his father's sister Julia was the wife of the great democratic leader Marius.

Childhood and Youth.—Of his childhood we know almost nothing. But it is evident that the feelings of the household were on the side of the democratic party. We may therefore infer that from his earliest years he was accustomed to hear much discussion about the wrongs of the people and the tyranny of the aristocrats.

There is nothing recorded to indicate that Caesar in

his boyhood was especially precocious. He probably received the customary training of the sons of wealthy families of his time. He was taught Greek by Antonius Gnipho, an educated Gaul, but as to his further education we are ignorant. He is said to have been "a tall, handsome youth, with dark, piercing eyes, a large nose, full lips and, in general with a refined and intellectual bearing." He was almost foppish in the extreme care he bestowed upon his dress and personal appearance. Caesar's most intimate companions were the younger Marius, the adopted son of his uncle, and the two Ciceros, Marcus and Quintus, both of whom were to be closely connected with his public life.

At the age of fourteen he was made a priest of Jupiter by his uncle, and thus became a member of the Sacred College with a fixed income. Almost immediately afterwards Marius died and was succeeded as leader of his party by Cinna, an unscrupulous and cruel demagogue. At the age of sixteen Caesar lost his father by death. When only seventeen, he married Cinna's daughter, and by this marriage his alliance with the popular party was made complete.

Caesar and Sulla.—Meanwhile for several years Rome had been distracted by civil war. Marius had been banished, and then had been forcibly brought back by Cinna. After the restoration Marius and Cinna set on foot a bloody proscription in which they murdered all the most important of their political opponents. The aristocrats in despair turned to their general, Sulla, who was on his return to Rome, after having conducted military operations in the East with distinguished success. When he arrived in Italy he defeated the opposing forces of the popular party and entered Rome in triumph.

Sulla was immediately made dictator and a reign of terror for the democrats was then ushered in. Every leader of that

party was proscribed, and four thousand seven hundred were murdered. Caesar, now a youth of eighteen, strangely escaped proscription; but he did not pass unnoticed. The Dictator had his eye on this "youth in petticoats," and was interested in him. He made him the proposition that he desert his party and divorce his wife. Caesar, with the cool assurance for which he was ever noted, positively refused and defied the tyrant; and though his life was spared, his property was confiscated and his priesthood taken from him. All this was without effect, and now at last, being condemned to death, he deemed it prudent to go into hiding for a time. Once, indeed, he was discovered, but escaped by bribing the men sent to kill him. Powerful friends interceded for him, and at last the Dictator reluctantly yielded, saying, "Take him, since you will have it so—but I would have you know that the youth for whom you plead will sometime overthrow the aristocracy for whom you and I have fought so hard; in this young Caesar are many Mariuses."

Caesar enters the Army.—Caesar had now reached an age when it became necessary for him to choose a course in life. To the ambitious young Roman only two avenues to success were open — politics or a military career; for trade and commerce were in the hands of an inferior class. Literature was merely incidental to success in other fields. For success in politics oratory was an extremely useful accomplishment; and Caesar was a forceful though inexperienced speaker even at the age of twenty. But upon making his peace with Sulla, having not much confidence in the Dictator's sincerity, he thought it wiser to enter the army, and went to Asia. Here he distinguished himself at the siege of Mytilene by saving the life of a soldier, for which he was honored by the praetor with the gift of a civic crown. His military ser-

vice lasted until the death of Sulla, when he returned to Rome at the age of twenty-two and entered upon his political career.

Caesar enters Politics.— The usual method of acquiring political prominence was to prosecute some provincial officer. Caesar brought a charge of extortion against Dolabella, who had been governor of Macedonia. In this trial Caesar, who had little experience in public speaking, was opposed by some of the most famous advocates of the day. The result was a failure of the prosecution, and Caesar discovered that he needed special training if he was to win against experienced pleaders. Furthermore, the trial had aroused against him much enmity, and he deemed it best to leave Rome for a time. So he went to Rhodes to study oratory under the famous rhetorician, Apollonius Molo. On his way he was captured by pirates, who took him to an island and held him for a large ransom. The pirates treated him well, and he seems to have enjoyed his captivity. He told them, however, he would shortly return and hang them all, a threat which they seem to have made light of; for when the ransom was paid he was immediately set free. He at once proceeded to carry out his threat, and, gathering some vessels, returned to the island and captured the whole crew while they were dividing the money. They were all taken to Pergamus and put to death. He then proceeded to Rhodes, where he devoted two years to hard study. Upon the conclusion of his studies he returned to Rome to watch the course of events, ready at any time to take a hand in public affairs. The aristocrats were still in power, but trouble was brewing for that party on every hand. Caesar had done enough to render him a conspicuous leader of the popular party. But the time for action was not yet come. As a reward for his services in Asia he was chosen military tribune. He had im-

proved so much in oratorical ability that he was recognized as a powerful advocate.

His "Cursus Honorum."—In 68 B.C., when he was thirty-two, he was chosen *quaestor,* and thus obtained a seat in the Senate. This was the first step in the so-called *cursus honorum,* which led through successive offices to the consulship. In B.C. 65 he was chosen *aedile.* Among other duties the aediles had charge of the public games and exhibitions. They were expected to beautify the city and entertain the people with elaborate shows. And all this at their own expense. Caesar was well to do, but he went far beyond his means in presenting magnificent spectacles and erecting costly columns. His gladiatorial contests exceeded anything before known. Wild beasts were brought into the arena in cages of burnished silver. Costly porticos were added to temples and public buildings, and splendid statues were made to adorn the public places of the city. All this plunged Caesar into debt to the amount of a million and a half of dollars. A man who, at the age of thirty-two, could contract debts to such an enormous amount is worthy of regard for his audacity if for no other reason. By this means Caesar had won the favor of the multitude, and he was now the undisputed leader of the popular party.

He next became a candidate for the office of *Pontifex Maximus,* or head of the state religious order. He had been made a priest as early as his fourteenth year, as we have seen above, and it was perhaps natural that he should aspire to be head of the Church. It is a significant commentary upon the religious state of the times that a man who had no respect whatever for the gods of his country or for any god but Fortune, should thus be considered eligible for the highest position in the priesthood. The place was the most conspicuous in the

state, and its occupant held office for life. Caesar conducted his campaign for the office with his usual vigor. He borrowed still larger sums of money and spent them with a lavish hand. But the danger of the canvass must have been serious, for it is said that, as he left his mother on the morning of the election, he kissed her and remarked that he would return as Pontifex Maximus or never return at all. He was chosen by an overwhelming vote.

Soon after his election to the pontificate Caesar was chosen *praetor*, in 63 B.C. This was the time of Catiline's conspiracy, and party spirit ran high. Many have thought that Caesar knew more of the inside workings of that conspiracy than he ever told. Possibly this was true; but he was too shrewd a politician and too sure of his position of leadership to cast in his lot with a lawless faction. It is likely that his plans for his own future movements in public life were fairly well developed in his own mind by this time, and he could see nothing to be gained by an alliance with a party which did not include the real leaders of the state. During his term in the praetorship he conducted himself in a manner to strengthen his position in his party, while he looked to yet greater power in the future.

After this praetorship Caesar was sent to Spain as *propraetor*. His term there was eminently successful and very profitable to himself. For he brought back money enough to pay all his debts and have something for the rainy days to come. He had also turned large sums into the public treasury. Furthermore, he had settled all troubles in Spain. His popularity was immense, and it was a foregone conclusion that he would win the consulship in 60 B.C. when by age he would be eligible.

Pompey and Crassus.—While Caesar had been advancing

with rapid strides toward the position of popular idol, Pompey, who had succeeded Sulla as the general of the aristocrats, had been winning great fame in war until he was recognized as the first soldier of the age. He was, however, no politician, and lacked ability as an orator. The head of the financial world, and the wealthiest citizen, was Publius Crassus. Except Cicero these two were, perhaps, the most conspicuous members of the aristocratic party. It was at this time that Cicero wrote: "We have not a statesman or the shadow of one. My friend Pompey, who might have done something, sits silent admiring his fine clothes. Crassus will say nothing to make himself unpopular, and the rest are such idiots as to hope that though the constitution fall they will save their own fish-ponds."

The First Triumvirate.—Caesar saw his opportunity and took advantage of it. He formed a coalition with Pompey and Crassus for the division among themselves of the honors of the state. This is known in history as the First Triumvirate. In accordance with this agreement Caesar was chosen consul, the first of his party for a generation. He proposed many reforms, and most of them were adopted against the protest of the senatorial party. It was a stormy year politically, but it served admirably to emphasize Caesar's superiority to all the men of his time. By the terms of his agreement with Pompey and Crassus, Gaul was to be entrusted to him as proconsul for five years.

This brings us to the year 58 B.C., and the story of the next seven years is told by Caesar himself in the Commentaries. In 56 B.C. a meeting of the triumvirs was held and it was agreed that Caesar's term should be extended for five years more, at the end of which time he should be eligible for a second election to the consulship, thus giving ample time to complete the

conquest of Gaul before his return to Rome. In the year 53, however, the death of Crassus broke up the coalition, and Pompey was coaxed or flattered until he, too, withdrew his support from Caesar, and espoused the cause of the Senate. The Civil War followed. In the latter part of 50 B.C. Caesar crossed the Rubicon with his army. His success was instantaneous, though the war continued in various quarters until 45 B.C., when he returned to Rome the undisputed master of the Roman world. His great rival, Pompey, defeated at Pharsalia in Thessaly in 48 B.C., had fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered.

Death.—Caesar used his supreme power in a way very different from his predecessors Marius and Sulla. He at once set about repairing so far as he could the ravages of the civil wars, by making several laws which were designed to benefit the people. He reformed the Calendar, instituting the system which, with a slight modification, we still use. He also formed other great projects for the public welfare which he was destined not to carry out. In particular, he had shown marked clemency to his political opponents; but for this he was ill repaid. A conspiracy to take his life was formed by a number of leading citizens, some of whom were his intimate friends. On the "Ides of March" (March 15), 44 B.C., he was attacked in the senate-house and fell pierced with twenty-three wounds at the foot of the statue of his great rival Pompey.

Caesar as a Man.

In person Caesar was tall and handsome—such a man as one would select out of a crowd as a born leader of men. His health was perfect, kept so by active physical exercise and a careful attention to hygienic laws as they were

then understood. He was a fearless horseman, and is said to have ridden in Gaul a remarkable horse, trained by himself, which would allow no one else to mount him.

As a friend he was steadfast to the end; as a foe, generous and ready to forgive. One thing, however, he could never overlook. That was treachery. This is proved by his treatment of certain persons and peoples in Gaul, who tried to overreach him by violating promises or treaties.

Much has been written of his vices. He has been painted as a monster of lust and rapacity. There is no evidence, however, that he was worse than others of his class and time. That he was conspicuously better in morals is not claimed. Nevertheless, in all his dissipations, he did not for a moment lose sight of the main purpose of his life, which was to reach the highest pinnacle of personal greatness, and raise his country to a position of unquestioned supremacy throughout the known world. One of the best evidences of the nobility of his character is found in his great love for his mother and his devotion to her as long as she lived.

Caesar as a Soldier.

Caesar's military skill and success place him among the first half-dozen captains of the world. Without special training and with comparatively little previous experience, he raised and drilled an army that was simply invincible, whether pitted against the immensely more numerous hordes of the Gauls and Germans or the veteran legions of Pompey. "The conquest of Gaul," says Froude, "was effected by a force numerically insignificant, which was worked with the precision of a machine. The variety of uses to which it was capable of being turned implied, in the first place, extraordinary forethought in the selection of materials. Men whose nominal

duty was merely to fight were engineers, architects, mechanics of the highest order. In a few hours they could extemporize an impregnable fortress on an open hillside. They bridged the Rhine in a week. They built a fleet in a month. The legions at Alesia held twice their number pinned within their works, while they kept at bay the whole force of insurgent Gaul, entirely by scientific superiority. The machine, which was thus perfect, was composed of human beings who required supplies of tools and arms and clothes and food and shelter, and for all these it depended on the forethought of its commander." These soldiers loved their great leader almost to idolatry, and believed in him with a confidence that nothing could shake. The long march, the hard labor of fortifying the camp, the hardships of the siege, all were borne cheerfully for the general's sake.

Caesar's courage and self-confidence were unbounded. He never sent a soldier where he would not go himself, and he never faltered in his belief that victory would perch on his banner. Quick to see what was needed in any emergency and swift to move, he never lost a point of advantage or failed to make the most of an enemy's mistake. With entire disregard of danger he was always in the thickest of the fight. Personally known to every soldier and knowing most of them by name, he thus brought home to each the responsibility resting upon him. Apparently he was rash at times; yet his rashness had method in it and success gave it another name. In several instances in Gaul he seems to have been unnecessarily cruel in his treatment of his surrendered foes. We must remember, however, that he was dealing with unscrupulous barbarians, ready to rise against him at any time. Furthermore, it was one of Caesar's leading characteristics to go by the shortest way to his objective point. Gaul was to be

subdued and that thoroughly. Hence it was necessary to remove ruthlessly all obstacles to that end.

Caesar as a Statesman.

After his final victory over the Senate, Caesar had very little time to show his strength as a constructive statesman. There is, however, no doubt of his ability in this direction. During his consulship, in the year 59 B.C., he had proposed and carried extensive reforms in many directions. The "Leges Juliae" were enacted, a code of laws which is celebrated even to this day.

The government of the aristocracy was tyrannical and corrupt in the extreme. Bribery of juries was universal, and the administration of justice was a mockery and a stench in the nostrils of all decent men. Elections were a farce, and the people were the legitimate prey of unscrupulous and greedy politicians. These laws of Caesar's were intended to restrain the power of the Senate and enlarge and increase the rights and powers of the people.

Upon his return to Rome as dictator Caesar had the opportunity to fashion anew the government according to his long-cherished ideas. His plans were comprehensive and far-reaching. But the consummation was not to be his. Death claimed him, and his successor took up the unfinished task.

In all his projects Caesar undoubtedly aimed at making Rome indeed imperial. With unerring judgment he discovered the need for reform in all departments of government, and he had implicit confidence in his own ability to bring that reform to pass. His ability as an orator was conspicuous, and when he spoke in the Senate or elsewhere men listened as to no one else excepting Cicero. One prime element in his success as a statesman, as well as in war, was his perfect knowledge of men. He selected his agents with care, and they were in-

variably the fittest for the purpose. Liberty and Justice were his watch-words; freedom and equal rights for all, his unswerving present aim.

Caesar as an Author.

Caesar's literary efforts covered a wide range, embracing almost every known topic. He wrote a treatise on grammar, poems, tragedies, satirical essays, a work on augury and an extended history of his own campaigns. With the exception of the last his writings have practically all disappeared.

Caesar's most pronounced personal characteristic was simplicity. This quality is prominent in his writings. He tells his story in the plainest fashion, without attempting adornment or indulging in imagery. The great events of his years in Gaul, involving the conquering of an empire so completely that it never gave Rome further trouble, are treated as plain facts. Descriptions of the country are complete; the character and customs of the people are fully set forth; it is true anecdotes of individuals are introduced, but they are all significant; nothing essential is suppressed; nothing superfluous is stated.

Without the slightest attempt to magnify his own deeds, he appears everywhere as the central figure, the man of action, doing things for the sake of results, rather than for the purpose of making a name for himself.

Such, then, was Caius Julius Caesar. "The greatest name in history," says Merivale; the peerless soldier, the man of letters, the forceful, convincing orator, the foremost statesman of his day, the liberator of his country from the tyrannical grasp of a soulless aristocracy, the unyielding foe of shams and cant. To quote again: "He was great in everything he undertook; as a captain, a statesman, a lawgiver, a jurist, an orator, a poet, an historian, a grammarian, a mathematician and an architect."

The Army of Caesar.

Caesar's army consisted of legionary infantry, auxiliary infantry and cavalry. The cavalry was made up of foreigners —Germans, Gauls and Spaniards—who were disbanded at the end of each campaign. They were used to begin an attack and for pursuit of a beaten enemy, as well as for foraging. The auxiliary infantry were furnished by allied states, and served for a show of strength rather than for serious work in battle. There was a small corps of engineers (*fabri*), but the mechanical work was done as a rule by the soldiers themselves.

In the earlier period the legion was drawn up in three lines, of which the men in the first line were called *hastati*, those in the second line *principes*, those in the the third line *triarii* or *pilani*. In Caesar's time the arrangement was different, but the same names were retained, being applied to the men of the third, second and first maniples of each cohort.

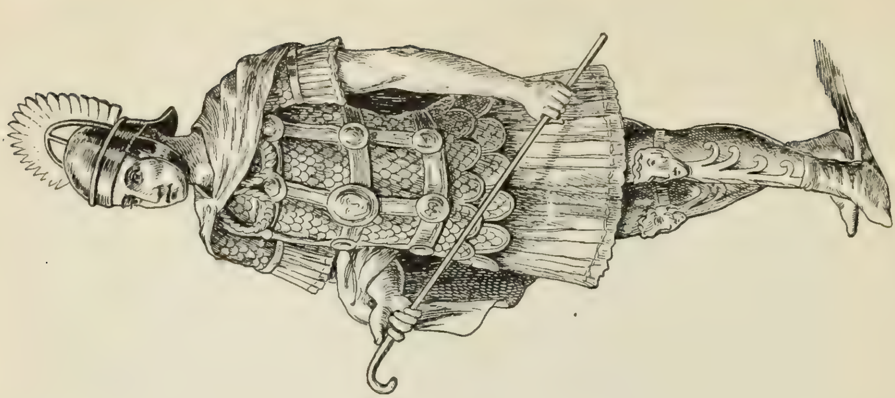
The main strength of the army lay in the regulars composing the legions.

Theoretically the legion may have consisted of 6,000 men. It is likely, however, that Caesar's legions averaged not more than 3,600 each at the time of their greatest fulness.

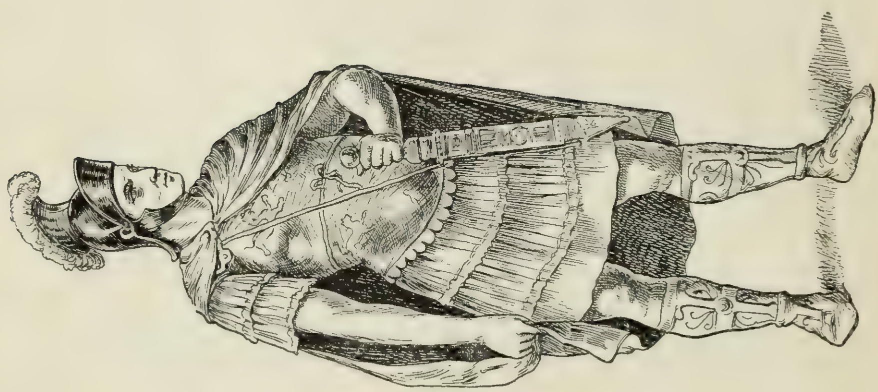
The legion was divided into ten cohorts, each cohort into three maniples, each maniple again into two centuries. Assuming 3,600 as the strength of the legion we have:

10 cohorts	each	having	360	men
30 maniples	"	"	120	"
60 centuries	"	"	60	"

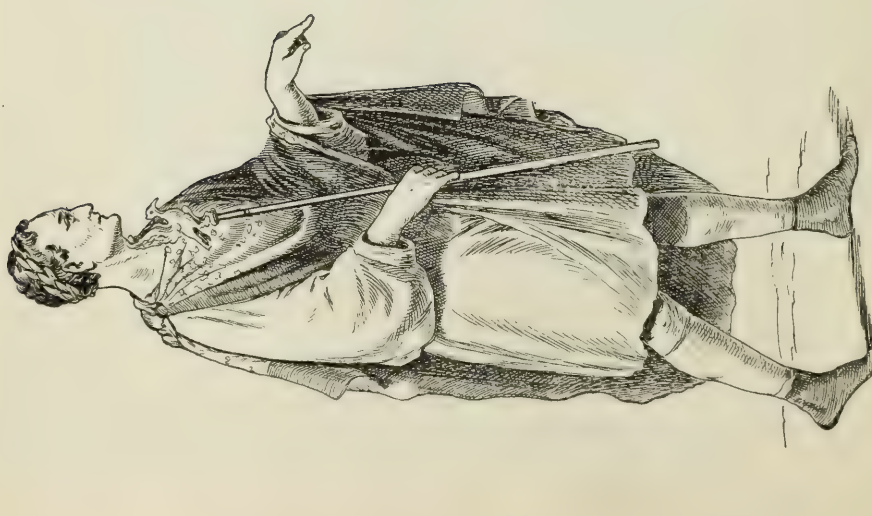
Thus the maniple corresponded very nearly to a *company* in



CENTURIO.



LEGATUS.



IMPERATOR.

our army; the century, to a *platoon*. Beyond this the divisions hardly find their counterpart in modern armies, although the legion differed but little from a *brigade*.

Officers.

The command of the legion was originally in the hands of the military tribunes, six in number, who acted in pairs and commanded in turn, each pair for a period of two months. As these officers were usually chosen for political reasons and were not necessarily trained soldiers, this method of commanding the legion fell into disuse under Caesar. Leaving the tribunes as nominal commanders, he placed a *legatus* in charge of each legion as the real commander in time of battle.

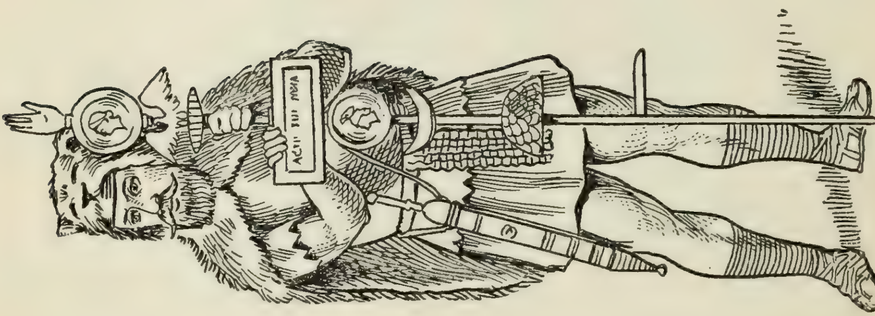
The legati were men of senatorial rank, and were the lieutenants of the commander-in-chief (*imperator*). They had no independent power, but derived all authority from their chief. Together with the quaestors they composed the staff of the general.

The *quaestors* had charge of the supplies for the army; paid the troops; furnished them with clothing, arms and equipments, food and shelter.

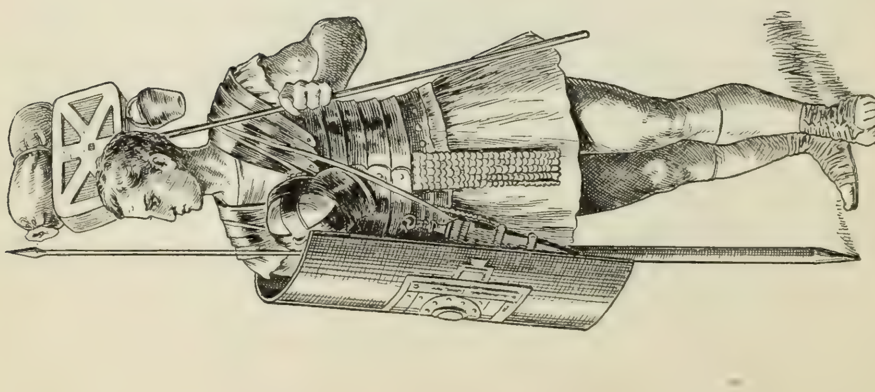
The *centurions* commanded the sub-divisions of the legion. Of these there were 60 in each legion, each maniple having two, a senior and a junior. The senior was in command of the whole maniple with the junior as his lieutenant. Of the six centurions in a cohort, the senior of the first maniple, called *pilus prior*, commanded the cohort, having the other five as lieutenants. Thus the senior centurion of the first maniple of the first cohort, called *primus pilus prior* or *primipilus*, was the senior officer of the whole legion, and accordingly often, if not generally, led the legion.



BUCINATOR.



SIGNIFER.



MILES IMPEDITUS.

The centurions were taken from the ranks of the legionaries and corresponded closely to the officers of our army. The method of their classification is not known; but it is certain that they were classified and graded in ranks.

Those of the first rank (*primorum ordinum*) were summoned in councils with the *legati* and *tribunes*.

Another officer was known as *praefectus*, probably the Roman commander of the cavalry and of the auxiliary infantry.

The Legionary Soldier.

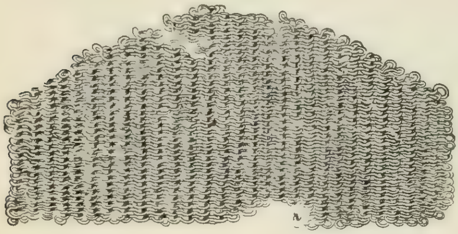
Originally only Roman citizens were enrolled in the legions, but, owing to the changes in the character of the Roman government, from the time of Marius the service had been open to almost any one.

Caesar's legionaries were professional soldiers. Their term of service was twenty years, at the end of which they were usually rewarded with bounties of money or land. They received 225 *denarii*, or about $45.00 a year as pay. The value of food, clothing and equipments furnished by the state was deducted from this sum. Each soldier was allowed 4 *modii*, or about one bushel of wheat a month, at a cost of about $5.75 a year. The cost of clothing is not known.

The age for enlistment of the legionary was probably as a minimum seventeen years, and as a maximum forty-six years. There was undoubtedly a rule as to size; but big men were not required. Indeed, the soldiers of Caesar's army have always been considered as undersized when compared with the German giants. Occasionally barbarians were enrolled in the legions; but in the main the legionaries were Roman citizens hailing from Northern Italy, which was entirely Romanized and loyal to the government of that country.

Clothing.

The clothing consisted of a sleeveless woollen shirt (*tunica*) worn next the skin, and over this a coat of leather with metallic bands across the breast, back and shoulders (*lorica*). The officers wore a kind of chain mail (*lorica hamata*). Over all in cold weather was worn the military blanket (*sagum*). On the feet were worn sandals (*calcei*) strapped to the feet and ankles.

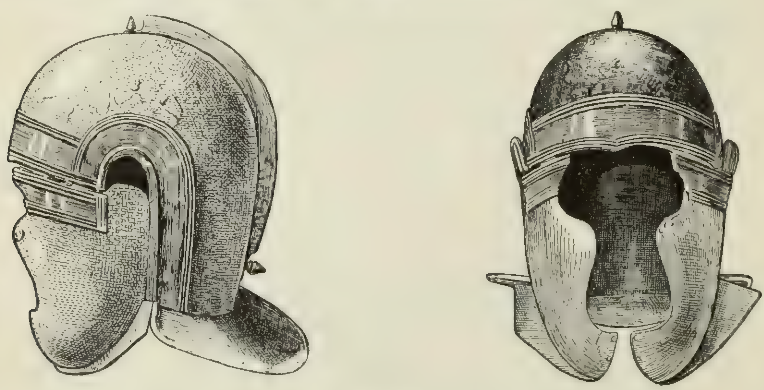


CHAIN MAIL.

Armor.

The defensive armor consisted of the helmet and the shield.

The helmet was made from iron (*cassis*) or leather strengthened with metal (*galea*). It had a crest and a plume, and was usually carried by the soldier, when on the march, hanging in front of the shoulder.

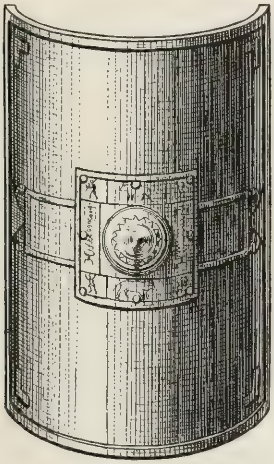


GALEAE.

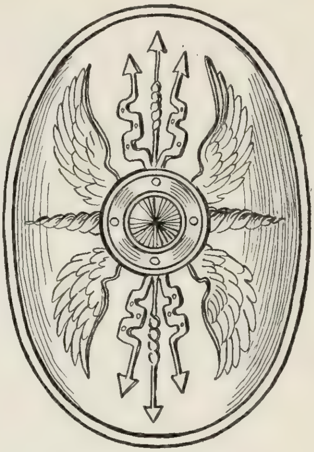
The shield (*scutum*) was of wood covered with leather. Its length was four feet and width two feet. It was curved to fit the body, and was carried on the left arm. The badge of the

cohort was painted on the outside, and the name of the owner on the inside. It had a metallic knob in the center called *umbo*. A covering was drawn over it when not in use, and one of the first preparations for battle was the removal of this covering, as in Book II., Chapter 21.

The *clipeus*, or Greek shield, was circular originally and large enough to cover three-quarters of the person. In later times it was smaller, covering the warrior from the neck to



SCUTUM.



CLIPEUS.

the knees. It was also made oval in shape. This kind of shield was not used in the time of Caesar, although the auxiliaries carried a shield (*parma*) resembling the *clipeus*.

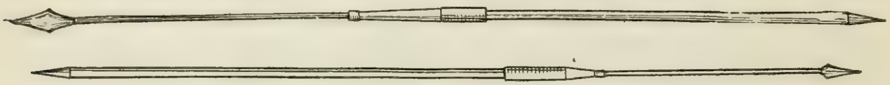
Shields were adorned in various ways, by iron rims or by such devices as thunderbolts, wreaths, etc.



GLADIUS.

The offensive weapons were the short or Spanish sword (*gladius*) and a heavy javelin (*pilum*). The sword was two feet long in the blade, probably about four inches in width, two-edged and pointed. It was carried by a belt (*balteus*)

passing over the left shoulder, suspending the sword on the right side. There is no definite knowledge as to the javelin used in Caesar's time. It is likely that it consisted of a long iron point inserted in a shaft of wood. The whole length was from six to seven feet and the weight at least ten pounds.



PILA.

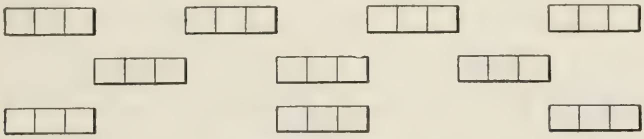
It could be thrown perhaps twenty or thirty yards, according to the weight of the soldier and the nature of the ground. The point was of soft iron, easily bent and thus rendered unfit to be thrown back when once hurled. In Book I., Chapter 25, the confusion of the Gauls was in great part due to the bending of the *pila* after they had pierced their shields.

Some have supposed that the legionary carried a light javelin in addition to the heavy *pilum*. Caesar says nothing of this weapon, and there is no good reason to suppose that it was used in his time. The weapons used by Roman soldiers were in a state of evolution at all times, as is the case with modern weapons. It is a long stride from the "old queen's arm," the flint-lock musket of the Revolution, to the Krag-Jörgensen repeating rifle of the United States army of to-day. This change came about only by gradual development through many intermediate steps. So the light and graceful steel javelin of later Roman times was the result of many improvements upon the weapon even of Caesar's age.

After the first volley of javelins, the sword came into play. Thus it was the most effective and the most in use of offensive arms. It was a terrible implement in the hands of skilled fighters. Being pointed, as well as sharpened on both sides, it was equally effective for thrusting and cutting. The former, however, was its customary use.

Tactics of the Legion.

In all arrangements for battle the tactical unit of the legion was the cohort. For offence the legion was arrayed either in two lines (*acies duplex*) or in three lines (*acies triplex*).



ACIES TRIPLEX.

When in two lines there were five cohorts in each line. When in three lines, four cohorts were in the first, and three in each of the others. Between the cohorts of the first line were spaces of about 120 feet, behind which at a distance of 120 feet stood the cohorts of the second line. The three cohorts of the third line were placed at the same distance to the rear of the second line. Each cohort was arranged by maniples, each maniple having twelve men in front, forming a *rank*, and ten men in depth forming a *file*. Allowing three feet of space for each man in rank and four feet on the right for the commanding officer, the front of each cohort would be 120 feet, and the front of the legion 840 feet. Supposing four feet to have been the distance allowed to each man in the file, we get a depth for the maniple of forty feet, and each cohort a depth of 120 feet. Thus the legion would have a depth of 600 feet.



MANIPLE.

The Attack.

Whenever possible the Roman battle line was formed on a hillside with the enemy in the plain at the foot.

In beginning the attack, the troops marched slowly forward for a time, then, at the proper time, broke into a run, the two front ranks carrying their javelins poised ready for hurling. When the right distance was reached, they hurled the javelins, often without stopping. The ranks whose javelins had been thrown then rushed on to the conflict with swords at close quarters, without giving the enemy time to recover from the confusion caused by the volley of javelins. The next three ranks hurled their javelins over the heads of the first two and in their turn advanced to fight with the sword. The five rear ranks waited in reserve until their services were needed to take the places of the fallen or to increase the numbers of the attacking troops. The second line advanced and waited two or three hundred feet behind the first. When the first had become weakened by losses, this line perhaps entered the fight in the same way. It is hardly to be supposed that the remnants of the first line were withdrawn however; but they probably melted into the oncoming second line. The third line was held in reserve, and often sent to the flanks when there was danger of the front lines being out-flanked.

In many cases the onset of the first line was sufficient to put the enemy to flight, especially if they were barbarians. For this reason the first line was usually the strongest and made up of the most experienced soldiers.

When the enemy had been beaten and turned to flee, as usually happened in Caesar's battles, the cavalry was sent in pursuit to complete the work of destruction.

The cavalry was also used to guard the flanks against attack, or to attack the enemy's flank. It was therefore usually located on the extreme edge of the wings. But an experienced general would also use it in other ways, and Caesar sometimes placed it in the rear, sometimes after the first line.

On the March.

The usual order of the march was in three divisions. In the van (*primum agmen*) came the cavalry and the light-armed troops; next the main body; and lastly the rear-guard (*novissimum agmen*).

The main body marched in single column, the number of ranks depending upon the width of the road, each legion accompanied by its own baggage-train.

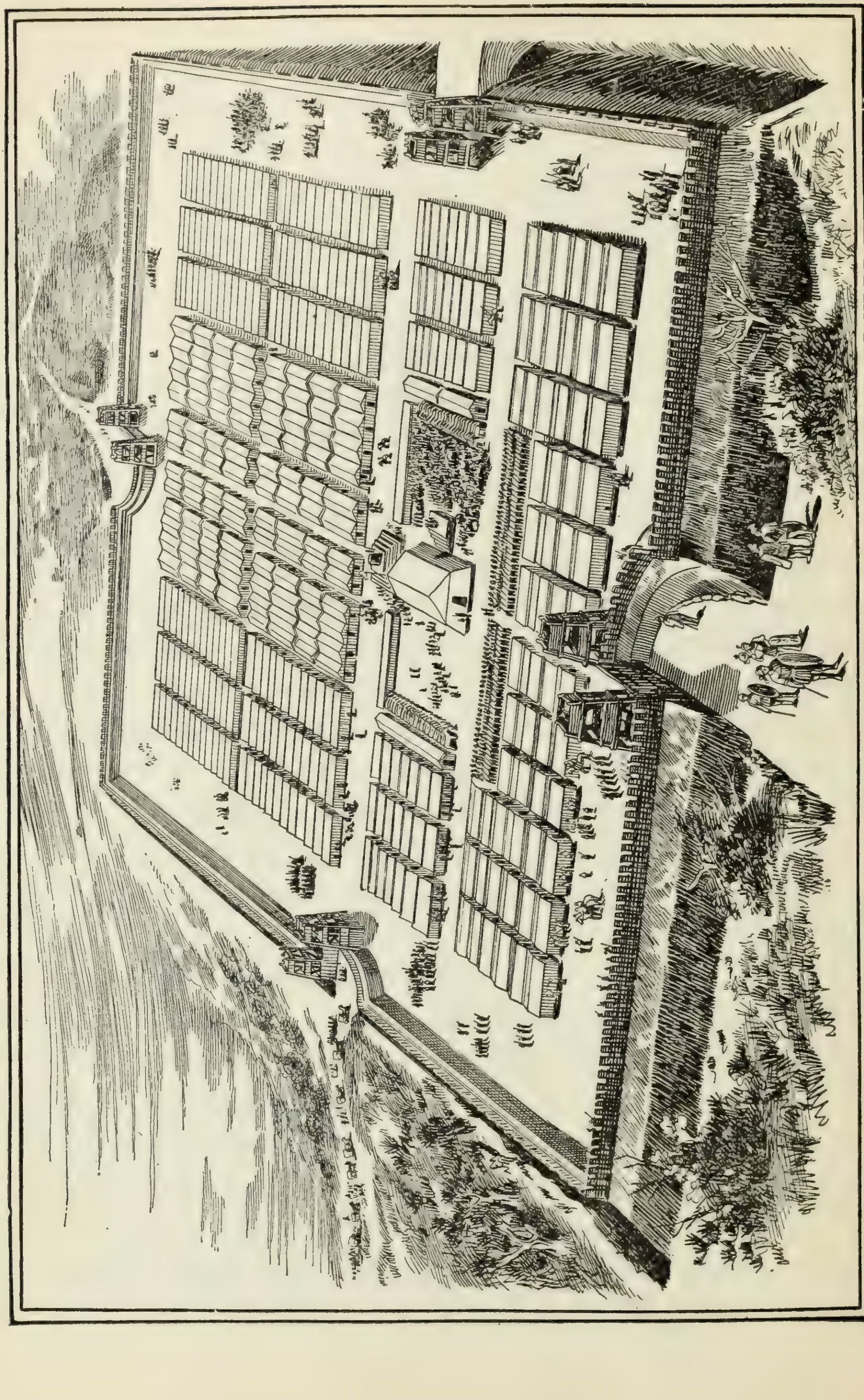
At times, when approaching the enemy, the baggage of the whole army was massed together, with most of the legions in advance of the baggage-train.

Occasionally, when an attack was expected, the army advanced for a short distance in line of battle. This could of course not last long, although on two occasions we are told that the legions marched thus for three hours, covering about eight miles.

The rear-guard was made up of recruits, camp-followers, and the rabble that usually followed an army.

The legionary was forced to carry a burden of fifty pounds or more on the march. This was made up of his supply of food, cooking utensils, extra clothing, arms, helmet and shield. All that could be so placed was made into a bundle and carried on a stick over the shoulder, the rest was disposed on the person in the most convenient way. See the illustration on page xxvi.

The average distance covered in a day's march was about fifteen miles. But when the march was over, the soldiers' day's work was by no means done. A camp must be built and fortified—no small undertaking, when we consider the labor involved. There were a few engineers (*fabri*) with the army, but the working man was the legionary soldier.

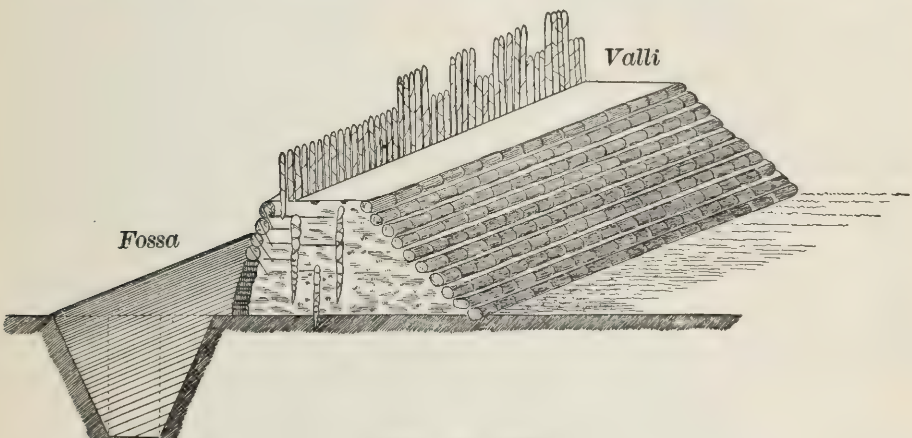


CASTRA ROMANA.

The Camp.

The ideal site for a camp was on the slope of a hill with the rear of the camp at the top. The absolutely indispensable natural features were wood and water. Although we have no definite knowledge about Caesar's camps, we may assume that they differed in no great degree from the Roman camps of other times.

They were rectangular in shape, varying in size according



WALL AND DITCH.

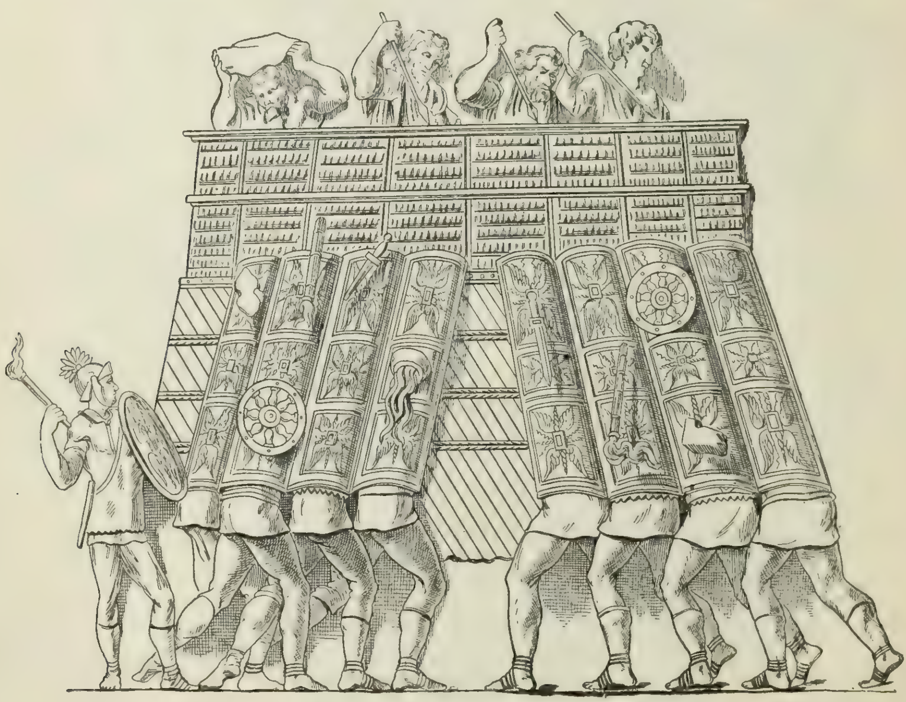
to the number of troops to be accommodated, having a width in front equal to two-thirds of their depth.

The fortification of the camp consisted of a surrounding wall (*vallum*) and a ditch (*fossa*). The ditch was nine feet wide and seven feet deep. The earth from this was thrown up to form the wall, which was made six feet high and six feet wide on the top. Sometimes stakes (*valli*) were set on the outer edge of the wall to make it stronger. As the wall was intended for fighting ground, it had some sort of steps on the inside so as to render it easy for the defenders to reach the top.

Camps built for a longer stay than a single night, or when an attack was expected, had breastworks made of trees on the top of the wall and wooden towers at intervals along the wall. Wider and deeper ditches and higher walls were often built in order to make a camp especially strong. It is estimated that from four to five hours was consumed each day in fortifying the camp.

Operations against Fortified Places.

In subduing a fortified camp or town, the Romans sometimes attacked by assault and sometimes by a siege. The method depended upon the strength of the town's defence. These operations brought into use various weapons not yet mentioned. For the assault there were the scaling ladders, the battering-ram and movable huts or sheds (*vineae*) used to

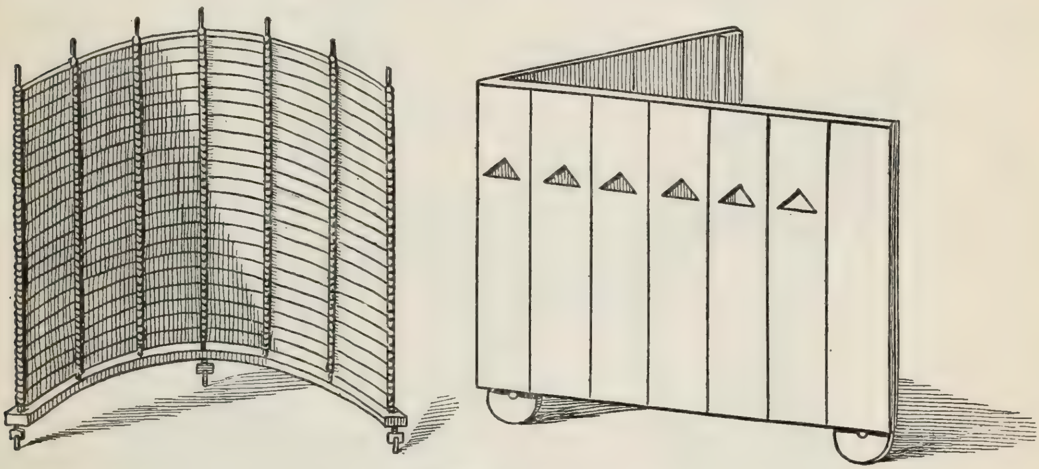


TESTUDO.

cover the assaulting force and thus protect them from weapons thrown from the walls by the besieged.

The *testudo* was usually a movable shed, from the front of which projected the battering-ram (*aries*), worked by the men beneath the roof from which it was suspended.

Sometimes, however, the word was applied to a kind of shed formed by the shields of the soldiers who were attacking a wall, as in the illustration. See Book II, Chapter 6



PLUTEI.

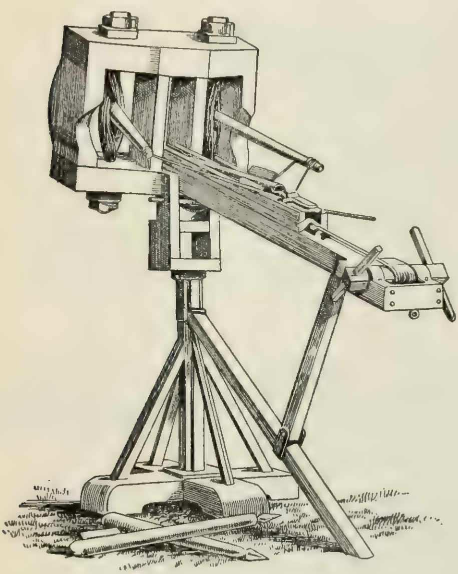
Plutei were large movable, three-wheeled shields of wicker-work, covered with hides to turn the missiles of the besieged.

The battering-ram was a long, heavy piece of timber whose offensive end was capped with metal sometimes having the shape of a ram's head. Hence the name. With men enough behind it, it was effective against walls of stone and timber. Compared with shots from a modern cannon, however, it was a child's toy.

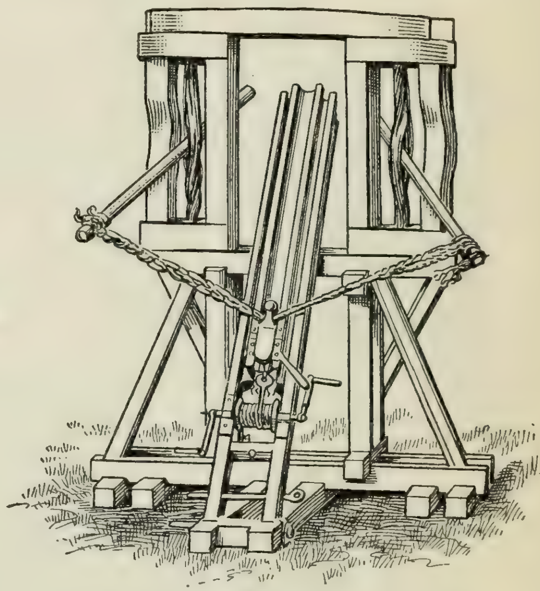
There was also a device called *falx muralis* or wall hook, consisting of a long beam suspended from upright supports with a single or double hook of metal at the end. This was used to pull stones from the top of a wall.

Another piece of apparatus was the *musculus*, a low, heavily built shed with a sloping roof. This was used to protect men at work filling up ditches or preparing to build the *agger;* sometimes also to cover the ram.

All the foregoing were used by light-armed troops or laborers preparing the way for the advance of the legionaries to the assault. When the preparations were completed and the walls cleared of defenders by the bowmen and slingers, the heavy-



CATAPULT.



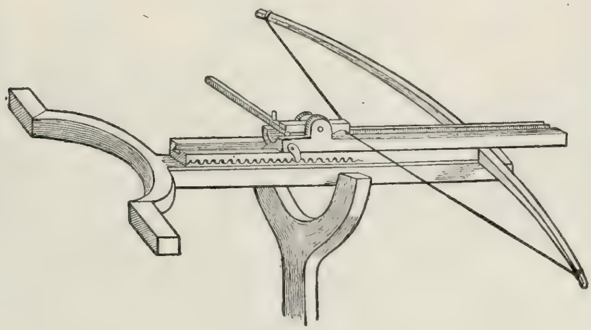
BALLISTA.

armed troops rushed forward, scaled the walls, or forced a gate, and the assault was brought to a finish.

The siege was a more complicated method of attack, and involved a vast amount of labor in preparation, and brought into use another branch of the army and a different class of weapons (*tormenta*) called by courtesy artillery.

These engines were the *catapult*, *ballista* and *scorpio*. The two former were the heavy artillery; the catapult shooting large arrows, the ballista hurling stones or heavy blocks

of wood. The propelling force was obtained by an ingenious arrangement of twisted ropes, combined with a bow-spring. The catapult required at least two men to manage it, while the ballista needed six or more. The range of each machine was not more than 1200 feet. The *scorpio* was a small catapult capable of being handled by one man. It consisted of a steel bow fastened to a framework, and shot arrows of steel or iron, which were perhaps eighteen inches long, to a distance not greater than 400 feet. In all cases a windlass was used to load the machine and set it for action. The men



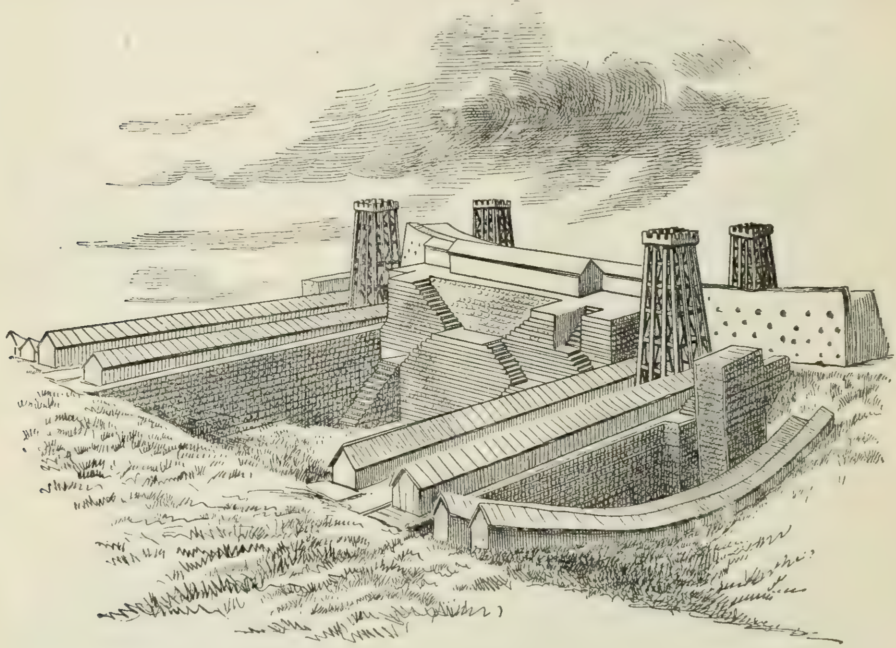
SCORPIO.

in charge of these engines constituted the artillery branch of the army. They may have been a section of the *fabri*, but we have no details of their organization.

The first work to be constructed for attack upon a stronghold was the *agger*, a mound of earth or timber or both, made as high as the walls of the town. The workmen were protected by the *plutei*, and those who brought the material passed through long galleries of *vineae*. The light-armed slingers and bowmen, placed in moving towers or behind other *plutei* for their protection, kept the walls of the town free from men. Bodies of heavy-armed troops also were held in reserve. When the *agger* was completed to a sufficient height, the troops of the besiegers took their place upon it and the fight-

ing began in earnest. Movable towers were often placed on the *agger* as a means of protecting the fighting men.

The illustration shows a restoration of the siege works before Avaricum, a town of the Bituriges, besieged by Caesar in the war against Vercingetorix, as narrated in Book VII, Chapters 14–

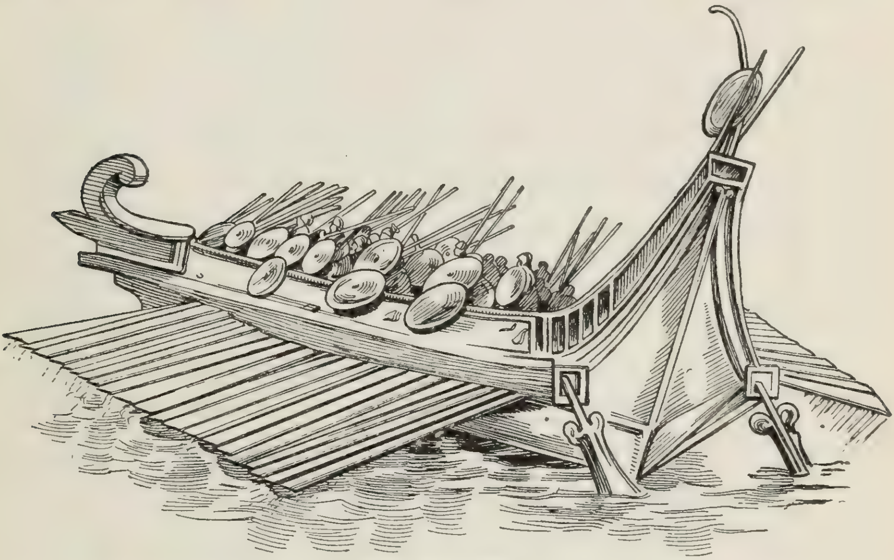


SIEGE WORKS BEFORE AVARICUM.

31. Close to the walls rises the Roman *agger*, with steps on the outside leading up to the top and flanked at each end with a high tower. In this siege the *agger* was eighty feet in height and was probably at least fifty feet broad at the top, so as to give room for a single maniple to form. The long lines of covered *vineae* leading across the low ground show the means by which the soldiers could reach their work without exposure. In this case preparations were being made for an assault, because the situation was such that the town could not be reduced by an enforced famine.

Ships of War.

In most of his campaigns in Gaul Caesar had no use for ships. When needed, however, they were built and equipped according to the Roman method. They carried a single sail, but were fitted with oars as their chief motive power. Some had as many as five tiers of rowers. They were fitted with

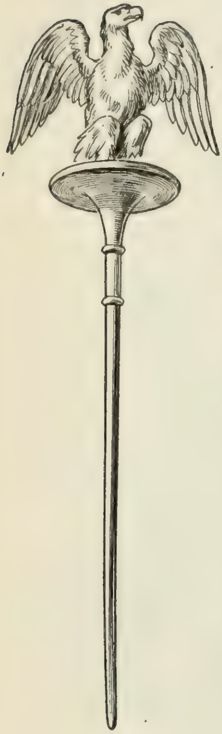


WAR GALLEY.

sharp beaks (*rostrum*) at the prow for the purpose of ramming an enemy's ship. They sometimes carried a tower on deck for the protection of the fighting men. This was the case particularly when a low ship was attacking a high one, or when the object was to kill the opposing sailors by a shower of missiles. In battle a favorite manœuvre was to grapple the enemy's ship, so that the Roman heavy-armed soldiers could board it and settle the conflict by a hand-to-hand fight.

The illustration is taken from a Pompeian wall-painting of a naumachia, and represents a war galley. If this vessel had had a sail, it would have been near the stern.

Standards and Musical Instruments.



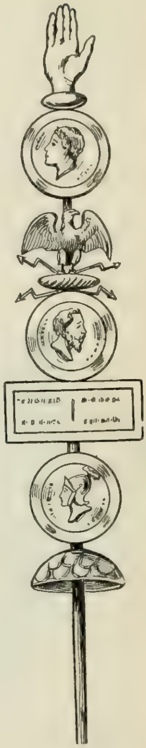
AQUILA.

The standard of the legion was the eagle (*aquila*), made of metal. This was in the care of the first cohort, and carried by a special officer (*aquilifer*).

Each cohort had its own standard-bearer (*signifer*) and its own emblem (*signum*). This was sometimes a figure of an animal on a staff.

The banner of the cavalry and light-armed troops (*vexillum*) was of cloth attached to a horizontal bar. See Commentary, page 30.

The commander-in-chief had his flag, as in modern armies. This was of white cloth with his name in red letters.



SIGNUM.

The musical instruments were the *tuba* (see Commentary, page 30), the *bucina* (see the *bucinator*, Introduction, page xxvi), the *lituus* and the *cornu*.



LITUUS.

Gaul and Its People.

The Great West, which Caesar went out to conquer in 58 B.C., may be roughly located as lying between the Pyrenees and the Rhine, the Mediterranean and the Atlantic. Cisalpine Gaul was thoroughly Romanized and entirely peaceful. On the southeast along the shore of the Mediterranean was the Roman province (Provincia) which had been won sixty years before Caesar's time. It was now all Roman and the centre of Transalpine Roman activity. The influence of the civilized life of the province was felt powerfully by the neighboring tribes; but this did not serve to extend at all the political control of the Romans.

The Gaul that was still unsubdued was divided, as we learn from the first chapter of the *Bellum Gallicum,* into three parts — the Celtic, the Aquitanian and the Belgic. Aquitania was located in the southwest, between the Garumna and the Pyrenees. This was small in area and, in the main, gave Caesar very little trouble. The country of the Belgians was bounded by the Sequana, the Matrona and the Rhine. Celtic Gaul, the great central portion, had for its boundaries the Sequana, the Matrona and the Garumna. This great country, with its mighty and lesser mountains, its noble rivers, its vast forests and fertile valleys, was the home of a large and fairly prosperous population. It has been estimated that the average number of inhabitants to the square mile was at least fifty.

Although Caesar mentions some tribes that subsisted on fish and the eggs of birds, it is evident that the great mass of the Gauls had advanced in civilization to a point far beyond the savage state. They were largely engaged in

agriculture and the raising of cattle. They had plenty of roads and bridges over the streams. Navigable rivers and the neighboring seas were alive with their ships carrying on the commerce of the times among the various tribes and between Gaul and Britain. Manufacturing seems not to have been much developed except in the working of metals. Copper implements and gold and copper coins, showing considerable skill, have been found in their tombs.

It was the custom of all the Gauls to settle in communities, or cantons. These were villages, of a greater or less size, having no walls. There were, however, many towns protected by strong walls of wood and stone. Helvetia alone had twelve walled towns and four hundred cantons. These strongholds were intended for the protection of all the people in time of war. Tribes having none of these sought the forests and swamps in time of danger.

The political conditions were the result of the habit of settling in communities or clans. The clans extended and the members multiplied; but the prince and the council of elders still made up the government. As the communities became larger, jealousies among the chiefs arose. The supporters of each rallied round their favorite, and the government of the canton came to be the rule of a faction. Thus the cantons were weakened and came to be the prey of more powerful communities or were united with them into leagues, such as the Belgian confederacy, against which Caesar had to contend. Inter-tribal conflicts were frequent, and practically all national feeling was lacking. They did meet at times in national assemblies, but the results were seldom beneficial to the people at large.

As warriors the Gauls were brave but untrained. Being extremely volatile by nature, they were roused to the highest

pitch of enthusiasm by slight successes or completely disheartened by slight reverses. Hence a single defeat was often sufficient to subdue a whole tribe. They were strong in cavalry, but had little skill or science as an infantry force. They fought in solid phalanx, an arrangement so unwieldy that they fell an easy prey to Caesar's well-trained legions. Their arms consisted of slings, bows and arrows, and spears of various kinds, and long swords of soft iron. High-crested helmets and shields formed their defensive armor.

We know little of the customs of the Gauls as regards dress. They wore trousers, however—an extremely barbaric habit from the Roman point of view.

Religion.

The great religious system of Gaul was Druidism. This seems indeed to have been the only unifying force in the land. The Druids, or priests, were a class set apart and highly honored by the people. Young men from all parts of the country were sent to learn the principles of the order, and after a long term of apprenticeship they became members of the priesthood. All the learning of the time was monopolized by the Druids, and they were honored by exemption from war and taxation. They were the ministers of justice, and enforced their decrees by excommunication. This punishment carried with it exclusion from citizenship as well as from religious privileges. By the doctrine of the transmigration of souls, the Druids taught their disciples to hold death in contempt. Human sacrifices were offered up, the victims usually being criminals. In certain sections of Gaul there appear to have remained some vestiges of an older religion, which Druidism had, to a great degree, supplanted.

Britain.

Caesar made two campaigns into Britain, but in neither did he penetrate the interior of the country. He has given us a description of the islands far from accurate, but valuable from the fact that it is the earliest statement made by a personal observer. The conquest begun by Caesar was completed by his successors, and Britain remained a Roman province for 400 years.

Germany.

Germany was never conquered by the Romans. Caesar twice crossed the Rhine, but made little impression on the vast hordes who inhabited the interior. The German invaders of Gaul were driven back across their great river, but only to return again to the attack, thus setting at defiance the almost invincible power of Rome.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

All of the histories of Rome that cover this period give an extended treatment of Caesar and his friends and foes. Of special importance, however, are those of MERIVALE and MOMMSEN. The former gives a sane and sympathetic account, in a beautiful and interesting style; the latter, a distorted and overdrawn picture, hardly relieved by the erudition shown in detail.

In addition we have:

FROUDE, J. A. Caesar: a Sketch. New York, 1879. Interesting but biased.

FOWLER, W. W. Julius Caesar and the Foundation of the Roman Imperial System. New York, 1892. Sound and sympathetic—the best account of the man.

DODGE, Col. F. A. Julius Caesar. Boston and New York, 1892. A military history, and not always reliable otherwise.

TROLLOPE, A. The Commentaries of Caesar. London and Philadelphia, 1880. Interesting.

HOLMES, T. R. Caesar's Conquest of Gaul. London, 1899. A fascinating account of Caesar's work, with invaluable appendices on the ethnology and geography of Gaul, and many matters relating more strictly to Caesar's life.

NAPOLEON III. Histoire de Jules César. Paris and New York, 1865, 1866. The foundation of modern scientific discussion of Caesar's campaigns, and particularly important for its atlas.

The following books on the style and contents of the Commentaries are also important:

SIHLER, E. G. A Complete Lexicon of the Latinity of Caesar's Gallic War. Boston, 1891.

MEUSEL, H. Lexicon Caesarianum. Berlin, 1887–93.

MENGE, H., and PREUSS, S. Lexicon Caesarianum. Leipzig, 1890.

MERGUET, H. Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars. Jena, 1886.

The last three give complete citations from both the Gallic War and the Civil War.

JUDSON, H. P. Caesar's Army. Boston, 1888. A convenient and useful book.

FRÖHLICH, F. Das Kriegwesen Cäsars. Zürich, 1891.

RÜSTOW, F. W. Heerwesen und Kriegführung Cäsars. Nordhausen, 1862. Atlas, Stuttgart, 1868.

LINDENSCHMIDT, L. Tracht und Bewaffnung des römischen Heers. 1882.

OEHLER, R. Bilderatlas zu Cäsars de bello Gallico. Leipzig, 1890.

VON KAMPEN, A. Quindecim ad Caesaris de bello Gallico commentarios tabulae. Gotha.

GURLITT, L. Anschauungstafeln zu Caesars Bellum Galcum. Gotha.

Important also are :

LODGE, HUBBELL and LITTLE. Helps for the Teaching of Caesar. In Teachers College Record, vol. iii (1902), nos. 3 and 4. A discussion of the various books introductory to Caesar, with detailed treatment of his vocabulary, syntax and style.

HEYNACHER, M. Was ergiebt sich aus dem Sprachgebrauch Caesars im Bellum Gallicum für die Behandlung der lateinschen Syntax in der Schule ? 2. ed. Berlin, 1886.

LEBRETON, J. Caesariana Syntaxis quatenus a Ciceroniana differat. Paris, 1901.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

I. DESCRIPTIO GALLIAE.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs; quārum ūnam
incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum lin-
2 guā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā,
īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs
Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.
3 Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod
ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt,
minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant atque ea,
quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proxi-
mīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, qui-
4 buscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Hel-
vētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē
cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs
fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum
5 gerunt. Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum
est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā
flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab
Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad sep-
6 tentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur;

pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant
in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Ga- 7
rumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī,
quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum
sōlis et septentriōnēs.

II. BELLUM HELVETICUM.

CC. 2–29.

Mōtus Helvētiōrum excitātus ab Orgetorīge; ēius clandestīna cōnsilia, mors.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus
Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā et M. Pīsone cōnsulibus, rēgnī
cupiditāte inductus coniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit et cīvi-
tātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exī-
rent: perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, 2
tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, 3
quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex
parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum
Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit, alterā ex parte monte Iūrā
altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs, tertiā lacū
Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab
Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagā- 4
rentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent;
quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī māgnō dolōre affi-
ciēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā 5
bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrā-
bantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lāti-
tūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī
cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinērent, com-
parāre, iūmentōrum et carrōrum quam māximum numerum

coēmere, sēmentēs quam māximās facere, ut in itinere
cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem
2 et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās bien-
nium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profec-
3 tiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orge-
torīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit.
4 In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō,
Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs
obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus
erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante
5 habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Aeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī
eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat āc māximē
plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque
6 fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse
illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvi-
tātis imperium obtentūrus esset: nōn esse dubium quīn
tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs
7 suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc
ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant
et, rēgnō occupātō, per trēs potentissimōs āc fīrmissimōs
populōs tōtīus Galliae sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus
suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt;
damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īgnī cremārētur.
2 Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad iūdicium
omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undi-
que coēgit et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum
māgnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit; per eōs, nē
3 causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem inci-
tāta armīs iūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque
hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mor-

tuus est; neque abest sūspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

Iter Helvētiī prīmō per prōvinciam temptant, sed Caesaris mūnītiōnibus interclūsī deinde per Sēquanōs.

5. Post ēius mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōn-
stituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi 2
iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua
omnia, numerō ad duodecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reli-
qua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter 3
quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut, domum
reditiōnis spē sublātā, parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula sub-
eunda essent, trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque
domō efferre iubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et 4
Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō oppidīs suīs
vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur, Bōiōsque, quī
trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsi-
erant Nōrēiamque oppūgnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi
āscīscunt.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō
exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile,
inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā sin-
gulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat,
ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvin-
ciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea 2
quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper
pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō
trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est proxi- 3
mumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genāva. Ex eō oppidō pōns
ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs,
quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidē-

rentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnēs
4 eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem com-
parātīs, diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs
conveniant: is diēs erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A.
Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam
nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et,
quam māximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ūlteriōrem
2 contendit et ad Genāvam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam
māximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō
in Galliā ūlteriōre legiō ūna), pontem, quī erat ad Genā-
3 vam, iubet rescindī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī cer-
tiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt nōbilissimōs
cīvitātis, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīn-
cipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō
sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea
quod aliud iter habērent nūllum: rogāre, ut ēius volun-
4 tāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat
L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ēius ab Hel-
vētiīs pulsum et sub iugum missum, concēdendum nōn
putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte
per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab iniūriā
5 et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tamen, ut spatium intercēdere
posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs
respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum: sī quid
vellent, ad Īd. Apr. reverterentur.

8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibus-
que, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī
in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs
Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum decem
novem mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque

perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō, praesidia dispōnit, castella 2
commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur,
prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lē- 3
gātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat sē mōre
et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam
dare et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit.
Helvētiī, eā spē dēiectī, nāvibus iūnctīs ratibusque com- 4
plūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō
flūminis erat, nōn numquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī
perrumpere possent cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum
concursū et tēlīs repulsī, hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs
invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā 2
sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem
Aeduum mittunt, ut, eō dēprecātōre, ā Sēquanīs impetrā-
rent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plū- 3
rimum poterat et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte
Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et, cupiditāte
rēgnī adductus, novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās
cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque 4
rem suscipit et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs
Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē dent,
perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Hel-
vētiī, ut sine maleficiō et iniūriā trānseant.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō, per
agrum Sēquanōrum et Aeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs
facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae
cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat māgnō 2
cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs,
populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus māximēque frū-
mentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, 3

quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in
Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs
cōnscrībit et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex
hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ūlteriōrem Gal-
liam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre con-
4 tendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs su-
periōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur.
5 Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est citeriō-
ris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ūlteriōris
prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit: inde in Allobrogum fīnēs,
ab Allobrogibus in Segūsiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt
extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Gallōrum dē Helvētiōrum iniūriīs querēlae.

11. Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum
suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Aeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant
2 eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Aeduī, cum sē suaque ab
iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt
3 rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō Rō-
mānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī,
agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida
4 expūgnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore Ambarrī, ne-
cessāriī et cōnsanguineī Aeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem
faciunt sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim
5 hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs, quī trāns Rhoda-
num vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem
recipiunt et dēmōnstrant sibi praeter agrī solum nihil
6 esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspec-
tandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōn-
sūmptīs in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

Clādēs Tigurīnōrum.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Aeduōrum et Sē-
quanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita
ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, iūdicārī nōn possit. Id
Helvētiī ratibus āc lintribus iūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per 2
explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs iam partēs cō-
piārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē par-
tem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā
cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem
pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs 3
et inopīnantēs aggressus māgnam partem eōrum concīdit:
reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās ab-
didērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus: nam omnis 4
cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus 5
ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L.
Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iu-
gum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immor- 6
tālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem
populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit.
Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās 7
iniūriās ultus est, quod ēius socerī L. Pīsōnis avum, L.
Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium,
interfēcerant.

Helvētiī per lēgātōs cum Caesare agunt.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut
cōnsequī posset, pontem in Arare faciendum cūrat atque
ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū 2
commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēce-
rant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intelle-
gerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō

prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dūx Helvētiōrum fuerat.
3 Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum
Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem itūrōs atque ibi futūrōs
Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset:
4 sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris
incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiō-
5 rum. Quod imprōvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum iī,
quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē
ob eam rem aut suae māgnō opere virtūtī tribueret aut
6 ipsōs dēspiceret. Sē ita ā patribus māiōribusque suīs
didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent quam dolō aut
7 īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret ut is locus, ubi
cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne
exercitūs nōmen caperet, aut memoriam prōderet.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis
darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent,
memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō
2 populī Rōmānī accidissent: quī sī alicūius iniūriae sibi
cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēcep-
tum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē
3 timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī
veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium
iniūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim
temptāssent, quod Aeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allo-
4 brogas vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā
victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur quodque tam diū sē
impūne iniūriās intulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre.
5 Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs quō gravius hominēs ex
commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum
ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem
6 impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs

ab iīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs in-
tellegat, et sī Aeduīs dē iniūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum
intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum iīs
pācem esse factūrum. Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā 7
māiōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn
dare cōnsuērint; ēius reī populum Rōmānum esse tēstem.
Hōc respōnsō datō discēssit.

Equitātus Caesaris ab Helvētiīs pulsus. Utrīusque exercitūs iter.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit
Caesar equitātumque omnem ad numerum quattuor mī-
lium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Aeduīs atque eōrum so-
ciīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in par-
tēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum āgmen 2
īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium
committunt; et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō 3
sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multi-
tūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōn
numquam et novissimō āgmine proeliō nostrōs lacessere
coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat āc satis ha- 4
bēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus popu-
lātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter 5
fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium āgmen et nostrum
prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum
interesset.

Caesaris cum Aeduōrum prīncipibus, Liscō et Dīviciācō, dē cīvitātis condiciōne et Dumnorīgis perfidiā colloquium.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum, quod
essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, 2
quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita
est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed

3 nē pābulī quidem satis māgna cōpia suppetēbat: eō autem
frūmentō, quod flūmine Arare nāvibus subvexerat, prop-
tereā ūtī minus poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvētiī āver-
4 terant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere
5 Aeduī: cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere. Ubi sē diūtius
dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīliti-
bus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quō-
rum māgnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīviciācō
et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem 'vergo-
bretum' appellant Aeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae
necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat,
6 quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī possit, tam
necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus ab iīs nōn
sublevētur; praesertim cum māgnā ex parte eōrum pre-
cibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius,
quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod
anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōn nūllōs, quōrum auctōri-
tās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim plūs pos-
2 sint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā
ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre nē frūmentum cōnferant,
3 quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī iam prīncipātum Galliae ob-
tinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia
4 perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre quīn, sī Helvētiōs supe-
rāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Aeduīs lībertā-
5 tem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in
castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī: hōs ā sē coërcērī nōn
6 posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriam rem coāctus Cae-
sarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō
fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī Dumnorīgem, Dīviciācī

frātrem, dēsīgnārī sentiēbat, sed, quod plūribus praesen-
tibus eās rēs iactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit,
Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxe- 2
rat. Dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab
aliīs quaerit; reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, 3
summā audāciā, māgnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem
grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs por-
tōria reliquaque omnia Aeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō
redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī
audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse 4
et facultātēs ad largiendum māgnās comparāsse; mā- 5
gnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et cir-
cum sē habēre; neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīniti- 6
mās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūius potentiae causā
mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō āc potentis-
simō collocāsse, ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorō- 7
rem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in aliās cīvitātēs
collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīni- 8
tātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs,
quod eōrum adventū potentia ēius dēminūta et Dīviciācus
frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit resti-
tūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per 9
Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī
nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā
dēspērāre. Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod 10
proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset fac-
tum, initium ēius fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ēius
equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī
mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat): eōrum fugā reliquum esse
equitātum perterritum.

19. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, cum ad hās sūspīciōnēs cer-

tissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Hel-
vētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset,
quod ea omnia nōn modo iniūssū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam
īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Aeduōrum
accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum
aut ipse animadverteret aut cīvitātem animadvertere
2 iubēret. Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repūgnābat, quod
Dīviciācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium,
summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, iūstitiam,
temperantiam cōgnōverat: nam nē ēius suppliciō Dīvi-
3 ciācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque prius quam
quicquam cōnārētur, Dīviciācum ad sē vocārī iubet et
cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs per C. Valerium Trou-
cillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum,
cuī summam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō
4 colloquitur: simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in
conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit,
5 quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit
atque hortātur, ut sine ēius offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē
eō, causā cōgnitā, statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere iubeat.

20. Dīviciācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus
obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret:
2 Scīre sē illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē
dolōris capere, proptereā quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum
domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter
3 adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus āc
nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad
perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō
4 et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā
Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae
apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum nōn suā

voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtīus Galliae
animī ā sē āverterentur. Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns 5
ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ēius dextram prēndit; cōnsō-
lātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ēius apud sē
grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae iniūriam et suum
dolōrem ēius voluntātī āc precibus condōnet. Dumnorī- 6
gem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat,
ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prō-
pōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs sūspīciōnēs
vītet; praeterita sē Dīviciācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit.
Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum lo-
quātur, scīre possit.

Caesaris cōnsilium P. Cōnsidiī errōre pervertitur.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostēs
sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs
octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū
āscēnsus, quī cōgnōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est facilem 2
esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō prae-
tōre cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus, quī iter cōgnō-
verant, summum iugum montis āscendere iubet; quid suī
cōnsiliī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, 3
quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem
ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus 4
habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī
fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenē-
rētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīn-
gentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs com-
perit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cōgnitus esset,
Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit; dīcit montem, 2

quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī;
3 id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsīgnibus cōgnōvisse. Caesar
suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit.
Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium
committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae
essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret,
monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat.
4 Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cōgnōvit, et
montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et
Cōnsidium, timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō
5 sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuērat intervāllo, hostēs
sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra
pōnit.

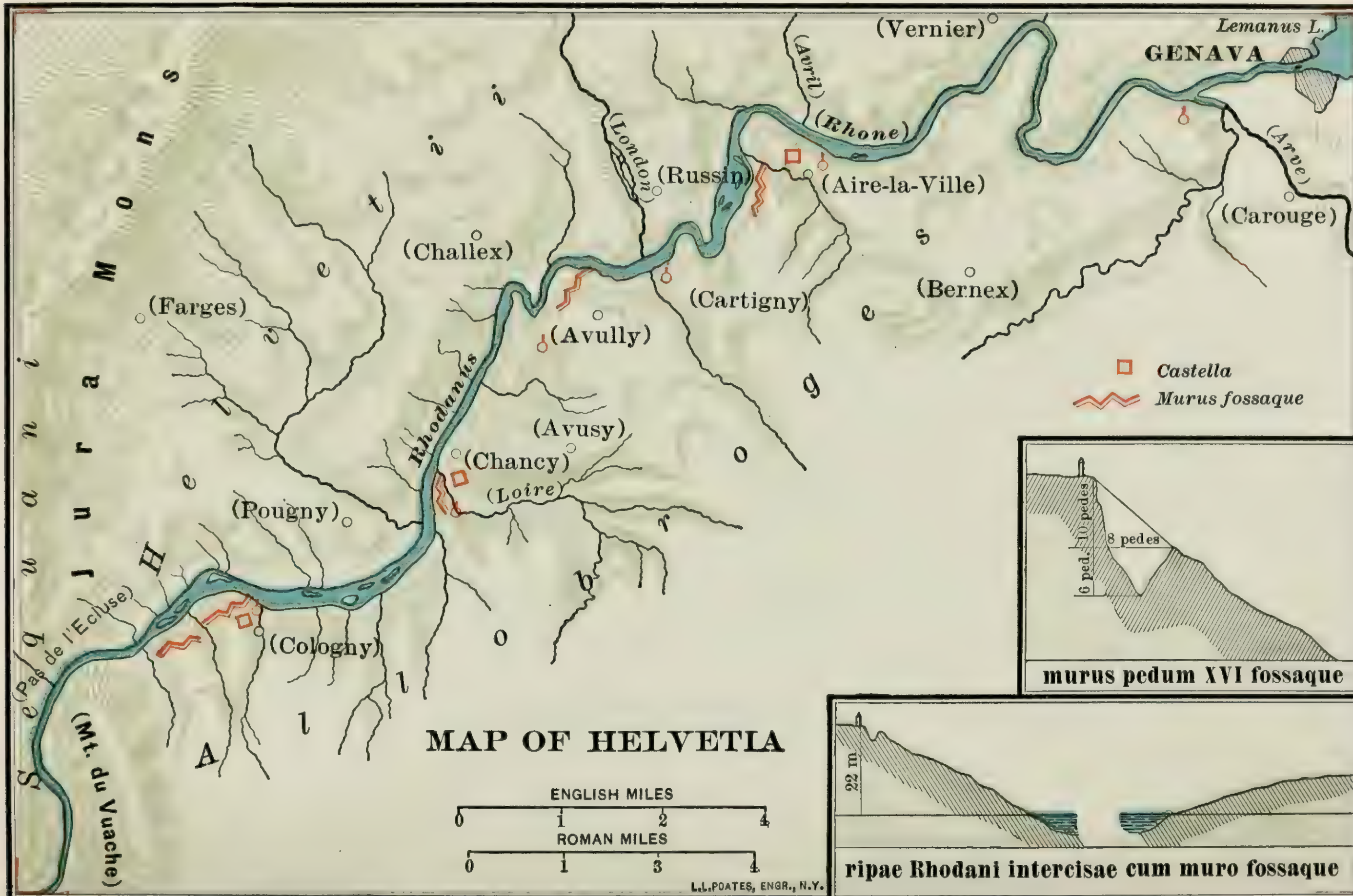
Helvētiōrum clādēs, fuga, reditus in fīnēs suōs.

23. Postrīdiē ēius diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat,
cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā
Bibracte, oppidō Aeduōrum longē māximō et cōpiōsis-
simō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum xviii aberat, reī
frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs
2 āvertit āc Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs
L. Aemiliī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūn-
3 tiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs
discēdere ā sē exīstimārent, eō magis, quod prīdiē, superi-
ōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent, sīve
eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent,
commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novis-
simō āgmine īnsequī āc lacessere coepērunt.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar
in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret
2 hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō

triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum;
[ita utī suprā sē] in summō iugō duās legiōnēs, quās 3
in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat, et omnia
auxilia collocārī, āc tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et
intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī, et eum ab iīs,
quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī iūssit. Helvētiī 4
cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī, impedīmenta in ūnum
locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē, rēiectō nostrō
equitātū, phalange factā, sub prīmam nostram aciem
succēssērunt.

25. Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū
remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae
tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō 2
superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrē-
gērunt. Eā disiectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum
fēcērunt. Gallīs māgnō ad pūgnam erat impedīmentō, 3
quod plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō īctū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et
colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque
sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pūgnāre poterant; multī 4
ut diū iactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmit-
tere et nūdō corpore pūgnāre. Tandem vulneribus dēfessī 5
et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle
passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et 6
succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum
mīlibus circiter xv āgmen hostium claudēbant et novis-
simīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō
aggressī circumvenīre; et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in
montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redin-
tegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa sīgna bipertītō 7
intulērunt; prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs āc submōtīs
resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.


MAP OF HELVETIA
Sequani
Jura Mons
Helvetii
Allobroges
(Mt. du Vuache)
(Pas de l'Ecluse)
(Farges)
(Challex)
(Pougny)
(Cologny)
Rhodanus
(Chancy)
(Loire)
(Avusy)
(Avully)
(London)
(Russin)
(Cartigny)
(Aire-la-Ville)
(Avril)
(Rhone)
(Vernier)
(Bernex)
GENAVA
Lemanus L.
(Arve)
(Carouge)
Castella
Murus fossaque
ENGLISH MILES
0 1 2 4
ROMAN MILES
0 1 3 4
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.
10 pedes
8 pedes
6 ped.
murus pedum XVI fossaque
22 m
ripae Rhodani intercisae cum muro fossaque

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pūgnātum est.
Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent,
alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad
2 impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō
proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit,
3 āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem
etiam ad impedīmenta pūgnātum est, propterea quod prō
vāllō carrōs obiēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs veni-
entēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōn nūllī inter carrōs raedāsque
matarās āc trāgulās subiciēbant, nostrōsque vulnerābant.
4 Diū cum esset pūgnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī
potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus
5 est. Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx super-
fuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt: nūllam
partem noctis itinere intermissō in fīnēs Lingonum diē
quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et
propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs
6 sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas lītterās nūnti-
ōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē iuvārent: quī
sī iūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum.
Ipse trīduō intermissō, cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī
coepit.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē
2 dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere
convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent suppliciterque
locūtī flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō
tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, pāru-
3 ērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma,
4 servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit. Dum ea con-
quīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter homi-
num mīlia vi ēius pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve

timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur,
sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditī-
ciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō īgnōrārī
posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum
ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant,
hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse
vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; 2
reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in
dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in 3
fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī iūssit; et quod
omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem
tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut iīs frūmentī cōpiam
facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, resti-
tuere iūssit. Id eā māximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit 4
eum locum, unde Helvētiī discēsserant, vacāre, nē propter
bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt,
ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī
Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōiōs peten- 5
tibus Aeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cōgnitī, ut in
fīnibus suīs collocārent, concēssit; quibus illī agrōs
dedērunt quōsque posteā in parem iūris lībertātisque
condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt lītterīs
Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in
tabulīs nōminātim ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō
exīsset eōrum, quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim
puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa 2
erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlium CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mī-
lium XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIV, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōiōrum
XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā

3 duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum,
quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperā-
verat, repertus est numerus mīlium C et X.

III. BELLUM ARIOVISTI.

CC. 30–54.

Conciliō Galliae habitō, prīncipēs cīvitātum cum Caesare sēcrētō agunt. Querēlae dē Ariovistō, Germānōrum rēge.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō, tōtīus ferē Galliae
lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum con-
2 vēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvē-
tiōrum iniūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīs-
set, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam
3 populī Rōmānī accidisse; proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flō-
rentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī
Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque
domiciliō ex māgnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Gal-
liā opportūnissimum āc frūctuōsissimum iūdicāssent, reli-
4 quāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent. Petiērunt, ut
sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere id-
que Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret: sēsē habēre quāsdam
5 rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā
rē permissā, diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et iūre iūrandō,
nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō man-
dātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī
ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, utī
sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret.
2 Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prō-
iēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea,
quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent,

impetrārent, propterea quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, sum-
mum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent. Locūtus est prō 3
hīs Dīviciācus Aeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse
duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Aeduōs, alterius
Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē 4
multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse utī ab Arvernīs
Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum 5
prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse: posteā quam
agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī āc
barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs: nunc esse in Galliā
ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Aeduos 6
eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse;
māgnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbili-
tātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse.
Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte 7
et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante
in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare
nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et iūre iūrandō cīvitātem obstringere,
sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs, neque auxilium ā populō
Rōmānō implōrātūrōs neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus per-
petuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum 8
sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Aeduōrum, quī addūcī nōn
potuerit, ut iūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob 9
eam rem sē ex cīvitāte prōfūgisse et Rōmam ad senā-
tum vēnisse auxilium pōstulātum, quod sōlus neque iūre
iūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur. Sed pēius victōribus 10
Sēquanīs quam Aeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod
Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset
tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus
Galliae, occupāvisset et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sē-
quanōs dēcēdere iubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus

ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIV ad eum vēnissent,
11 quibus locus āc sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs
annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus pellerentur atque
omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent: neque enim cōnferen-
dum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc
12 cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam. Ariovistum
autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod
proelium factum sit ad Magetobrigam, superbē et crūdēliter
imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūiusque līberōs pōscere et
in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad
13 nūtum aut ad voluntātem ēius facta sit. Hominem esse
barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ēius impe-
14 ria diūtius sustinērī. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque
Rōmānō sit auxiliī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum,
quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domici-
lium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnam-
15 que, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta
Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus,
16 quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Cae-
sarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī vic-
tōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē māior
multitūdō Germānōrum Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque
omnem ab Ariovistī iniūriā posse dēfendere.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīviciācō habitā, omnēs, quī
aderant, māgnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepē-
2 runt. Animadvertit Caesar ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs
nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs,
capite dēmissō, terram intuērī. Ēius reī quae causa esset,
3 mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesiit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed
in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permanēre. Cum ab hīs saepius
quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset,

īdem Dīviciācus Aeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem 4
et graviōrem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum,
quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre
audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut
sī cōram adesset, horrērent; propterea quod reliquīs tamen 5
fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs
Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte
ēius essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Colloquium ā Caesare pōstulātum, dēnegātur ā rēge. Lēgātī ā Caesare mittuntur. Ariovistī respōnsum.

33. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs
cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram:
māgnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte
adductum Ariovistum fīnem iniūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrā- 2
tiōne habitā, concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae
rēs eum hortābantur, qūa rē sibi eam rem cōgitandam
et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Aeduōs, frātrēs
cōnsanguineōsque saepe numerō ā senātū appellātōs, in
servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī,
eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum āc Sēquanōs intellegēbat;
quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum
sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim 3
autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in
Galliam māgnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō
Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs 4
āc barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem
Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent,
in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Ītaliam contenderent,
praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā
Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē oc-

5 currendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi
spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn
vidērētur.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs
mitteret, quī ab eō pōstulārent, utī aliquem locum
medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret: velle sēsē dē rē
2 pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lē-
gātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus
esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit,
3 illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praetereā sē neque sine
exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar
possidēret, neque exercitum sine māgnō commeātū atque
4 mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem
mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut
Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtiī esset.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum
2 Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō
suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus, cum in cōn-
sulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset,
hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in
colloquium venīre invitātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī
rē dīscendum sibi et cōgnōscendum putāret, haec esse,
3 quae ab eō pōstulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem
hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret:
deinde obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Aeduīs, redderet Sēqua-
nīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ēius
reddere illīs licēret; nēve Aeduōs iniūriā lacesseret, nēve
4 hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret. Sī id ita fēcisset,
sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīci-
tiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam
M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, senātus cēnsuisset, utī,

quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Aeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Iūs esse bellī, ut,
quī vīcissent, iīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent,
imperārent: item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad
alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre
cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, 2
quem ad modum suō iūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā po-
pulō Rōmānō in suō iūre impedīrī. Aeduōs sibi, quoniam 3
bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī āc supe-
rātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Māgnam Caesarem 4
iniūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra
faceret. Aeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque 5
hīs neque eōrum sociīs iniūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō
manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs
penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē iīs frāternum nōmen
populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, 6
sē Aeduōrum iniūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum
sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur: 7
intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī exercitātissimī in
armīs, quī inter annōs XIV tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte
possent.

Aeduōrum questibus mōtus Caesar ad Ariovistum contendit, Vesontiōnem occupat.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur,
et lēgātī ab Aeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Aeduī 2
questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānspor-
tātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur: sēsē, nē obsidibus

quidem datīs, pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse; Trē-
3 verī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī
cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse
4 Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar
vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē,
sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī
5 sēsē coniūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque, rē
frūmentāriā quam celerrimē potuit comparātā, māgnīs
itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcēssisset, nūntiātum est eī,
Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum
Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum māximum Sēquanōrum,
2 contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcēssisse. Id
nē accideret, māgnō opere sibi praecavendum Caesar exī-
3 stimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī
4 erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idemque nātūrā
locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut māgnam ad dūcendum bellum
daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō
5 circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum
spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum,
quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet māgnā altitūdine
ita ut rādīcēs ēius montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis
6 contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et
7 cum oppidō coniungit. Hūc Caesar māgnīs nocturnīs
diurnīsque itineribus contendit, occupātōque oppidō, ibi
praesidium collocat.

Māgna in castrīs Rōmānīs trepidātiō, Caesaris ōrātiō, iter ad Ariovistum.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae
commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum

vōcibusque Gallōrum āc mercātōrum, quī ingentī māgni-
tūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque
exercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepe numerō
sēsē cum hīs congressōs nē vultum quidem atque aciem
oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor
omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium
mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā 2
tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe
amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn māgnum in rē
mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, 3
quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret,
petēbat, ut ēius voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōn nūllī
pudōre adductī, ut timōris sūspīciōnem vītārent, remanē-
bant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās 4
tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum
querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perī-
culum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs tēstāmenta 5
obsīgnābantur. Hōrum vōcibus āc timōre paulātim etiam
iī, quī māgnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centu-
riōnēsque quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur.
Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē 6
hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem
silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum,
aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī
posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōn nūllī etiam Caesarī nūnti- 7
ābant, cum castra movērī āc sīgna ferrī iūssisset, nōn fore
dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem sīgna
lātūrōs.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum quod, aut quam

in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum
2 aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidis-
simē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse: cūr hunc tam
3 temerē quisquam ab officiō discēssūrum iūdicāret? Sibi
quidem persuādērī, cōgnitīs suīs pōstulātīs atque aequitāte
condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī
4 Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque
āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verē-
rentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā
5 dēspērārent? Factum ēius hostis perīculum patrum
nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā C. Mariō
pulsīs nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor
meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Ītaliā servīlī
tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus āc dīsciplīna, quae ā
6 nōbis accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō iūdicārī posse,
quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, proptereā quod,
quōs aliquamdiū inermōs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā
7 armātōs āc victōrēs superāssent. Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem
Germānōs, quibuscum saepe numerō Helvētiī congressī nōn
sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus plērumque
superārint, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn
8 potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum
commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte
bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs
castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem
fēcisset, dēspērantēs iam dē pūgnā et dispersōs subitō
adortum magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse.
9 Cuī ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs
locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs
10 exercitūs capī posse. Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmen-
tāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent,

facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspē-
rāre aut praescrībere vidērentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae: 11
frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs subministrāre,
iamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs
brevī tempore iūdicātūrōs. Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs 12
neque sīgna lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī:
scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn
fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse aut aliquō
facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam: suam inno-
centiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō
esse perspectam. Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem 13
collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē
quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intelle-
gere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an
timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, 14
tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn
dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram.
Huīc legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter 15
virtūtem cōnfīdēbat māximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā, mīrum in modum conversae
sunt omnium mentēs summaque alacritās et cupiditās
bellī gerendī illāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per 2
tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum
iūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parā-
tissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum 3
tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus
ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent: sē neque umquam
dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum
iūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum 4
satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīviciācum,
quod ex Gallīs eī māximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium

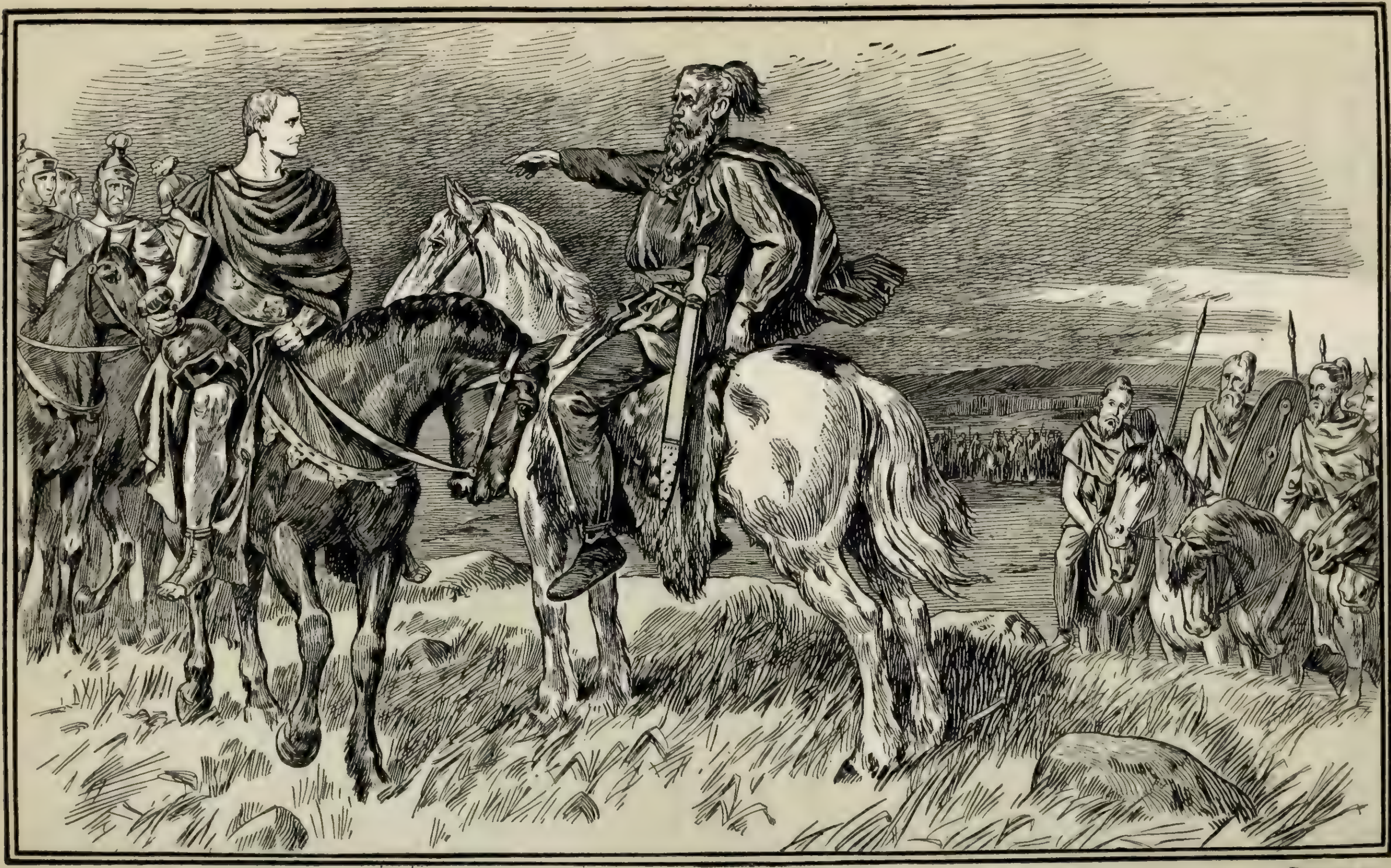
amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum
dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est.
5 Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātō-
ribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlia
passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

Caesaris cum Ariovistō colloquium Germānōrum impetū dīripitur.

42. Cōgnitō Caesaris adventū, Ariovistus lēgātōs ad
eum mittit: quod anteā dē colloquiō pōstulāsset, id per
sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accēssisset, sēque id sine
2 perīculō facere posse exīstimāre. Nōn respuit condi-
ciōnem Caesar iamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbi-
trābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ūltrō
3 pollicērētur, māgnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs
tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cōgnitīs suīs
pōstulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret. Diēs colloquiō
4 dictus est ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī
ūltrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus pōstulāvit,
nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: verērī
sē nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur: uterque cum
equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum.
5 Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī
volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī com-
mittere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus
equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs
legiōnis decimae, cuī quam māximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere,
ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō
6 esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam
ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: plūs quam pollicitus
esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum sē in cohortis praetōriae
locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

43. Plānitiēs erat māgna et in eā tumulus terrēnus
satis grandis. Hīc locus aequum ferē spatium ā castrīs
Ariovistī et Caesaris aberat. Eō, ut erat dictum, ad collo-
quium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēve- 2
xerat, passibus cc ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs
Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus ex 3
equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ad collo-
quium addūcerent, pōstulāvit. Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar 4
initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia comme-
morāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus,
quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs
contigisse et prō māgnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī
docēbat; illum cum neque aditum neque causam pōstu- 5
landī iūstam habēret, beneficiō āc līberālitāte suā āc
senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam 6
veterēs quamque iūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum
Aeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta quotiēns 7
quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore
tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Aeduī tenuissent, prius etiam
quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī 8
hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn
modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dīgnitāte, honōre
auctiōrēs velit esse: quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī
Rōmānī attulissent, id iīs ēripī quis patī posset? Pōstu- 9
lāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē
aut Aeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs red-
deret; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere
posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

44. Ariovistus ad pōstulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, 2
dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum
sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs;



From Gurlit..

CAESAR'S INTERVIEW WITH ARIOVISTUS.

nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum pro-
pinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs
concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium
capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint.
3 Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs
Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppūgnandum vēnisse āc contrā
sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō
4 pulsās āc superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē
iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint,
inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte
5 ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī
sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse
oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum
Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtra-
hantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī
6 Rōmānī amīcitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitūdinem
Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī,
nōn Galliae oppūgnandae causā facere: ēius reī tēsti-
mōnium esse quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit et quod
7 bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam
vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc
tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae
8 fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās posses-
siōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam,
sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in
nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs,
9 quod in suō iūre sē interpellārēmus. Quod frātrēs ā senātū
Aeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque
tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō
Allobrogum proximō Aeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse
neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Aeduī sēcum et

cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.
Dēbēre sē sūspicārī simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quem 10
exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre.
Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiō- 11
nibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum.
Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīn- 12
cipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum: id sē
ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre, quōrum
omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ēius morte redimere
posset. Quod sī dēcēssisset et līberam possessiōnem Gal- 13
liae sibi trādidisset, māgnō sē illum praemiō remūne-
rātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ēius
labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt,
quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset; neque suam neque
populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē meritōs
sociōs dēsereret, neque sē iūdicāre, Galliam potius esse
Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse 2
Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ā Q. Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus
Rōmānus īgnōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset
neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum 3
quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī iūstis-
simum esse in Galliā imperium: sī iūdicium senātūs
observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam
bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum
est equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad
nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs cōnicere.
Caesar loquendī fīnem fēcit, sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque 2
imperāvit nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs rēicerent.
Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū 3

proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat
ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset eōs ab sē per fidem in col-
4 loquiō circumventōs. Posteā quam in vulgus mīlitum
ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus
omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in
nostrōs ēius equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium dīrē-
misset, multō māior alacritās studiumque pūgnandī māius
exercituī iniectum est.

Gallī lēgātī ad Ariovistum missī in vincula cōniciuntur.

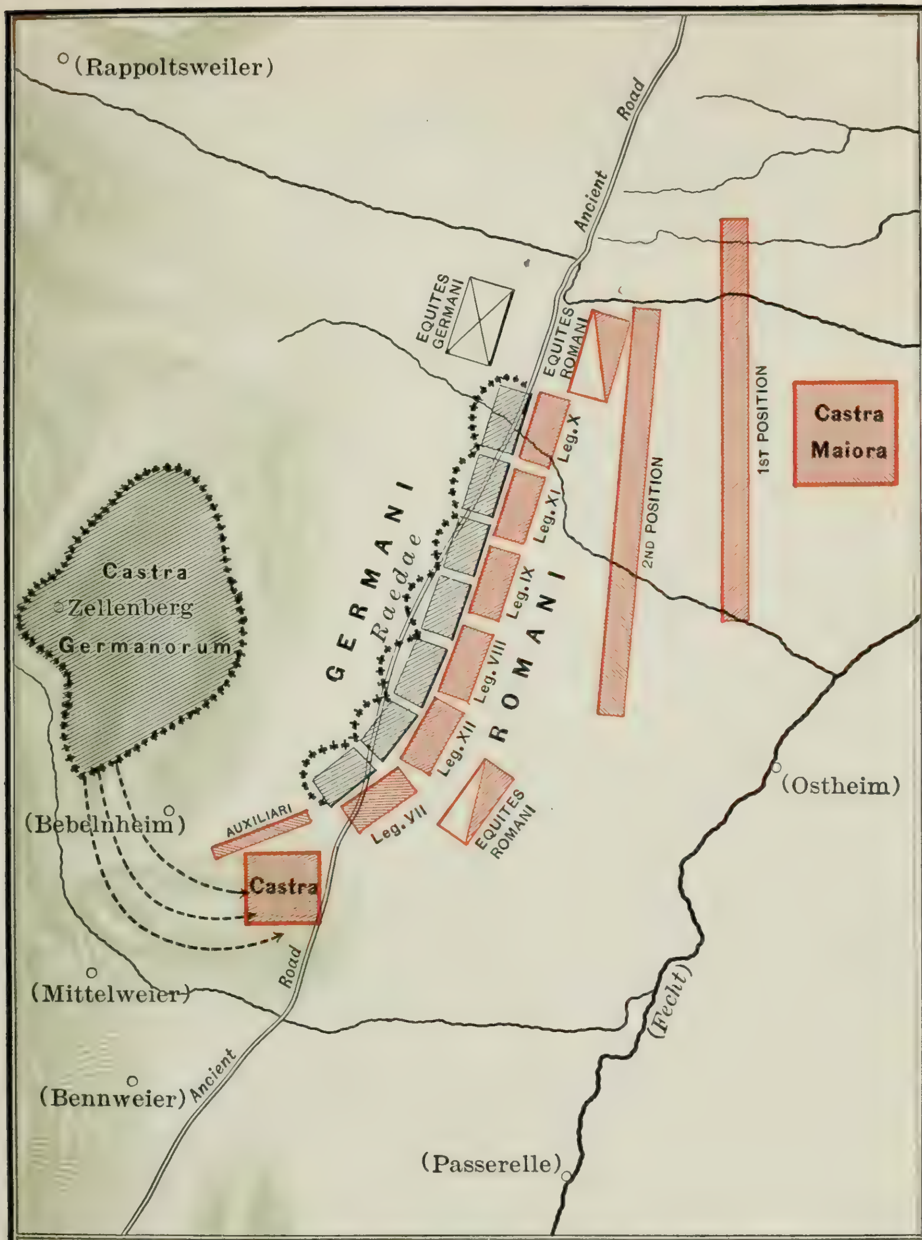
47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mittit:
Velle sē dē iīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque
perfectae essent, agere cum eō: utī aut iterum colloquiō
diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs
2 aliquem ad sē mitteret. Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa
nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ēius diēī Germānī
retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn tēla in nostrōs cōnicerent.
3 Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē māgnō cum perīculō ad eum
missūrum et hominibus ferīs obiectūrum exīstimābat.
4 Commodissimum vīsum est C. Valerium Procillum, C.
Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte
adulēscentem, cūius pater ā C. Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte
dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae
scientiam, quā multā iam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuē-
tūdine ūtēbātur, et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa
nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā M. Metium, quī hospitiō
5 Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ario-
6 vistus, cōgnōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud
sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō prae-
sente conclāmāvit: quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī
causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās cōniēcit.

Equestre proelium.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex
ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ēius diēī 2
praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus
passuum duōbus ūltrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī
frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Aeduīs sup-
portārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs con- 3
tinuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et
aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō
contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset. Ariovistus hīs omni- 4
bus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō
cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pūgnae, quō sē Ger-
mānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem 5
numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī āc fortissimī, quōs ex omnī
cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant: cum
hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant: 6
hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant, sī quī graviōre vul-
nere acceptō equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; sī quō erat 7
longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat
hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut iubīs sublevātī equōrum
cursum adaequārent.

Castra minōra Caesaris Ariovistus oppūgnat, proeliō dēcertāre nōn audet.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē
diūtius commeātū prohiberētur, ūltrā eum locum, quō in
locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab iīs,
castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad
eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs 2
esse, tertiam castra mūnīre iūssit. Hīc locus ab hoste 3
circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō



PLAN OF BATTLE WITH ARIOVISTUS

ENGLISH MILE 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

ROMAN MILE 0 ¼ ½ ¾ 1

L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

circiter hominum numerō sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum
omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs
4 terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar,
ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam
5 opus perficere iūssit. Mūnītīs castrīs, duās ibi legiōnēs
relīquit et partem auxiliōrum, quattuor reliquās in castra
māiōra redūxit.

50. Proximō diē īnstitūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque
cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā māiōribus castrīs prōgres-
sus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pūgnandī potestātem fēcit.
2 Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merī-
diē exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus
partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppūgnāret,
3 mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pūgnātum
est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs
4 et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit. Cum ex captīvīs
quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn
dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs
ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus
et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent, utrum proelium committī
5 ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere: nōn esse fās Germānōs
superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

Tandem in proelium dēscendere coācti Germānī vincuntur et ad Rhēnum profugiunt. Līberantur lēgātī Gallī.

51. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit, ālāriōs omnēs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse, triplicī īnstrūctā aciē, ūsque ad castra hostium accēssit.

Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdū- 2
xērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs,
Harūdēs, Marcomanōs, Tribocēs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs,
Sedusiōs, Suēbōs, omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs
circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō 3
mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs
mīlitēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in
servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quae-
stōrem praefēcit, utī eōs tēstēs suae quisque virtūtis
habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē 2
fīrmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit.
Et ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs, sīgnō datō, impetum 3
fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repentē celeriterque prōcurrērunt,
ut spatium pīla in hostēs cōniciendī nōn darētur.
Rēiectīs pīlīs, comminus gladiīs pūgnātum est. At 4
Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā,
impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs 5
nostrī, quī in phalanga īnsilīrent et scūta manibus
revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs 6
ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam coniecta esset, ā
dextrō cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram
aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset P. Crassus 7
adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat
quam iī quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem
labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs
terga vertērunt nec prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad
flūmen Rhēnum mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque
pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre 2
contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperē-

3 runt; in hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam
ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit: reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī
4 equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt. Duae fuērunt Ariovistī
uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat,
altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā
dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit.
Duae fīliae: hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.
5 C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs
catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostēs
6 equitātū persequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī
nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit,
quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum
familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium sibi
restitūtum vidēbat, neque ēius calamitāte dē tantā
voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat.
7 Is sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat,
utrum īgnī statim necārētur, an in aliud tempus reser-
8 vārētur: sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M.
Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Suebī domum revertuntur. In hīberna dēdūcitur exercitus.
Caesar in citeriōrem Galliam proficīscitur.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō, Suēbī, quī ad
rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs
Ubiī, quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs sēnsērunt:
2 īnsecūtī māgnum ex iīs numerum occīdērunt. Caesar unā
aestāte duōbus māximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō
quam tempus annī pōstulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs ex-
3 ercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in
citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

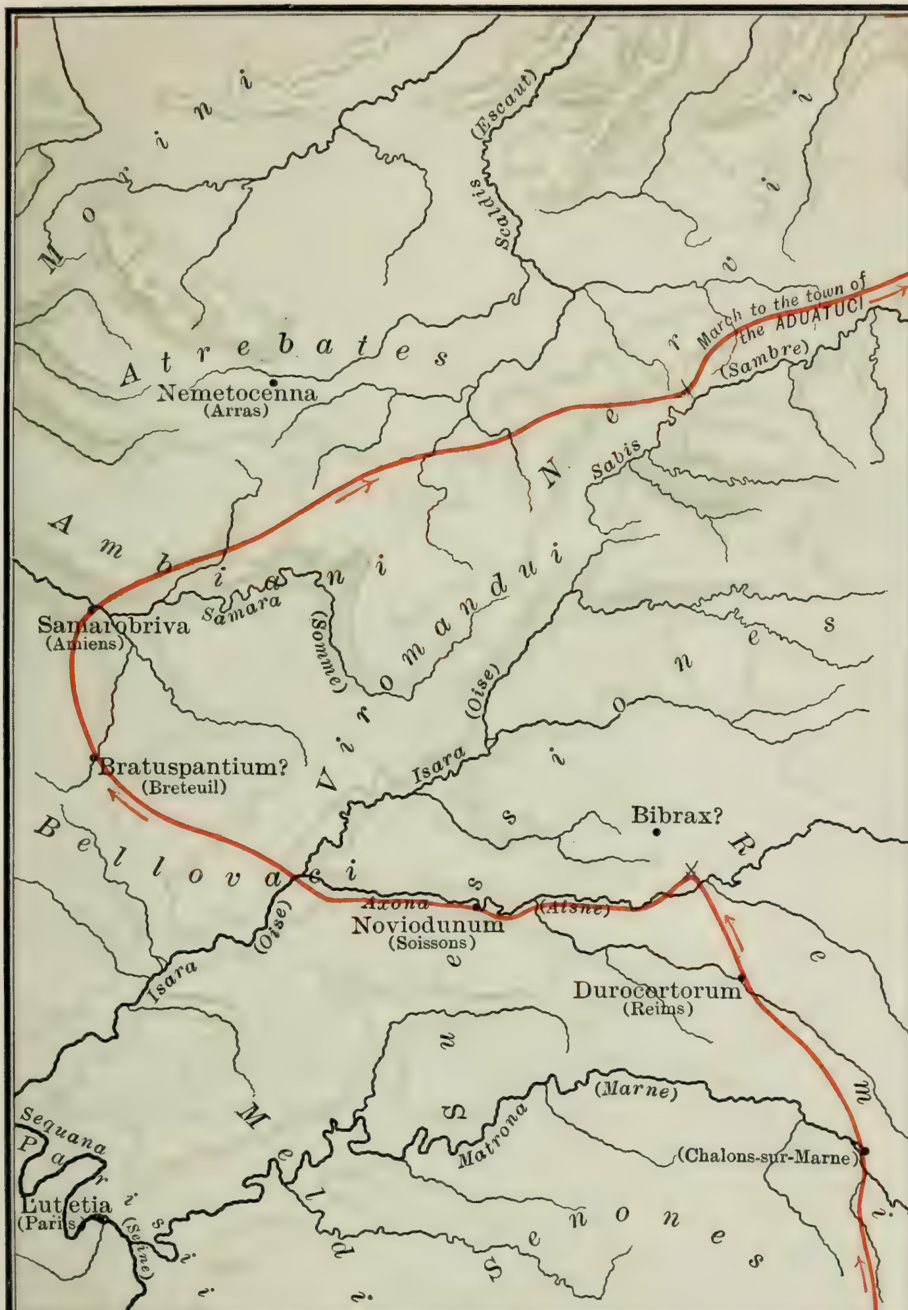
I. BELLUM BELGICUM.

CC. I–33.

Coniūrātiō Belgārum praeter Rēmōs, quī sē in fidem Caesaris permittunt.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā
dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur,
lītterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat omnēs Belgās,
quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā
populum Rōmānum coniūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare.
Coniūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum quod verērentur, nē 2
omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur;
deinde, quod ab nōn nūlliīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim 3
quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita
populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in
Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte
animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōn nūllīs etiam, quod 4
in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque iīs, quī ad condūcendōs
hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur,
quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī
poterant.

2. Hīs nūntiīs lītterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legi-
ōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte,
in ūlteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Q. Pedium lēgātum
mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad 2



CAMPAIGN OF 57 B.C.

ENGLISH MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50

ROMAN MILES 0 10 20 30 40 50

L.L. POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

3 exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque
Gallīs quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae apud eōs
gerantur, cōgnōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem
4 faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt manūs cōgī,
exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitan-
5 dum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē
frūmentāriā comparātā, castra movet, diēbusque circiter
quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

3. Eō cum dē imprōvīsō celeriusque omnium opīniōne
vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad
eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andebrogium, prīmōs cīvitātis,
2 mīsērunt, quī dīcerent sē suaque omnia in fidem atque
in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum
reliquīs Belgīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmā-
3 num coniūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et
imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīs-
4 que rēbus iuvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse,
Germānōsque, quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs
5 coniūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem,
ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs,
quī eōdem iūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum impe-
rium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre
potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

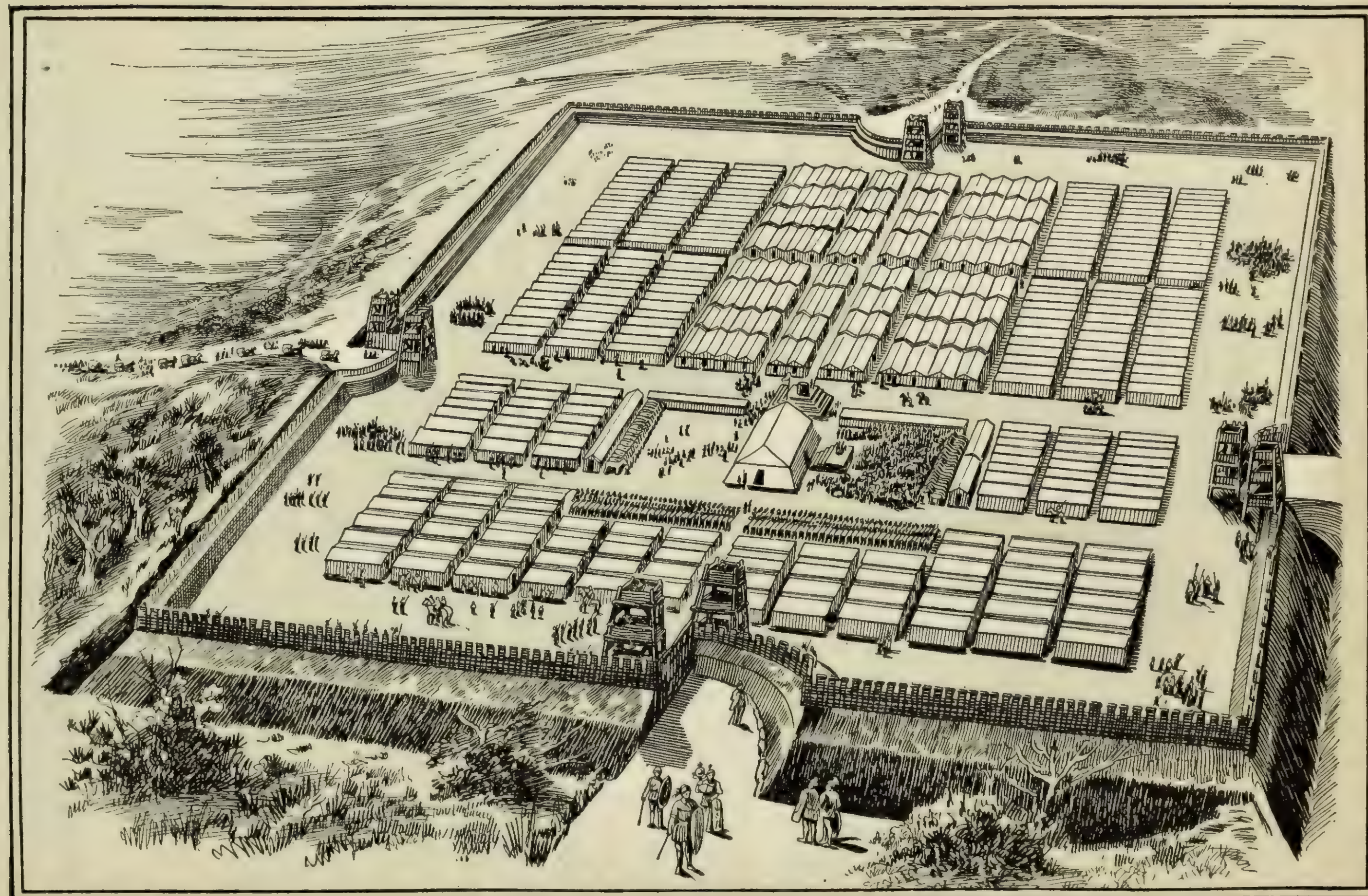
Orīgō et cōpiae Belgārum.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque
in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat:
plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ab Germānīs Rhēnumque
antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsē-
2 disse Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque
esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā,

Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā fīnēs suōs ingredī prohibue-
rint; quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā māgnam 3
sibi auctōritātem māgnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī
sūmerent. Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta 4
Rēmī dīcēbant, proptereā quod, propinquitātibus affīni-
tātibusque coniūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in
commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit,
cōgnōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et 5
auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre: hōs posse cōn-
ficere armāta mīlia centum; pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta
sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi pōstulāre. Sues- 6
siōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque
agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam 7
memoriā Dīviciācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī
cum māgnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Bri-
tanniae imperium obtinuerit: nunc esse rēgem Galbam:
ad hunc propter iūstitiam prūdentiamque summam
tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre 8
numerō duodecim, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā;
totidem Nerviōs, quī māximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur
longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Am- 9
biānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs xxv mīlia, Menapiōs vii
mīlia, Caletōs x mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs
totidem, Aduatucōs xix mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, 10
Caerōsōs, Caemanōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appel-
lantur, arbitrārī ad xl mīlia.

Castra Caesaris ad Axonam.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne
prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque
līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit. Quae omnia ab hīs



A ROMAN CAMP.

2 dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīviciācum Aeduum
māgnoperē cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae
commūnisque salūtis intersit manūs hostium distinērī,
nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit.
3 Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Aeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum
intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs
4 datīs mandātīs, eum ā sē dīmittit. Postquam omnēs
Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre
vīdit, neque iam longē abesse ab iīs quōs mīserat explō-
rātōribus et ab Rēmīs cōgnōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod
est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere
5 mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus
ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum
quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat, et commeātūs ab
Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum
6 portārī possent efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi
praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Q. Titūrium
Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit. Castra
in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duo-
dēvīgintī pedum mūnīre iubet.

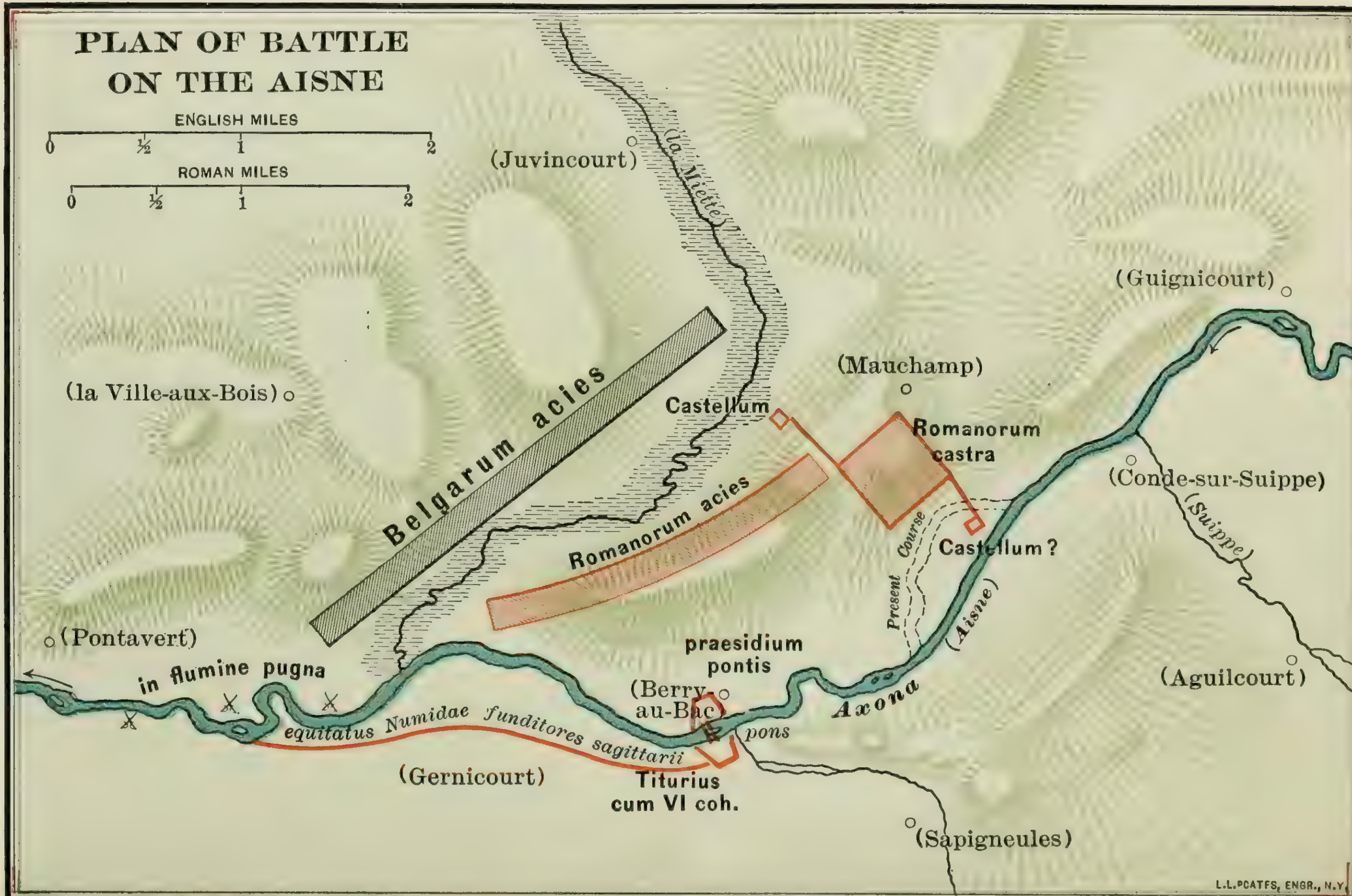
Bibrax, Rēmōrum oppidum ā Belgīs obsessum, ā Caesare obsidiōne līberātur. Discēdentēs Belgae clāde afficiuntur.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax
aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere māgnō impetū
Belgae oppūgnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum
2 est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppūgnātiō est
haec. Ubi circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moeni-
bus undique in mūrum lapidēs iacī coeptī sunt mūrusque
dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, tēstūdine factā portās succē-
3 dunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam

cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs āc tēla cōnicerent, in mūrō
cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppūgnandī 4
nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā
inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praeerat, ūnus ex iīs, quī
lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum
mittit: nisi subsidium sibi submittātur, sēsē diūtius
sustinēre nōn posse.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī
nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs
et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum 2
adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpū-
gnandī accēssit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī
oppidī discēssit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī 3
agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīs-
que quō adīre potuerant incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris om-
nibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus
duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque 4
īgnibus sīgnificābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in
lātitūdinem patēbant.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et
propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre
statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis
virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur.
Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs 2
ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō,
quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex
plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat,
quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque
ex utrāque parte lateris dēiectūs habēbat et in frontem
lēniter fāstīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab 3
utrōque latere ēius collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit


PLAN OF BATTLE
ON THE AISNE
ENGLISH MILES
0
½
1
2
ROMAN MILES
0
½
1
2
(Juvincourt)
(la Miette)
(la Ville-aux-Bois)
Belgarum acies
Castellum
(Mauchamp)
Romanorum
castra
(Guignicourt)
(Conde-sur-Suippe)
(Suippe)
Romanorum acies
Present
Course
Castellum ?
(Aisne)
Axona
(Aguilcourt)
(Pontavert)
in flumine pugna
praesidium
pontis
(Berry-
au-Bac)
pons
equitatus Numidae funditores sagittarii
(Gernicourt)
Titurius
cum VI coh.
(Sapigneules)
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

circiter passuum CD et ad extrēmās fossās castella cōnsti-
4 tuit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrū-
xisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab
5 lateribus pūgnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc
factō, duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in
castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī pos-
sent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit.
Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxērunt.

9. Palūs erat nōn māgna inter nostrum atque hostium
exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent hostēs exspectābant;
nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impe-
2 dītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim
proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi
neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum
3 proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs
prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt,
4 quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs
repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt,
eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cuī praeerat Q.
Titūrius lēgātus, expūgnārent pontemque interscinderent;
5 sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī
māgnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, comme-
ātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō omnem equitātum
et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque
2 ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō
locō pūgnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine
3 aggressī māgnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt: per eōrum
corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multi-
tūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōsque, quī trānsierant,
4 equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt. Hostēs ubi et dē

expūgnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē
fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem
prōgredī pūgnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frū-
mentāria dēficere coepit, conciliō convocātō, cōnstituērunt
optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī et, quōrum
in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad
eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs
quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs
reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum 5
reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod
Dīviciācum atque Aeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appro-
pinquāre cōgnōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morā-
rentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā māgnō cum stre-
pitū āc tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque
imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret
et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis
fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per 2
speculātōrēs cōgnitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā
discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque
castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explō- 3
rātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum āgmen
morārētur, praemīsit. Hīs Q. Pedium et L. Aurunculēium
Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit. T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum
legiōnibus tribus subsequī iūssit. Hī novissimōs adortī 4
et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī māgnam multitūdinem
eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō āgmine,
ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum
nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā 5
perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō
continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus,

6 omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō
perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfē-
cērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium, sub occāsum sōlis
sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum,
recēpērunt.

Suessiōnēs in fidem accipiuntur.

12. Postrīdiē ēius diēī Caesar, prius quam sē hostēs
ex terrōre āc fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī
proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et māgnō itinere
2 [cōnfectō] ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex
itinere oppūgnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōri-
bus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque
altitūdinem paucīs dēfendentibus expūgnāre nōn potuit.
3 Castrīs mūnītīs, vīneās agere quaeque ad oppūgnandum
4 ūsuī erant comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā
Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte con-
5 vēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere iactō
turribusque cōnstitūtīs, māgnitūdine operum, quae neque
vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmā-
nōrum permōtī, lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mit-
tunt et, petentibus Rēmīs ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

Caesar Bellovacōs, petente Dīviciācō, in fidem recipit, dē Nerviōrum nātūrā mōribusque quaerit.

13. Caesar, obsidibus acceptīs, prīmīs cīvitātis atque
ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs armīsque omnibus ex
oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accipit exer-
2 citumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. Quī cum sē suaque omnia
in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō
oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum
quīnque abesset, omnēs māiōrēs nātū ex oppidō ēgressī

manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce sīgnificāre coepērunt,
sēsē in ēius fidem āc potestātem venīre neque contrā
populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad 3
oppidum accēssisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulie-
rēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab
Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīviciācus (nam post discēssum Belgārum
dīmissīs Aeduōrum cōpiīs ad eum reverterat) facit verba:
Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis 2
Aeduae fuisse: impulsōs ā suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent
Aeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indīgni-
tātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Aeduīs dēfēcisse
et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ēius cōnsiliī 3
prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent quantam cala-
mitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse.
Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Aeduōs, 4
ut suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod 5
sī fēcerit, Aeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās
amplificātūrum; quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua
bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīviciācī atque Aeduōrum causā sēsē
eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod
erat cīvitās māgnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque homi-
num multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs popōscit.
Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō 2
locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit, quī sē suaque omnia
sine morā dēdidērunt. Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; 3
quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc
reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus: 4
nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam perti-
nentium īnferrī, quod iīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs

5 [eōrum] et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs
ferōs māgnaeque virtūtis, increpitāre atque incūsāre reli-
quōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriam-
6 que virtūtem prōiēcissent; cōnfīrmāre sēsē neque lēgātōs
missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

Nerviōs, multīs utrimque clādibus acceptīs, Caesar vincit cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs accipitque in dēditiōnem.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inve-
niēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn
2 amplius mīlia passuum x abesse: trāns id flūmen omnēs
Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspec-
tāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs
(nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortū-
3 nam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab iīs Aduatucōrum
4 cōpiās atque esse in itinere: mulierēs, quīque per aetātem
ad pūgnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōniēcisse,
quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque
2 praemittit, quī locum castrīs idōneum dēligant. Cum ex
dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem
secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex
captīvīs cōgnitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris
nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt
atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impe-
dīmentōrum māgnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse
quicquam negōtiī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset
reliquaeque legiōnēs māgnum spatium abessent, hanc sub
3 sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs
futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.
4 Adiuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant,

quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent (neque
enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed quicquid possunt,
pedestribus valent cōpiīs) quō facilius fīnitimōrum equi-
tātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent,
tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in
lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interiectīs
effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum prae-
bērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem
posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter āgminis nostrī impedīrētur, 5
nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs
dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad
flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōmināvimus, vergēbat. Ab 2
eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur, adversus
huīc et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus aper-
tus, ā superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus
perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē 3
continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae
statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō
pedum circiter trium.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus
cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque āgminis aliter sē habēbat āc
Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appro- 2
pinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expe-
dītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta
collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae 3
erant, tōtum āgmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedī-
mentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittā- 4
riīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium
commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs 5
reciperent āc rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent,



PLAN OF BATTLE WITH THE NERVII

neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca
aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim
legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra
6 mūnīre coepērunt. Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exer-
citūs ab iīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod
tempus inter eōs committendī proeliī convēnerat, ut intrā
silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē
cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt
7 impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile
pulsīs āc prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen
dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore ad silvās et in
flūmine et iam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur.
8 Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra
atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, contendērunt.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum
prōpōnendum, quod erat īnsīgne, cum ad arma concurrī
oportēret, sīgnum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī
mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcēs-
serant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī,
2 sīgnum dandum. Quārum rērum māgnam partem tem-
3 poris brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs dif-
ficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus
mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī
oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere
quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singu-
līsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi
4 mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem
et celeritātem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium
exspectābant, sed per sē quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

21. Caesar, necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs, ad cohortandōs
mīlitēs, quam [in] partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et

ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre 2
ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis
memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hosti-
umque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius 3
hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proeliī
committendī sīgnum dedit. Atque in alteram partem 4
item cohortandī causā profectus pūgnantibus occurrit.
Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus 5
ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsīgnia accom-
modanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque
tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque 6
ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma sīgna
cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs
pūgnandī tempus dīmitteret.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dēiectusque
collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō
atque ōrdō pōstulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā
in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut
ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interiectīs, prōspectus impedīrētur,
neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque
parte opus esset, prōvidērī neque ab ūnō omnia imperia
administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte 2
fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā
parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs, cursū āc lassitūdine
exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs
ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen
compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs māgnam
partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre 2
flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī
rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam

3 coniēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs,
ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum
erant congressī, ex locō superiōre in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs
4 proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā
parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et
nōn māgnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs
Nerviī cōnfertissimō āgmine duce Boduognātō, quī
summam imperiī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt;
5 quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre,
pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae
peditēs, quī cum iīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium
impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent,
adversīs hostibus occurrēbant āc rūrsus aliam in partem
2 fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ab decumānā portā āc
summō iugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse
cōnspexerant, praedandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent
et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs
3 fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedī-
mentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque
4 aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur. Quibus omnibus
rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs
virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxiliī causā ā cīvitāte
missī ad Caesarem vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium
castra [nostra] complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circum-
ventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās
dispersōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent,
5 dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmā-
nōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum
hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum

cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī sīgnīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pūgnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, sīgniferō interfectō, sīgnō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut iam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōn nūllōs ab novissimīs, dēsertō locō, proeliō excēdere āc tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit neque ūllum esse subsidium, quod submittī posset, scūtō ab 2 novissimīs [ūnī] mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcēssit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus mīlitēs sīgna īnferre et manipulōs laxāre iūssit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūius adventū spē illātā mīlitibus āc redin- 3 tegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

26. Caesar cum septimam legiōnem, quae iūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs coniungerent et conversa sīgna in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō, cum aliīs 2 aliī subsidium ferrent, neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere āc fortius pūgnāre coepērunt. Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum, quae in 3 novissimō āgmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō, cursū incitātō, in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et T. Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus 4

et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur,
cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit.
5 Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs
esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et
imperātōr versārētur, cōgnōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem
sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta,
ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent,
scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs, perter-
ritōs hostēs cōnspicātī, etiam inermēs armātīs occur-
2 rerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlē-
rent, omnibus in locīs pūgnandō sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus
3 praeferrent. At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis
tantam virtūtem praestitērunt ut, cum prīmī eōrum
cecidissent, proximī iacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum
4 corporibus pūgnārent; hīs dēiectīs et coacervātīs cadā-
veribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō, tēla in nostrōs
5 cōnicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent: ut nōn nēquī-
quam tantae virtūtis hominēs iūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse
trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, āscendere altissimās rīpās,
subīre inīquissimum locum; quae facilia ex difficillimīs
animī māgnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente
āc nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, māiōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā
cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria āc palūdēs con-
iectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus
2 nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, om-
nium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem
mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt et in commemorandā
cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex
hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs, quī arma ferre

possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in 3
miserōs āc supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligen-
tissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī iūs-
sit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab iniūriā et maleficiō sē
suōsque prohibērent.

Item Aduatucī subiguntur.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā dīximus, cum omnibus
cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pūgnā nūntiātā ex
itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque 2
dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā
mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitū 3
partibus altissimās rūpēs dēiectūsque habēret, ūnā ex
parte lēniter acclīvis aditus in latitūdinem nōn amplius
pedum ducentōrum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī
altissimō mūrō mūnierant: tum māgnī ponderis saxa
et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant. Ipsī erant ex 4
Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvin-
ciam nostram atque Ītaliam facerent, iīs impedīmentīs,
quae sēcum agere āc portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen
Rhēnum dēpositīs, cūstōdiam ex suīs āc praesidium sex
mīlia hominum ūnā relīquerant. Hī post eōrum obitum 5
multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum
īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum
omnium pāce factā hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgerant.

30. Āc prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex
oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum
nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII in circuitū 2
XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē
continēbant. Ubi, vīneīs āctīs, aggere exstrūctō, turrim 3
procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque



SIEGE OF ADUATUCA

increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō
4 spatiō īnstruerētur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus
vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plē-
rumque omnibus Gallīs prae māgnitūdine corporum
suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris
turrim in mūrō sēsē posse collocāre cōnfīderent.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre mūrīs vīdē-
runt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad
Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī, ad hunc modum locūtī:
2 nōn sē exīstimāre Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum
gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeri-
tāte prōmovēre possent, sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī
3 permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere āc dēprecārī: sī forte
prō suā clēmentiā āc mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs
audīrent, statuisset Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē
4 armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs
āc suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs
5 armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum
dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī,
quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī, inter quōs dominārī
cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine
suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, prius
quam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēdi-
2 tiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē
id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque impe-
rātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī iniūriam
3 īnferrent. Rē renūntiātā ad suōs, quae imperārentur,
4 facere dīxērunt. Armōrum māgnā multitūdine dē mūrō
in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iactā, sīc ut
prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem acervī

armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā,
ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā,
portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex
oppidō exīre iūssit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus
iniūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, 2
cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēduc-
tūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant,
partim cum iīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs,
partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs,
quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās pōstulābat, pellibus
indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās
mūnītiōnēs āscēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente
ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt. Celeriter, ut ante Cae- 3
sar imperārat, īgnibus sīgnificātiōne factā, ex proximīs
castellīs eō concursum est, pūgnātumque ab hostibus ita 4
ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis
inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla
iacerent, pūgnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs
[salūtis] cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quat- 5
tuor, reliquī in oppidum reiectī sunt. Postrīdiē ēius 6
diēī, refrāctīs portīs, cum iam dēfenderet nēmō, atque
intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ēius oppidī
ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab iīs, quī ēmerant, capi- 7
tum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā
trium.

II. CRASSI IN AREMORICAS CIVITATES EXPEDITIO.

34. Eōdem tempore ā P. Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā
mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas,
Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvi-

tātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

III. RES EXEUNTE ANNO GESTAE.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs, omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūius
bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab iīs nātiōnibus,
quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mit-
terentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pol-
2 licērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Ītaliam
Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē
3 revertī iūssit. Ipse in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs quaeque
cīvitātēs propinquae iīs locīs erant ubi bellum gesserat,
legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Ītaliam profectus est;
4 ob eāsque rēs ex lītterīs Caesaris diērum quīndecim sup-
plicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

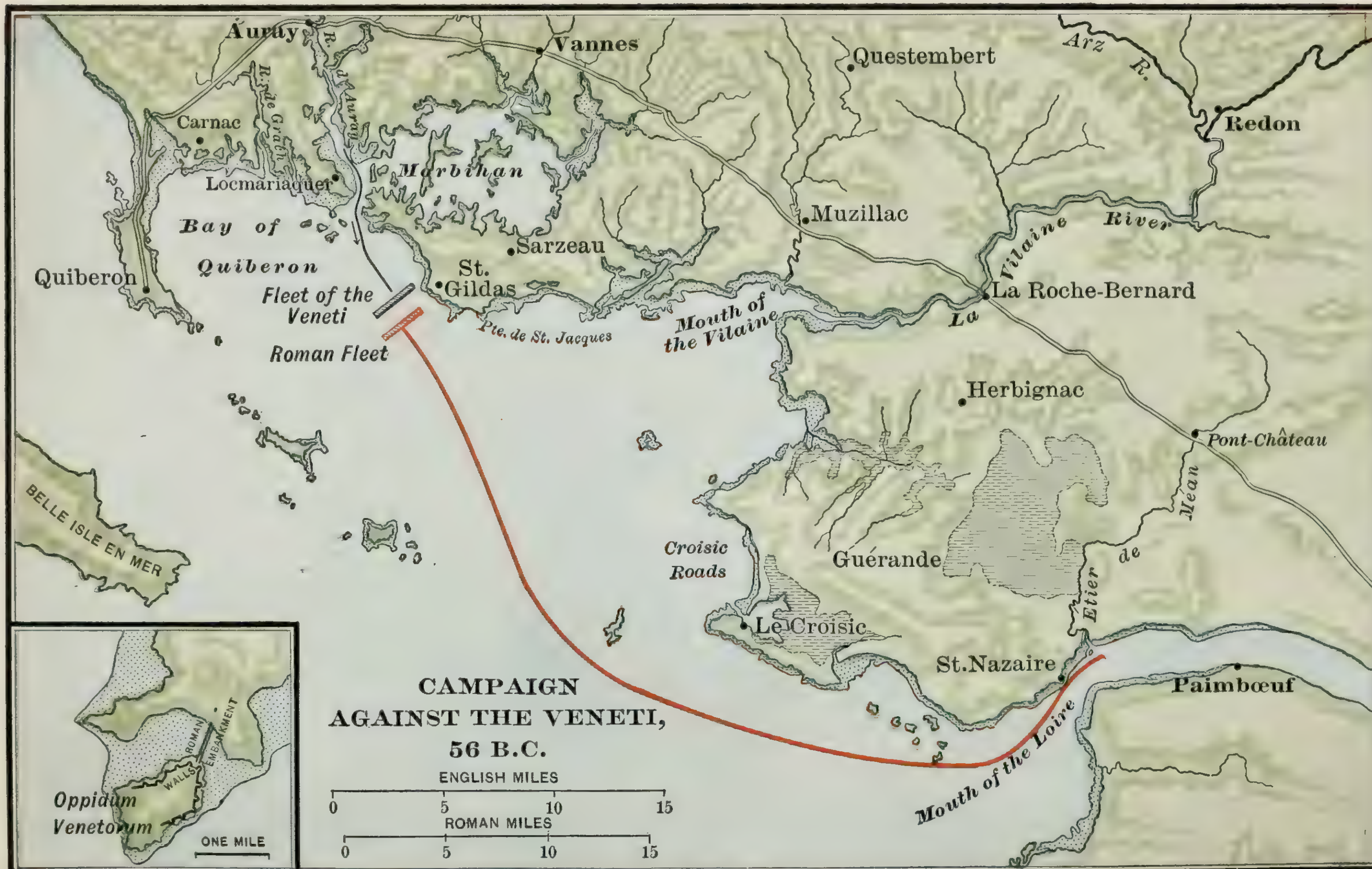
I. BELLUM CUM GENTIBUS ALPINIS.

cc. 1–6.

Galba lēgātus Caesaris gentēs quāsdam sub Alpibus sitās rebellantēs vincit; posteā in prōvinciam redit.

1. Cum in Ītaliam proficīscerētur Caesar, Ser. Galbam
cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs,
Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum
et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs
pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō 2
māgnō cum perīculō māgnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs
īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huīc permīsit, sī opus 3
esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā
collocāret. Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castel- 4
līsque compluribus eōrum expūgnātīs, missīs ad eum
undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnsti-
tuit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum
reliquīs ēius legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī
appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, 5
nōn māgnā adiectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique
continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, 6
alteram partem ēius vīcī Gallīs concēssit, alteram vacuam
ab hīs relictam cohortibus [ad hiemandum] attribuit.
Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmen-


CAMPAIGN
AGAINST THE VENETI,
56 B.C.
ENGLISH MILES
0 5 10 15
ROMAN MILES
0 5 10 15
Auray
R. d'Auray
R. de Grach
Vannes
Questembert
Arz R.
Redon
Carnac
Locmariaquer
Morbihan
Bay of
Quiberon
Quiberon
Fleet of the
Veneti
Roman Fleet
St.
Gildas
Sarzeau
Pte. de St. Jacques
Mouth of
the Vilaine
Muzillac
La Vilaine River
La Roche-Bernard
Herbignac
Pont-Château
BELLE ISLE EN MER
Croisic
Roads
Guérande
Le Croisic
St.Nazaire
Etier de Méan
Paimbœuf
Mouth of the Loire
Oppidum
Venetorum
ROMAN
EMBANKMENT
WALLS
ONE MILE

tumque eō comportārī iūssisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs
certior factus est ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs concēs-
serat, omnēs noctū discēssisse montēsque, quī impendē-
rent, ā māximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum
2 tenērī. Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī
renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent:
3 prīmum, quod legiōnem neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs
cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī comme-
ātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter pauci-
4 tātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem
locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla
cōnicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse
5 sustinēri exīstimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē
līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs
nōn sōlum itinerum causā, sed etiam perpetuae possessi-
ōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae
prōvinciae adiungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs, Galba, cum neque opus hīber-
nōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae neque dē
frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod
dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō
timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō,
2 sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum
repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset āc iam
omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum com-
plēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque com-
meātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope
iam dēspērātā salūte nōn nūllae ēius modī sententiae
dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relīctīs ēruptiōne factā,
īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem
3 contenderent. Māiōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō

ad extrēmum cāsum cōnsiliō, interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

4. Brevī spatiō interiectō, vix ut rēbus, quās cōnstitu-
issent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur,
hostēs ex omnibus partibus sīgnō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs
gaesaque in vāllum cōnicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīri- 2
bus fortiter propūgnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō
superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta
dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium
ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pūgnae hostēs 3
dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdē-
bant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī 4
nihil poterat, āc nōn modo dēfessō ex pūgnā excēdendī,
sed nē sauciō quidem ēius locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī
āc suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

5. Cum iam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pūgnārētur
āc nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent,
atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs
vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque
esset iam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, P. Sextius 2
Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nerviō proeliō com-
plūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item C. Volu-
sēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis,
ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis
docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experī-
rentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs 2
certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium āc
tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre refi-
cerent, post datō sīgnō ex castrīs ērumperent atque
omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

6. Quod iūssī sunt, faciunt, āc subitō omnibus portīs

ēruptiōne factā, neque cōgnōscendī, quid fieret, neque
2 suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita com-
mūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum
vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex homi-
num mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum
ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā,
reliquōs perterritōs in fugam cōniciunt āc nē in locīs
3 quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus
hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnī-
4 tiōnēs suās recipiunt. Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius
fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna
cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat,
māximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus, posterō
diē, omnibus ēius vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam
5 revertī contendit āc, nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter
dēmorante, incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in
Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

II. BELLUM VENETICUM.

CC. 7–16.

Aremoricae gentēs auctōritāte Venetōrum adductae obsidēs repōscunt.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar
pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs
Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme
in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs
adīre et regiōnēs cōgnōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in
2 Galliā coortum est. Ēius bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus
adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus mare Ōceanum
3 in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frū-
mentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in

fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō 4
est T. Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, M. Trebius Gallus in
Coriosolitas, Q. Velānius cum T. Sīliō in Venetōs.

8. Hūius est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās
omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs
habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre
cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs
antecēdunt et in māgnō impetū maris vāstī atque apertī,
paucīs portibus interiectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē,
quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit 2
initium retinendī Sīliī atque Velāniī, quod per eōs suōs
sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīsti-
mābant. Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt 3
Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā
Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs
lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē coniūrant, nihil nisi
commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnis fortūnae
exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut 4
in eā lībertāte, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, permanēre
quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre māllent. Omnī 5
ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā,
commūnem lēgātiōnem ad P. Crassum mittunt, sī velit
suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar classem parat ad eōs subigendōs.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus,
quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī
in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex
prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī
iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prī- 2
mum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

3 Venetī reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cōgnitō Caesaris ad-
ventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent,
intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs
sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et
in vincula coniectōs, prō māgnitūdine perīculī bellum
parāre et māximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent,
prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc māiōre spē, quod multum
4 nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa
aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam
5 locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs
exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē
6 morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; āc iam ut omnia contrā
opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse;
Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium neque
eōrum locōrum ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs,
7 īnsulās nōvisse; āc longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in
conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō
8 Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs, oppida mūni-
unt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in
Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōn-
9 stābat, quam plūrimās possunt cōgunt. Sōciōs sibi ad
id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs,
Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs, āscīscunt: auxilia ex
Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā
ostendimus, sed tamen Caesarem multa ad id bellum
2 incitābant: iniūriae retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum,
rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus,
tot cīvitātum coniūrātiō, in prīmīs, nē hāc parte neglēctā
3 reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque
cum intellegeret omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre

et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, prius quam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi āc lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

11. Itaque T. Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī
proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huīc 2
mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō
contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Gallīs arcessītī
dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur,
prohibeat. P. Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII 3
et māgnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī
iubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur
āc tantae nātiōnēs coniungantur. Q. Titūrium Sabīnum 4
lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas
Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. D. 5
Brūtum adulēscentem clāssī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex
Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre iūsserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum posset, in Venetōs proficīscī iubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

Oppidōrum nāviumque Venetōrum dēscrīptiō.

12. Erant ēius modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in
extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum
habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod [bis]
accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod
rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita 2
utrāque rē oppidōrum oppūgnātiō impediēbātur; āc sī quandō māgnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere āc mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, dēspērāre fortūnīs suīs coeperant, māgnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cūius reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua

dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant:
ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant.
3 Haec eō facilius māgnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod
nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque
erat vāstō atque apertō marī, māgnīs aestibus, rārīs āc
prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae
armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam
nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada āc dēcēssum aestūs
2 excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item
puppēs ad māgnitūdinem fluctuum tempestātumque accom-
3 modātae, nāvēs tōtae factae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim
et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in
altitūdinem trabibus cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis
crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae;
4 pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, sīve propter
inopiam līnī atque ēius ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod
est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempestātēs Ōceanī
tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī āc tanta onera
nāvium rēgī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.
5 Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae clāssī ēius modī congressus erat,
ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua
prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra
6 et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō
nocēre poterant (tanta in iīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque
propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē
7 causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat,
ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et
tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius
et ab aestū relictae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum
rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Venetī nāvālī proeliō dēvictī sē dēdunt, et sub corōnā vēnduntur.

14. Complūribus expūgnātīs oppidīs, Caesar, ubi intel-
lēxit frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam
captīs oppidīs reprimī neque iīs nocērī posse, statuit
exspectandam clāssem. Quae ubi convēnit āc prīmum 2
ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum parātis-
simae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae profectae
ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, 3
quī clāssī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque,
quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid
agerent aut quam ratiōnem pūgnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō 4
enim nocērī nōn posse cōgnōverant; turribus autem
excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus
superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla
adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent. Ūna 5
erat māgnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs prae-
acūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī fōrmā
mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad 6
mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nā-
vigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs 7
antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gal-
licīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armāmentīsque cōnsisteret,
hīs ēreptīs, omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēriperētur.
Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī 8
mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōn-
spectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut
nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset: omnēs enim 9
collēs āc loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus
in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

15. Dēiectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae
āc ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trān-
2 scendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam
barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expūgnātīs complūribus
nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā
3 salūtem petere contendērunt. Āc iam conversīs in eam
partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia
āc tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent.
4 Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum māximē
fuit opportūna: nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expūgnā-
vērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū
ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque
ad sōlis occāsum pūgnārētur.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae
2 maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventūs,
omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsiliī
aut dīgnitātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum nāvium quod
3 ubique fuerat in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs,
reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum
oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia
4 Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindi-
candum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus
ā barbarīs iūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī
senātū necātō, reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

III. BELLUM VENELLORUM.

CC. 17–19.

Sabīnus, lēgātus Caesaris, Venellōs superat.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Q. Titūrius Sabīnus
cum iīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellō-

rum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx āc summam 2
imperiī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēce-
rant, ex quibus exercitum māgnāsque cōpiās coēgerat;
atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque 3
senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant,
portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce coniūnxērunt:
māgnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā per- 4
ditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs
praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō
labōre sēvocābat. Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō 5
castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum
mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdiēque prōductīs cōpiīs
pūgnandī potestātem faceret, ut iam nōn sōlum hostibus
in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum
mīlitum vōcibus nōn nihil carperētur; tantamque opīni- 6
ōnem timōris praebuit, ut iam ad vāllum castrōrum
hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod 7
cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente,
quī summam imperiī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut oppor-
tūnitāte aliquā datā lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīsti-
mābat.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris idōneum quendam
hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex iīs, quōs auxiliī
causā sēcum habēbat. Huīc māgnīs praemiīs pollicitā- 2
tiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid
fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, 3
timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse
Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet neque longius abesse 4
quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum
ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxiliī ferendī causā proficīscātur.
Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem 5

negōtiī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse, ad castra īrī
3 oportēre. Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortāban-
tur: superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōn-
fīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cuī reī parum dīligenter
ab iīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē
7 libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus
adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex
conciliō dīmittunt, quam ab iīs sit concēssum, arma
8 utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concēssā
laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque col-
lēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra
pergunt.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō
acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc māgnō cursū con-
tendērunt, ut quam minimum spatiī ad sē colligendōs
armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnē-
2 runt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat.
Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera,
3 subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī iubet. Factum est
opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā āc dēfatīgātiōne,
virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pūgnārum exercitātiōne,
ut nē prīmum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent āc
4 statim terga verterent. Quōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs
nostrī cōnsecūtī māgnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt;
reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāse-
5 rant, relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pūgnā
Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar est certior factus,
6 cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam
ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer āc prōmptus est
animus, sīc mollis āc minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs
ferendās mēns eōrum est.

IV. CRASSI IN AQUITANIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 20–27.

Sōtiātēs ā Crassō vincuntur.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore P. Crassus, cum in Aquī-
tāniam pervēnisset, quae [pars], ut ante dictum est, et
regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā
parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in iīs locīs
sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucīs ante annīs L. Valerius
Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset,
atque unde L. Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs pro-
fūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intel-
legēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitā- 2
tūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā
et Carcarsōne et Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs Galliae
prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs,
in Sōtiātium fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūius adventū 3
cōgnitō, Sōtiātēs māgnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō
plūrimum valēbant, in itinere āgmen nostrum adortī prī-
mum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde equitātū suō 4
pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs subitō pedestrēs cōpiās,
quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt.
Hī nostrōs disiectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

21. Pūgnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs
superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītā-
niae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine
imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce
efficere possent, perspicī cuperent: tandem cōnfectī vul-
neribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum māgnō numerō 2
interfectō, Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātium oppū-
gnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus vīneās turrēs-

3 que ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad
aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūius reī sunt longē perītissimī
Aquītānī, propter eā quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae
sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus
prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt
sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā
arma trādere iūssī faciunt.

22. Atque in eam rem omnium nostrōrum intentīs ani-
mīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperiī
tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī soldūriōs appellant,
2 quōrum haec est condiciō, ut omnibus in vītā commodīs
ūnā cum iīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī
quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant
3 aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant; neque adhūc hominum
memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūius
4 sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, morī recūsāret: cum hīs Adia-
tunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus clāmōre ab eā parte
mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent
vehementerque ibi pūgnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum
tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō
impetrāvit.

Crassus aliās nātiōnēs aggreditur.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fīnēs Vocā-
2 tium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī
commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum
paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expūgnātum cōg-
nōverant, lēgātōs quoque versus dīmittere, coniūrāre,
3 obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur
etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispā-
niae fīnitimae Aquītāniae: inde auxilia ducēsque arces-

suntur. Quōrum adventū māgnā cum auctōritāte et 4
māgnā [cum] hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnan-
tur. Ducēs vērō iī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Q. Sertōriō 5
omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris
habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī 6
loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs inter-
clūdere īnstituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit suās 7
cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et
vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidiī relinquere,
ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeā-
tumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī,
nōn cunctandum exīstimāvit, quīn pūgnā dēcertāret.
Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā ubi omnēs idem sentīre 8
intellēxit, posterum diem pūgnae cōnstituit.

24. Prīmā lūce, prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs duplicī aciē
īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem cōniectīs, quid hostēs
cōnsiliī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitū- 2
dinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum
sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse
arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine
vulnere victōriā potīrī; et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmen- 3
tāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in
āgmine et sub sarcinīs īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitā-
bant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmā- 4
nōrum cōpiīs sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā, 5
Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris
hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pūgnandum effēcis-
sent, atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius
nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs
omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs

coniectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent,
auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pūgnam nōn multum Crassus
cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs et ad ag-
gerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem
pūgnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter
āc nōn timidē pūgnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre
2 missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs circumitīs hostium
castrīs Crassō renūntiāvērunt nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab
decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut māgnīs
praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī
2 velit ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, dēvectīs iīs cohor-
tibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relictae intrītae ab labōre
erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium
castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad
pūgnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnī-
3 tiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium
castrīs cōnstitērunt, quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid
4 reī gererētur, cōgnōscī posset. Tum vērō clāmōre ab eā
parte audītō nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque
in spē victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impūgnāre
5 coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omni-
bus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem
6 petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs
cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā
Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte
relictā, multā nocte sē in castra recipit.

Māxima pars Aquītāniae in dēditiōnem accipitur.

27. Hāc audītā pūgnā, māxima pars Aqu¯tāniae sēsē
Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ūltrō mīsit; quō in numerō

fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiānii, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ūltimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod 2
hiems suberat, id facere neglēxērunt.

V. EXPEDITIO CAESARIS IN MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE.

cc. 28–29.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta iam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne āc reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant māximās nātiōnēs, quae 2
proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās āc palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum 3
Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dīspersīs in opere nostrīs subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt 4
eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et complūribus interfectīs longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte 2
māgnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum iam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī

dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ēius modī sunt tempestātēs
cōnsecūtae, utī opus necessāriō intermitterētur et conti-
nuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī
3 nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs
aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in
Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae
proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

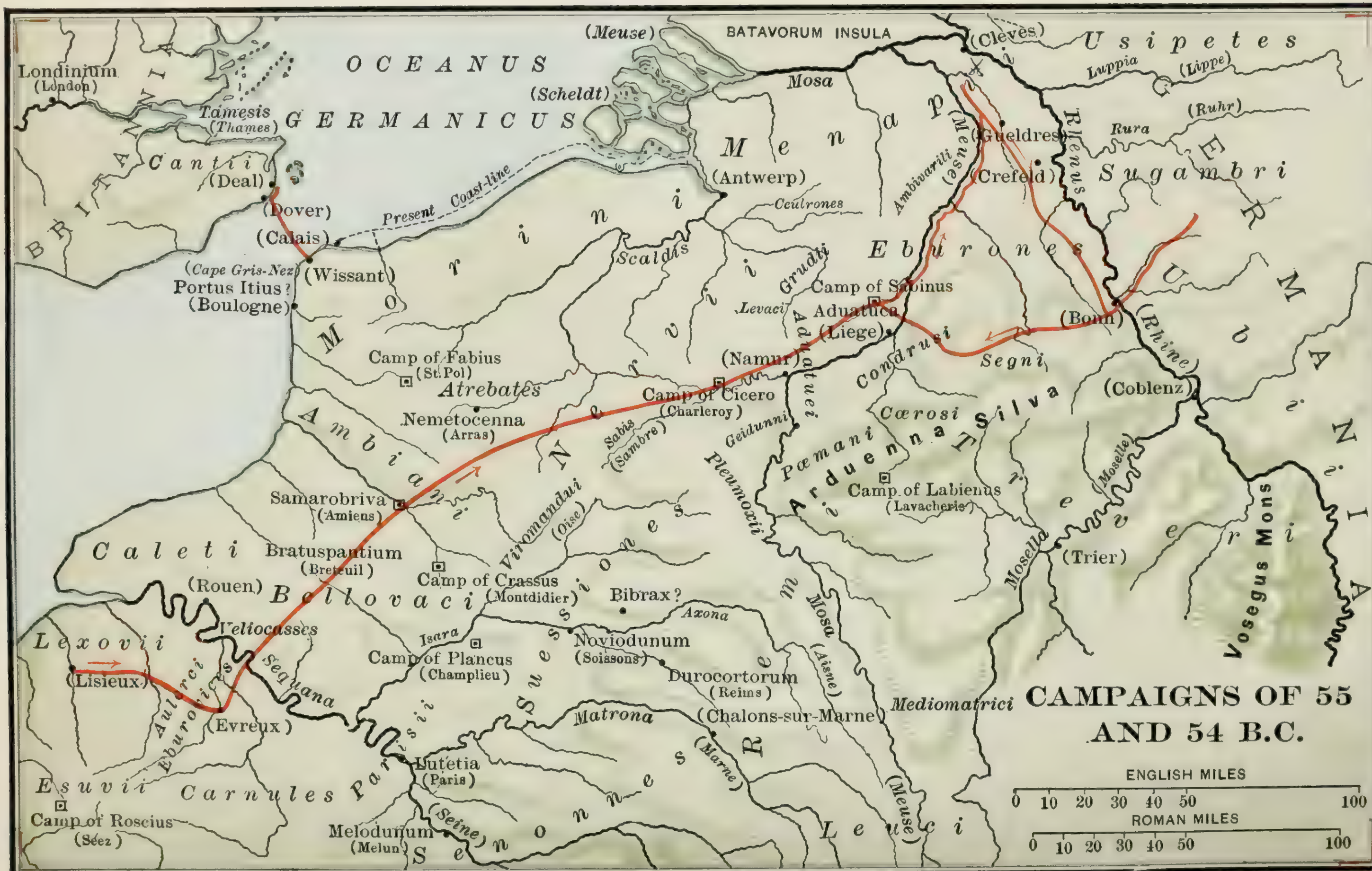
COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

I. BELLUM GERMANORUM.

CC. I–15.

Usipetēs et Tencterī Germānī in Galliam trānseunt, Menapiōs opprimunt.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn.
Pompēiō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et
item Tencterī māgnā [cum] multitūdine hominum flū-
men Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus
īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs 2
annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā pro-
hibēbantur. Suēbōrum gēns est longē māxima et bel- 3
licōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs 4
habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia
armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī,
quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in 5
vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc 6
neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur.
Sed prīvātī āc sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque 7
longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet.
Neque multum frūmentō, sed māximam partem lacte 8
atque pecore vīvunt multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus;
quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et 9
lībertāte vītae, quod ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut dīsciplīnā
assuēfactī nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et



CAMPAIGNS OF 55 AND 54 B.C.

vīrēs alit et immānī corporum māgnitūdine hominēs
10 efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut
locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent
quicquam, quārum propter exiguitātem māgna est cor-
poris pars aperta, et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō
cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem
2 ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam iūmentīs, qui-
bus māximē Gallī dēlectantur, quaeque impēnsō parant
pretiō, [Germānī] importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt
apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā
3 exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Eque-
stribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt āc pedibus proe-
liantur, equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcē-
4 runt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque
eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur
5 quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephip-
6 piātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum
omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn sinunt, quod eā rē ad
labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī
arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē māximam putant esse laudem, quam lātis-
simē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs: hāc rē sīgnificārī,
māgnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn
2 posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia
3 passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram
partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque
flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum; iī paulō, quamquam
sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea
quod Rhēnum attingunt, multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs
ventitant, et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt

mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī multīs saepe bellīs 4
expertī propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis
fīnibus expellere nōn potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi
fēcērunt āc multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs
suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim susti-
nuērunt, ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs
Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt:
quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rī- 2
pam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tan-
tae multitūdinis adventū perterritī, ex iīs aedificiīs, quae 3
trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāverant et cis Rhēnum
dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī 4
omnia expertī cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam
nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter cūstōdiās Menapi-
ōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulā-
vērunt et trīduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque,
omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs 5
inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germā- 6
nōrum discēssū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū
trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs inter- 7
fectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, prius quam ea pars
Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret,
flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs
occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs
aluērunt.

Caesar Germānīs obviam exercitum dūcit; eōrum lēgātiō.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem
Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs
et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committen-

2 dum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis,
utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid
quisque eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cōgnōverit,
quaerant et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat,
quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cōgnō-
3 verint, prōnūntiāre cōgat. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus
permōtī, dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum
eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmō-
ribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta
respondeant.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cōgnitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō
occurreret, mātūrius quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum pro-
2 ficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore sūspicātus erat,
3 facta cōgnōvit: missās legātiōnēs ab nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus
ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent,
4 omniaque, quae pōstulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē
adductī Germānī lātius iam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburō-
num et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, per-
5 vēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs, Caesar ea, quae
cōgnōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque
animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō,
bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs,
iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs
2 audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset,
3 lēgātī ab iīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Ger-
mānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre,
neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs conten-
dant, quod Germānōrūm cōnsuētūdō sit ā māiōribus
trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque
dēprecārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ēiectōs

domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse iīs ūtilēs 4
esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs
tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs con- 5
cēdere, quibus nē diī quidem immortālēs parēs esse
possint: reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem
nōn superāre possint.

8. Ad haec Caesar quae vīsum est respondit; sed
exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam
esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse 2
quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre;
neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae prae-
sertim multitūdinī sine iniūriā possint; sed licēre, sī 3
velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere, quōrum sint lēgātī
apud sē et dē Suēbōrum iniūriīs querantur et ā sē
auxilium petant: hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē
dēlīberātā post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversūrōs:
intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id 2
quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cōgnōverat 3
enim māgnam partem equitātūs ab iīs aliquot diēbus
ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs
trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ēius
reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Mosae et Rhēnī flūminum dēscrīptiō.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus
Lingonum, et parte quādam ex Rhēnō receptā, quae
appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque 2
longius inde mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit.
Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, 3
et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum,

Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum
4 citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquāvit, in plūrēs
diffluit partēs, multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs (quā-
rum pars māgna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur,
5 ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere
exīstimantur) multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Victī Germānī trāns Rhēnum sē recipiunt.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII
mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī
revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī māgnopere, nē
2 longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impe-
trāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen ante-
cēssissent, praemitteret eōsque pūgnā prohibēret, sibique
3 ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī: quōrum
sī prīncipēs āc senātus sibi iūre iūrandō fidem fēcisset,
eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs osten-
dēbant: ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.
4 Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur,
ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent,
reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum
5 quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcēssūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc
posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum
6 pōstulātīs cōgnōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum
omnī equitātū antecēsserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē
hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, susti-
nērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accēssisset.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexē-
runt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī
nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod iī, quī
frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redie-

rant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō
ante ā Caesare discēsserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab
hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt;
rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsilu- 2
ērunt, suffossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dēiectīs
reliquōs in fugam coniēcērunt atque ita perterritōs
ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōn-
spectum āgminis nostrī vēnissent. In eō proeliō ex 3
equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā,
in hīs vir fortissimus Pīsō Aquītānus amplissimō genere 4
nātus, cūius avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat
amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī 5
interclūsō ā hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō
ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dēiectus, quoad potuit, fortis-
simē restitit; cum circumventus multīs vulneribus accep- 6
tīs cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī iam proeliō excēsserat,
procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit
atque interfectus est.

13. Hōc factō proeliō, Caesar neque iam sibi lēgātōs
audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab
iīs, quī per dolum atque īnsidiās petītā pāce ūltrō bellum
intulissent: exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augē- 2
rentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse
iūdicābat, et cōgnitā Gallōrum īnfīrmitāte, quantum iam 3
apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnse-
cūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatiī
dandum exīstimābat. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō 4
cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem
pūgnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod
postrīdiē ēius diēī māne eādem et simulātiōne et perfi-
diā ūsī Germānī frequentēs omnibus prīncipibus māiōri-

5 busque nātū adhibitīs ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul,
ut dīcēbātur, pūrgandī suī causā, quod contrā, atque
esset dictum et ipsī petissent, proelium prīdiē commīsis-
sent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impe-
6 trārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus illōs retinērī
iūssit: ipse ōmnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque,
quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, āgmen
subsequī iūssit.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter viii mīlium itinere
cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam quid
2 agerētur Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus
subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discēssū
suōrum, neque cōnsiliī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō
datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an
castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret.
3 Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū sīgnificārētur,
mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrū-
4 pērunt. Quō locō quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt,
paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedī-
5 mentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō
puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō
excēsserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim fugere coepit;
ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

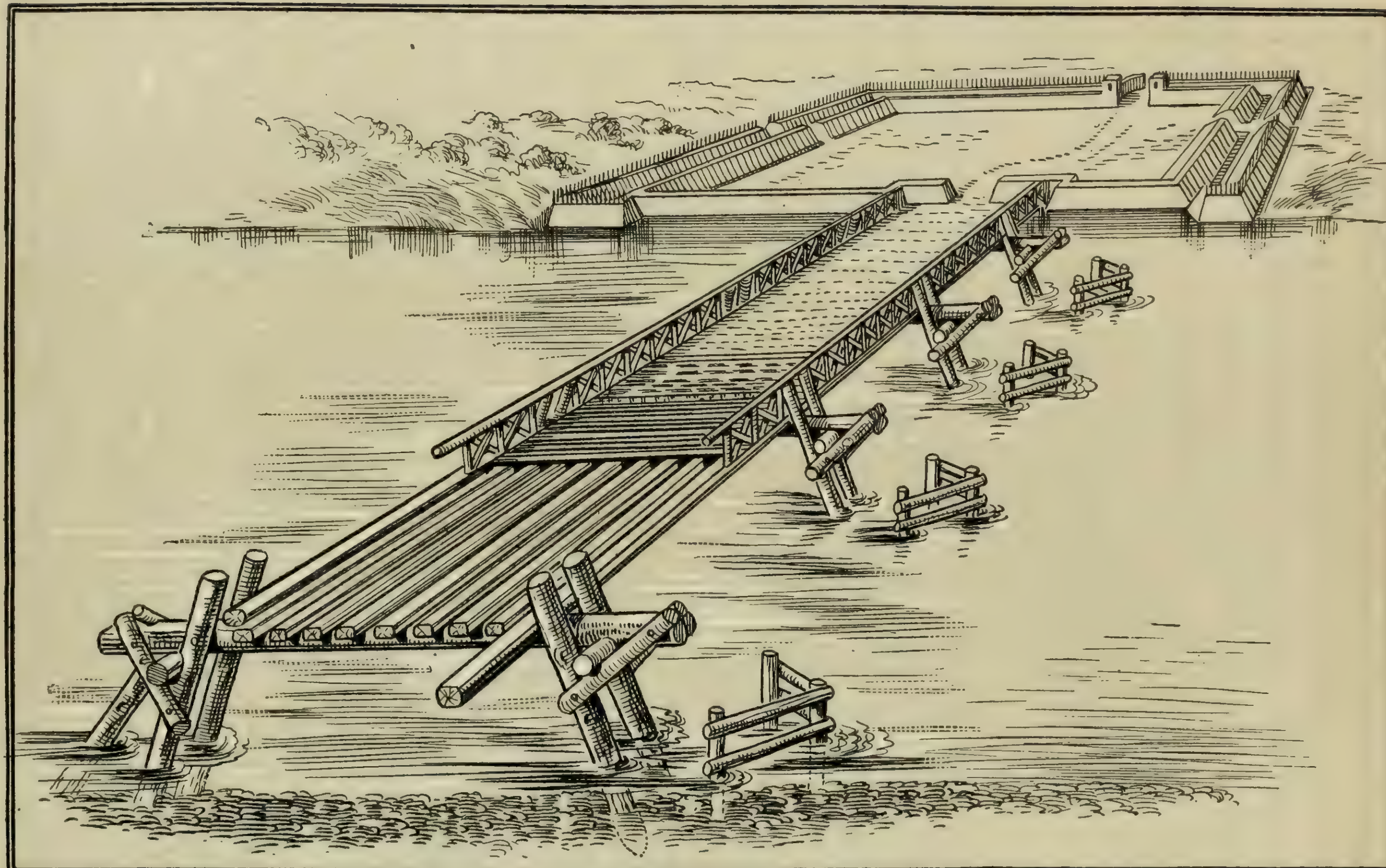
15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs
interficī vidērent, armīs abiectīs sīgnīsque mīlitāribus
2 relictīs sē ex castrīs ēiēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem
Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā,
māgnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitā-
vērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī
3 periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs
vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus

capitum ccccxxx mīlium fuisset, se in castra recēpērunt.
Caesar iīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem 4
fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum 5
agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt.
Hīs Caesar lībertātem concēssit.

II. CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM TRANSITUS.

cc. 16–19.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar
statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit
iūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī
ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit,
cum intellegerent et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exer-
citum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accēssit etiam, quod illa pars 2
equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā comme-
morāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trāns-
īsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns
Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum hīs
coniūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī 3
pōstulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent,
sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī Rōmānī imperium 4
Rhēnum fīnīre: sī sē invītō Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre
nōn aequum exīstimārēt, cūr suī quidquam esse imperiī
aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum pōstulāret? Ubiī autem, 5
quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant,
amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, māgnopere ōrābant,
ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premeren-
tur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblīcae prohibē- 6
rētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret: id sidi ad
auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tan- 7



THE BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

tum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ēius exercitūs, Ariovistō
pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ūltimās
Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī
8 Rōmānī tūtī esse possent. Nāvium māgnam cōpiam ad
trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum
trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum
esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dīgni-
2 tātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faci-
endī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem
altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut
aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat. Ratiōnem
pontis hanc īnstituit. Tīgna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum
3 ab īmō praeacūta dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis inter-
4 vāllō pedum duōrum inter sē iungēbat. Haec cum māchi-
nātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat fīstūcīsque adē-
gerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed
prōnē āc fāstīgātē ut secundum nātūram flūminis prōcum-
5 berent, iīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum iūncta in-
tervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim
6 atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utra-
que īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum
tīgnōrum iūnctūra dīstābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab ex-
7 trēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrā-
riam partem revinctīs tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea
rērum nātūra, ut, quō māior vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc
8 artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā iniectā
contexēbantur āc longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur;
9 āc nihilō setius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis
oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subiectae et cum omnī
10 opere coniūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item

suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sive
nāvēs dēiciendī operis causā essent ā barbarīs immissae,
hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī
nocērent.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat compor-
tārī, omnī opere effectō exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad 2
utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō, in fīnēs
Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus civitā- 3
tibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīci-
tiam petentibus līberāliter respondit obsidēsque ad sē
addūcī iubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns 4
īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā, hortantibus iīs, quōs
ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus
suīs excēsserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in
sōlitūdinem āc silvās abdiderant.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omni-
bus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in
fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit, atque iīs auxilium suum pollicitus,
sī ā Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab hīs cōgnōvit: Suēbōs, 2
posteā quam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent,
mōre suō conciliō habitō, nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmī-
sisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque
omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent, atque omnēs, quī arma ferre
possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent: hunc esse dēlēctum 3
medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent: hīc
Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōn-
stituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus iīs rēbus 4
cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōn-
stituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcī-
scerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō
xviii trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad

ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

III. BELLUM BRITANNICUM.

cc. 20–36.

Lītoribus Britanniae explōrātīs Caesar clāssem ad trānsitum cōgit.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā, Caesar, etsī in hīs
locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae
sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit,
quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde
2 subministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus [annī] ad
bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen māgnō sibi ūsuī fore
arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum
perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cōgnōvisset; quae omnia
3 ferē Gallīs erant incōgnita. Neque enim temerē praeter
mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque hīs ipsīs quicquam
praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt
4 contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique
mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae māgnitūdō, neque
quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum
bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī
essent ad māiōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs,
reperīre poterat.

21. Ad haec cōgnōscenda, prius quam perīculum faceret,
idōneum esse arbitrātus C. Volusēnum cum nāvī longā
2 praemittit. Huīc mandat, ut explōrātīs omnibus rēbus ad
3 sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in
Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britan-
4 niam trāiectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus
et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum fēcerat

clāssem, iubet convenīre. Interim cōnsiliō ēius cōgnitō 5
et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus
īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur
obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre.
Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā 6
sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit, et cum iīs ūnā
Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōn- 7
stituerat, cūius et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem
sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur, cūiusque auctōritās in hīs
regiōnibus māgnī habēbātur, mittit. Huīc imperat, quās 8
possit, adeat cīvitātēs hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem
sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet. Volusēnus 9
perspectīs regiōnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit
quī nāvī ēgredī āc sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret,
quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur quaeque ibi perspexisset
renūntiat.

Morinōs, unde trāiectus in Britanniam brevissimus est, in fidem recipit.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā
morātur, ex māgnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī
vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent,
quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī
bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset,
factūrōs pollicerentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis oportūnē 2
accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relin-
quere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus
facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupā-
tiōnēs Britanniae antepōnendās iūdicābat, māgnum iīs
numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs, eōs in fidem 3
recēpit. Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs [cōntrāc-

tīsque], quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs
exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat,
4 quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdē-
bant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus
passuum octō ventō tenēbantur, quō minus in eundem
5 portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reli-
quum exercitum Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae
lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā
6 quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit;
Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis
esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre iūssit.

Caesar in īnsulam trāicit.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigan-
dum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā solvit equitēsque in
ūlteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē se-
2 quī iūssit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrā-
tum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus
Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās
3 hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūius locī haec erat
nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur,
4 utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc
ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus,
dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in
5 ancorīs exspectāvit. Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum
convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cōgnōvisset et quae fierī
vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, māximē
ut maritimae rēs pōstulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstā-
bilem mōtum habērent, ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs
6 rēs ab iīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et
aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō sīgnō et sub-

lātīs ancorīs, circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō
prōgressus, apertō āc plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

Britannōs in fugam vertit. Eōrum dēditiō.

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cōgnitō, praemissō
equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs
ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus
ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, 2
quod nāvēs propter māgnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī
nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, īgnōtīs locīs, impedītīs
manibus, māgnō et gravī onere armōrum pressīs, simul
et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in fluctibus cōnsistendum
et cum hostibus erat pūgnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut 3
paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs,
nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla cōnicerent et equōs īnsuēfac-
tōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūius 4
omnīnō generis pūgnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte
āc studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtē-
bantur.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum
et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum
expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs
incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde
fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī āc submovērī
iūssit; quae rēs māgnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium 2
figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum
permōtī, barbarī cōnstitērunt āc paulum etiam pedem
rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, māximē 3
propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam
ferēbat, obtēstātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret,
'Dēsilīte,' inquit, 'commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hosti-



From Gurlitt.

CAESAR'S LANDING IN BRITAIN.

bus prōdere: ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperā-
4 tōrī officium praestiterō.' Hōc cum vōce māgnā dīxisset,
sē ex nāvī prōiēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit.
5 Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus ad-
6 mitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex
proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus
appropinquāvērunt.

26. Pūgnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen,
quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque
sīgna subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibus-
cumque sīgnīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, māgnopere per-
2 turbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex
lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexe-
3 rant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs
circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla
4 cōniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās
longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus
complērī iūssit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsi-
5 dia submittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs
omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs
in fugam dedērunt, neque longius prōsequī potuērunt,
quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn
potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī
dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā
recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt;
obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset factūrōs sēsē pollicitī
2 sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem
suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam prae-
3 missum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris
modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque

in vincula cōniēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et
in petendā pāce ēius reī culpam in multitūdinem contu- 4
lērunt et propter imprūdentiam ut īgnōscerētur petīvē-
runt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ūltrō in continentem 5
lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā
intulissent, īgnōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque
imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem 6
ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē
datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs 7
iūssērunt, prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitā-
tēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

Clāsse Rōmānā tempestāte afflīctā Britannī coniūrant.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum,
quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus
suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex
superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appro- 2
pinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta
tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla eārum cursum tenēre
posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur,
aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis
occāsum, māgnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae 3
tamen ancorīs iactīs cum fluctibus complērentur, neces-
sāriō adversā nocte in altum provectae continentem
petiērunt.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs
maritimōs aestūs māximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit,
nostrīsque id erat incōgnitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās 2
nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrā-
verat quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat,
et onerāriās quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās

afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī
3 aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs reli-
quae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs
āmissīs ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, māgna, id quod necesse
erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est.
4 Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent,
et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī,
et, quod omnibus cōnstābat, hiemārī in Galliā oportēre,
frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

30. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs, prīncipēs Britanniae, quī
post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī,
cum equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse
intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exi-
guitāte cōgnōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra,
quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat,
2 optimum factū esse dūxērunt rebelliōne factā frūmentō
commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prō-
dūcere, quod, hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs, nēminem
posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum
3 cōnfīdēbant. Itaque, rūrsus coniūrātiōne factā, paulātim
ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere
coepērunt.

Caesar nāvēs reficit.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cōgnōverat,
tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs
dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, sūspicābātur.
2 Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et
frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et quae
gravissimē afflīctae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque
aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et quae ad eās rēs
3 erant ūsuī ex continentī comparārī iubēbat. Itaque, cum

summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, duodecim nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī commodē posset, effēcit.

Britannī proeliō pulsī fugiunt.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī sūspiciōne interpositā, cum pars hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, iī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt pulverem māiōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, sūspicātus, aliquid 2 novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsiliī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī iūssit. Cum paulō longius ā 3 castrīs prōcēssisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et, cōnfertā legiōne, ex omnibus partibus tēla cōnicī animādvertit. Nam quod omnī ex reliquīs parti- 4 bus dēmessō frūmentō pars ūna erat reliqua, sūspicātī hostēs hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs noctū in silvīs dēlituerant: tum dīspersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs 5 subitō adortī paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pūgnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla cōniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae 2 interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs

collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur,
3 expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem
equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant, āc
tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in
dēclīvī āc praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī
moderārī āc flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere et in
iugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere
cōnsuērint.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pūgnae
tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit: namque
ēius adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recē-
2 pērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et committen-
dum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus suō sē locō
continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs
3 redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs,
4 quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discēssērunt. Secūtae sunt
continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs
in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pūgnā prohibērent.
5 Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt
paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt
et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī
līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent,
6 dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter māgnā multitū-
dine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat,
fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum
effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Com-
mius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportā-
2 verat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō
proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre
3 nōn potuērunt āc terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō

secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex iīs occīdērunt, deindē omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs sē in castra recēpērunt.

Obsidibus acceptīs Caesar in Galliam redit.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē
pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante 2
imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī
iūssit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctiī īnfīrmīs nāvibus
hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse 3
idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem
nāvēs solvit: quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem per- 4
vēnērunt; sed ex iīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs
reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

IV. MORINOS MENAPIOSQUE REBELLANTES CAESAR SUBIGIT. SUPPLICATIO A SENATU DECRETA.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs cir-
citer trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs
Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē
praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita māgnō suōrum numerō
circumstetērunt āc, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere
iūssērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter 2
ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt.
Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs
auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium 3
sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē
pūgnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex
hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in 4
cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abiectīs armīs terga vertērunt
māgnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

38. Caesar posterō diē T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum iīs
legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs, quī
2 rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs
palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō perfugiō
superiōre annō erant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem La-
3 biēnī vēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī
in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum
agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs, aedificiīs incēnsīs, quod
Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad
4 Caesarem recēpērunt. Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum
hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britan-
5 niā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt. Hīs rēbus
gestīs ex lītterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā
senātū dēcrēta est.

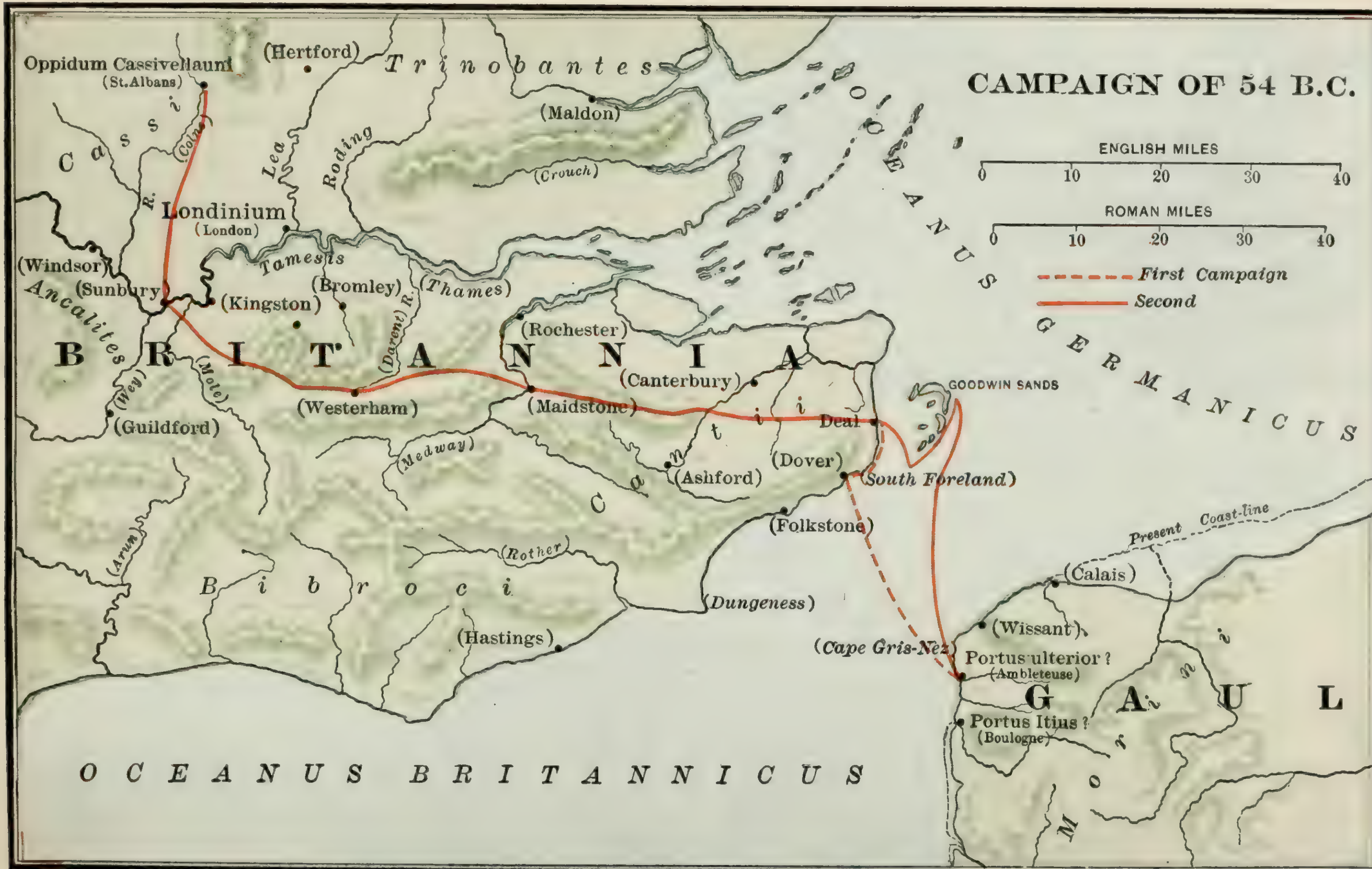
COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS.

I. CAESARIS ILLYRICUM ITER.

C. I.

Pācātiō Pīrūstārum.

1. L. Domitiō, Ap. Claudiō cōnsulibus, discēdēns ab
hībernīs Caesar in Ītaliam, ut quotannīs facere cōnsu-
ērat, lēgātīs imperat, quōs legiōnibus praefēcerat, utī
quam plūrimās possent hieme nāvēs aedificandās vete-
rēsque reficiendās cūrent. Eārum modum fōrmamque
dēmōnstrat. Ad celeritātem onerandī subductiōnēsque 2
paulō facit humiliōrēs, quam quibus in nostrō marī ūtī
cōnsuēvimus, atque id eō magis, quod propter crēbrās
commūtātiōnēs aestuum minus māgnōs ibi fluctūs fi-
erī cōgnōverat, ad onera āc multitūdinem iūmentōrum
trānsportandam paulō lātiōrēs, quam quibus in reliquīs
ūtimur maribus. Hās omnēs āctuāriās imperat fierī, 3
quam ad rem multum humilitās adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt 4
ūsuī ad armandās nāvēs, ex Hispāniā apportārī iubet.
Ipse, conventibus Galliae citeriōris perāctīs, in Īllyricum 5
proficīscitur, quod ā Pīrūstīs fīnitimam partem prōvinciae
incursiōnibus vāstārī audiēbat. Eō cum vēnisset, cīvitā- 6
tibus mīlitēs imperat certumque in locum convenīre iubet.
Quā rē nūntiātā, Pīrūstae lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, quī 7
doceant nihil eārum rērum pūblicō factum cōnsiliō,
sēsēque parātōs esse dēmōnstrent omnibus ratiōnibus dē


CAMPAIGN OF 54 B.C.
ENGLISH MILES
0 10 20 30 40
ROMAN MILES
0 10 20 30 40
First Campaign
Second
Oppidum Cassivellauni
(St. Albans)
(Hertford)
Trinobantes
Cassi
Colne
R.
Lea
Roding
(Maldon)
(Crouch)
Londinium
(London)
Tamesis
(Thames)
(Windsor)
(Sunbury)
Ancalites
(Kingston)
(Bromley)
(Darent) R.
(Rochester)
BRITANNIA
(Canterbury)
(Wey)
(Mole)
(Guildford)
(Westerham)
(Maidstone)
Cantii
Deal
(Medway)
(Ashford)
(Dover)
(South Foreland)
GOODWIN SANDS
OCEANUS GERMANICUS
(Folkstone)
(Arun)
(Rother)
Bibroci
(Hastings)
(Dungeness)
Present Coast-line
(Calais)
(Wissant)
(Cape Gris-Nez)
Portus ulterior ?
(Ambleteuse)
Portus Itius ?
(Boulogne)
GAUL
Morini
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS

8 iniūriīs satis facere. Perceptā ōrātiōne eōrum, Caesar
obsidēs imperat eōsque ad certam diem addūcī iubet; nisi
ita fēcerint, sēsē bellō cīvitātem persecūtūrum dēmōn-
9 strat. Iīs ad diem adductīs ut imperāverat, arbitrōs inter
cīvitātēs dat quī lītem aestiment poenamque cōnstituant.

II. SECUNDA CAESARIS IN BRITANNIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 2–23.

Trēverōrum contentiōnēs compōnuntur.

2. Hīs cōnfectīs rēbus conventibusque perāctīs, in cite-
riōrem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum profi-
2 cīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, circumitīs omnibus hībernīs,
singulārī mīlitum studiō in summā omnium rērum inopiā
circiter sexcentās ēius generis, cūius suprā dēmōnstrā-
vimus, nāvēs et longās XXVIII invēnit īnstrūctās neque
multum abesse ab eō, quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint.
3 Collaudātīs mīlitibus atque iīs, quī negōtiō praefuerant,
quid fierī velit, ostendit atque omnēs ad portum Itium
convenīre iubet, quō ex portū commodissimum in Britan-
niam trāiectum esse cōgnōverat, circiter mīlium passuum
XXX trānsmissum ā continentī; huīc reī quod satis esse
4 vīsum est mīlitum relinquit. Ipse cum legiōnibus expe-
dītīs IV et equitibus DCCC in fīnēs Trēverōrum proficīscitur,
quod hī neque ad concilia veniēbant neque imperiō parē-
bant Germānōsque Trānsrhēnānōs sollicitāre dīcēbantur.

3. Haec cīvitās longē plūrimum tōtīus Galliae equitātū
valet māgnāsque habet cōpiās peditum, Rhēnumque, ut
2 suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, tangit. In eā cīvitāte duo dē
prīncipātū inter sē contendēbant, Indutiomārus et Cinge-
3 torīx; ex quibus alter, simul atque dē Caesaris legiōnum-

que adventū cōgnitum est, ad eum vēnit, sē suōsque
omnēs in officiō futūrōs neque ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī
dēfectūrōs cōnfīrmāvit quaeque in Trēverīs gererentur
ostendit. At Indutiomārus equitātum peditātumque cō- 4
gere iīsque, quī per aetātem in armīs esse nōn poterant,
in silvam Arduennam abditīs, quae ingentī māgnitūdine
per mediōs fīnēs Trēverōrum ā flūmine Rhēnō ad initium
Rēmōrum pertinet, bellum parāre īnstituit. Sed posteā 5
quam nōn nūllī prīncipēs ex eā cīvitāte, et auctōritāte
Cingetorīgis adductī et adventū nostrī exercitūs perterritī,
ad Caesarem vēnērunt et dē suīs prīvātīs rēbus ab eō
petere coepērunt, quoniam cīvitātī cōnsulere nōn possent,
veritus nē ab omnibus dēsererētur, lēgātōs ad Caesarem
mittit: Sēsē idcirco ab suīs discēdere atque ad eum venīre 6
nōluisse, quō facilius cīvitātem in officiō continēret, nē
omnis nōbilitātis discēssū plēbs propter imprūdentiam
lāberētur: itaque cīvitātem in suā potestāte esse, sēque, 7
sī Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra ventūrum, et suās
cīvitātisque fortūnās ēius fideī permissūrum.

4. Caesar, etsī intellegēbat, quā dē causā ea dīcerentur,
quaeque eum rēs ab īnstitūtō cōnsiliō dēterrēret, tamen,
nē aestātem in Trēverīs cōnsūmere cōgerētur, omnibus
rēbus ad Britannicum bellum comparātīs, Indutiomārum
ad sē cum ducentīs obsidibus venīre iūssit. Hīs adductīs, 2
in iīs fīliō propinquīsque ēius omnibus, quōs nōminātim
ēvocāverat, cōnsolātus Indutiomārum hortātusque est,
utī in officiō manēret; nihilō tamen sētius prīncipibus 3
Trēverōrum ad sē convocātīs hōs singillātim Cingetorīgī
conciliāvit; quod cum meritō ēius ab sē fierī intellegēbat,
tum māgnī interesse arbitrābātur ēius auctōritātem inter
suōs quam plūrimum valēre, cūius tam ēgregiam in sē

4 voluntātem perspexisset. Id factum graviter tulit Indu-
tiomārus, [suam grātiam inter suōs minuī], et quī iam
ante inimīcō in nōs animō fuisset, multō gravius hōc
dolōre exārsit.

Caesar cōpiās ad portum Itium colligit; Dumnorīx īnfidus ā fugā revocātus, resistēns interficitur.

5. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, Caesar ad portum Itium cum
2 legiōnibus pervenit. Ibi cōgnōscit LX nāvēs, quae in
Meldīs factae erant, tempestāte rēiectās cursum tenēre
nōn potuisse atque eōdem, unde erant profectae, revertisse;
reliquās parātās ad nāvigandum atque omnibus rēbus
3 īnstrūctās invenit. Eōdem equitātus tōtīus Galliae convenit
numerō mīlia quattuor prīncipēsque ex omnibus cīvitāti-
4 bus; ex quibus perpaucōs, quōrum in sē fidem perspexerat,
relinquere in Galliā, reliquōs obsidum locō sēcum dūcere dē-
crēverat, quod cum ipse abesset mōtum Galliae verēbātur.

6. Erat ūnā cum cēterīs Dumnorīx Aeduus, dē quō ante
ā nōbīs dictum est. Hunc sēcum habēre in prīmīs cōn-
stituerat, quod eum cupidum rērum novārum, cupidum
imperiī, māgnī animī, māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis
2 cōgnōverat. Accēdēbat hūc, quod in conciliō Aeduōrum
Dumnorīx dīxerat sibi ā Caesare rēgnum cīvitātis dēferrī;
quod dictum Aeduī graviter ferēbant, neque recūsandī aut
dēprecandī causā lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittere audēbant.
3 Id factum ex suīs hospitibus Caesar cōgnōverat. Ille om-
nibus prīmō precibus petere contendit, ut in Galliā relin-
querētur, partim quod īnsuētus nāvigandī mare timēret,
4 partim quod religiōnibus impedīrī sēsē dīceret. Posteā
quam id obstinātē sibi negārī vīdit, omnī spē impetrandī
adēmptā, prīncipēs Galliae sollicitāre, sēvocāre singulōs

hortārīque coepit, utī in continentī remanērent; metū ter- 5
ritāre: nōn sine causā fierī, ut Gallia omnī nōbilitāte
spoliārētur; id esse cōnsilium Caesaris, ut, quōs in cōn-
spectū Galliae interficere verērētur, hōs omnēs in Bri-
tanniam trāductōs necāret; fidem reliquīs interpōnere, 6
iūs iūrandum pōscere, ut, quod esse ex ūsū Galliae
intellēxissent, commūnī cōnsiliō administrārent. Haec
ā complūribus ad Caesarem dēferēbantur.

7. Quā rē cōgnitā Caesar, quod tantum cīvitātī Ae-
duae dīgnitātis tribuēbat, coercendum atque dēterrendum,
quibuscumque rēbus posset, Dumnorīgem statuēbat; quod 2
longius ēius āmentiam prōgredī vidēbat, prōspiciendum,
nē quid sibi āc reī pūblicae nocēre posset. Itaque diēs 3
circiter xxv in eō locō commorātus, quod chōrus ventus
nāvigātiōnem impediēbat, quī māgnam partem omnis
temporis in hīs locīs flāre cōnsuēvit, dabat operam, ut
in officiō Dumnorīgem continēret, nihilō tamen sētius
omnia ēius cōnsilia cōgnōsceret; tandem idōneam nactus 4
tempestātem mīlitēs equitēsque cōnscendere nāvēs iubet.
At omnium impedītīs animīs, Dumnorīx cum equitibus 5
Aeduōrum ā castrīs īnsciente Caesare domum discēdere
coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar, intermissā profectiōne 6
atque omnibus rēbus postpositīs, māgnam partem equi-
tātūs ad eum īnsequendum mittit retrahīque imperat; sī 7
vim faciat neque pareat, interficī iubet, nihil hunc sē
absente prō sānō factūrum arbitrātus, quī praesentis im-
perium neglēxisset. Ille autem revocātus resistere āc sē 8
manū dēfendere suōrumque fidem implōrāre coepit saepe
clāmitāns līberum sē līberaeque esse cīvitātis. Illī, ut
erat imperātum, circumsistunt hominem atque interfi-
ciunt; at equitēs Aeduī ad Caesarem omnēs revertuntur.

Caesar in Britanniam exercitum trādūcit, fugatque Britannōs.

8. Hīs rēbus gestīs Labiēno in cōntinentī cum tribus
legiōnibus et equitum mīlibus duōbus relictō, ut portūs
tuerētur et reī frūmentāriae prōvidēret, quaeque in Gal-
liā gererentur cōgnōsceret cōnsiliumque prō tempore et
2 prō rē caperet, ipse cum quīnque legiōnibus et parī
numerō equitum, quem in continentī relinquēbat, ad sōlis
occāsum nāvēs solvit; et lenī Āfricō prōvectus, mediā
circiter nocte, ventō intermissō, cursum nōn tenuit, et
longius dēlātus aestū, ortā lūce sub sinistrā Britanniam
3 relictam cōnspexit. Tum rūrsus aestūs commūtātiōnem
secūtus rēmīs contendit, ut eam partem īnsulae caperet,
quā optimum esse ēgressum superiōre aestāte cōgnōverat.
4 Quā in rē admodum fuit mīlitum virtūs laudanda, quī
vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs, nōn intermissō rēmigandī
5 labōre, longārum nāvium cursum adaequārunt. Accēs-
sum est ad Britanniam omnibus nāvibus meridiāno ferē
6 tempore neque in eō locō hostis est vīsus; sed, ut posteā
Caesar ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, cum māgnae manūs eō con-
vēnissent, multitūdine nāvium perterritae, quae cum
annōtinīs prīvātīsque, quās suī quisque commodī causā
fēcerat, amplius octingentae ūnō erant vīsae tempore, ā
lītore discēsserant āc sē in superiōra loca abdiderant.

9. Caesar expositō exercitū et locō castrīs idōneō captō, ubi ex captīvīs cōgnōvit, quō in locō hostium cōpiae cōnsēdissent, cohortibus x ad mare relictīs et equitibus ccc, quī praesidiō nāvibus essent, dē tertiā vigiliā ad hostēs contendit eō minus veritus nāvibus, quod in lītore mollī atque apertō dēligātās ad ancorās relinquēbat. Eī prae-

sidiō nāvibusque Q. Ātrium praefēcit. Ipse noctū prō- 2
gressus mīlia passuum circiter xii hostium cōpiās cōnspi-
cātus est. Illī equitātū atque essedīs ad flūmen prōgressī 3
ex locō superiōre nostrōs prohibēre et proelium commit-
tere coepērunt. Repulsī ab equitātū sē in silvās abdidē- 4
runt, locum nanctī ēgregiē et nātūrā et opere mūnītum,
quem domesticī bellī, ut vidēbātur, causā iam ante prae-
parāverant; nam crēbrīs arboribus succīsīs omnēs intro- 5
itūs erant praeclūsī. Ipsī ex silvīs rārī prōpūgnābant 6
nostrōsque intrā mūnītiōnēs ingredī prohibēbant. At 7
mīlitēs legiōnis septimae tēstūdine factā et aggere ad
mūnītiōnēs adiectō locum cēpērunt eōsque ex silvīs expu-
lērunt paucīs vulneribus acceptīs. Sed eōs fugientēs 8
longius Caesar prōsequī vetuit, et quod locī nātūram īgnō-
rābat, et quod māgnā parte diēī consūmptā mūnītiōnī
castrōrum tempus relinquī volēbat.

Classis tempestāte afflīcta in lītore reficitur.

10. Postrīdiē ēius diēī māne tripertītō mīlitēs equitēs-
que in expedītiōnem mīsit, ut eōs, quī fūgerant, per-
sequerentur. Iīs aliquantum itineris prōgressīs, cum 2
iam extrēmī essent in prōspectū, equitēs ā Q. Ātriō ad
Caesarem vēnērunt, quī nūntiārent superiōre nocte
māximā coortā tempestāte prope omnēs nāvēs afflīctās
atque in lītus ēiectās esse, quod neque ancorae fūnēsque
sustinērent neque nautae gubernātōrēsque vim tem-
pestātis patī possent; itaque ex eō concursū nāvium
māgnum esse incommodum acceptum.

11. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs Caesar legiōnēs equitātumque
revocārī atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad nāvēs
revertitur: eadem ferē, quae ex nūntiīs [lītterīs] cō- 2

gnōverat, cōram perspicit, sīc ut āmissīs circiter XL
nāvibus reliquae tamen reficī posse māgnō negōtiō vidē-
3 rentur. Itaque ex legiōnibus fabrōs dēligit et ex con-
4 tinentī aliōs arcessī iubet; Labiēnō scrībit, ut, quam
plūrimās possit, iīs legiōnibus, quae sint apud eum, nāvēs
5 īnstituat. Ipse, etsī rēs erat multae operae ac labōris,
tamen commodissimum esse statuit omnēs nāvēs subdūcī
6 et cum castrīs ūnā mūnītiōne coniungī. In hīs rēbus
circiter diēs X cōnsūmit nē nocturnīs quidem tempo-
7 ribus ad labōrem mīlitum intermissīs. Subductīs nāvibus
castrīsque ēgregiē mūnītīs eāsdem cōpiās, quās ante, prae-
sidiō nāvibus relinquit, ipse eōdem, unde redierat, pro-
8 ficīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, māiōrēs iam undique in eum
locum cōpiae Britannōrum convēnerant, summā imperiī
bellīque administrandī commūnī cōnsiliō permissā Cas-
sivellaunō; cūius fīnēs ā maritimīs cīvitātibus flūmen
dīvidit, quod appellātur Tamesis, ā mārī circiter mīlia
9 passuum LXXX. Huīc superiōre tempore cum reliquīs
cīvitātibus continentia bella intercēsserant; sed nostrō
adventū permōtī Britannī hunc tōtī bellō imperiōque
praefēcerant.

Britanniae ēiusque incolārum dēscrīptiō.

12. Britanniae pars interior ab iīs incolitur, quōs nātōs
in īnsulā ipsā memoriā prōditum dīcunt, maritima pars
2 ab iīs, quī praedae āc bellī īnferendī causā ex Belgiō
trānsiērunt (quī omnēs ferē īsdem nōminibus cīvitātum
appellantur, quibus ortī ex cīvitātibus eō pervēnērunt) et
bellō illātō ibi remānsērunt atque agrōs colere coepērunt.
3 Hominum est īnfīnīta multitūdō crēberrimaque aedificia
4 ferē Gallicīs cōnsimilia, pecoris māgnus numerus. Ūtun-

tur [aut aere] aut nummō aureō aut tāleīs ferreīs ad
certum pondus exāminātīs prō nummō. Nāscitur ibi 5
plumbum album in mediterrāneīs regiōnibus, in maritimīs
ferrum, sed ēius exigua est cōpia; aere ūtuntur importātō.
Māteria cūiusque generis, ut in Galliā, est praeter fāgum
atque abietem. Leporem et gallīnam et ānserem gustāre
fās nōn putant; haec tamen alunt animī voluptātisque 6
causā. Loca sunt temperātiōra quam in Galliā remis-
siōribus frīgoribus.

13. Īnsula nātūrā triquetra, cūius ūnum latus est
contrā Galliam. Hūius lateris alter angulus, quī est ad
Cantium, quō ferē omnēs ex Galliā nāvēs appelluntur,
ad orientem sōlem, īnferior ad merīdiem spectat. Hōc 2
latus tenet circiter mīlia passuum quīngenta. Alterum
vergit ad Hispāniam atque occidentem sōlem: quā ex
parte est Hibernia īnsula dīmidiō minor, ut exīstimātur,
quam Britannia, sed parī spatiō trānsmissus atque ex
Galliā est in Britanniam. In hōc mediō cursū est īnsula, 3
quae appellātur Mona; complūrēs praetereā minōrēs
obiectae īnsulae exīstimantur; dē quibus īnsulīs nōn nūllī
scrīpsērunt diēs continuōs xxx sub brūmam esse noctem.
Nōs nihil dē eō percontātiōnibus reperiēbāmus nisi cer- 4
tīs ex aquā mēnsūrīs breviōrēs esse quam in continentī
noctēs vidēbāmus. Hūius est longitūdō lateris, ut fert 5
illōrum opīniō, DCC mīlium. Tertium est contrā septen- 6
triōnēs; cuī partī nūlla est obiecta terra, sed ēius angulus
alter māximē ad Germāniam spectat. Hōc mīlium
passuum octingentum in longitūdinem esse exīstimātur.
Ita omnis īnsula est in circuitū vīciēs centum mīlium 7
passuum.

14. Ex hīs omnibus longē sunt hūmānissimī, quī

Cantium incolunt, quae regiō est maritima omnis, neque
2 multum ā Gallicā differunt cōnsuētūdine. Interiōrēs
plērīque frūmenta nōn serunt, sed lacte et carne vīvunt
pellibusque sunt vestītī. Omnēs vērō sē Britannī vitrō
īnficiunt quod caeruleum efficit colōrem, atque hōc horri-
3 biliōrēs sunt in pūgnā āspectū; capillōque sunt prōmissō
atque omnī parte corporis rāsā praeter caput et labrum
4 superius. Uxōrēs habent dēnī duodēnīque inter sē
commūnēs et māximē frātrēs cum frātribus parentēsque
5 cum līberīs; sed quī sunt ex iīs nātī, eōrum habentur
līberī, quō prīmum virgō quaeque dēducta est.

Caesar Tamesim trānsit, Britannōs fugat, Cassivellaunum ducem subigit.

15. Equitēs hostium essedāriīque ācriter proeliō cum
equitātū nostrō in itinere cōnflīxērunt, ita tamen ut
nostrī omnibus partibus superiōrēs fuerint atque eōs in
2 silvās collēsque compulerint; sed complūribus interfectīs
3 cupidius īnsecūtī nōn nūllōs ex suīs āmīsērunt. At illī
intermissō spatiō, imprūdentibus nostrīs atque occupātīs
in mūnītiōne castrōrum, subitō sē ex silvīs ēiēcērunt,
impetūque in eōs factō quī erant in statiōne prō castrīs
4 collocātī, ācriter pūgnāvērunt; duābusque missīs subsidiō
cohortibus ā Caesare atque hīs prīmīs legiōnum duārum,
cum eae perexiguō intermissō locī spatiō inter sē cōn-
stitissent, novō genere pūgnae perterritīs nostrīs, per
mediōs audācissimē perrūpērunt sēque inde incolumēs
5 recēpērunt. Eō diē Q. Laberius Dūrus, tribūnus mī-
litum, interficitur. Illī plūribus submissīs cohortibus
repelluntur.

16. Tōtō hōc in genere pūgnae cum sub oculīs omnium

āc prō castrīs dīmicārētur, intellēctum est nostrōs propter
gravitātem armōrum, quod neque īnsequī cēdentēs pos-
sent neque ab sīgnīs discēdere audērent, minus aptōs esse
ad hūius generis hostem, equitēs autem māgnō cum 2
perīculō proeliō dīmicāre, proptereā quod illī etiam cōn-
sultō plērumque cēderent et, cum paulum ab legiōni-
bus nostrōs remōvissent, ex essedīs dēsilīrent et pedibus
disparī proeliō contenderent. [Equestris autem proeliī 3
ratiō et cēdentibus et īnsequentibus pār atque idem
perīculum īnferēbat.] Accēdēbat hūc, ut numquam 4
cōnfertī, sed rārī māgnīsque intervāllīs proeliārentur
statiōnēsque dispositās habērent, atque aliōs aliī deinceps
exciperent, integrīque et recentēs dēfatigātīs succēderent.

17. Posterō diē procul ā castrīs hostēs in collibus
cōnstitērunt rārīque sē ostendere et lēnius quam prīdiē
nostrōs equitēs proeliō lacessere coepērunt. Sed merīdiē 2
cum Caesar pābulandī causā trēs legiōnēs atque omnem
equitātum cum C. Trebōniō lēgātō mīsisset, repente ex
omnibus partibus ad pābulātōrēs advolāvērunt, sīc utī
ab sīgnīs legiōnibusque nōn absisterent. Nostrī ācriter 3
in eōs impetū factō reppulērunt neque fīnem sequendī
fēcērunt, quoad subsidiō cōnfīsī equitēs, cum post sē
legiōnēs vidērent, praecipitēs hostēs ēgērunt, māgnōque 4
eōrum numerō interfectō neque suī colligendī neque
cōnsistendī aut ex essedīs dēsiliendī facultātem dedērunt.
Ex hāc fugā prōtinus, quae undique convēnerant, auxi- 5
lia discēssērunt, neque post id tempus umquam summīs
nōbīscum cōpiīs hostēs contendērunt.

18. Caesar cōgnitō cōnsiliō eōrum ad flūmen Tamesim
in fīnēs Cassivellaunī exercitum dūxit; quod flūmen ūnō
omnīnō locō pedibus, atque hōc aegrē, trānsīrī potest.

2 Eō cum vēnisset, animadvertit ad alteram flūminis rīpam
3 māgnās esse cōpiās hostium īnstrūctās. Rīpa autem erat
acūtīs sudibus praefīxīsque mūnīta, ēiusdemque generis
4 sub aquā dēfīxae sudēs flūmine tegēbantur. Hīs rēbus
cōgnitīs ā captīvīs perfugīsque Caesar praemissō equi-
5 tātū cōnfestim legiōnēs subsequī iūssit. Sed eā celeritāte
atque eō impetū mīlitēs iērunt, cum capite sōlō ex aquā
exstārent, ut hostēs impetum legiōnum atque equitum
sustinēre nōn possent rīpāsque dīmitterent āc sē fugae
mandārent.

19. Cassivellaunus, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, omnī
dēpositā spē contentiōnis, dīmissīs ampliōribus cōpiīs,
mīlibus circiter quattuor essedāriōrum relictīs, itinera
nostra servābat paulumque ex viā excēdēbat locīsque
impedītīs āc silvestribus sēsē occultābat atque iīs regiō-
nibus, quibus nōs iter factūrōs cōgnōverat, pecora atque
2 hominēs ex agrīs in silvās compellēbat et, cum equitātus
noster līberius praedandī vāstandīque causā sē in agrōs
effunderet, omnibus viīs sēmitīsque essedāriōs ex silvīs
ēmittēbat et māgnō cum perīculō nostrōrum equitum
cum hīs cōnflīgēbat atque hōc metū lātius vagārī pro-
3 hibēbat. Relinquēbātur ut neque longius ab āgmine
legiōnum discēdī Caesar paterētur, et tantum [in] agrīs
vāstandīs incendiīsque faciendīs hostibus nocērētur,
quantum labōre atque itinere legiōnāriī mīlitēs efficere
poterant.

Trinovantium et complūrium cīvitātum dēditiō.

20. Interim Trinovantēs, prope fīrmissima eārum regi-
ōnum cīvitās, ex quā Mandubracius adulēscēns Caesaris
fidem secūtus ad eum in continentem [Galliam] vēnerat

(cūius pater in eā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerat interfectus-
que erat ā Cassivellaunō, ipse fugā mortem vītāverat), 2
lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sēsē eī dēdi-
tūrōs atque imperāta factūrōs; petunt ut Mandubracium 3
ab iniūriā Cassivellaunī dēfendat atque in cīvitātem
mittat, quī praesit imperiumque obtineat. Hīs Caesar 4
imperat obsidēs quadrāgintā frūmentumque exercituī
Mandubraciumque ad eōs mittit. Illī imperāta celeriter
fēcērunt, obsidēs ad numerum frūmentumque mīsērunt.

21. Trinovantibus dēfēnsīs atque ab omnī mīlitum iniū-
riā prohibitīs Cēnimagnī, Segontiācī, Ancalitēs, Bibrocī,
Cassī legātiōnibus missīs sēsē Caesarī dēdunt. Ab hīs 2
cōgnōscit nōn longē ex eō locō oppidum Cassivellaunī
abesse silvīs palūdibusque mūnītum, quō satis māgnus
hominum pecorisque numerus convēnerit. Oppidum au- 3
tem Britannī vocant, cum silvās impedītās vāllō atque
fossā mūniērunt, quō incursiōnis hostium vītandae causā
convenīre cōnsuērunt. Eō proficīscitur cum legiōnibus; 4
locum reperit ēgregiē nātūrā atque opere mūnītum;
tamen hunc duābus ex partibus oppūgnāre contendit.
Hostēs paulisper morātī mīlitum nostrōrum impetum 5
nōn tulērunt sēsēque aliā ex parte oppidī ēiēcērunt.
Māgnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus multīque in fugā 6
sunt comprehēnsī atque interfectī.

22. Dum haec in hīs locīs geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad
Cantium, quod esse ad mare suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,
quibus regiōnibus quattuor rēgēs praeerant, Cingetorīx,
Carvilius, Taximagulus, Segovax, nūntiōs mittit atque
hīs imperat, utī coāctīs omnibus cōpiīs castra nāvālia
dē imprōvīsō adoriantur atque oppūgnent. Hī cum ad 2
castra vēnissent, nostrī ēruptiōne factā multīs eōrum

interfectīs, captō etiam nōbilī duce Lugotorīge suōs inco-
3 lumēs redūxērunt. Cassivellaunus hōc proeliō nūntiātō,
tot dētrīmentīs acceptīs, vāstātīs fīnibus, māximē etiam
permōtus dēfectiōne cīvitātum, lēgātōs per Atrebātem
4 Commium dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar cum
cōnstituisset hiemāre in continentī propter repentīnōs
Galliae mōtūs, neque multum aestātis superesset atque id
facile extrahī posse intellegeret, obsidēs imperat et quid
in annōs singulōs vectīgālis populō Rōmānō Britannia
5 penderet cōnstituit; interdīcit atque imperat Cassivel-
launō nē Mandubraciō neu Trinovantibus noceat.

Caesaris in Galliam reditus.

23. Obsidibus acceptīs exercitum redūcit ad mare,
2 nāvēs invenit refectās. Hīs dēductīs, quod et captīvōrum
māgnum numerum habēbat, et nōn nūllae tempestāte
dēperierant nāvēs, duōbus commeātibus exercitum re-
3 portāre īnstituit. Āc sīc accidit utī ex tantō nāvium
numerō tot nāvigātiōnibus neque hōc neque superiōre
annō ūlla omnīnō nāvis, quae mīlitēs portāret, dēsiderā-
4 rētur; at ex iīs, quae inānēs ex continentī ad eum remit-
terentur, [et] priōris commeātūs expositīs mīlitibus, et
quās posteā Labiēnus faciendās cūrāverat numerō LX,
perpaucae locum caperent; reliquae ferē omnēs rēice-
5 rentur. Quās cum aliquamdiū Caesar frūstrā exspec-
tāsset, nē annī tempore ā nāvigātiōne exclūderētur, quod
aequinoctium suberat, necessāriō angustius mīlitēs collo-
6 cāvit āc, summā tranquillitāte cōnsecūtā, secundā initā
cum solvisset vigiliā, prīmā lūce terram attigit omnēsque
incolumēs nāvēs perdūxit.

III. BELLUM AMBIORIGIS.

CC. 24–52.

Legiōnēs Rōmānae in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuuntur.

24. Subductīs nāvibus conciliōque Gallōrum Samaro-
brīvae perāctō, quod eō annō frūmentum in Galliā
propter siccitātēs angustius prōvēnerat, coāctus est aliter
āc superiōribus annīs exercitum in hībernīs collocāre
legiōnēsque in plūrēs cīvitātēs distribuere. Ex quibus 2
ūnam in Morinōs dūcendam C. Fabiō lēgātō dedit, alte-
ram in Nerviōs Q. Cicerōnī, tertiam in Esuviōs L. Rōsciō;
quārtam in Rēmīs cum T. Labiēnō in cōnfīniō Trēverō-
rum hiemāre iūssit; trēs in Bellovacīs collocāvit; hīs 3
M. Crassum et L. Munātium Plancum et C. Trebōnium
lēgātōs praefēcit. Ūnam legiōnem, quam proximē trāns 4
Padum cōnscrīpserat, et cohortēs quīnque in Eburōnēs,
quōrum pars māxima est inter Mosam āc Rhēnum, quī
sub imperiō Ambiorīgis et Catuvolcī erant, mīsit. Hīs 5
mīlitibus Q. Titūrium Sabīnum et L. Aurunculēium
Cottam lēgātōs praeesse iūssit. Ad hunc modum distri- 6
būtīs legiōnibus facillimē inopiae frūmentāriae sēsē
mederī posse exīstimāvit. Atque hārum tamen om- 7
nium legiōnum hīberna, praeter eam, quam L. Rōsciō
in pācātissimam et quiētissimam partem dūcendam
dederat, mīlibus passuum centum continēbantur. Ipse 8
intereā, quoad legiōnēs collocātās mūnītaque hīberna
cōgnōvisset, in Galliā morārī cōnstituit.

Tasgetius Caesaris amīcus ab inimīcīs interficitur.

25. Erat in Carnutibus summō locō nātus Tasgetius,
cūius māiōrēs in suā cīvitāte rēgnum obtinuerant. Huīc 2

Caesar prō ēius virtūte atque in sē benevolentiā, quod in
omnibus bellīs singulārī ēius operā fuerat ūsus, māiōrum
3 locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum rēgnantem
inimīcī, palam multīs ex cīvitāte auctōribus, interfēcē-
4 runt. Dēfertur ea rēs ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad
plūrēs pertinēbat, nē cīvitās eōrum impulsū dēficeret,
L. Plancum cum legiōne ex Belgiō celeriter in Carnutēs
proficīscī iubet ibique hiemāre, quōrumque operā cōgnō-
verit Tasgetium interfectum, hōs comprehēnsōs ad sē
5 mittere. Interim ab omnibus [lēgātīs quaestōribusque],
quibus legiōnēs trādiderat, certior factus est in hīberna
perventum locumque hībernīs esse mūnītum.

Eburōnēs, ducibus Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, castra Sabīnī et Cottae oppūgnant.

26. Diēbus circiter xv, quibus in hīberna ventum est,
initium repentīnī tumultūs āc dēfectiōnis ortum est ab
2 Ambiorīge et Catuvolcō, quī, cum ad fīnēs rēgnī suī
Sabīnō Cottaeque praestō fuissent frūmentumque in
hīberna comportāvissent, Indutiomārī Trēverī nūntiīs
impulsī suōs concitāvērunt subitōque oppressīs līgnātōri-
3 bus māgnā manū ad castra oppūgnanda vēnērunt. Cum
celeriter nostrī arma cēpissent vāllumque āscendissent
atque ūnā ex parte Hispānīs equitibus ēmissīs equestrī
proeliō superiōrēs fuissent, dēspērātā rē hostēs suōs ab
4 oppūgnātiōne redūxērunt. Tum suō mōre conclāmāvē-
runt, utī aliquī ex nostrīs ad colloquium prōdīret: habēre
sēsē, quae dē rē commūnī dīcere vellent, quibus rēbus
contrōversiās minuī posse spērārent.

Colloquiō habitō Ambiorīx Rōmānōs ut discēdant monet. Lēgātī inter sē dissentiunt.

27. Mittitur ad eōs colloquendī causā C. Arpinēius,
eques Rōmānus, familiāris Q. Titūriī, et Q. Iūnius ex
Hispāniā quīdam, quī iam ante missū Caesaris ad Ambio-
rīgem ventitāre cōnsuērat; apud quōs Ambiorīx ad hunc 2
modum locūtus est: Sēsē prō Caesaris in sē beneficiīs
plūrimum eī cōnfitērī dēbēre, quod ēius operā stīpendiō
līberātus esset, quod Aduatucīs, fīnitimīs suīs, pendere
cōnsuēsset, quodque eī et fīlius et frātris fīlius ā Caesare
remissī essent, quōs Aduatucī obsidum numerō missōs apud
sē in servitūte et catēnīs tenuissent; neque id, quod fēcerit 3
dē oppūgnātiōne castrōrum, aut iūdiciō aut voluntāte suā
fēcisse, sed coāctū cīvitātis; suaque esse ēius modī im-
peria, ut nōn minus habēret iūris in sē multitūdō, quam
ipse in multitūdinem. Cīvitātī porrō hanc fuisse bellī 4
causam, quod repentīnae Gallōrum coniūrātiōnī resistere
nōn potuerit. Id sē facile ex humilitāte suā probāre posse,
quod nōn adeō sit imperītus rērum, ut suīs cōpiīs populum
Rōmānum superārī posse cōnfīdat. Sed esse Galliae com- 5
mūne cōnsilium; omnibus hībernīs Caesaris oppūgnandīs
hunc esse dictum diem, nē qua legiō alterī legiōnī subsidiō
venīre posset. Nōn facile Gallōs Gallīs negāre potuisse, 6
praesertim cum dē recuperandā commūnī lībertāte cōnsi-
lium initum vidērētur. Quibus quoniam prō pietāte satis- 7
fēcerit, habēre nunc sē ratiōnem officiī prō beneficiīs
Caesaris; monēre, orāre Titūrium prō hospitiō ut suae
āc mīlitum salūtī cōnsulat. Māgnam manum Germā- 8
nōrum conductam Rhēnum trānsīsse; hanc affore bīduō.
Ipsōrum esse cōnsilium, velintne, prius quam fīnitimī sen- 9

tiant, ēductōs ex hībernīs mīlitēs aut ad Cicerōnem aut ad
Labiēnum dēdūcere, quōrum alter mīlia passuum circiter
10 quīnquāgintā, alter paulō amplius ab iīs absit. Illud sē
pollicērī et iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmāre tūtum sē iter per
11 suōs fīnēs datūrum. Quod cum faciat, et cīvitātī sēsē cōn-
sulere, quod hībernīs levētur, et Caesarī prō ēius meritīs
grātiam referre. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā discēdit Ambiorīx.

28. Arpinēius et Iūnius, quae audierant, ad lēgātōs
dēferunt. Illī repentīnā rē perturbātī, etsī ab hoste ea
dīcēbantur, tamen nōn neglegenda exīstimābant, māximē-
que hāc rē permovēbantur, quod cīvitātem īgnōbilem
atque humilem Eburōnum suā sponte populō Rōmānō
2 bellum facere ausam vix erat crēdendum. Itaque ad cōn-
silium rem dēferunt, māgnaque inter eōs exsistit contrō-
3 versia. L. Aurunculēius complūrēsque tribūnī mīlitum
et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs nihil temerē agendum
neque ex hībernīs iniūssū Caesaris discēdendum exīstimā-
4 bant; quantāsvīs cōpiās etiam Germānōrum sustinērī posse
mūnītīs hībernīs docēbant; rem esse tēstimōniō, quod
prīmum hostium impetum multīs ūltrō vulneribus illā-
5 tīs fortissimē sustinuerint; rē frūmentāriā nōn premī;
intereā et ex proximīs hībernīs et ā Caesare conventūra
6 subsidia; postrēmō quid esse levius aut turpius, quam
auctōre hoste dē summīs rēbus capere cōnsilium?

29. Contrā ea Titūrius sērō factūrōs clāmitābat, cum
māiōrēs manūs hostium adiūnctīs Germānīs convēnissent,
aut cum aliquid calamitātis in proximīs hībernīs esset
2 acceptum. Brevem cōnsulendī esse occāsiōnem. Caesarem
arbitrārī profectum in Ītaliam; neque aliter Carnutēs
interficiundī Tasgetiī cōnsilium fuisse captūrōs, neque
Eburōnēs, sī ille adesset, tantā contemptiōne nostrī ad

castra ventūrōs; sēsē nōn hostem auctōrem, sed rem spec- 3
tāre; subesse Rhēnum; māgnō esse Germānīs dolōrī
Ariovistī mortem et superiōrēs nostrās victōriās; ārdēre 4
Galliam tot contumēliīs acceptīs sub populī Rōmānī im-
perium redāctam, superiōre glōriā reī mīlitāris exstinctā.
Postrēmō quis hōc sibi persuādēret, sine certā spē Am- 5
biorīgem ad ēius modī cōnsilium dēscendisse? Suam sen- 6
tentiam in utramque partem esse tūtam: sī nihil esset
dūrius, nūllō cum perīculō ad proximam legiōnem perven- 7
tūrōs; sī Gallia omnis cum Germānīs cōnsentīret, ūnam
esse in celeritāte positam salūtem. Cottae quidem atque
eōrum, quī dissentīrent, cōnsilium quem habēre exitum?
in quō sī nōn praesēns perīculum, at certē longinquā obsi-
diōne famēs esset timenda.

30. Hāc in utramque partem disputātiōne habitā,
cum ā Cottā prīmīsque ōrdinibus ācriter resisterētur,
'Vincite,' inquit, 'sī ita vultis,' Sabīnus, et id clāriōre
vōce, ut māgna pars mīlitum exaudīret; 'neque is sum,' 2
inquit, 'quī gravissimē ex vōbīs mortis perīculō terrear:
hī sapient; sī gravius quid acciderit, abs tē ratiōnem
repōscent; quī, sī per tē liceat, perendinō diē cum proxi- 3
mīs hībernīs coniūnctī commūnem cum reliquīs bellī
cāsum sustineant; nōn, rēiectī et relēgātī longē ā cēterīs,
aut ferrō aut famē intereant.'

Rōmānī ē castrīs ēgrediuntur; in itinere ab Eburōnibus circumventī omnēs caeduntur.

31. Cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō; comprehendunt utrumque
et ōrant, nē suā dissēnsiōne et pertināciā rem in summum
perīculum dēdūcant; facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu 2
proficīscantur, sī modo ūnum omnēs sentiant āc probent;

3 contrā in dissēnsiōne nūllam sē salūtem perspicere. Rēs
disputātiōne ad mediam noctem perdūcitur. Tandem dat
Cotta permōtus manūs; superat sententia Sabīnī. Prō-
4 nūntiātur prīmā lūce itūrōs. Cōnsūmitur vigiliīs reliqua
pars noctis, cum sua quisque mīles circumspiceret, quid
sēcum portāre posset, quid ex īnstrūmentō hībernōrum
5 relinquere cōgerētur. [Omnia excōgitantur, quārē nec
sine perīculō maneātur et languōre mīlitum et vigiliīs
6 perīculum augeātur.] Prīmā lūce sīc ex castrīs profi-
cīscuntur, ut quibus esset persuāsum, nōn ab hoste, sed ab
homine amīcissimō [Ambiorīge] cōnsilium datum, longis-
simō āgmine māximīsque impedīmentīs.

32. At hostēs, posteā quam ex nocturnō fremitū vigiliīs-
que dē profectiōne eōrum sēnsērunt, collocātīs īnsidiīs
bipertītō in silvīs opportūnō atque occultō locō ā mīlibus
passuum circiter duōbus Rōmānōrum adventum exspectā-
2 bant, et cum sē māior pars āgminis in māgnam convallem
dēmīsisset, ex utrāque parte ēius vallis subitō sē ostendē-
runt novissimōsque premere et prīmōs prohibēre āscēnsū
atque inīquissimō nostrīs locō proelium committere coe-
pērunt.

33. Tum dēmum Titūrius, quī nihil ante prōvīdisset,
trepidāre et concursāre cohortēsque dispōnere, haec
tamen ipsa timidē atque ut eum omnia dēficere vidē-
rentur; quod plērumque iīs accidere cōnsuēvit, quī in
2 ipsō negōtiō cōnsilium capere cōguntur. At Cotta, quī
cōgitāsset haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam
causam profectiōnis auctor nōn fuisset, nūllā in rē com-
mūnī salūtī deerat, et in appellandīs cohortandīsque mīli-
tibus imperātōris et in pūgnā mīlitis officia praestābat.
3 Cum propter longitūdinem āgminis nōn facile per sē om-

nia obīre et, quid quōque locō faciendum esset, prōvidēre
possent, iūssērunt prōnūntiārī, ut impedīmenta relinque-
rent atque in orbem cōnsisterent. Quod cōnsilium, etsī 4
in ēius modī cāsū reprehendendum nōn est, tamen in-
commodē cecidit; nam et nostrīs mīlitibus spem minuit 5
et hostēs ad pūgnam alacriōrēs effēcit, quod nōn sine
summō timōre et dēspērātiōne id factum vidēbātur.
Praetereā accidit, quod fierī necesse erat, ut vulgō mīlitēs 6
ab sīgnīs discēderent, quaeque quisque eōrum cārissima
habēret, ab impedīmentīs petere atque arripere pro-
perāret; clāmōre et flētū omnia complērentur.

34. At barbarīs cōnsilium nōn dēfuit. Nam dūcēs
eōrum tōtā aciē prōnūntiārī iūssērunt, nē quis ab locō
discēderet; illōrum esse praedam atque illīs reservārī,
quaecumque Rōmānī relīquissent; proinde omnia in
victōriā posita exīstimārent. [Erant et virtūte et numerō 2
pūgnandī parēs.] Nostrī tametsī ab duce et ā fortūnā
dēserēbantur, tamen omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnē-
bant, et quotiēns quaeque cohors prōcurrerat, ab eā parte
māgnus numerus hostium cadēbat. Quā rē animadversā 3
Ambiorīx prōnūntiārī iubet, ut procul tēla cōniciant neu
propius accēdant et, quam in partem Rōmānī impetum
fēcerint, cēdant, [levitāte armōrum et cotīdiānā exercitā- 4
tiōne nihil hīs nocērī posse,] rūrsus sē ad sīgna recipientēs
īnsequantur.

35. Quō praeceptō ab iīs dīligentissimē observātō, cum
quaepiam cohors ex orbe excēsserat atque impetum
fēcerat, hostēs vēlōcissimē refugiēbant. Interim eam 2
partem nūdārī necesse erat et ab latere apertō tēla re-
cipere. Rūrsus, cum in eum locum, unde erant prōgressī, 3
revertī coeperant, et ab iīs, quī cēsserant, et ab iīs, quī

4 proximī steterant, circumveniēbantur; sīn autem locum
tenēre vellent, nec virtūtī locus relinquēbātur, neque ab
tantā multitūdine cōniecta tēla cōnfertī vītāre poterant.
5 Tamen tot incommodīs cōnflīctātī, multīs vulneribus
acceptīs resistēbant et māgnā parte diēī cōnsūmptā, cum
ā prīmā lūce ad hōram octāvam pūgnārētur, nihil quod
6 ipsīs esset indīgnum committēbant. Tum T. Balventiō,
quī superiōre annō prīmum pīlum dūxerat, virō fortī et
māgnae auctōritātis, utrumque femur trāgulā trāicitur;
7 Q. Lūcānius, ēiusdem ōrdinis, fortissimē pūgnāns, dum
8 circumventō fīliō subvenit, interficitur; L. Cotta lēgātus
omnēs cohortēs ōrdinēsque adhortāns in adversum ōs
fundā vulnerātur.

36. Hīs rēbus permōtus Q. Titūrius, cum procul
Ambiorīgem suōs cohortantem cōnspexisset, interpretem
suum Cn. Pompēium ad eum mittit rogātum ut sibi
2 mīlitibusque parcat. Ille appellātus respondit: Sī velit
sēcum colloquī, licēre; spērāre ā multitūdine impetrārī
posse, quod ad mīlitum salūtem pertineat; ipsī vērō nihil
nocitum īrī, inque eam rem sē suam fidem interpōnere.
3 Ille cum Cottā sauciō commūnicat, sī videātur, pūgnā ut
excēdant et cum Ambiorīge ūnā colloquantur: spērāre
4 sē ab eō dē suā āc mīlitum salūte impetrārī posse.
Cotta sē ad armātum hostem itūrum negat atque in eō
persevērat.

37. Sabīnus quōs in praesentia tribūnōs mīlitum circum
sē habēbat et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnēs sē sequī
iubet et, cum propius Ambiorīgem accēssisset, iūssus
arma abicere imperātum facit suīsque, ut idem faciant,
2 imperat. Interim, dum dē condiciōnibus inter sē agunt
longiorque cōnsultō ab Ambiorīge īnstituitur sermō,

paulātim circumventus interficitur. Tum vērō suō mōre 3
victōriam conclāmant atque ululātum tollunt impetūque
in nostrōs factō ōrdinēs perturbant. Ibi L. Cotta pūgnāns 4
interficitur cum māximā parte mīlitum. Reliquī sē in 5
castra recipiunt, unde erant ēgressī. Ex quibus L. Petro-
sidius aquilifer, cum māgnā multitūdine hostium pre-
merētur aquilam intrā vāllum prōicit, ipse prō castrīs
fortissimē pūgnāns occīditur. Illī aegrē ad noctem 6
oppūgnātiōnem sustinent; nocte ad ūnum omnēs dēspē-
rātā salūte sē ipsī interficiunt. Paucī ex proeliō ēlapsī 7
incertīs itineribus per silvās ad T. Labiēnum lēgātum in
hīberna perveniunt atque eum dē rēbus gestīs certiōrem
faciunt.

Hīberna Cicerōnis ab Eburōnibus, adiūnctīs Aduatucīs et Nerviīs, oppūgnantur.

38. Hāc victōriā sublātus Ambiorīx statim cum
equitātū in Aduatucōs, quī erant ēius rēgnō fīnitimī, pro-
fīcīscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditā-
tumque sē subsequī iubet. Rē dēmōnstrātā Aduatucīsque 2
concitātīs, posterō diē in Nerviōs pervenit hortāturque,
nē suī in perpetuum līberandī atque ulcīscendī Rōmānōs
prō iīs, quās accēperint, iniūriīs occāsiōnem dīmittant:
interfectōs esse lēgātōs duōs māgnamque partem exercitūs 3
interīsse dēmōnstrat; nihil esse negōtiī, subitō oppressam 4
legiōnem, quae cum Cicerōne hiemet, interficī; sē ad eam
rem profitētur adiutōrem. Facile hāc ōrātiōne Nerviīs
persuādet.

39. Itaque cōnfestim dīmissīs nūntiīs ad Ceutronēs,
Grudiōs, Levacōs, Pleumoxiōs, Geidumnōs, quī omnēs
sub eōrum imperiō sunt, quam māximās manūs possunt,

cōgunt et dē imprōvīsō ad Cicerōnis hīberna advolant,
2 nōndum ad eum fāmā dē Titūriī morte perlātā. Huīc
quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nōn nūllī mīlitēs,
quī līgnātiōnis mūnītiōnisque causā in silvās discēssissent,
3 repentīnō equitum adventū interciperentur. Hīs circum-
ventīs māgnā manū Eburōnēs, Nerviī, Aduatucī atque
hōrum omnium sociī et clientēs legiōnem oppūgnāre
incipiunt. Nostrī celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vāllum
4 cōnscendunt. Aegrē is diēs sustentātur, quod omnem
spem hostēs in celeritāte pōnēbant atque hanc adeptī
victōriam in perpetuum sē fore victōrēs cōnfīdēbant.

40. Mittuntur ad Caesarem cōnfestim ā Cicerōne
lītterae māgnīs prōpositīs praemiīs, sī pertulissent;
2 obsessīs omnibus viīs missī intercipiuntur. Noctū ex
māteriā, quam mūnītiōnis causā comportāverant, turrēs
admodum cxx excitantur incrēdibilī celeritāte; quae
3 deesse operī vidēbantur, perficiuntur. Hostēs posterō
diē multō māiōribus coāctīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnant,
fossam complent. Ā nostrīs eādem ratiōne quā prīdiē,
4, 5 resistitur. Hōc idem reliquīs deinceps fit diēbus. Nūlla
pars nocturnī temporis ad labōrem intermittitur; nōn
6 aegrīs, nōn vulnerātīs facultās quiētis datur. Quae-
cumque ad proximī diēī oppūgnātiōnem opus sunt, noctū
comparantur; multae praeūstae sudēs, māgnus mūrā-
lium pīlōrum numerus īnstituitur; turrēs contabulantur,
7 pinnae lōrīcaeque ex crātibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicerō,
cum tenuissimā valētūdine esset, nē nocturnum quidem
sibi tempus ad quiētem relinquēbat, ut ūltrō mīlitum
concursū āc vōcibus sibi parcere cōgerētur.

41. Tum ducēs prīncipēsque Nerviōrum, quī aliquem
sermōnis aditum causamque amīcitiae cum Cicerōne

habēbant, colloquī sēsē velle dīcunt. Factā potestāte, 2
eadem, quae Ambiorīx cum Titūriō ēgerat, commemo-
rant: omnem esse in armīs Galliam; Germānōs Rhēnum 3
trānsīsse; Caesaris reliquōrumque hīberna oppūgnārī.
Addunt etiam dē Sabīnī morte; Ambiorīgem ostentant 4
fideī faciundae causā. Errāre eōs dīcunt, sī quicquam 5
ab iīs praesidiī spērent, quī suīs rēbus diffīdant; sēsē
tamen hōc esse in Cicerōnem populumque Rōmānum
animō, ut nihil nisi hīberna recūsent atque hanc inve-
terāscere cōnsuētūdinem nōlint; licēre illīs per sē inco- 6
lumibus ex hībernīs discēdere et, quāscumque in partēs
velint, sine metū proficīscī. Cicerō ad haec ūnum modo 7
respondet: nōn esse cōnsuētūdinem populī Rōmānī acci-
pere ab hoste armātō condiciōnem; sī ab armīs discē-
dere velint, sē adiūtōre ūtantur lēgātōsque ad Caesarem 8
mittant; spērāre sē prō ēius iūstitiā, quae petierint,
impetrātūrōs.

42. Ab hāc spē repulsī Nerviī vāllō pedum x et fossā
pedum xv hīberna cingunt. Haec et superiōrum annōrum 2
cōnsuētūdine ā nōbīs cōgnōverant et, quōsdam dē exercitū
nactī captīvōs, ab hīs docēbantur, sed nūllā ferrāmen- 3
tōrum cōpiā, quae essent ad hunc ūsum idōnea, gladiīs
caespitēs circumcīdere, manibus sagulīsque terram exhau-
rīre cōgēbantur. Quā quidem ex rē hominum multi- 4
tūdō cōgnōscī potuit; nam minus hōrīs tribus mīlium 5
passuum xv in circuitū mūnītiōnem perfēcērunt. Reli-
quīs diēbus turrēs ad altitūdinem vāllī, falcēs tēstūdi-
nēsque, quās īdem captīvī docuerant, parāre āc facere
coepērunt.

43. Septimō oppūgnātiōnis diē māximō coortō ventō
ferventēs fūsilēs ex argillā glandēs fundīs et fervefacta

iacula in casās, quae mōre Gallicō strāmentīs erant tēctae,
2 iacere coepērunt. Hae celeriter īgnem comprehendērunt
et ventī māgnitūdine in omnem locum castrōrum distu-
3 lērunt. Hostēs māximō clāmōre, sīc utī partā iam
atque explōrātā victōriā, turrēs tēstūdinēsque agere et scā-
4 līs vāllum āscendere coepērunt. At tanta mīlitum virtūs
atque ea praesentia animī fuit ut, cum undique flammā
torrērentur māximāque tēlōrum multitūdine premerentur
suaque omnia impedīmenta atque omnēs fortūnās cōn-
flagrāre intellegerent, nōn modo [dēmigrandī causā] dē
vāllō dēcēderet nēmō, sed paene nē respiceret quidem
quisquam; āc tum omnēs ācerrimē fortissimēque pūgnā-
5 rent. Hīc diēs nostrīs longē gravissimus fuit; sed tamen
hunc habuit ēventum ut eō diē māximus numerus ho-
stium vulnerārētur atque interficerētur, ut sē sub ipsō
vāllō cōnstīpāverant recēssumque prīmīs ūltimī nōn da-
6 bant. Paulum quidem intermissā flammā et quōdam locō
turrī adāctā et contingente vāllum, tertiae cohortis centu-
riōnēs ex eō quō stābant locō recēssērunt suōsque omnēs
remōvērunt; nūtū vōcibusque hostēs sī introīre vellent,
vocāre coepērunt, quōrum prōgredī ausus est nēmō.
7 Tum ex omnī parte lapidibus cōniectīs dēturbātī, turris-
que succēnsa est.

44. Erant in eā legiōne fortissimī virī, centuriōnēs,
quī iam prīmīs ōrdinibus appropinquārent, T. Pullō et
2 L. Vorēnus. Iī perpetuās inter sē contrōversiās habē-
bant, uter alterī anteferrētur, omnibusque annīs dē locō
3 summīs simultātibus contendēbant. Ex hīs Pullō, cum
ācerrimē ad mūnītiōnēs pūgnārētur, 'Quid dubitās,'
inquit, 'Vorēne? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtūtis
exspectās? hīc diēs dē nostrīs contrōversiīs iūdicābit.'

Haec cum dīxisset, prōcēdit extrā mūnītiōnēs quaeque 4
pars hostium cōnfertissima est vīsa, irrumpit. Nē 5
Vorēnus quidem sēsē tum vāllō continet, sed omnium
veritus exīstimātiōnem subsequitur. Mediocrī spatiō 6
relictō Pullō pīlum in hostēs immittit atque ūnum
ex multitūdine prōcurrentem trāicit; quō percussō et
exanimātō hunc scūtīs prōtegunt hostēs, in illum ūniversī
tēla cōniciunt neque dant prōgrediendī facultātem.
Trānsfīgitur scūtum Pullōnī et verūtum in balteō dēfī- 7
gitur. Āvertit hīc cāsus vāgīnam et gladium ēdūcere 8
cōnantī dextram morātur manum, impedītumque hostēs
circumsistunt. Succurrit inimīcus illī Vorēnus et labō- 9
rantī subvenit. Ad hunc sē cōnfestim ā Pullōne omnis 10
multitūdō convertit [; illum verūtō trānsfīxum arbitran-
tur]. Gladiō comminus rem gerit Vorēnus atque ūnō 11
interfectō reliquōs paulum prōpellit; dum cupidius īnstat, 12
in locum dēiectus īnferiōrem concidit. Huīc rūrsus 13
circumventō subsidium fert Pullō, atque ambō incolumēs
complūribus interfectīs summā cum laude sēsē intrā
mūnītiōnēs recipiunt. Sīc fortūna in contentiōne et 14
certāmine utrumque versāvit ut alter alterī inimīcus
auxiliō salūtīque esset, neque dīiūdicārī posset uter utrī
virtūte anteferendus vidērētur.

Obsidiō adventū Caesaris solvitur; hostēs prōflīgantur.

45. Quantō erat in diēs gravior atque asperior oppū-
gnātiō, et māximē quod māgnā parte mīlitum cōnfectā
vulneribus rēs ad paucitātem dēfēnsōrum pervēnerat,
tantō crēbriōrēs lītterae nūntiīque ad Caesarem mittē-
bantur; quōrum pars dēprehēnsa in cōnspectū nostrōrum
mīlitum cum cruciātū necābātur. Erat ūnus intus 2

Nervius nōmine Verticō, locō nātus honestō, quī ā prīmā
obsidiōne ad Cicerōnem perfūgerat suamque eī fidem
3 praestiterat. Hīc servō spē lībertātis māgnīsque per-
4 suādet praemiīs, ut lītterās ad Caesarem dēferat. Hās
ille in iaculō illigātās effert et Gallus inter Gallōs sine
5 ūllā sūspiciōne versātus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eō
dē perīculīs Cicerōnis legiōnisque cōgnōscitur.

46. Caesar acceptīs lītterīs hōrā circiter ūndecimā diēī
statim nūntium in Bellovacōs ad M. Crassum mittit, cūius
2 hīberna aberant ab eō mīlia passuum xxv; iubet mediā
nocte legiōnem proficīscī celeriterque ad sē venīre. Exit
3 cum nūntiō Crassus. Alterum ad C. Fabium lēgātum
mittit, ut in Atrebātium fīnēs legiōnem addūcat, quā sibi
4 iter faciendum sciēbat. Scrībit Labiēnō, sī reī pūblicae
commodō facere posset, cum legiōne ad fīnēs Nerviōrum
5 veniat. Reliquam partem exercitūs, quod paulō aberat
longius, nōn putat exspectandam; equitēs circiter qua-
dringentōs ex proximīs hībernīs cōgit.

47. Hōrā circiter tertiā ab antecursōribus dē Crassī
adventū certior factus, eō diē mīlia passuum xx prōgre-
2 ditur. Crassum Samarobrīvae praeficit legiōnemque eī
attribuit, quod ibi impedīmenta exercitūs, obsidēs cīvi-
tātum, lītterās pūblicās frūmentumque omne, quod eō
3 tolerandae hiemis causā dēvexerat, relinquēbat. Fabius,
ut imperātum erat, nōn ita multum morātus in itinere
4 cum legiōne occurrit. Labiēnus interitū Sabīnī et caede
cohortium cōgnitā, cum omnēs ad eum Trēverōrum
cōpiae vēnissent, veritus nē, sī ex hībernīs fugae similem
profectiōnem fēcisset, hostium impetum sustinēre nōn
posset, praesertim quōs recentī victōriā efferrī scīret,
5 lītterās Caesarī remittit quantō cum perīculō legiōnem

ex hībernīs ēductūrus esset; rem gestam in Eburōnibus perscrībit; docet omnēs equitātūs peditātūsque cōpiās Trēverōrum tria mīlia passuum longē ab suīs castrīs cōnsēdisse.

48. Caesar cōnsiliō ēius probātō, etsī opīniōne trium
legiōnum dēiectus ad duās reciderat, tamen ūnum com-
mūnī salūtī auxilium in celeritāte pōnēbat. Venit 2
māgnīs itineribus in Nerviōrum fīnēs. Ibi ex captīvīs
cōgnōscit quae apud Cicerōnem gerantur quantōque in
perīculō rēs sit. Tum cuīdam ex equitibus Gallīs māgnīs 3
praemiīs persuādet utī ad Cicerōnem epistulam dēferat.
Hanc Graecīs cōnscrīptam lītterīs mittit, nē interceptā 4
epistulā nostra ab hostibus cōnsilia cōgnōscantur. Sī 5
adīre nōn possit, monet ut trāgulam cum epistulā ad
āmentum dēligātā intrā mūnītiōnēs castrōrum abiciat.
In lītterīs scrībit sē cum legiōnibus profectum celeriter 6
affore; hortātur ut prīstinam virtūtem retineat. Gallus 7
perīculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, trāgulam mittit.
Haec cāsū ad turrim adhaesit neque ā nostrīs bīduō ani- 8
madversa tertiō diē ā quōdam mīlite cōnspicitur; dēmpta
ad Cicerōnem dēfertur. Ille perlēctam in conventū 9
mīlitum recitat māximāque omnēs laetitiā afficit. Tum 10
fūmī incendiōrum procul vidēbantur, quae rēs omnem
dubitātiōnem adventūs legiōnum expulit.

49. Gallī rē cōgnitā per explōrātōrēs obsidiōnem relin-
quunt, ad Caesarem omnibus cōpiīs contendunt. Haec
erant armāta circiter mīlia LX. Cicerō datā facultāte 2
Gallum ab eōdem Verticōne, quem suprā dēmōnstrāvimus,
repetit, quī lītterās ad Caesarem dēferat; hunc admonet
iter cautē dīligenterque faciat; perscrībit in lītterīs hostēs 3
ab sē discēssisse omnemque ad eum multitūdinem conver-

4 tisse. Quibus lītterīs circiter mediā nocte Caesar allātīs
suōs facit certiōrēs eōsque ad dīmicandum animō cōn-
5 fīrmat. Posterō diē lūce prīmā movet castra et circiter
mīlia passuum quattuor prōgressus trāns vallem et rīvum
6 multitūdinem hostium cōnspicātur. Erat māgnī perīculī
rēs tantulīs cōpiīs inīquō locō dīmicāre; tum, quoniam
obsidiōne līberātum Cicerōnem sciēbat, aequō animō
7 remittendum dē celeritāte exīstimābat: cōnsidit et, quam
aequissimō potest locō castra commūnit atque haec, etsī
erant exigua per sē, vix hominum mīlium septem, prae-
sertim nūllīs cum impedīmentīs, tamen angustiīs viārum,
8 quam māximē potest contrahit, eō cōnsiliō, ut in sum-
mam contemptiōnem hostibus veniat. Interim speculā-
tōribus in omnēs partēs dīmissīs explōrat, quō commo-
dissimē itinere vallem trānsīre possit.

50. Eō diē parvulīs equestribus proeliīs ad aquam factīs
2 utrīque sēsē suō locō continent: Gallī, quod ampliōrēs
3 cōpiās quae nōndum convēnerant exspectābant; Caesar,
sī forte timōris simulātiōne hostēs in suum locum ēlicere
4 posset, ut citrā vallem prō castrīs proeliō contenderet;
sī id efficere nōn posset, ut explōrātīs itineribus minōre
cum perīculō vallem rīvumque trānsīret. Prīmā lūce
hostium equitātus ad castra accēdit proeliumque cum
5 nostrīs equitibus committit. Caesar cōnsultō equitēs
cēdere sēque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus
partibus castra altiōre vāllō mūnīrī portāsque obstruī
atque in hīs admīnistrandīs rēbus quam māximē con-
cursārī et cum simulātiōne agī timōris iubet.

51. Quibus omnibus rēbus hostēs invitātī cōpiās trā-
dūcunt aciemque inīquō locō cōnstituunt; nostrīs vērō
2 etiam dē vāllō dēductīs propius accēdunt et tēla intrā

mūnītiōnem ex omnibus partibus cōiciunt praecōnibusque
circummissīs prōnūntiārī iubent, seu quis Gallus seu 3
Rōmānus velit ante hōram tertiam ad sē trānsīre, sine
perīculō licēre; post id tempus nōn fore potestātem. Āc 4
sīc nostrōs contempsērunt, ut obstrūctīs in speciem portīs
singulīs ōrdinibus caespitum, quod eā nōn posse intrō-
rumpere vidēbantur, aliī vāllum manū scindere, aliī fossās
complēre inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portīs ērup- 5
tiōne factā equitātūque ēmissō celeriter hostēs in fugam
dat, sīc utī omnīnō pūgnandī causā resisteret nēmō,
māgnumque ex iīs numerum occīdit atque omnēs armīs
exuit.

52. Longius persequī veritus, quod silvae palūdēsque
intercēdēbant [neque etiam parvulō dētrīmentō illōrum
locum relinquī vidēbat], omnibus suīs incolumibus eōdem
diē ad Cicerōnem pervenit. Īnstitūtās turrēs, tēstūdinēs 2
mūnītiōnēsque hostium admīrātur; prōductā legiōne cō-
gnōscit nōn decimum quemque esse reliquum mīlitem sine
vulnere; ex hīs omnibus iūdicat rēbus quantō cum perī- 3
culō et quantā virtūte rēs sint administrātae; Cicerōnem 4
prō ēius meritō legiōnemque collaudat; centuriōnēs sin-
gillātim tribūnōsque mīlitum appellat, quōrum ēgregiam
fuisse virtūtem tēstimōniō Cicerōnis cōgnōverat. Dē
cāsū Sabīnī et Cottae certius ex captīvīs cōgnōscit. 5
Posterō diē contiōne habitā rem gestam prōpōnit,
mīlitēs cōnsōlātur et cōnfīrmat; quod dētrīmentum culpā 6
et temeritāte lēgātī sit acceptum, hōc aequiōre animō
ferundum docet, quod, beneficiō deōrum immortālium
et virtūte eōrum expiātō incommodō, neque hostibus
diūtina laetitia neque ipsīs longior dolor relinquātur.

IV. MOTUS SENONUM ET TREVERORUM.

cc. 53–58.

Caede Eburōnum audītā, Indutiomārus cōpiās redūcit. Caesar in Galliā hiemāre parat.

53. Interim ad Labiēnum per Rēmōs incrēdibilī cele-
ritāte dē victōriā Caesaris fāma perfertur, ut, cum ab
hībernīs Cicerōnis mīlia passuum abesset circiter LX, eōque
post hōram nōnam diēī Caesar pervēnisset, ante mediam
noctem ad portās castrōrum clāmor orerētur, quō clāmōre
sīgnificātiō victōriae grātulātiōque ab Rēmīs Labiēnō
2 fieret. Hāc fāmā ad Trēverōs perlātā Indutiomārus, quī
posterō diē castra Labiēnī oppūgnāre dēcrēverat, noctū
profugit cōpiāsque omnēs in Trēverōs redūcit. Caesar
3 Fabium cum suā legiōne remittit in hīberna, ipse cum
tribus legiōnibus circum Samarobrīvam trīnīs hībernīs
hiemāre cōnstituit et, quod tantī mōtūs Galliae exstite-
rant, tōtam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manēre dēcrēvit.
4 Nam illō incommodō dē Sabīnī morte perlātō omnēs ferē
Galliae cīvitātēs dē bellō cōnsultābant; nūntiōs legātiō-
nēsque in omnēs partēs dīmittēbant et, quid reliquī cōnsi-
liī caperent atque unde initium bellī fieret, explōrābant
5 nocturnaque in locīs dēsertīs concilia habēbant. Neque
ūllum ferē tōtīus hiemis tempus sine sollicitūdine Caesaris
intercēssit quīn aliquem dē cōnsiliīs āc mōtū Gallōrum
6 nūntium acciperet. In hīs ab L. Rōsciō, quem legiōnī
tertiaedecimae praefēcerat, certior factus est, māgnās
[Gallōrum] cōpiās eārum cīvitātum quae Aremoricae
7 appellantur oppūgnandī suī causā convēnisse neque
longius mīlibus passuum octō ab hībernīs suīs āfuisse,

sed nūntiō allātō dē victōriā Caesaris discēssisse adeō ut fugae similis discēssus vidērētur.

54. At Caesar, prīncipibus cūiusque cīvitātis ad sē ēvo-
cātīs, aliōs territandō, cum sē scīre quae fierent, dēnūnti-
āret, aliōs cohortandō, māgnam partem Galliae in officiō
tenuit. Tamen Senonēs, quae est cīvitās in prīmīs fīrma 2
et māgnae inter Gallōs auctōritātis, Cavarīnum, quem
Caesar apud eōs rēgem cōnstituerat, cūius frāter Moritas-
gus adventū in Galliam Caesaris cūiusque māiōrēs rē-
gnum obtinuerant, interficere pūblicō cōnsiliō cōnātī, cum
ille praesēnsisset āc profūgisset, usque ad fīnēs īnsecūtī 3
rēgnō domōque expulērunt et, missīs ad Caesarem satis
faciendī causā lēgātīs, cum is omnem ad sē senātum venīre
iūssisset, dictō audientēs nōn fuērunt. Āc tantum apud 4
hominēs barbarōs valuit, esse aliquōs repertōs prīncipēs
bellī īnferendī, tantamque omnibus voluntātum commūtā-
tiōnem attulit, ut praeter Aeduōs et Rēmōs, quōs praeci-
puō semper honōre Caesar habuit, alterōs prō vetere āc
perpetuā ergā populum Rōmānum fidē, alterōs prō recen-
tibus Gallicī bellī officiīs, nūlla ferē cīvitās fuerit nōn
sūspecta nōbīs. Idque adeō haud sciō mīrandumne sit, 5
cum complūribus aliīs dē causīs, tum māximē, quod, quī
virtūte bellī omnibus gentibus praeferēbantur, tantum sē
ēius opīniōnis dēperdidisse ut populī Rōmānī imperia
perferrent, gravissimē dolēbant.

Trēverī duce Indutiomārō Labiēnī castra oppūgnant.

55. Trēverī vērō atque Indutiomārus tōtīus hiemis nūllum tempus intermīsērunt, quīn trāns Rhēnum lēgātōs mitterent, cīvitātēs sollicitārent, pecūniās pollicērentur, māgnā parte exercitūs nostrī interfectā multō

2 minōrem superesse dīcerent partem. Neque tamen ūllī
cīvitātī Germānōrum persuādērī potuit ut Rhēnum
trānsīret, cum sē bis expertōs dīcerent, Ariovistī bellō et
Tencterōrum trānsitū; nōn esse amplius fortūnam temp-
3 tātūrōs. Hāc spē lapsus Indutiomārus nihilō minus
cōpiās cōgere, exercēre, ā fīnitimīs equōs parāre, exulēs
damnātōsque tōtā Galliā māgnīs praemiīs ad sē allicere
4 coepit. Āc tantam sibi iam hīs rēbus in Galliā auctōri-
tātem comparāverat ut undique ad eum legātiōnēs con-
currerent, grātiam atque amīcitiam pūblicē prīvātimque
peterent.

56. Ubi intellēxit ūltrō ad sē venīrī, alterā ex parte
Senonēs Carnutēsque cōnscientiā facinoris īnstigārī,
alterā Nerviōs Aduatucōsque bellum Rōmānīs parāre,
neque sibi voluntāriōrum cōpiās dēfore, sī ex fīnibus suīs
2 prōgredī coepisset, armātum concilium indīcit. Hōc
mōre Gallōrum est initium bellī, quō lēge commūnī
omnēs pūberēs armātī convenīre cōguntur; quī ex iīs
novissimus venit in cōnspectū multitūdinis omnibus
3 cruciātibus affectus necātur. In eō conciliō Cingetorī-
gem, alterius prīncipem factiōnis, generum suum, quem
suprā dēmōnstrāvimus Caesaris secūtum fidem ab eō
4 nōn discēssisse, hostem iūdicat bonaque ēius pūblicat. Hīs
rēbus cōnfectīs in conciliō prōnūntiat arcessītum sē ā
Senonibus et Carnutibus aliīsque complūribus Galliae
5 cīvitātibus; hūc itūrum per fīnēs Rēmōrum eōrumque
agrōs populātūrum āc, prius quam id faciat, castra
Labiēnī oppūgnātūrum. Quae fierī velit praecipit.

57. Labiēnus, cum et locī nātūrā et manū mūnītissimīs castrīs sēsē tenēret, dē suō āc legiōnis perīculō nihil timēbat; nē quam occāsiōnem reī bene gerendae dīmit-

teret cōgitābat. Itaque ā Cingetorīge atque ēius pro- 2
pinquīs ōrātiōne Indutiomārī cōgnitā, quam in conciliō
habuerat, nūntiōs mittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs equitēs-
que undique ēvocat; hīs certam diem conveniendī dīcit.
Interim prope cotīdiē cum omnī equitātū Indutiomārus 3
sub castrīs ēius vagābātur, aliās ut situm castrōrum
cōgnōsceret, aliās colloquendī aut territandī causā:
equitēs plērumque omnēs tēla intrā vāllum cōniciēbant.
Labiēnus suōs intrā mūnītiōnem continēbat timōrisque 4
opīniōnem quibuscumque poterat rēbus augēbat.

Indutiomārō caesō, Gallia in quiētem redūcitur.

58. Cum māiōre in diēs contemptiōne Indutiomārus ad
castra accēderet, nocte ūnā intrōmissīs equitibus omnium
fīnitimārum cīvitātum quōs arcessendōs cūrāverat, tantā
dīligentiā omnēs suōs cūstōdiīs intrā castra continuit ut
nūllā ratiōne ea rēs ēnūntiārī aut ad Trēverōs perferrī
posset. Interim ex cōnsuētūdine cotīdiānā Indutiomārus 2
ad castra accēdit atque ibi māgnam partem diēī cōnsūmit;
equitēs tēla cōniciunt et māgnā cum contumēliā verbō-
rum nostrōs ad pūgnam ēvocant. Nūllō ab nostrīs datō 3
respōnsō, ubi vīsum est sub vesperum dīspersī āc dissi-
pātī discēdunt. Subitō Labiēnus duābus portīs omnem 4
equitātum ēmittit; praecipit atque interdīcit, perterritīs
hostibus atque in fugam cōniectīs (quod fore, sīc ut
accidit, vidēbat), ūnum omnēs petant Indutiomārum, neu
quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum vīderit,
quod morā reliquōrum spatium nactum illum effugere
nōlēbat; māgna prōpōnit iīs, quī occīderint, praemia;
submittit cohortēs equitibus subsidiō. Comprobat homi- 5
nis cōnsilium fortūna, et cum ūnum omnēs peterent, in 6

ipsō flūminis vadō dēprehēnsus Indutiomārus interficitur
caputque ēius refertur in castra; redeuntēs equitēs quōs
7 possunt cōnsectantur atque occīdunt. Hāc rē cōgnitā
omnēs Eburōnum et Nerviōrum, quae convēnerant,
cōpiae discēdunt; paulōque habuit post id factum Caesar
quiētiōrem Galliam.

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

I. GALLIAE MOTUS.

CC. 1–8.

Cōpiīs auctīs Caesar Nerviōs, Senonēs, Carnutēs, Menapiōs subigit.

1. Multīs dē causīs Caesar māiōrem Galliae mōtum
exspectāns per M. Silānum, C. Antistium Rēgīnum, T.
Sextium lēgātōs dīlēctum[1] habēre īnstituit; simul ab Cn. 2
Pompēiō prōcōnsule petit,[2] quoniam ipse ad urbem cum
imperiō reī pūblicae causā remanēret, quōs ex Cisalpīnā
Galliā cōnsul sacrāmentō[3] rogāsset ad sīgna convenīre et
ad sē proficīscī iubēret; māgnī[4] interesse etiam in reliquum 3
tempus ad[5] opīniōnem Galliae exīstimāns tantās vidērī
Ītaliae facultātēs ut, sī quid esset in bellō dētrīmentī
acceptum, nōn modo id brevī tempore sarcīrī,[6] sed etiam
māiōribus augērī[7] cōpiīs posset. Quod cum Pompēius et 4
reī pūblicae et amīcitiae tribuisset, celeriter cōnfectō per suōs dīlēctū tribus ante exāctam[8] hiemem et cōnstitūtīs et adductīs legiōnibus duplicātōque eārum cohortium numerō quās cum Q. Titūriō āmīserat, et celeritāte et cōpiīs docuit quid populī Rōmānī dīsciplīna atque opēs possent.

2. Interfectō Indutiomārō, ut docuimus, ad ēius propinquōs ā Trēverīs imperium dēfertur. Illī fīnitimōs Ger-

[1] 'levy.' [2] sc. *ut*, with **iuberet.** [3] **sacramento rogare:** 'enlist.' [4] **magni interesse:** 'be of great importance.' [5] 'for (influencing).' [6] 'repair.' [7] sc. *exercitum.* [8] 'finish.'

mānōs sollicitāre et pecūniam pollicērī nōn dēsistunt.
2 Cum ā proximīs impetrāre nōn possent, ūlteriōrēs temp-
tant. Inventīs nōn nūllīs cīvitātibus iūre iūrandō inter sē
cōnfīrmant obsidibusque dē[1] pecūniā cavent[2]; Ambiorīgem
3 sibi societāte[3] et foedere[4] adiungunt. Quibus rēbus cō-
gnitīs Caesar, cum undique bellum parārī vidēret, Nerviōs,
Aduatucōs, Menapiōs, adiūnctīs Cisrhēnānīs omnibus Ger-
mānīs, esse in armīs, Senonēs ad[5] imperātum nōn venīre
et cum Carnutibus fīnitimīsque cīvitātibus cōnsilia com-
mūnicāre, ā Trēverīs Germānōs crēbrīs legātiōnibus sol-
licitārī, mātūrius sibi dē bellō cōgitandum putāvit.

3. Itaque nōndum hieme cōnfectā, proximīs quattuor
coāctīs legiōnibus dē imprōvīsō in fīnēs Nerviōrum con-
2 tendit et, prius quam illī aut convenīre aut profugere pos-
sent, māgnō pecoris atque hominum numerō captō atque
eā praedā mīlitibus concēssā vāstātīsque agrīs, in dēdi-
3 tiōnem venīre atque obsidēs sibi dare coēgit. Eō cele-
4 riter cōnfectō negōtiō rūrsus in hīberna legiōnēs redūxit.
Conciliō Galliae prīmō vēre,[6] ut īnstituerat, indictō, cum
reliquī praeter Senonēs, Carnutēs, Trēverōsque vēnissent,
initium bellī āc dēfectiōnis hōc esse arbitrātus, ut omnia
postpōnere vidērētur, concilium Lutetiam Parīsiōrum
5 trānsfert. Cōnfīnēs[7] erant hī Senonibus cīvitātemque
patrum memoriā coniūnxerant, sed ab hōc cōnsiliō āfuisse
6 exīstimābantur. Hāc rē prō suggestū[8] prōnūntiātā eō-
dem diē cum legiōnibus in Senonēs proficīscitur māgnīs-
que itineribus eō pervenit.

4. Cōgnitō ēius adventū Accō,[9] quī prīnceps ēius cōnsiliī fuerat, iubet in oppida multitūdinem convenīre.

[1] 'for.' [2] 'give security.' [3] 'alliance.' [4] 'league.' [5] **ad imperatum**: 'at his command.' [6] 'spring.' [7] 'neighboring.' [8] 'platform.' [9] nom.

Cōnantibus, prius quam id efficī posset, adesse Rōmānōs
nūntiātur. Necessāriō sententiā dēsistunt lēgātōsque dē- 2
precandī causā ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduōs,
quōrum antīquitus erat in fidē cīvitās. Libenter Cae- 3
sar petentibus Aeduīs dat veniam[1] excūsātiōnemque acci-
pit, quod aestīvum[2] tempus īnstantis bellī,[3] nōn quae-
stiōnis[3] esse arbitrābātur. Obsidibus imperātīs centum 4
hōs Aeduīs cūstōdiendōs trādit. Eōdem Carnutēs lēgātōs 5
obsidēsque mittunt, ūsī dēprecātōribus Rēmīs, quōrum
erant in clientēlā[4]; eadem ferunt respōnsa. Peragit cōn-
silium Caesar equitēsque imperat cīvitātibus.

5. Hāc parte Galliae pācātā tōtus[5] et mente et animō
in bellum Trēverōrum et Ambiorīgis īnsistit. Cavarīnum
cum equitātū Senonum sēcum proficīscī iubet, nē quis 2
aut ex hūius īrācundiā[6] aut ex eō quod meruerat odiō[7]
cīvitātis[8] mōtus[9] exsistat. Hīs rēbus cōnstitūtīs, quod 3
prō explōrātō habēbat Ambiorīgem proeliō nōn esse con-
tentūrum, reliqua ēius cōnsilia animō circumspiciēbat.
Erant Menapiī propinquī Eburōnum fīnibus, perpetuīs 4
palūdibus silvīsque mūnītī, quī ūnī ex Galliā dē pāce
ad Caesarem lēgātōs numquam mīserant. Cum hīs esse
hospitium Ambiorīgī sciēbat; item per Trēverōs vēnisse
Germānīs in amīcitiam cōgnōverat. Haec prius illī[10] 5
dētrahenda auxilia exīstimābat quam ipsum bellō laces-
seret, nē dēspērātā salūte aut sē in Menapiōs abderet
aut cum Trānsrhēnānīs congredī[11] cōgerētur. Hōc initō 6
cōnsiliō tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta ad Labiēnum in
Trēverōs mittit duāsque ad eum legiōnēs proficīscī iubet;
ipse cum legiōnibus expedītīs quīnque in Menapiōs profi-

[1] 'pardon.' [2] '(of) summer.' [3] pred. gen. [4] 'protection.' [5] **totus—animo:** 'heart and soul.' [6] 'passion.' [7] 'hatred.' [8] subjective. [9] noun. [10] dat. of separation. [11] 'join.'

7 cīscitur. Illī nūllā coāctā manū, locī praesidiō frētī, in
silvās palūdēsque cōnfugiunt suaque eōdem cōnferunt.

6. Caesar, partītīs cōpiīs cum C. Fabiō lēgātō et M.
Crassō quaestōre celeriterque effectīs pontibus, adit trīper-
tītō,[1] aedificia vīcōsque incendit, māgnō pecoris atque
2 hominum numerō potītur. Quibus rēbus coāctī Menapiī
3 lēgātōs ad eum pācis petendae causā mittunt. Ille obsi-
dibus acceptīs hostium sē habitūrum numerō cōnfīrmat,
sī aut Ambiorīgem aut ēius lēgātōs fīnibus suīs recē-
4 pissent. Hīs cōnfīrmātīs rēbus Commium Atrebātem
cum equitātū cūstōdis locō in Menapiīs relinquit; ipse
in Trēverōs proficīscitur.

Labiēnus Trēverōs vincit.

7. Dum haec ā Caesare geruntur, Trēverī māgnīs
coāctīs peditātūs equitātūsque cōpiīs Labiēnum cum ūnā
2 legiōne quae in eōrum fīnibus hiemābat adorīrī parā-
bant; iamque ab eō nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, cum
3 duās vēnisse legiōnēs missū Caesaris cōgnōscunt. Positīs
castrīs ā[2] mīlibus passuum quīndecim auxilia Germā-
4 nōrum exspectāre cōnstituunt. Labiēnus, hostium cōgnitō
cōnsiliō, spērāns temeritāte[3] eōrum fore aliquam dīmicandī
facultātem, praesidiō quīnque cohortium impedīmentīs
relictō, cum vīgintī quīnque cohortibus māgnōque equitātū
contrā hostem proficīscitur, et mīlle passuum intermissō
5 spatiō castra commūnit. Erat inter Labiēnum atque
hostem difficilī trānsitū flūmen rīpīsque praeruptīs. Hōc
neque ipse trānsīre habēbat in animō neque hostēs trānsi-
6 tūrōs exīstimābat. Augēbātur auxiliōrum cotīdiē spēs.
Loquitur cōnsultō palam, quoniam Germānī appropinquāre

[1] from *trēs, pars.* [2] 'away.' [3] 'rashness.'

dīcantur, sēsē suās exercitūsque fortūnās in[1] dubium
nōn dēvocātūrum et posterō diē prīmā lūce castra
mōtūrum. Celeriter haec ad hostēs dēferuntur, ut ex 7
māgnō Gallōrum equitum numerō nōn nūllōs Gallicīs
rēbus favēre nātūra cōgēbat. Labiēnus nocte, tribūnīs 8
mīlitum prīmīsque ōrdinibus convocātīs, quid suī sit
cōnsiliī prōpōnit et, quō facilius hostibus timōris det
sūspiciōnem, māiōre strepitū et tumultū quam populī
Rōmānī fert cōnsuētūdō castra mōvērī iubet. Hīs rēbus 9
fugae similem profectiōnem efficit. Haec quoque per
explōrātōrēs ante lūcem in tantā propinquitāte castrō-
rum ad hostēs dēferuntur.

8. Vix āgmen novissimum extrā mūnītiōnēs prōcēs-
serat, cum Gallī cohortātī inter sē nē spērātam praedam
ex manibus dīmitterent; longum[2] esse perterritīs Rōmānīs
Germānōrum auxilium exspectāre; neque suam patī dīgni-
tātem ut tantīs cōpiīs tam exiguam manum praesertim
fugientem atque impedītam adorīrī nōn audeant flūmen
trānsīre et inīquō locō committere proelium nōn dubitant.
Quae fore sūspicātus Labiēnus, ut omnēs citrā flūmen 2
ēliceret, eādem ūsus simulātiōne itineris placidē[3] prōgre-
diēbātur. Tum praemissīs paulum impedīmentīs atque 3
in tumulō quōdam collocātīs, 'Habētis,' inquit, 'mīlitēs,
quam petīstis facultātem; hostem impedītō atque inīquō
locō tenētis; praestāte eandem nōbīs ducibus virtūtem 4
quam saepe numerō imperātōrī praestitistis, atque illum
adesse et haec cōram cernere[4] exīstimāte.' Simul sīgna 5
ad hostem convertī aciemque dīrigī[5] iubet et paucīs tur-
mīs[6] praesidiō ad impedīmenta dīmissīs reliquōs equitēs

[1] **in dubium devocare**: 'endanger.' [2] 'too long.' [3] 'calmly.'
[4] 'see.' [5] 'draw up.' [6] 'squadron.'

6 ad latera dispōnit. Celeriter nostrī clāmōre sublātō pīla
in hostēs immittunt. Illī, ubi praeter spem quōs fugere
crēdēbant īnfestīs[1] sīgnīs ad sē īre vīdērunt, impetum
nostrōrum ferre nōn potuērunt, āc prīmō concursū in
7 fugam coniectī proximās silvās petiērunt. Quōs Labiē-
nus equitātū cōnsectātus, māgnō numerō interfectō, com-
plūribus captīs, paucīs post diēbus cīvitātem recēpit.
Nam Germānī quī auxiliō veniēbant perceptā Trēve-
8 rōrum fugā sēsē domum contulērunt. Cum hīs pro-
pinquī Indutiomārī, quī dēfectiōnis auctōrēs fuerant,
9 comitātī[2] eōs ex cīvitāte excēssērunt. Cingetorīgī, quem
ab initiō permānsisse in officiō dēmōnstrāvimus, prīnci-
pātus atque imperium est trāditum.

ALTER CAESARIS IN GERMANIAM EXPEDITIO.

CC. 9–28.

Caesar, satisfactiōne Ubiōrum acceptā, contrā Suēbōs proficīscī cōnstituit. Suēbī in ūltimōs fīnēs suōs sē recipiunt.

9. Caesar postquam ex Menapiīs in Trēverōs vēnit,
2 duābus dē causīs Rhēnum trānsīre cōnstituit; quārum ūna
erat quod [Germānī] auxilia contrā sē Trēverīs mīserant;
3 altera, nē ad eōs Ambiorīx receptum habēret. Hīs cōn-
stitūtīs rēbus paulō suprā eum locum quō ante exerci-
4 tum trādūxerat facere pontem īnstituit. Nōtā atque
īnstitūtā ratiōne, māgnō mīlitum studiō, paucīs diēbus
5 opus efficitur. Fīrmō in Trēverīs ad pontem praesidiō
relictō, nē quis ab hīs subitō mōtus orerētur, reliquās
6 cōpiās equitātumque trādūcit. Ubiī, quī ante obsidēs
dederant atque in dēditiōnem vēnerant, pūrgandī suī
causā ad eum lēgātōs mittunt quī doceant neque auxi-

[1] 'hostile.' [2] 'accompany.'

lia ex suā cīvitāte in Trēverōs missa neque ab sē fidem
laesam[1]: petunt atque ōrant ut sibi parcat,[2] nē commūnī 7
odiō Germānōrum[3] innocentēs prō nocentibus poenās
pendant; sī amplius obsidum velit darī, pollicentur.
Cōgnitā Caesar causā reperit ab Suēbīs auxilia missa 8
esse; Ubiōrum satisfactiōnem accipit; aditūs viāsque in
Suēbōs perquīrit.[4]

10. Interim paucīs post diēbus fit ab Ubiīs certior Suē-
bōs omnēs in ūnum locum cōpiās cōgere atque iīs nātiōni-
bus quae sub eōrum sint imperiō dēnūntiāre ut auxilia
peditātūs equitātūsque mittant. Hīs cōgnitīs rēbus rem 2
frūmentāriam prōvidet, castrīs idōneum locum dēligit;
Ubiīs imperat ut pecora dēdūcant suaque omnia ex agrīs
in oppida cōnferant, spērāns barbarōs atque imperītōs
hominēs inopiā cibāriōrum adductōs ad inīquam pū-
gnandī condiciōnem posse dēdūcī; mandat ut crēbrōs 3
explōrātōrēs in Suēbōs mittant quaeque apud eōs geran-
tur cōgnōscant. Illī imperāta faciunt et paucīs diēbus 4
intermissīs referunt: Suēbōs omnēs, posteā quam cer-
tiōrēs nūntiī dē exercitū Rōmānōrum vēnerint, cum
omnibus suīs sociōrumque cōpiīs quās coēgissent, peni-
tus[5] ad extrēmōs fīnēs sē recēpisse; silvam esse ibi īn- 5
fīnītā māgnitūdine, quae appellētur Bacēnis; hanc
longē intrōrsus pertinēre et prō nātīvō mūrō obiectam
Chēruscōs ab Suēbōrum Suēbōsque ab Chēruscōrum
iniūriīs incursiōnibusque prohibēre; ad ēius silvae ini-
tium Suēbōs adventum Rōmānōrum exspectāre cōnsti-
tuisse.

[1] 'break.' [2] 'spare.' [3] objective. [4] simple verb, *quaerō*.
[5] 'clear.'

Mōrēs Gallōrum.

11. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est,[1] nōn aliē-
num[2] esse vidētur dē Galliae Germāniaeque mōribus et
2 quō[3] differant hae nātiōnēs inter sēsē prōpōnere. In
Galliā nōn sōlum in omnibus cīvitātibus atque in omnibus
pāgīs partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulīs domibus
3 factiōnēs sunt; eārumque factiōnum prīncipēs sunt quī[4]
summam auctōritātem eōrum iūdiciō habēre exīstimantur,
quōrum[5] ad arbitrium[6] iūdiciumque summa omnium
4 rērum cōnsiliōrumque redeat. Idque ēius reī causā
antīquitus īnstitūtum vidētur, nē quis ex plēbe contrā
potentiōrem auxiliī egēret[7]; suōs enim quisque opprimī
et circumvenīrī nōn patitur, neque, aliter sī faciat, ūllam
5 inter suōs habeat auctōritātem. Haec eadem ratiō est in
summā tōtīus Galliae; namque omnēs cīvitātēs dīvīsae
sunt in duās partēs.

12. Cum Caesar in Galliam vēnit, alterius factiōnis
2 prīncipēs erant Aeduī, alterius Sēquanī. Hī cum per sē
minus valērent, quod summa auctōritās antīquitus erat in
Aeduīs māgnaeque eōrum erant clientēlae,[8] Germānōs
atque Ariovistum sibi adiūnxerant eōsque ad sē māgnīs
3 iactūrīs[9] pollicitātiōnibusque[10] perdūxerant. Proeliīs vērō
complūribus factīs secundīs[11] atque omnī nōbilitāte Ae-
duōrum interfectā, tantum potentiā antecēsserant ut mā-
gnam partem clientium ab Aeduīs ad sē trādūcerent obsi-
4 dēsque ab hīs prīncipum fīliōs acciperent et pūblicē iūrāre
cōgerent nihil sē contrā Sēquanōs cōnsiliī initūrōs, et

[1] 'we have come.' [2] 'out of place.' [3] 'how.' [4] this clause is parenthetical, explaining **principes.** [5] characteristic. [6] 'discretion.' [7] 'lack' (with gen.). [8] 'dependency.' [9] 'concession.' [10] 'promise.' [11] 'successful.'

partem fīnitimī agrī per vim occupātam possidērent
Galliaeque tōtīus prīncipātum obtinērent. Quā necessi- 5
tāte adductus Dīviciācus auxiliī petendī causā Rōmam ad
senātum profectus īnfectā rē redierat. Adventū Caesaris 6
factā commūtātiōne rērum, obsidibus Aeduīs redditīs,
veteribus clientēlīs restitūtīs, novīs per Caesarem compa-
rātīs, quod iī quī sē ad eōrum amīcitiam aggregāverant
meliōre condiciōne atque aequiōre imperiō sē ūtī vidē-
bant, reliquīs rēbus eōrum grātiā dīgnitāteque amplifi-
cātā,[1] Sēquanī prīncipātum dīmīserant. In eōrum locum 7
Rēmī successerant; quōs quod adaequāre apud Caesarem
grātiā intellegēbātur, iī quī propter veterēs inimīcitiās
nūllō modō cum Aeduīs coniungī poterant sē Rēmīs in
clientēlam dicābant.[2] Hōs illī[3] dīligenter tuēbantur[4]; 8
ita et novam et repentē collēctam auctōritātem tenēbant.
Eō [tamen] statū rēs erat ut longē prīncipēs habērentur 9
Aeduī, secundum locum dīgnitātis Rēmī obtinērent.

13. In omnī Galliā eōrum hominum quī aliquō sunt
numerō[5] atque honōre genera sunt duo; nam plēbēs[6]
paene servōrum habētur locō, quae nihil audet per sē,
nūllī adhibētur cōnsiliō. Plērīque, cum aut aere[7] aliēnō 2
aut māgnitūdine tribūtōrum aut iniūriā potentiōrum pre-
muntur, sēsē in servitūtem dicant nōbilibus, quibus in 3
hōs eadem omnia sunt iūra quae dominīs[8] in servōs. Sed
dē hīs duōbus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum
equitum. Illī rēbus dīvīnīs intersunt, sacrificia pūblica 4
āc prīvāta prōcūrant,[9] religiōnēs interpretantur; ad eōs
māgnus adulēscentium numerus dīsciplīnae causā concur-

[1] 'increase.' [2] 'devote.' [3] i.e. *Remi*. [4] 'protect.' [5] 'account.' [6] 5th decl. [7] **aes alienum:** 'debt.' [8] 'master.' [9] i.e. 'attend to.'

5 rit, māgnōque hī[1] sunt apud eōs[2] honōre. Nam ferē dē
omnibus contrōversiīs pūblicīs prīvātīsque cōnstituunt; et,
sī quod est admissum[3] facinus, sī caedēs facta, sī dē hērē-
ditāte,[4] dē fīnibus contrōversia est, īdem dēcernunt;
6 praemia poenāsque cōnstituunt; sī quī aut prīvātus aut
populus eōrum dēcrētō nōn stetit, sacrificiīs interdīcunt.
7 Haec poena apud eōs est gravissima. Quibus ita est inter-
dictum, hī numerō impiōrum āc scelerātōrum[5] habentur,
hīs omnēs dēcēdunt, aditum eōrum sermōnemque dēfugi-
unt, nē quid ex contāgiōne[6] incommodī accipiant, neque
iīs petentibus iūs redditur neque honōs ūllus commūni-
8 cātur. Hīs autem omnibus druidibus praeest ūnus, quī
9 summam inter eōs habet auctōritātem. Hōc mortuō, aut
sī quī ex reliquīs excellit dīgnitāte, succēdit, aut, sī sunt
plūrēs parēs, suffrāgiō druidum, nōn numquam etiam
10 armīs dē prīncipātū contendunt. Hī certō annī tempore
in fīnibus Carnutum, quae regiō tōtīus Galliae media
habētur, cōnsīdunt in locō cōnsecrātō. Hūc omnēs
undique quī contrōversiās habent conveniunt eōrumque
11 dēcrētīs iūdiciīsque parent. Dīsciplīna[7] in Britanniā
reperta[8] atque inde in Galliam trānslāta exīstimātur,
12 et nunc quī dīligentius eam rem cōgnōscere volunt plē-
rumque illō[9] dīscendī causā proficīscuntur.

14. Druides ā bellō abesse cōnsuērunt neque tribūta
ūnā cum reliquīs pendunt [, mīlitiae[10] vacātiōnem omni-
2 umque rērum habent immūnitātem]. Tantīs excitātī
praemiīs et suā sponte multī in dīsciplīnam conveniunt
3 et ā parentibus propinquīsque mittuntur. Māgnum ibi

[1] i.e. *druides*. [2] i.e. *Gallōs*. [3] 'commit.' [4] 'inheritance.' [5] 'criminal.' [6] 'association.' [7] 'system.' [8] as pass., 'originate.' [9] adv. [10] 'war'; locative.

numerum versuum ēdīscere[1] dīcuntur. Itaque annōs nōn
nūllī vīcēnōs[2] in dīsciplīnā permanent. Neque fās esse
exīstimant ea līlterīs mandāre, cum in reliquīs ferē rēbus,
pūblicīs prīvātīsque ratiōnibus, Graecīs līlterīs ūtantur.
Id mihi duābus dē causīs īnstituisse videntur; quod neque 4
in vulgus dīsciplīnam[3] efferrī velint neque eōs quī dīscunt
līlterīs cōnfīsōs minus memoriae studēre, quod ferē plē-
rīsque accidit ut praesidiō līlterārum dīligentiam in per-
dīscendō[4] āc memoriam remittant. In prīmīs hōc volunt 5
persuādēre, nōn interīre animās,[5] sed ab aliīs post mortem
trānsīre ad aliōs; atque hōc māximē ad virtūtem exci-
tārī putant metū mortis neglēctō. Multa praetereā dē 6
sīderibus[6] atque eōrum mōtū, dē mundī[7] āc terrārum
māgnitūdine, dē rērum nātūrā, dē deōrum immortālium
vī āc potestāte disputant et iuventūtī trādunt.

15. Alterum genus est equitum. Hī, cum est ūsus[8]
atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod ferē ante Caesaris
adventum quotannīs accidere sōlēbat,[9] utī aut ipsī iniūriās
īnferrent aut illātās prōpulsārent), omnēs in bellō versan-
tur,[10] atque eōrum ut quisque est genere[11] cōpiīsque amplis- 2
simus, ita plūrimōs circum sē ambactōs[12] clientēsque habet.
Hanc ūnam grātiam potentiamque nōvērunt.

16. Nātiō est omnis Gallōrum admodum[13] dēdita religiō-
nibus,[14] atque ob eam causam quī sunt affectī graviōribus 2
morbīs,[15] quīque in proeliīs perīculīsque versantur, aut prō
victimīs hominēs immolant[16] aut sē immolātūrōs vovent[17]
administrīsque[18] ad ea sacrificia druidibus ūtuntur, quod,

[1] 'learn by heart.' [2] 'twenty' (each); distributive. [3] 'doctrine.'
[4] cf. *ē-dīscō*, above. [5] 'soul.' [6] 'star.' [7] 'universe.' [8] 'need.'
[9] 'be accustomed.' [10] 'engage.' [11] 'family'; specification. [12] 're-
tainer.' [13] 'very greatly.' [14] 'superstition.' [15] 'disease.' [16] 'sac-
rifice.' [17] 'vow.' [18] 'agent.'

3 prō vītā hominis nisi hominis vīta reddātur, nōn posse
deōrum immortālium nūmen[1] plācārī[2] arbitrantur, pū-
blicēque ēiusdem generis habent īnstitūta sacrificia. Aliī
4 immānī māgnitūdine simulācra[3] habent, quōrum con-
texta[4] vīminibus membra vīvīs[5] hominibus complent;
quibus succēnsīs circumventī flammā exanimantur homi-
nēs. Supplicia eōrum quī in fūrtō[6] aut latrōciniō[7] aut
5 aliquā noxiā[8] sint comprehēnsī grātiōra dīs immortāli-
bus esse arbitrantur; sed, cum ēius generis cōpia dēficit,
6 etiam ad innocentium supplicia dēscendunt.

17. Deōrum māximē Mercurium colunt: hūius sunt
plūrima simulācra; hunc omnium inventōrem artium
ferunt,[9] hunc viārum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad
quaestūs[10] pecūniae mercātūrāsque[11] habēre vim māximam
arbitrantur. Post hunc Apollinem et Mārtem et Iovem
2 et Minervam. Dē hīs eandem ferē quam reliquae gentēs
habent opīniōnem: Apollinem morbōs dēpellere, Miner-
vam operum[12] atque artificiōrum[13] initia trādere, Iovem
imperium caelestium[14] tenēre, Mārtem bella regere. Huīc,
3 cum proeliō dīmicāre cōnstituērunt, ea, quae bellō cēpe-
rint, plērumque dēvovent; cum superāvērunt, animālia
capta immolant, reliquās rēs in ūnum locum cōnferunt.
Multīs in cīvitātibus hārum rērum exstrūctōs cumulōs
4 locīs cōnsecrātīs cōnspicārī licet; neque saepe accidit
ut neglēctā quispiam religiōne aut capta[15] apud[16] sē occul-
5 tāre[17] aut posita[15] tollere audēret, gravissimumque eī reī
supplicium cum cruciātū cōnstitūtum est.

[1] (divine) 'power.' [2] 'appease.' [3] 'image.' [4] 'weave.' [5] 'living.' [6] 'theft.' [7] 'robbery.' [8] 'crime.' [9] 'call.' [10] 'acquisition.' [11] 'trade.' [12] 'trades.' [13] 'arts.' [14] (celestials) 'gods.' [15] i.e. *ea quae bellō cēperint.* [16] **apud se**: 'in his house.' [17] 'hide.'

18. Gallī sē omnēs ab Dīte[1] patre prōgnātōs[2] praedi-
cant idque ab druidibus prōditum dīcunt. Ob eam causam 2
spatia omnis temporis nōn numerō diērum sed noctium
fīniunt[3]; diēs nātālēs[4] et mēnsium et annōrum initia sīc
observant ut noctem diēs subsequātur. In reliquīs vītae 3
īnstitūtīs hōc ferē ab reliquīs differunt, quod suōs līberōs,
nisi cum adolēvērunt[5] ut mūnus[6] mīlitiae sustinēre
possint, palam ad sē adīre nōn patiuntur fīliumque pue-
rīlī aetāte in pūblicō in[7] cōnspectū patris assistere turpe[8]
dūcunt.

19. Virī, quantās pecūniās ab uxōribus dōtis[9] nōmine
accēpērunt, tantās ex suīs bonīs aestimātiōne factā cum
dōtibus commūnicant. Hūius omnis pecūniae coniūnc- 2
tim[10] ratiō[11] habētur frūctūsque[12] servantur; uter[13] eōrum
vītā superāvit, ad eum pars utrīusque cum frūctibus
superiōrum temporum pervenit. Virī in uxōrēs sīc utī 3
in līberōs vītae necisque habent potestātem; et cum pater
familiae illūstriōre locō nātus dēcēssit,[14] ēius propinquī
conveniunt et dē morte, sī rēs in sūspiciōnem venit, dē
uxōribus in servīlem[15] modum quaestiōnem habent et, sī
compertum est, īgnī atque omnibus tormentīs excruciātās[16]
interficiunt. Fūnera sunt prō cultū Gallōrum māgnifica 4
et sūmptuōsa; omniaque quae vīvīs cordī[17] fuisse arbi-
trantur in īgnem īnferunt, etiam animālia, āc paulō suprā
hanc memoriam servī et clientēs, quōs ab iīs dīlēctōs[18] esse
cōnstābat, iūstīs[19] fūnebribus[20] cōnfectīs ūnā cremābantur.

[1] *Dis* or *Pluto*, god of the lower world. [2] *prō* + (*g*)*nāscor*. [3] 'limit.' [4] 'of birth,' adj. [5] 'grow up.' [6] 'service.' [7] **in conspectu assistere**: 'appear' (with). [8] agrees with **filium assistere**. [9] 'dowry.' [10] 'jointly.' [11] 'account.' [12] 'income.' [13] 'whichever.' [14] sc. *vītā*. [15] '(the same as) of slaves.' [16] 'torture.' [17] 'to the heart'; here, 'dear.' [18] 'love.' [19] 'regular.' [20] neut. plu. of adj. = *funeribus*.

20. Quae cīvitātēs commodius suam rem pūblicam ad-
ministrāre exīstimantur habent lēgibus sānctum,[1] sī quis
quid dē rē pūblicā ā fīnitimīs rumōre ac fāmā accēperit,[2]
utī ad magistrātum dēferat nēve cum quō aliō commū-
2 nicet; quod saepe hominēs temerāriōs[3] atque imperītōs
falsīs rumōribus terrērī et ad facinus impellī et dē summīs
3 rēbus cōnsilium capere cōgnitum est. Magistrātūs quae
vīsa sunt occultant, quae esse ex ūsū iudicāvērunt multi-
tūdinī prōdunt. Dē rē pūblicā nisi per concilium loquī
nōn concēditur.

Mōrēs Germānōrum.

21. Germānī multum ab hāc cōnsuētūdine differunt.
Nam neque druides habent quī rēbus dīvīnīs praesint
2 neque sacrificiīs student. Deōrum numerō eōs sōlōs
dūcunt quōs cernunt et quōrum apertē opibus iuvantur,
Sōlem et Vulcānum et Lūnam; reliquōs nē fāmā quidem
3 accēpērunt.[2] Vīta omnis in vēnātiōnibus atque in studiīs
reī mīlitāris cōnsistit; ā parvīs[4] labōrī āc dūritiae[5]
4 student. Quī diūtissimē impuberēs[6] permānsērunt māxi-
mam inter suōs ferunt laudem; hōc alī[7] statūram, alī
5 vīrēs nervōsque confīrmārī putant. Intrā annum vērō
vīcēsimum[8] fēminae nōtitiam[9] habuisse in turpissimīs
habent rēbus; cūius reī nūlla est occultātiō,[10] quod et
prōmiscuē in flūminibus perluuntur[11] et pellibus aut
parvīs rēnōnum[12] tegimentīs[13] ūtuntur, māgnā corporis
parte nūdā.

22. Agrī cultūrae nōn student, māiorque pars eōrum

[1] 'ordain.' [2] 'hear of.' [3] 'reckless.' [4] 'boyhood.' [5] 'hardship.' [6] 'chaste.' [7] 'strengthen.' [8] 'twentieth.' [9] 'knowledge.' [10] 'concealment.' [11] 'bathe.' [12] 'reindeer skins.' [13] 'covering.'

vīctūs[1] in lacte, cāseō,[2] carne cōnsistit. Neque quisquam 2
agrī modum certum aut fīnēs habet propriōs[3]; sed magi-
strātūs āc prīncipēs in annōs singulōs gentibus cōgnātiō-
nibusque[4] hominum, quīque ūnā coiērunt,[5] quantum et
quō locō vīsum est agrī attribuunt, atque annō post aliō[6]
trānsīre cōgunt. Eius reī multās afferunt causās: nē 3
assiduā[7] cōnsuētūdine captī[8] studium bellī gerendī agrī
cultūrā commūtent[9]; nē lātōs fīnēs parāre[10] studeant
potentiōrēs, atque humiliōrēs possessiōnibus expellant;
nē accūrātius ad frīgora atque aestūs[11] vītandōs aedifi-
cent; nē qua oriātur pecūniae cupiditās, quā ex rē facti-
ōnēs dissēnsiōnēsque nāscuntur; ut animī aequitāte[12] 4
plēbem contineant, cum suās quisque opēs cum potentis-
simīs aequārī videat.

23. Cīvitātibus māxima laus est quam lātissimē circum
sē vāstātīs fīnibus sōlitūdinēs habēre. Hōc proprium[13] 2
virtūtis exīstimant, expulsōs agrīs fīnitimōs cēdere, neque
quemquam prope sē audēre cōnsistere; simul hōc sē fore 3
tūtiōrēs arbitrantur, repentīnae incursiōnis timōre sub-
lātō. Cum bellum cīvitās aut illātum dēfendit aut īnfert, 4
magistrātūs quī eī bellō praesint, et vītae necisque
habeant potestātem, dēliguntur. In pāce nūllus est com- 5
mūnis magistrātus, sed prīncipēs regiōnum atque pāgō-
rum inter suōs iūs[14] dīcunt contrōversiāsque minuunt.
Latrōcinia nūllam habent īnfāmiam quae extrā fīnēs 6
cūiusque cīvitātis fīunt, atque ea iuventūtis exercendae
āc dēsidiae[15] minuendae causā fierī praedicant. Atque 7
ubi quis ex prīncipibus in conciliō dīxit sē ducem fore,

[1] 'food.' [2] 'cheese.' [3] 'private.' [4] 'clan.' [5] *con, eō.* [6] adv. [7] 'continued.' [8] 'charm.' [9] 'exchange (for).' [10] 'acquire.' [11] 'heat.' [12] 'contentment.' [13] 'evidence' (pred.). [14] **ius dicunt:** 'act as judges.' [15] 'idleness.'

quī sequī velint profiteantur,[1] cōnsurgunt iī quī et
causam et hominem probant[2] suumque auxilium polli-
8 centur atque ā multitūdine collaudantur; quī ex hīs
secūtī nōn sunt in dēsertōrum āc prōditōrum[3] numerō
dūcuntur omniumque hīs rērum posteā fidēs dērogātur.[4]
9 Hospitem[5] violāre fās nōn putant; quī quācumque dē causā
ad eōs vēnērunt ab iniūriā prohibent, sānctōsque[6] habent,
hīsque omnium domūs patent vīctusque commūnicātur.

24. Āc fuit anteā tempus cum Germānōs Gallī virtūte
superārent, ūltrō bella īnferrent, propter hominum multi-
tūdinem agrīque inopiam trāns Rhēnum colōniās mitte-
2 rent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germāniae sunt, loca
circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratosthenī[7] et quibus-
dam Graecīs fāmā nōtam esse videō, quam illī Orcyniam
appellant, Volcae Tectosagēs occupāvērunt atque ibi cōn-
3 sēdērunt; quae gēns ad hōc tempus hīs sēdibus sēsē
continet summamque habet iūstitiae et bellicae laudis
4 opīniōnem. Nunc quod in eādem inopiā, egestāte,[8]
patientiā,[9] quā ante, Germānī permanent, eōdem vīctū et
5 cultū corporis ūtuntur; Gallīs autem prōvinciārum pro-
pinquitās et trānsmarīnārum rērum nōtitia multa[10] ad
6 cōpiam atque ūsūs largītur[11]; paulātim assuēfactī superārī
multīsque victī proeliīs nē sē quidem ipsī cum illīs virtūte
comparant.

Hercynia silva et ferārum quae in eā nāscuntur, quaedam genera dēscrībuntur.

25. Hūius Hercyniae silvae, quae suprā dēmōnstrāta est, lātitūdō novem diērum iter[12] expedītō[13] patet; nōn

[1] imper. in ind. dis.; translate, 'for those . . . to signify it.' [2] 'approve.' [3] 'traitor.' [4] 'withdraw.' [5] 'guest.' [6] 'sacred.' [7] nom. *Eratosthenēs.* [8] 'need.' [9] 'suffering.' [10] acc. [11] 'afford.' [12] cognate acc. [13] (one) 'unencumbered.'

enim aliter fīnīrī[1] potest, neque mēnsūrās itinerum nōvē-
runt. Oritur ab Helvētiōrum et Nemetum et Rauracō- 2
rum fīnibus rēctāque[2] flūminis Dānuviī[3] regiōne perti-
net ad fīnēs Dācōrum et Anartium; hinc sē flectit sini- 3
strōrsus[4] dīversīs[5] ā flūmine regiōnibus multārumque
gentium fīnēs propter māgnitūdinem attingit; neque 4
quisquam est hūius[6] Germāniae quī sē [aut audīsse] aut
adīsse ad initium ēius silvae dīcat, cum diērum iter sexā-
gintā prōcēsserit, aut quō ex locō oriātur accēperit; mul-
taque in eā genera ferārum[7] nāscī cōnstat quae reliquīs 5
in locīs vīsa nōn sint; ex quibus quae māximē differant
ā cēterīs et memoriae prōdenda videantur haec sunt.

26. Est bōs[8] cervī[9] figūrā cūius ā mediā fronte[10] inter
aurēs[11] ūnum cornū exsistit excelsius[12] magisque dērēctum[13]
hīs quae nōbīs nōta sunt cornibus; ab ēius summō sīc ut 2
palmae rāmīque[14] lātē diffunduntur.[15] Eadem est fēminae
marisque[16] nātūra, eadem fōrma māgnitūdōque cornuum.

27. Sunt item quae appellantur alcēs.[17] Hārum est
cōnsimilis caprīs[18] figūra et varietās[19] pellium; sed māgni-
tūdine paulō antecēdunt mutilaeque[20] sunt cornibus et
crūra[21] sine nōdīs[22] articulīsque[23] habent; neque quiētis
causā prōcumbunt[24] neque, sī quō afflīctae cāsū conci- 2
dērunt, ērigere sēsē āc sublevāre possunt. Hīs sunt 3
arborēs prō cubīlibus[25]; ad eās sē applicant atque ita
paulum modo reclīnātae quiētem capiunt. Quārum ex 4

[1] 'measure.' [2] **recta regione:** 'parallel' (to). [3] 'Danube.' [4] 'to the left.' [5] 'remote.' [6] 'this part of.' [7] 'wild animal.' [8] 'ox.' [9] 'stag.' [10] 'forehead.' [11] 'ear.' [12] 'elevated.' [13] 'straight.' [14] hendiadys; 'palm branches.' [15] 'spread out.' [16] 'male.' [17] 'elk.' [18] 'goat.' [19] 'different colors.' [20] 'broken'; **mutilae sunt cornibus:** 'have broken horns.' [21] 'leg.' [22] 'enlargement.' [23] 'joint.' [24] 'lie down.' [25] 'resting-place.'

vēstīgiīs[1] cum est animadversum ā vēnātōribus[2] quō sē
recipere cōnsuērint, omnēs[3] eō locō aut ab rādīcibus
subruunt[4] aut accīdunt[5] arborēs, tantum ut summa[6]
5 speciēs eārum stantium relinquātur. Hūc cum sē cōn-
suētūdine reclīnāvērunt, īnfīrmās arborēs pondere afflī-
gunt atque ūnā ipsae concidunt.

28. Tertium est genus eōrum quī urī[7] appellantur.
Hī sunt māgnitūdine paulō īnfrā elephantōs, speciē et
2 colōre et figūrā taurī.[8] Māgna vīs eōrum est et māgna
velōcitās, neque hominī neque ferae quam cōnspexērunt
3 parcunt. Hōs studiōsē[9] foveīs[10] captōs interficiunt; hōc
sē labōre dūrant[11] adulēscentēs atque hōc genere vēnāti-
ōnis exercent, et quī plūrimōs ex hīs interfēcērunt, relātīs
in pūblicum cornibus quae sint tēstimōniō, māgnam
4 ferunt laudem. Sed assuēscere[12] ad hominēs et mānsuē-
5 fieri[13] nē parvulī quidem exceptī possunt. Amplitūdō
cornuum et figūra et speciēs multum ā nostrōrum boum
6 cornibus differt. Haec studiōsē conquīsīta ab labrīs[14]
argentō[15] circumclūdunt[16] atque in amplissimīs epulīs[17]
prō pōculīs[18] ūtuntur.

III. BELLUM CONTRA AMBIORIGEM ET EBURONES.

cc. 29–44.

Caesar, ex Germāniā reversus, in Eburōnum fīnēs exercitum dūcit, et omnēs Gallōs ad illōs dīripiendōs ēvocat.

29. Caesar, postquam per Ubiōs explōrātōrēs comperit
Suēbōs sēsē in silvās recēpisse, inopiam frūmentī veritus,

[1] 'track.' [2] 'hunter.' [3] with **arbores.** [4] 'dig under.' [5] 'cut into.' [6] 'exact.' [7] 'urochs.' [8] 'bull.' [9] 'cautiously.' [10] 'pit.' [11] 'harden.' [12] cf. *cōnsuēscō.* [13] 'tame.' [14] 'edge.' [15] 'silver. [16] 'line.' [17] 'banquet.' [18] 'drinking cup.'

quod, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, minimē hominēs Ger-
māni agrī cultūrae student, cōnstituit nōn prōgredī lon-
gius; sed nē omnīnō metum reditūs suī barbarīs tolleret 2
atque ut eōrum auxilia tardāret, reductō exercitū partem
ūltimam pontis, quae rīpās Ubiōrum contingēbat, in longi-
tūdinem pedum ducentōrum rescindit, atque in extrēmō 3
ponte turrim tabulātōrum[1] quattuor cōnstituit praesi-
diumque cohortium duodecim pontis tuendī causā pōnit
māgnīsque eum locum mūnītiōnibus fīrmat. Eī locō
praesidiōque C. Volcācium Tullum adulēscentem praeficit.
Ipse, cum mātūrēscere[2] frūmenta inciperent, ad bellum 4
Ambiorīgis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est
tōtīus Galliae māxima atque ab rīpīs Rhēnī fīnibusque
Trēverōrum ad Nerviōs pertinet mīlibusque amplius quīn-
gentīs in longitūdinem patet, L. Minucium Basilum cum
omnī equitātū praemittit, sī[3] quid celeritāte itineris
atque oportūnitāte temporis prōficere possit; monet ut 5
īgnēs in castrīs fierī prohibeat, nē qua ēius adventūs
procul sīgnificātiō fīat; sēsē cōnfestim subsequī dīcit.

30. Basilus ut imperātum est facit. Celeriter con-
trāque omnium opīniōnem cōnfectō itinere multōs in
agrīs inopīnantēs dēprehendit; eōrum indiciō[4] ad ipsum
Ambiorīgem contendit, quō in locō cum paucīs equitibus
esse dīcēbātur. Multum cum in omnibus rēbus tum in 2
rē mīlitārī potest fortūna. Nam ut māgnō accidit[5] cāsū
ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparātum incideret,
priusque[6] ēius adventus ab hominibus vidērētur quam
fāma āc nūntius afferrētur, sīc māgnae fuit fortūnae,
omnī[7] mīlitārī īnstrūmentō quod circum sē habēbat

[1] 'story.' [2] 'ripen.' [3] 'to see if.' [4] 'information.' [5] perfect.
[6] translate **prius** with **quam**, below. [7] **omni erepto**; concessive.

ēreptō, raedīs[1] equīsque comprehēnsīs, ipsum effugere
3 mortem. Sed hōc factum est, quod, aedificiō circumdatō
silvā, ut sunt ferē domicilia Gallōrum, quī vītandī aestūs
causā plērumque silvārum āc flūminum petunt propin-
quitātēs, comitēs[2] familiārēsque ēius angustō in locō
4 paulisper equitum nostrōrum vim sustinuērunt. Hīs
pūgnantibus illum in equum quīdam ex suīs intulit; fugi-
entem silvae tēxērunt. Sīc et ad subeundum perīculum
et ad vītandum multum fortūna valuit.

31. Ambiorīx cōpiās suās iūdiciōne[3] nōn condūxerit,
quod proeliō dīmicandum nōn exīstimāret, an tempore
exclūsus et repentīnō equitum adventū prohibitus, cum
2 reliquum exercitum subsequī crēderet, dubium est; sed
certē dīmissīs per agrōs nūntiīs sibi quemque cōnsulere
iūssit. Quōrum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in con-
3 tinentēs palūdēs profūgit; quī proximī Ōceanō fuērunt,
hī īnsulīs sēsē occultāvērunt, quās aestūs[4] efficere cōn-
4 suērunt; multī ex suīs fīnibus ēgressī sē suaque omnia
aliēnissimīs[5] crēdidērunt. Catuvolcus, rēx dīmidiae partis
5 Eburōnum, quī ūnā cum Ambiorīge cōnsilium inierat,
aetāte iam cōnfectus, cum labōrem bellī aut fugae ferre
nōn posset, omnibus precibus dētēstātus[6] Ambiorīgem,
quī ēius cōnsiliī auctor fuisset, taxō,[7] cūius māgna in
Galliā Germāniāque cōpia est, sē exanimāvit.

32. Sēgnī Condrūsīque ex gente et numerō Germānō-
rum, quī sunt inter Eburōnēs Trēverōsque, lēgātōs ad
Caesarem mīsērunt ōrātum nē sē in hostium numerō
dūceret nēve omnium Germānōrum quī essent citrā

[1] 'wagon.' [2] 'companion.' [3] **-ne**: 'whether'; **iudicio**: 'deliberately'; explained by **quod—existimaret.** [4] 'tide.' [5] 'utter stranger.' [6] 'curse,' [7] '(the fruit or leaves of) the yew-tree.'

Rhēnum ūnam esse causam iūdicāret; nihil sē dē bellō
cōgitāvisse, nūlla Ambiorīgī auxilia mīsisse. Caesar ex-
plōrātā rē quaestiōne captīvōrum, sī quī ad eōs Eburōnēs 2
ex fugā convēnissent, ad sē ut redūcerentur imperāvit;
sī ita fēcissent, fīnēs eōrum sē violātūrum[1] negāvit. Tum 3
cōpiīs in trēs partēs distribūtīs impedīmenta omnium
legiōnum Aduatucam contulit. Id castellī nōmen est. 4
Hōc ferē est in mediīs Eburōnum fīnibus, ubi Titūrius
atque Aurunculēius hiemandī causā cōnsēderant. Hunc 5
cum reliquīs rēbus locum probābat, tum quod superiōris
annī mūnītiōnēs integrae manēbant, ut mīlitum labōrem
sublevāret. Praesidiō impedīmentīs legiōnem quartam
decimam relīquit, ūnam ex hīs tribus quās proximē
cōnscrīptās ex Ītaliā trādūxerat. Eī legiōnī castrīsque 6
Q. Tullium Cicerōnem praefēcit ducentōsque equitēs eī
attribuit.

33. Partītō exercitū T. Labiēnum cum legiōnibus tribus
ad[2] Ōceanum versus in eās partēs quae Menapiōs attin-
gunt proficīscī iubet; C. Trebōnium cum parī legiōnum 2
numerō ad eam regiōnem quae Aduatucīs adiacet dē-
populandam mittit; ipse cum reliquīs tribus ad flūmen 3
Scaldim, quod īnfluit in Mosam, extrēmāsque Arduennae
partēs īre cōnstituit, quō cum paucīs equitibus profectum
Ambiorīgem audiēbat. Discēdēns post diem septimum 4
sēsē reversūrum cōnfīrmat, quam ad diem eī legiōnī quae
in praesidiō relinquēbātur frūmentum dēbērī[3] sciēbat.
Labiēnum Trebōniumque hortātur, sī reī pūblicae com- 5
modō facere possint, ad eam diem revertantur, ut, rūrsus
commūnicātō cōnsiliō explōrātīsque hostium ratiōnibus,
aliud initium bellī capere possint.

[1] 'invade.' [2] **ad versus**: 'toward.' [3] 'owe.'

34. Erat, ut suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, manus certa nūlla,
nōn oppidum, nōn praesidium, quod sē armīs dēfenderet,
2 sed in omnēs partēs dīspersa multitūdō. Ubi cuīque aut
vallēs abdita aut locus silvestris aut palūs impedīta spem
3 praesidiī aut salūtis aliquam offerēbat, cōnsēderat. Haec
loca vīcīnitātibus[1] erant nōta, māgnamque rēs dīligentiam
requīrēbat, nōn in summā[2] exercitūs tuendā (nūllum enim
poterat ūniversīs[3] ā perterritīs āc dīspersīs perīculum
accidere), sed in singulīs mīlitibus cōnservandīs; quae
tamen ex parte rēs ad salūtem exercitūs pertinēbat.
4 Nam et praedae cupiditās multōs longius sēvocābat, et
silvae incertīs occultīsque itineribus cōnfertōs adīre pro-
5 hibēbant. Sī negōtium cōnficī stirpemque[4] hominum
scelerātōrum interficī vellet, dīmittendae plūrēs manūs
6 dīdūcendīque erant mīlitēs; sī continēre ad sīgna mani-
pulōs vellet, ut īnstitūta ratiō et cōnsuētūdō exercitūs
Rōmānī pōstulābat, locus ipse erat praesidiō barbarīs,
neque ex[5] occultō īnsidiandī et dīspersōs circumveniendī
7 singulīs deerat audācia. Ut[6] in ēius modī difficultātibus,
quantum[7] dīligentiā prōviderī poterat prōvidēbātur; ut
potius[8] in nocendō[9] aliquid praetermitterētur, etsī omnium
animī ad ulcīscendum ārdēbant, quam cum aliquō mīlitum
8 dētrīmentō nocērētur.[9] Dīmittit ad fīnitimās cīvitātēs
nūntiōs Caesar; omnēs ēvocat spē praedae ad dīripiendōs
Eburōnēs, ut potius in silvīs Gallōrum vīta quam legiō-
nārius mīles perīclitētur[10]; simul ut māgnā multitūdine
circumfūsā prō tālī[11] facinore stirps āc nōmen cīvitātis
tollātur.[12] Māgnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

[1] '(people of the) neighborhood.' [2] 'whole.' [3] dat.; sc. *nostrīs.*
[4] 'stock.' [5] **ex—insidiandi**: 'attack from ambush.' [6] (as) 'being.'
[7] 'as far as.' [8] with **quam,** below. [9] sc. *hostibus.* [10] 'endanger.'
[11] 'such.' [12] 'destroy.'

Sugambrī ēius reī fāmā mōtī Rhēnum trānseunt, sed mūtātō cōnsiliō Cicerōnis castra adoriuntur.

35. Haec in omnibus Eburōnum partibus gerēbantur,
diēsque appetēbat[1] septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad
impedīmenta legiōnemque revertī cōnstituerat. Hīc[2] 2
quantum in bellō fortūna possit et quantōs afferat cāsūs
cōgnōscī potuit. Dissipātīs āc perterritīs hostibus, ut 3
dēmōnstrāvimus, manus erat nūlla quae parvam modo[3]
causam timōris afferret. Trāns Rhēnum ad Germānōs 4
pervenit fāma dīripī Eburōnēs atque ūltrō[4] omnēs ad
praedam ēvocārī. Cōgunt equitum duo mīlia Sugambrī, 5
quī sunt proximī Rhēnō, ā quibus receptōs ex fugā Tenc-
terōs atque Usipetēs suprā docuimus. Trānseunt Rhēnum 6
nāvibus ratibusque trīgintā[5] mīlibus passuum īnfrā eum
locum ubi pōns erat perfectus praesidiumque ā Caesare
relictum: prīmōs Eburōnum fīnēs adeunt; mūltōs ex
fugā dīspersōs excipiunt,[6] māgnō pecoris numerō, cūius
sunt cupidissimī barbarī, potiuntur. Invītātī praedā 7
longius prōcēdunt. Nōn hōs palūdēs bellō latrōciniīsque
nātōs, nōn silvae morantur. Quibus in locīs sit Caesar,
ex captīvīs quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt om-
nemque exercitum discēssisse cōgnōscunt. Atque ūnus 8
ex captīvīs: 'Quid vōs,' inquit, 'hanc miseram āc tenuem[7]
sectāminī[8] praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortūnātis-
simōs? Tribus hōrīs Aduatucam venīre potestis; hūc
omnēs suās fortūnās exercitus Rōmānōrum contulit; prae- 9
sidiī tantum est ut nē mūrus quidem cingī[9] possit, neque
quisquam ēgredī extrā mūnītiōnēs audeat.' Hāc oblātā 10
spē Germānī quam nactī erant praedam in occultō re-

[1] 'be at hand.' [2] adv.; 'here.' [3] 'even.' [4] 'further.' [5] 'thirty.' [6] 'come upon.' [7] 'precarious.' [8] 'run after.' [9] 'man.'

linquunt; ipsī Aduatucam contendunt ūsī eōdem duce
cūius haec indiciō cōgnōverant.

36. Cicerō, quī omnēs superiōrēs diēs praeceptīs Caesa-
ris summā dīligentiā mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset āc
nē cālōnem quidem quemquam extrā mūnītiōnem ēgredī
passus esset, septimō diē diffīdēns[1] dē numerō diērum
Caesarem fidem servātūrum, quod longius prōgressum
audiēbat neque ūlla dē reditū ēius fāma afferēbātur;
2 simul eōrum permōtus vōcibus, quī illīus patientiam[2]
paene obsessiōnem[3] appellābant, sī quidem ex castrīs
ēgredī nōn licēret, nūllum ēius modī cāsum exspectāns,
quō,[4] novem oppositīs[5] legiōnibus māximōque equitātū,
dīspersīs āc paene dēlētīs hostibus, in mīlibus passuum
tribus offendī[6] posset, quīnque cohortēs frūmentātum
in proximās segetēs[7] mittit, quās inter et castra ūnus
3 omnīnō collis intererat. Complūrēs erant in castrīs ex
legiōnibus aegrī[8] relictī; ex quibus quī hōc spatiō diērum
convaluerant,[9] circiter trēcentī, sub vēxillō ūnā mittun-
tur; māgna praetereā multitūdō cālōnum, māgna vīs
iūmentōrum, quae in castrīs subsēderat,[10] factā potestāte
sequitur.

37. Hōc ipsō tempore et cāsū Germānī equitēs inter-
veniunt[11] prōtinusque[12] eōdem illō quō vēnerant cursū ab
2 decumānā portā in castra irrumpere cōnantur; nec prius
sunt vīsī, obiectīs ab eā parte silvīs, quam castrīs appro-
pinquārent, ūsque[13] eō ut quī sub vāllō tenderent[14]
3 mercātōrēs recipiendī suī facultātem nōn habērent. Ino-

[1] 'doubt.' [2] 'patient waiting.' [3] 'siege.' [4] abl. of means = *ut eō*. [5] 'being in the field.' [6] **offendi posset**: 'harm could be done.' [7] 'corn fields.' [8] 'ill.' [9] 'get well.' [10] 'remain behind.' [11] 'appear.' [12] 'immediately.' [13] **usque eo**: '(and were) so near, even.' [14] 'pitch (a tent).'

pīnantēs nostrī rē novā perturbantur, āc vix prīmum
impetum cohors in statiōne sustinet. Circumfunduntur[1] 4
hostēs ex reliquīs partibus, sī quem aditum reperīre
possint. Aegrē portās nostrī tuentur, reliquōs aditūs 5
locus ipse per sē mūnītiōque dēfendit. Tōtīs trepidātur[2] 6
castrīs atque alius ex aliō causam tumultūs quaerit;
neque quō sīgna ferantur neque quam in partem quisque
conveniat prōvident. Alius castra iam capta prōnūntiat, 7
alius dēlētō exercitū atque imperātōre victōrēs barbarōs
vēnisse contendit; plērīque novās[3] sibi ex locō religiōnēs 8
fingunt Cottaeque et Titūriī calamitātem, quī in eōdem
occiderint castellō, ante oculōs pōnunt. Tālī timōre 9
omnibus perterritīs cōnfīrmātur opīniō barbarīs, ut ex
captīvō audierant, nūllum esse intus praesidium. Per- 10
rumpere nītuntur sēque ipsī adhortantur nē tantam
fortūnam ex manibus dīmittant.

38. Erat aeger in praesidiō relictus P. Sextius Baculus,
quī prīmum pīlum apud Caesarem dūxerat, cūius men-
tiōnem superiōribus proeliīs fēcimus, āc diem iam quīn-
tum cibō caruerat.[4] Hīc diffīsus[5] suae atque omnium 2
salūtī inermis ex tabernāculō prōdit; videt imminēre[6]
hostēs atque in summō rem esse discrīmine[7]; capit arma
ā proximīs atque in portā cōnsistit. Cōnsequuntur hunc 3
centuriōnēs ēius cohortis quae in statiōne erat; paulisper
ūnā proelium sustinent. Relinquit[8] animus Sextium 4
gravibus acceptīs vulneribus; aegrē per[9] manūs trāditus
servātur. Hōc spatiō interpositō reliquī sēsē cōnfīrmant 5

[1] 'swarm around'; middle voice. [2] 'be in confusion'; impers. [3] **novas—fingunt**: 'invent new superstitions from the locality.' [4] 'be without.' [5] 'distrust.' [6] 'be close at hand.' [7] 'danger.' [8] **relinquit animus**: 'faint.' [9] **per manus**: 'from hand to hand.'

tantum ut in mūnītiōnibus cōnsistere audeant speciemque dēfēnsōrum praebeant.

Adventū Caesaris dēspērātā castrōrum expūgnātiōne domum revertuntur.

39. Interim cōnfectā frūmentātiōne mīlitēs nostrī clā-
mōrem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equitēs; quantō rēs sit in
2 perīculō cōgnōscunt. Hīc vērō nūlla mūnītiō est quae
perterritōs recipiat; modo cōnscrīptī atque ūsūs mīlitāris
imperītī ad tribūnum mīlitum centuriōnēsque ōra con-
3 vertunt; quid ab hīs praecipiātur exspectant. Nēmō est
4 tam fortis quīn reī novitāte perturbētur. Barbarī sīgna
procul cōnspicātī oppūgnātiōne dēsistunt: redīsse prīmō
legiōnēs crēdunt, quās longius discēssisse ex captīvīs
cōgnōverant; posteā dēspectā paucitāte ex omnibus parti-
bus impetum faciunt.

40. Cālōnēs in proximum tumulum prōcurrunt. Hinc
celeriter dēiectī sē in sīgna manipulōsque cōiciunt; eō
2 magis timidōs perterrent mīlitēs. Aliī cuneō[1] factō ut
celeriter perrumpant cēnsent,[2] quoniam tam propinqua
sint castra, et sī pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at
3 reliquōs servārī posse [cōnfīdunt]; aliī ut in iugō cōnsi-
4 stant atque eundem omnēs ferant cāsum. Hōc veterēs
nōn probant mīlitēs, quōs sub vēxillō ūnā profectōs
docuimus. Itaque inter sē cohortātī, duce C. Trebōniō,
equite Rōmānō, quī iīs erat praepositus, per mediōs ho-
stēs perrumpunt incolumēsque ad ūnum omnēs in castra
5 perveniunt. Hōs subsecūtī cālōnēs equitēsque eōdem
6 impetū mīlitum virtūte servantur. At iī quī in iugō

[1] 'wedge'; this abl. abs. belongs in sense within the *ut* clause, which is obj. of **censent**. [2] 'determine.'

cōnstiterant, nūllō etiam nunc ūsū reī mīlitāris perceptō,
neque in eō quod probāverant cōnsiliō permanēre, ut sē
locō superiōre dēfenderent, neque eam[1] quam prōfuisse[2]
aliīs vim celeritātemque vīderant, imitārī potuērunt; sed
sē in castra recipere cōnātī inīquum in locum dēmīsērunt.
Centuriōnēs, quōrum nōn nūllī ex īnferiōribus ōrdinibus 7
reliquārum legiōnum virtūtis causā in superiōres erant
ōrdinēs hūius legiōnis trāductī, nē ante partam[3] reī mīli-
tāris laudem āmitterent, fortissimē pūgnantēs concidē-
runt. Mīlitum pars, hōrum virtūte submōtīs hostibus, 8
praeter spem incolumis in castra pervēnit; pars ā bar-
barīs circumventa periit.

41. Germānī dēspērātā expūgnātiōne castrōrum, quod
nostrōs iam cōnstitisse in mūnītiōnibus vidēbant, cum eā
praedā quam in silvīs dēposuerant trāns Rhēnum sēsē
recēpērunt. Āc tantus fuit etiam post discēssum hostium 2
terror ut eā nocte cum C. Volusēnus missus cum equi-
tātū in castra vēnisset, fidem nōn faceret adesse cum
incolumī Caesarem exercitū. Sīc omnium animōs timor 3
occupāverat ut paene aliēnātā[4] mente, dēlētīs omni-
bus cōpiīs, equitātum sē ex fugā recēpisse dīcerent, neque
incolumī exercitū Germānōs castra oppūgnātūrōs fuisse
cōntenderent. Quem timōrem Caesaris adventus sustulit. 4

42. Reversus ille, ēventūs bellī nōn īgnōrāns, ūnum
quod cohortēs ex statiōne et praesidiō essent ēmissae
questus—nē minimum quidem cāsuī locum relinquī dē-
buisse—multum[5] fortūnam in repentīnō hostium adventū 2
potuisse iūdicāvit; multō etiam amplius, quod paene ab

[1] agreeing w. **vim celeritatemque,** which is attracted into the rel. clause. [2] 'be of advantage.' [3] 'gain.' [4] **alienata mente:** 'having lost their reason.' [5] adv. acc. with **potuisse.**

3 ipsō vāllō portīsque castrōrum barbarōs āvertisset. Quā-
rum omnium rērum māximē admīrandum vidēbātur,
quod Germānī, quī eō cōnsiliō Rhēnum trānsierant, ut
Ambiorīgis fīnēs dēpopulārentur, ad castra Rōmānōrum
dēlātī optātissimum[1] Ambiorīgī beneficium obtulerant.

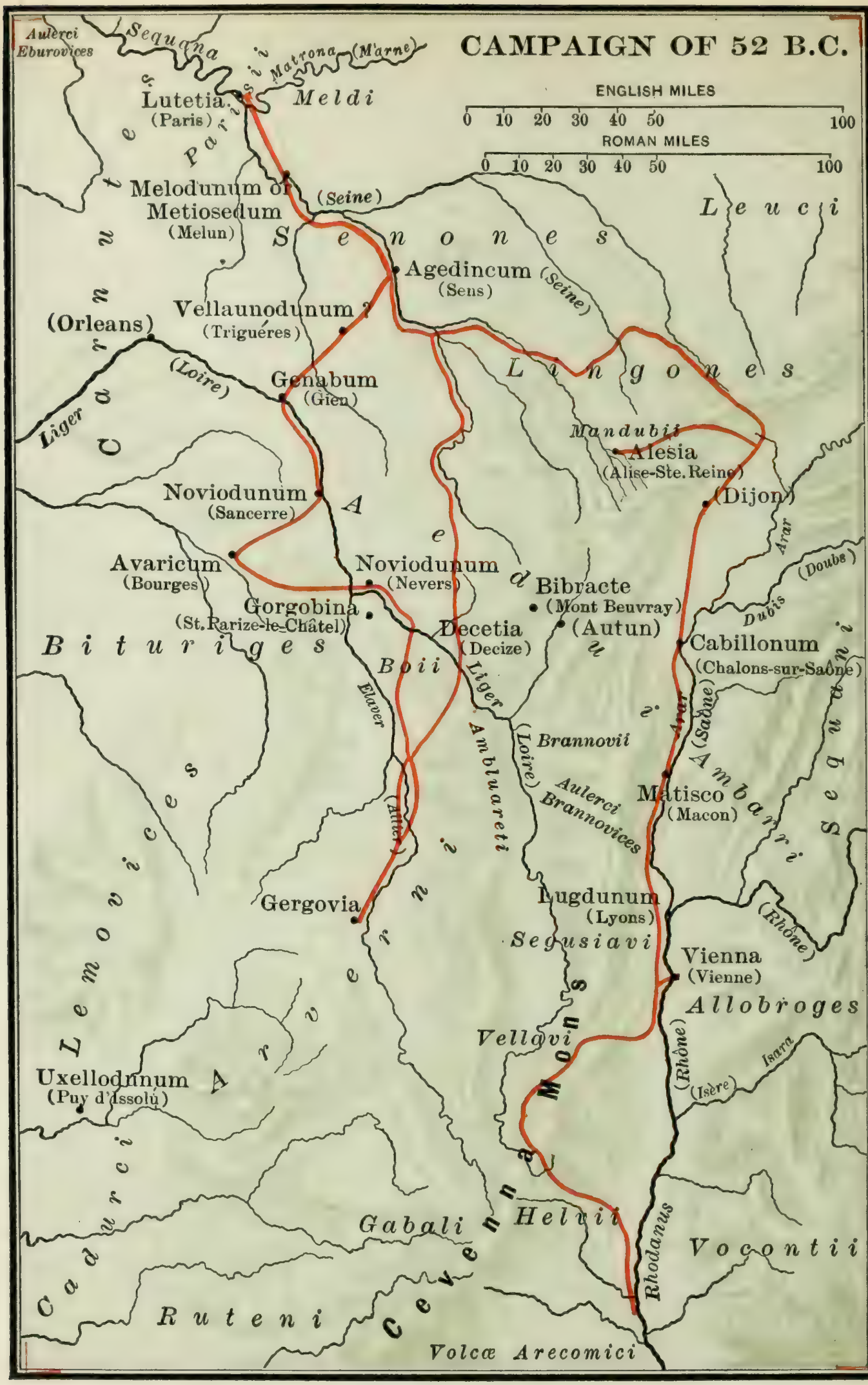
Caesar Eburōnum fīnēs vāstat; tum conciliō habitō et suppliciō dē Accōne sūmptō in Ītaliam proficīscitur.

43. Caesar rūrsus ad vēxandōs hostēs profectus, māgnō
coāctō numerō ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus [equitum] in omnēs
2 partēs dīmittit. Omnēs vīcī atque omnia aedificia quae
quisque cōnspexerat incendēbantur; praeda ex omnibus
3 locīs agēbātur; frūmenta nōn sōlum ā tantā multitūdine
iūmentōrum atque hominum cōnsūmēbantur, sed etiam
annī tempore atque imbribus prōcubuerant, ut, sī quī
etiam in praesentiā sē occultāssent, tamen hīs dēductō
4 exercitū rērum omnium inopiā pereundum vidērētur. Āc
saepe in eum locum[2] ventum est, tantō in omnēs partēs
dīmissō equitātū, ut [nōn] modo[3] vīsum ab sē[4] Ambiorīgem
in fugā circumspicerent[5] captīvī nec[6] plānē etiam abīsse[7]
5 ex cōnspectū contenderent,[8] ut, spē cōnsequendī illātā
atque īnfīnītō labōre susceptō, quī sē summam ā Caesare
grātiam initūrōs[9] putārent, paene nātūram studiō vin-
cerent,[10] semperque paulum[11] ad summam fēlīcitātem
6 dēfuisse vidērētur, atque ille latebrīs[12] aut saltibus[13] sē
ēriperet; et noctū occultātus aliās regiōnēs partēsque
peteret nōn māiōre equitum praesidiō quam quattuor,
quibus sōlīs vītam suam committere audēbat.

[1] 'welcome.' [2] 'point.' [3] 'just.' [4] with **visum.** [5] trans.: 'look around for.' [6] negative with **plane.** [7] sc. *eum.* [8] 'declare.' [9] 'gain.' [10] 'outdo.' [11] **paulum ad defuisse videretur**: 'he (Caesar) seemed barely to miss.' [12] 'hiding-place.' [13] 'woods.'

44. Tālī modō vāstātīs regiōnibus exercitum Caesar
duārum cohortium damnō[1] Dūrocortōrum[2] Rēmōrum
dedūcit; conciliōque in eum locum Galliae indictō dē
coniūrātiōne Senonum et Carnutum quaestiōnem habēre
īnstituit; et dē Accōne, quī prīnceps ēius cōnsiliī fuerat, 2
graviōre sententiā prōnūntiātā, mōre māiōrum[3] suppli-
cium sūmpsit. Nōn nūllī iūdicium veritī profūgērunt. 3
Quibus cum aquā[4] atque īgnī interdīxisset, duās legiōnēs
ad fīnēs Trēverōrum, duās in Lingonibus, sex reliquās in
Senonum fīnibus Agēdincī[5] in hībernīs collocāvit; frūmen-
tōque exercituī prōvīsō, ut īnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad con-
ventūs agendōs profectus est.

[1] 'loss.' [2] acc. [3] sc. *nostrōrum*. [4] **aqua—interdixisset**: formula for banishment. [5] locative.


CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.
ENGLISH MILES
0 10 20 30 40 50 100
ROMAN MILES
0 10 20 30 40 50 100
Aulerci Eburovices
Sequana
Matrona (Marne)
Parisii
Lutetia
(Paris)
Meldi
Melodunum or Metiosedum
(Melun)
(Seine)
Senones
Leuci
Agedincum
(Sens)
(Seine)
Carnutes
Vellaunodunum ?
(Triguéres)
(Orleans)
Lingones
(Loire)
Genabum
(Gien)
Liger
Mandubii
Alesia
(Alise-Ste. Reine)
(Dijon)
Noviodunum
(Sancerre)
Aedui
Arar
Avaricum
(Bourges)
Noviodunum
(Nevers)
Bibracte
(Mont Beuvray)
(Doubs)
Dubis
Gorgobina
(St. Parize-le-Châtel)
Decetia
(Decize)
(Autun)
Cabillonum
(Chalons-sur-Saône)
Bituriges
Boii
Liger
Elaver
Ambluareti
(Loire)
Brannovii
Arar (Saône)
Ambarri
Sequani
Aulerci Brannovices
Matisco
(Macon)
Lemovices
(Allier)
Arverni
Gergovia
Lugdunum
(Lyons)
Segusiavi
(Rhône)
Vienna
(Vienne)
Allobroges
Vellavi
Mons Cevenna
(Rhône)
(Isère)
Isara
Uxellodunum
(Puy d'Issolú)
Cadurci
Gabali
Helvii
Rhodanus
Vocontii
Ruteni
Volcæ Arecomici

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

BELLUM VERCINGETORIGIS.

CC. I–90.

Caesar cum urbānō mōtū in Ītaliā retinērī dīcerētur, nova dē bellō cōnsilia ineunt Gallī. Prīmī Carnutēs, deinde Arvernī, auctōre Vercingetorīge bellum suscipiunt.

1. Quiētā Galliā Caesar, ut cōnstituerat, in Ītaliam ad
conventūs agendōs proficīscitur. Ibi cōgnōscit dē P.
Clodiī caede, dē senātūsque cōnsultō certior factus, ut
omnēs iūniōrēs [1] Ītaliae coniūrārent,[2] dīlēctum tōtā prō-
2 vinciā habēre īnstituit. Eae rēs in Galliam Trānsalpīnam
celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsī et affingunt [3] rumōri-
bus Gallī, quod rēs pōscere vidēbātur, retinērī urbānō [4]
mōtū Caesarem neque in tantīs dissēnsiōnibus ad exercitum
3 venīre posse. Hāc impulsī occāsiōne quī iam ante sē
populī Rōmānī imperiō subiectōs dolērent līberius atque
4 audācius dē bellō cōnsilia inīre incipiunt. Indictīs inter
sē prīncipēs Galliae conciliīs silvestribus āc remōtīs locīs
queruntur dē Accōnis morte; posse hunc cāsum ad ipsōs
recidere dēmōnstrant; miserantur commūnem Galliae
5 fortūnam; omnibus pollicitātiōnibus āc praemiīs dēpō-
scunt quī [5] bellī initium faciant et suī capitis perīculō
6 Galliam in lībertātem vindicent.[6] In prīmīs ratiōnem
esse habendam dīcunt, prius quam eōrum clandestīna [7]

[1] (younger) 'of military age.' [2] 'take the military oath.' [3] 'invent (other stories) in addition.' [4] i.e. at Rome. [5] **sc.** ***eōs*; purpose clause.** [6] 'restore.' [7] 'secret.'

cōnsilia efferantur,[1] ut Caesar ab exercitū interclūdātur.
Id esse facile, quod neque legiōnēs audeant absente 7
imperātōre ex hībernīs ēgredī, neque imperātor sine
praesidiō ad legiōnēs pervenīre possit; postrēmō in 8
aciē praestāre interficī, quam nōn veterem bellī glōriam
lībertātemque, quam ā māiōribus accēperint, recuperāre.

2. Hīs rēbus agitātīs profitentur Carnutēs sē nūllum
perīculum commūnis salūtis causā recūsāre prīncipēsque[2]
ex omnibus bellum factūrōs pollicentur et, quoniam in 2
praesentiā obsidibus cavēre inter sē nōn possint, nē rēs
efferātur,[1] at iūre iūrandō āc fidē sanciātur petunt, collā-
tīs mīlitāribus sīgnīs, quō mōre eōrum gravissima caeri-
mōnia continētur, nē factō initiō bellī ab reliquīs dēseran-
tur. Tum collaudātīs Carnutibus, datō iūre iūrandō ab 3
omnibus quī aderant, tempore ēius reī cōnstitūtō, ā con-
ciliō discēditur.

3. Ubi ea diēs vēnit, Carnutēs Cotuātō et Conconne-
todumnō ducibus, dēspērātīs hominibus, Cēnabum sīgnō
datō concurrunt cīvēsque[3] Rōmānōs quī negōtiandī[4] causā
ibi cōnstiterant, in hīs C. Fūfium Citam, honestum equi-
tem Rōmānum, quī reī frūmentāriae iūssū Caesaris prae-
erat, interficiunt bonaque eōrum dīripiunt. Celeriter ad 2
omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs fāma perfertur. Nam ubi quae
māior atque illūstrior incidit rēs, clāmōre[5] per agrōs
regiōnēsque sīgnificant; hunc aliī deinceps excipiunt et
proximīs trādunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cēnabī 3
oriente sōle gesta essent ante prīmam cōnfectam vigiliam
in fīnibus Arvernōrum audīta sunt, quod spatium est mī-
lium passuum circiter centum et sexāgintā.

4. Similī ratiōne ibi Vercingetorīx, Celtillī fīlius, Ar-

[1] 'spread abroad.' [2] 'first.' [3] 'citizen.' [4] 'do business.' [5] 'shout.'

vernus, summae potentiae adulēscēns, cūius pater prīnci-
pātum tōtīus Galliae obtinuerat et ob eam causam quod
rēgnum appetēbat ā cīvitāte erat interfectus, convocātīs
2 suīs clientibus facile incendit.[1] Cōgnitō ēius cōnsiliō ad
arma concurritur. Prohibētur ā Gobannitiōne, patruō[2]
suō, reliquīsque prīncipibus, quī hanc temptandam fortū-
nam nōn exīstimābant; expellitur ex oppidō Gergoviā;
3 nōn dēsistit tamen atque in agrīs habet dīlēctum egen-
tium āc perditōrum. Hāc coāctā manū quōscumque adit
4 ex cīvitāte ad suam sententiam perdūcit; hortātur ut
commūnis lībertātis causā arma capiant, māgnīsque coāc-
tīs cōpiīs adversāriōs suōs, ā quibus paulō ante erat ēiec-
5 tus, expellit ex cīvitāte. Rēx ab suīs appellātur. Dīmittit
quoque[3] versus lēgātiōnēs; obtēstātur[4] ut in fidē maneant.
6 Celeriter sibi Senonēs, Parīsiōs, Pictonēs, Cadūrcōs, Turo-
nōs, Aulercōs, Lemovīcēs, Andōs reliquōsque omnēs quī
7 Ōceanum attingunt adiungit; omnium cōnsēnsū ad eum
dēfertur imperium. Quā oblātā potestāte omnibus hīs
cīvitātibus obsidēs imperat; certum numerum mīlitum
ad sē celeriter addūcī iubet; armōrum quantum quaeque
8 cīvitās domī, quodque[5] ante tempus efficiat, cōnstituit; in
9 prīmīs equitātuī studet. Summae dīligentiae summam
imperiī sevēritātem addit; māgnitūdine suppliciī dubi-
10 tantēs cōgit. Nam māiōre commissō dēlictō[6] īgnī atque
omnibus tormentīs necat; leviōre dē causā auribus dēsec-
tīs[7] aut singulīs effossīs[8] oculīs domum remittit, ut sint re-
liquīs documentō[9] et māgnitūdine poenae perterreant aliōs.

5. Hīs suppliciīs celeriter coāctō exercitū Lucterium

[1] 'excite.' [2] 'uncle.' [3] **quoque versus:** (turned each way) 'in every direction.' [4] 'adjure.' [5] i.e. **quod-que, quod** w. **tempus.** [6] 'offence.' [7] 'cut off.' [8] 'put out.' [9] 'example.'

Cadūrcum, summae hominem audāciae, cum parte cōpi-
ārum in Rutēnōs mittit; ipse in Biturīgēs proficīscitur.
Ēius adventū Biturīgēs ad Aeduōs, quōrum erant in fidē, 2
lēgātōs mittunt subsidium rogātum, quō facilius hostium
cōpiās sustinēre possint. Aeduī dē[1] cōnsiliō lēgātōrum, 3
quōs Caesar ad exercitum relīquerat, cōpiās equitātūs
peditātūsque subsidiō Biturīgibus mittunt. Quī cum ad 4
flūmen Ligerim vēnissent, quod Biturīgēs ab Aeduīs dīvi-
dit, paucōs diēs ibi morātī neque flūmen trānsīre ausī do-
mum revertuntur lēgātīsque nostrīs renūntiant sē Bitu-
rīgum perfidiam veritōs revertisse, quibus id cōnsiliī fuisse 5
cōgnōverint ut, sī flūmen trānsīssent, ūnā ex parte ipsī,
alterā Arvernī sē circumsisterent. Id eāne dē causā quam 6
lēgātīs prōnūntiārint, an perfidiā adductī fēcerint, quod[2]
nihil nōbīs cōnstat, nōn vidētur prō certō esse pōnen-
dum. Biturīgēs eōrum discēssū statim sē cum Arvernīs 7
coniungunt.

Caesar ex Ītaliā reversus Arvernōs opprimit, Gergobinae, Bōiō-rum urbī ā Vercingetorīge oppūgnātae, auxiliō proficīscitur.

6. Hīs rēbus in Ītaliam Caesarī nūntiātīs, cum iam ille
urbānās rēs virtūte Cn.[3] Pompēī commodiōrem in statum
pervēnisse intellegeret, in Trānsalpīnam Galliam profectus
est. Eō cum vēnisset, māgnā difficultāte afficiēbātur, quā 2
ratiōne ad exercitum pervenīre posset. Nam sī legiōnēs 3
in prōvinciam arcesseret, sē absente in itinere proeliō
dīmicātūrās intellegēbat; sī ipse ad exercitum contenderet, 4
nē iīs quidem eō tempore quī quiētī vidērentur suam salū-
tem rēctē[4] committī vidēbat.

[1] **de consilio :** 'by the advice.' [2] **quod—constat :** 'because it is not at all clear to us.' [3] *Gnaeus.* [4] (rightly) 'safely.'

7. Interim Lucterius Cadūrcus in Rutēnōs missus eam
2 cīvitātem Arvernīs conciliat. Prōgressus in Nitiobrogēs
et Gabalōs ab utrīsque obsidēs accipit et māgnā coāctā
manū in prōvinciam Narbōnem versus[1] irruptiōnem facere
3 contendit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnibus cōnsiliīs ante-
4 vertendum[2] exīstimāvit, ut Narbōnem proficīscerētur. Eō
cum vēnisset, timentēs cōnfīrmat, praesidia in Rutēnīs prō-
vinciālibus, Volcīs Arecomicīs, Tolōsātibus circumque Nar-
5 bōnem, quae loca hostibus erant fīnitima, cōnstituit; par-
tem cōpiārum ex prōvinciā supplēmentumque[3] quod ex
Ītaliā addūxerat in Helviōs, quī fīnēs Arvernōrum con-
tingunt, convenīre iubet.

8. Hīs rēbus comparātīs, repressō iam Lucteriō et remōtō,
quod intrāre intrā praesidia perīculōsum putābat, in Hel-
2 viōs proficīscitur. Etsī mōns Cebenna, quī Arvernōs ab
Helviīs disclūdit, dūrissimō tempore annī altissimā nive[4]
iter impediēbat; tamen, discussā[5] nive in altitūdinem pe-
dum sex atque ita viīs patefactīs, summō mīlitum labōre
3 ad fīnēs Arvernōrum pervēnit. Quibus oppressīs inopī-
nantibus, quod sē Cebennā ut mūrō mūnītōs exīstimā-
bant, āc nē singulārī quidem umquam hominī eō tem-
pore annī sēmitae[6] patuerant, equitibus imperat ut quam
lātissimē possint vagentur et quam māximum hostibus
4 terrōrem īnferant. Celeriter haec fāma āc nūntiī ad
Vercingetorīgem perferuntur; quem perterritī omnēs Ar-
vernī circumsistunt atque obsecrant ut suīs[7] fortūnīs
cōnsulat, neu sē ab hostibus dīripī patiātur; praesertim
5 cum videat omne ad sē bellum trānslātum. Quōrum ille

[1] 'toward'; obj. is **Narbonem.** [2] 'take precedence'; subj. is **ut—proficisceretur.** [3] 'reënforcement.' [4] 'snow.' [5] 'remove.' [6] 'path.' [7] i.e. *Arvernorum.*

precibus permōtus castra ex Biturīgibus movet in Arvernōs versus.

9. At Caesar bīduum in hīs locīs morātus, quod haec[1]
dē[2] Vercingetorīge ūsū[3] ventūra opīniōne[4] praecēperat,
per[5] causam supplēmentī equitātūsque cōgendī ab exercitū
discēdit; Brūtum adulēscentem hīs cōpiīs praeficit; hunc 2
monet ut in omnēs partēs equitēs quam lātissimē pervagentur; datūrum[6] sē operam nē longius trīduō ā castrīs
absit. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, suīs inopīnantibus, quam 3
māximīs potest itineribus Viennam pervenit. Ibi nactus 4
recentem[7] equitātum, quem multīs ante diēbus eō praemīserat, neque diurnō neque nocturnō itinere intermissō, per fīnēs Aeduōrum in Lingonēs contendit, ubi duae legiōnēs hiemābant ut, sī quid etiam dē suā salūte ab Aeduīs inīrētur cōnsiliī, celeritāte praecurreret. Eō cum pervēnisset, 5
ad reliquās legiōnēs mittit priusque omnēs in unum locum cōgit, quam dē ēius adventū Arvernīs nūntiārī posset.
Hāc rē cōgnitā Vercingetorīx rūrsus in Biturīgēs exer- 6
citum redūcit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Bōiōrum oppidum, quōs ibi Helvēticō proeliō victōs Caesar collocāverat Aeduīsque attribuerat, oppūgnāre īnstituit.

10. Māgnam haec rēs Caesarī difficultātem ad cōnsilium capiendum afferēbat: sī reliquam partem hiemis ūnō locō legiōnēs continēret, nē stīpendiāriīs Aeduōrum expūgnātīs cūncta Gallia dēficeret, quod nūllum amīcīs[8] in eō[9] praesidium positum vidēret[10]; sī mātūrius ex hībernīs ēdūceret, nē ab[11] rē frūmentāriā dūrīs subvectiōnibus[12] labōrāret.

[1] 'these movements.' [2] 'on the part of.' [3] **usu ventura**: 'come to pass.' [4] **opinione praeceperat**: 'conjecture.' [5] **per causam**: 'for the ostensible reason.' [6] **daturum operam**: 'take pains.' [7] 'rested.' [8] dat. [9] i.e. Caesar. [10] sc. *Gallia*. [11] 'in the matter of.' [12] 'transportation.'

2 Praestāre vīsum est tamen omnēs difficultātēs perpetī,[1]
quam, tantā contumēliā acceptā, omnium suōrum volun-
3 tātēs aliēnāre. Itaque cohortātus Aeduōs dē supportandō
commeātū, praemittit ad Bōiōs quī dē suō adventū doceant
hortenturque ut in fidē maneant atque hostium impetum
4 māgnō animō sustineant. Duābus Agēdincī legiōnibus
atque impedīmentīs tōtīus exercitūs relictīs ad Bōiōs pro-
ficīscitur.

In itinere Vellaunodūnum, Cēnabum, Noviodūnum capit, ad Avaricum proficīscitur.

11. Alterō diē cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodū-
num vēnisset, nē quem post sē hostem relinqueret, et quō
expedītiōre rē frūmentāriā ūterētur, oppūgnāre īnstituit
2 eōque bīduō circumvāllāvit[2]; tertiō diē missīs ex oppidō
lēgātīs dē dēditiōne arma cōnferrī, iūmenta prōdūcī, sex-
3 centōs obsidēs darī iubet. Ea quī cōnficeret C. Trebōnium
lēgātum relinquit, ipse ut quam prīmum iter cōnficeret.
4 Cēnabum Carnutum proficīscitur; quī tum prīmum allātō
nūntiō dē oppūgnātiōne Vellaunodūnī, cum longius eam
rem ductum īrī exīstimārent, praesidium Cēnabī tuendī
5 causā, quod eō mitterent, comparābant. Hūc bīduō per-
venit. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs, diēī tempore exclūsus
in posterum oppūgnātiōnem differt quaeque ad eam rem
6 ūsuī sint mīlitibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cēnabum
pōns flūminis Ligeris contingēbat, veritus nē noctū ex
oppidō profugerent, duās legiōnēs in armīs excubāre[3]
7 iubet. Cēnabēnsēs paulō ante mediam noctem silentiō
8 ex oppidō ēgressī flūmen trānsīre coepērunt. Quā rē per
explōrātōrēs nūntiātā Caesar legiōnēs, quās expedītās esse

[1] simple verb, *patior*. [2] 'invest.' [3] 'lie under arms.'

iūsserat, portīs incēnsīs, intrōmittit atque oppidō potītur,
perpaucīs ex hostium numerō dēsīderātīs[1] quīn cūnctī
caperentur, quod pontis atque itinerum angustiae multitū-
dinī fugam interclūserant. Oppidum dīripit atque incen- 9
dit, praedam mīlitibus dōnat, exercitum Ligerim trādūcit
atque in Biturīgum fīnēs pervenit.

12. Vercingetorīx, ubi dē Caesaris adventū cōgnōvit,
oppūgnātiōne dēsistit atque obviam[2] Caesarī proficīscitur.
Ille oppidum Biturīgum positum in viā Noviodūnum op- 2
pūgnāre īnstituerat. Quō ex oppidō cum lēgātī ad eum 3
vēnissent ōrātum ut sibi īgnōsceret suaeque vītae cōnsule-
ret, ut celeritāte reliquās rēs cōnficeret quā plēraque erat
cōnsecūtus, arma cōnferrī, equōs prōdūcī, obsidēs darī
iubet. Parte iam obsidum trāditā, cum reliqua admini- 4
strārentur, centuriōnibus et paucīs mīlitibus intrōmissīs
quī arma iūmentaque conquīrerent, equitātus hostium
procul vīsus est, quī āgmen Vercingetorīgis antecēsserat.
Quem simul atque oppidānī cōnspexērunt atque in spem 5
auxiliī vēnērunt, clāmōre sublātō arma capere, portās
claudere, mūrum complēre coepērunt. Centuriōnēs in op- 6
pidō, cum ex sīgnificātiōne Gallōrum novī aliquid ab iīs
inīrī cōnsiliī intellēxissent, gladiīs dēstrictīs portās occu-
pāvērunt suōsque omnēs incolumēs recēpērunt.

13. Caesar ex castrīs equitātum ēdūcī iubet, proelium-
que equestre committit ; labōrantibus iam suīs Germānōs
equitēs circiter quadringentōs submittit, quōs ab initiō
sēcum habēre īnstituerat. Eōrum impetum Gallī susti- 2
nēre nōn potuērunt atque in fugam coniectī multīs āmis-
sīs sē ad āgmen recēpērunt. Quibus prōflīgātīs rūrsus 3

[1] ‘miss.’ [2] sc. *viam*, cognate acc. ; lit. ‘an opposite way’ ; trans. ‘to meet.’



From Gurlitt.

VERCINGETORIX, WITH THE GALLIC CHIEFTAINS.

oppidānī perterritī comprehēnsōs eōs quōrum operā[1] plēbem concitātam exīstimābant ad Caesarem perdūxērunt sēsēque eī dēdidērunt. Quibus rēbus cōnfectīs Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat māximum mūnītissimumque in fīnibus Biturīgum atque agrī fertilissimā regiōne, profectus est, quod eō oppidō receptō cīvitātem Biturīgum sē in potestātem redāctūrum cōnfīdēbat.

Biturīgum oppida praeter Avaricum ā Gallīs incenduntur.

14. Vercingetorīx tot continuīs incommodīs Vellauno-
dūnī, Cēnabī, Noviodūnī acceptīs suōs ad concilium con-
2 vocat. Docet longē aliā ratiōne esse bellum gerendum
atque[2] anteā gestum sit. Omnibus modīs huīc[3] reī stu-
dendum ut pābulātiōne et commeātū Rōmānī prohibean-
3 tur. Id esse facile, quod equitātū ipsī abundent et quod
annī tempore subleventur. Pābulum secārī[4] nōn posse;
4 necessāriō dīspersōs hostēs ex aedificiīs petere[5]; hōs om-
5 nēs cotīdiē ab equitibus dēlērī posse. Praetereā salūtis
causā reī[6] familiāris commoda neglegenda; vīcōs atque
aedificia incendī oportēre hōc spatiō [ā Bōiā] quōque ver-
6 sus, quō pābulandī causā adīre posse videantur. Hārum
ipsīs rērum cōpiam suppetere, quod quōrum in fīnībus
7 bellum gerātur eōrum opibus subleventur: Rōmānōs aut
inopiam nōn lātūrōs aut māgnō cum perīculō longius ab
8 castrīs prōcēssūrōs; neque interesse ipsōsne interficiant
an impedīmentīs exuant, quibus āmissīs bellum gerī nōn
9 possit. Praetereā, oppida incendī oportēre quae nōn mū-
nītiōne et locī nātūrā ab omnī sint perīculō tūta, nē suīs

[1] 'activity.' [2] 'than.' [3] **huic—studendum**: 'it was desirable.'
[4] 'cut.' [5] sc. *frūmentum*, obj. [6] **rei—commoda**: 'personal interests.'

sint ad dētrectandam[1] mīlitiam receptācula[2] neu Rōmānīs
prōposita[3] ad cōpiam commeātūs praedamque tollendam.[4]
Haec sī gravia aut acerba[5] videantur, multō illa gravius 10
aestimārī dēbēre, līberōs, cōniugēs[6] in servitūtem abs-
trahī, ipsōs interficī; quae sit necesse accidere victīs.

15. Omnium cōnsēnsū hāc sententiā probātā ūnō diē
amplius vigintī urbēs Biturīgum incenduntur. Hōc idem 2
fit in reliquīs cīvitātibus. In omnibus partibus incendia
cōnspiciuntur; quae etsī māgnō cum dolōre omnēs ferē-
bant, tamen hōc sibi sōlāciī[7] prōpōnēbant, quod sē prope
explōrātā victōriā celeriter āmissa recuperātūrōs cōnfīdē-
bant. Dēlīberātur dē Avaricō in commūnī conciliō, in- 3
cendī placeat an dēfendī. Prōcumbunt omnibus Gallīs ad 4
pedēs Biturīgēs, nē pulcherrimam[8] prope tōtīus Galliae
urbem, quae et praesidiō et ōrnāmentō sit cīvitātī, suīs
manibus succendere cōgantur; facile sē locī nātūrā dēfēn- 5
sūrōs dīcunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flūmine et
palūde circumdatā, ūnum habeat et perangustum aditum.
Datur petentibus venia, dissuādente prīmō Vercingeto- 6
rīge, post concēdente, et precibus ipsōrum et misericordiā
vulgī. Dēfēnsōrēs oppidō idōneī dēliguntur.

Caesar, Avaricum aliquamdiū dēfēnsum, tandem expūgnat, incolāsque omnēs ferē trucidat.

16. Vercingetorīx minōribus Caesarem itineribus subse-
quitur et locum castrīs dēligit palūdibus silvīsque mūnī-
tum ab Avaricō longē mīlia passuum sēdecim. Ibi per 2
certōs explōrātōrēs in singula[9] diēī tempora[10] quae ad
Avaricum gererentur cōgnōscēbat et, quid fierī vellet im-

[1] 'escape.' [2] 'refuge.' [3] 'present.' [4] 'get.' [5] 'bitter.'
[6] (spouse) 'wife.' [7] 'comfort.' [8] 'beautiful.' [9] 'every.' [10] 'hour.'

3 perābat. Omnēs nostrās pābulātiōnēs frūmentātiōnēsque
observābat dīspersōsque, cum longius necessāriō prōcēde-
rent, adoriēbātur māgnōque incommodō afficiēbat; etsī,
quantum ratiōne prōviderī poterat, ab nostrīs occurrēbā-
tur, ut incertīs temporibus dīversīsque itineribus īrētur.

17. Castrīs ad eam partem oppidī positīs Caesar quae
intermissa [ā] flūmine et palūde aditum, ut suprā dīxi-
mus, angustum habēbat, aggerem apparāre, vīneās agere,
turrēs duās cōnstituere coepit; nam circumvāllāre locī
2 nātūra prohibēbat. Dē rē frūmentāriā Bōiōs atque Ae-
duōs adhortārī nōn dēstitit: quōrum alterī,[1] quod nūllō
studiō agēbant, nōn multum adiuvābant; alterī nōn mā-
gnīs facultātibus, quōd cīvitās erat exigua et īnfīrma, cele-
3 riter quod habuērunt cōnsūmpsērunt. Summā difficultāte
reī frūmentāriae affectō exercitū, tenuitāte[2] Bōiōrum,
indīligentiā Aeduōrum, incendiīs aedificiōrum, ūsque eō
ut complūrēs diēs frūmentō mīlitēs caruerint et pecore ex
longinquiōribus vīcīs adāctō extrēmam famem sustentā-
rint, nūlla tamen vōx est ab iīs audīta populī Rōmānī
4 māiestāte et superiōribus victōriīs indīgna. Quīn etiam
Caesar cum in opere singulās legiōnēs appellāret, et, sī
acerbius inopiam ferrent, sē dīmissūrum oppūgnātiōnem
5 dīceret, ūniversī ab eō nē id faceret petēbant: sīc sē com-
plūrēs annōs illō imperante meruisse ut nūllam īgnōmi-
6 niam[3] acciperent, numquam[4] īnfectā[5] rē discēderent; hōc
sē īgnōminiae lātūrōs locō, sī inceptam oppūgnātiōnem
7 relīquissent: praestāre omnēs perferre acerbitātēs[6] quam
nōn cīvibus Rōmānīs quī Cēnabī perfidiā Gallōrum
8 interīssent parentārent.[7] Haec eadem centuriōnibus tri-

[1] i.e. Aedui. [2] 'poverty.' [3] 'dishonor.' [4] (nowhere) 'never.' [5] 'unfinished.' [6] cf. *acerba*, ch. 14, § 10. [7] 'avenge.'

būnīsque mīlitum mandābant, ut per eōs ad Caesarem dēferrentur.

18. Cum iam mūrō turrēs appropinquāssent, ex captīvīs
Caesar cōgnōvit Vercingetorīgem cōnsūmptō pābulō ca-
stra mōvisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitātū
expedītīsque quī inter equitēs proeliārī cōnsuēssent, īnsi-
diandī causā eō profectum quō nostrōs posterō diē pābu-
lātum ventūrōs arbitrārētur. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs mediā 2
nocte silentiō profectus ad hostium castra māne pervēnit.
Illī celeriter per explōrātōrēs adventū Caesaris cōgnitō 3
carrōs impedīmentaque sua in artiōrēs[1] silvās abdidērunt,
cōpiās omnēs in locō ēditō atque apertō īnstrūxērunt. Quā 4
rē nūntiātā Caesar celeriter sarcinās cōnferrī, arma expe-
dīrī iūssit.

19. Collis erat lēniter ab īnfimō acclīvis. Hunc ex
omnibus ferē partibus palūs difficilis atque impedīta cin-
gēbat nōn lātior pedibus quīnquāgintā. Hōc sē colle, 2
interruptīs pontibus, Gallī fīdūciā[2] locī continēbant gene-
rātimque[3] distribūtī [in cīvitātēs] omnia vada [āc saltūs[4]]
ēius palūdis obtinēbant sīc[5] animō parātī ut, sī eam palū-
dem Rōmānī perrumpere cōnārentur, haesitantēs[6] pre-
merent ex locō superiōre; ut, quī propinquitātem locī 3
vidēret, parātōs prope aequō Mārte[7] ad dīmicandum exī-
stimāret; quī inīquitātem[8] condiciōnis[9] perspiceret, inānī[10]
simulātiōne[11] sēsē[12] ostentāre cōgnōsceret. Indīgnantēs 4
mīlitēs Caesar, quod cōnspectum suum[13] hostēs ferre pos-
sent tantulō spatiō interiectō, et sīgnum proeliī expō-

[1] 'dense.' [2] 'confidence' (in). [3] 'by tribes.' [4] 'defile.' [5] **sic—ut**: 'determined to.' [6] 'struggle' (as in mud). [7] 'combat.' [8] 'advantage.' [9] 'situation.' [10] 'vain.' [11] 'pretence' (of bravery). [12] obj. of **ostentare,** of which sc. *Gallōs* as subj. [13] for obj. gen., referring to **milites.**

scentēs ēdocet quantō dētrīmentō[1] et quot[2] virōrum for-
5 tium morte necesse sit cōnstāre[3] victōriam; quōs cum sīc
animō parātōs videat ut nūllum prō suā[4] laude perīculum
recūsent, summae sē inīquitātis[5] condemnārī dēbēre, nisi
6 eōrum vītam laude suā habeat cāriōrem. Sīc mīlitēs cōn-
sōlātus eōdem diē redūcit in castra reliquaque quae ad
oppūgnātiōnem oppidī pertinēbant administrāre īnstituit.

20. Vercingetorīx, cum ad suōs redīsset, prōditiōnis[6]
īnsimulātus,[7] quod castra propius Rōmānōs mōvisset, quod
cum omnī equitātū discēssisset, quod sine imperiō tantās
cōpiās relīquisset, quod ēius discēssū Rōmānī tantā opor-
2 tūnitāte[8] et celeritāte vēnissent; nōn haec omnia for-
tuitō[9] aut sine cōnsiliō accidere potuisse; rēgnum illum[10]
Galliae mālle Caesaris concēssū quam ipsōrum habēre
3 beneficiō—tālī modō accūsātus ad haec respondit: Quod
castra mōvisset, factum[11] inopiā pābulī etiam ipsīs hortan-
tibus; quod propius Rōmānōs accēssisset, persuāsum locī
oportūnitāte, quī sē ipse sine mūnītiōne dēfenderet;
4 equitum vērō operam[12] neque in locō palūstrī dēsīderārī
5 dēbuisse et illīc[13] fuisse ūtilem quō sint profectī. Summam
imperiī sē cōnsultō[14] nūllī discēdentem trādidisse, nē is
multitūdinis studiō ad dīmicandum impellerētur, cuī reī
propter animī mollitiem[15] studēre omnēs vidēret, quod
6 diūtius labōrem ferre nōn possent. Rōmānī sī cāsū inter-
vēnerint, fortūnae[16]; sī alicūius indiciō vocātī,[17] huīc[18]
habendam grātiam, quod et paucitātem eōrum ex locō
superiōre cōgnōscere et virtūtem dēspicere potuerint, quī

[1] 'loss,' abl. of price. [2] 'how many.' [3] 'be obtained.' [4] i.e. *Caesaris.* [5] 'injustice.' [6] 'treason.' [7] 'charged.' [8] 'seasonableness.' [9] cf. *forte.* [10] i.e. Vercingetorix. [11] sc. *esse.* [12] 'services.' [13] 'there.' [14] 'purposely.' [15] 'weakness.' [16] sc. *grātiam habendam esse.* [17] sc. *Rōmānī intervēnerint.* [18] antecedent **alicuius.**

dīmicāre nōn ausī turpiter sē in castra recēperint. Im- 7
perium sē ā Caesare per prōditiōnem nūllum dēsīderāre,
quod habēre victōriā posset, quae iam esset sibi atque
omnibus Gallīs explōrāta: quīn etiam ipsīs[1] remittere, sī
sibi[2] magis honōrem tribuere quam ab sē[2] salūtem accipere
videantur.[3] 'Haec ut intellegātis,' inquit, 'ā mē sin- 8
cērē[4] prōnūntiārī, audīte Rōmānōs mīlitēs.' Prōdūcit 9
servōs, quōs in pābulātiōne paucīs ante diēbus excēperat
et famē vinculīsque excruciāverat. Hī, iam ante ēdoctī 10
quae interrogātī prōnūntiārent, mīlitēs sē esse legiōnāriōs
dīcunt; famē atque inopiā adductōs clam ex castrīs exīsse,
sī quid frūmentī aut pecoris in agrīs reperīre possent; si- 11
milī omnem exercitum inopiā premī, nec iam vīrēs sufficere
cūiusquam nec ferre operis labōrem posse: itaque statuisse
imperātōrem, sī nihil in oppūgnātiōne oppidī prōfēcisset,
trīduō exercitum dēdūcere. 'Haec,' inquit, 'ā mē' [Vercin- 12
getorīx], 'beneficia habētis, quem prōditiōnis īnsimulātis;
cūius operā sine vestrō[5] sanguine[6] tantum exercitum
victōrem famē cōnsūmptum vidētis; quem turpiter sē ex
hāc fugā recipientem nē qua cīvitās suīs fīnibus recipiat,
ā mē prōvīsum est.'

21. Conclāmat omnis multitūdō et suō mōre armīs con-
crepat,[7] quod facere in[8] eō cōnsuērunt cūius ōrātiōnem
approbant: summum esse Vercingetorīgem ducem nec dē
ēius fide dubitandum, nec māiōre ratiōne bellum admini-
strārī posse. Statuunt ut decem mīlia hominum dēlēcta 2
ex omnibus cōpiīs in oppidum submittantur, nec sōlīs 3
Biturīgibus commūnem salūtem committendam cēnsent;

[1] sc. *sē imperium*. [2] i.e. Vercingetorix. [3] 'think.' [4] 'in good faith.' [5] Poss. pro., 2d pers. plu. [6] 'blood.' [7] 'rattle.' [8] 'in the case of.'


PLAN OF AVARICUM
ENGLISH MILES
0
¼
½
¾
ROMAN MILES
0
¼
½
¾
1
AVARICUM
(Bourges)
MURUS
MURUS QUI ERAT CAESARIS TEMPORE (?)
POSTERIOR
Romanorum agger
Romanorum castra
(Faub. St. Sulpice)
(Faub. St. Privé)
(Faub. de Charlet)
(Faub. du Château)
(Faub. d'Auron)
(Yévre)
(Yévre)
(Yévrette)
(Yévrette)
(Auron)
(Auron)
Wall of Avaricum
Roman Tower
Roman Tower
The Agger

quod paene in eō, sī id oppidum retinuissent, summam victōriae cōnstāre intellegēbant.

22. Singulārī mīlitum nostrōrum virtūtī cōnsilia cūius-
que modī Gallōrum occurrēbant,[1] ut est summae genus
sollertiae[2] atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda quae ā
2 quōque trāduntur[3] aptissimum. Nam et laqueīs[4] falcēs
āvertēbant, quās, cum dēstināverant,[5] tormentīs intrōrsus
redūcēbant; et aggerem cunīculīs[6] subtrahēbant,[7] eō
scientius,[8] quod apud eōs māgnae sunt ferrāriae[9] atque
omne genus cunīculōrum nōtum atque ūsitātum[10] est.
3 Tōtum autem mūrum ex omnī parte turribus contabulā-
4 verant[11] atque hās coriīs[12] intēxerant.[13] Tum crēbrīs diurnīs
nocturnīsque ēruptiōnibus aut aggerī īgnem īnferēbant
aut mīlitēs occupātōs in opere adoriēbantur et nostrārum
turrium altitūdinem, quantum hās cotīdiānus[14] agger ex-
5 presserat,[15] commissīs[16] suārum turrium mālīs[17] adaequā-
bant et apertōs cunīculōs praeūstā et praeacūtā māteriā et
pice[18] fervefactā[19] et māximī ponderis saxīs morābantur
moenibusque appropinquāre prohibēbant.

23. Mūrī autem omnēs Gallicī hāc ferē fōrmā sunt.
Trabēs dērēctae,[20] perpetuae[21] in longitūdinem, paribus
intervāllīs dīstantēs inter sē bīnōs pedēs, in solō collo-
2 cantur. Hae revinciuntur[22] intrōrsus et multō aggere[23]
vestiuntur; ea autem quae dīximus intervālla grandibus
3 in fronte saxīs efferciuntur.[24] Hīs collocātīs et coāgmen-

[1] 'oppose.' [2] 'ingenuity.' [3] 'impart.' [4] 'noose.' [5] 'draw tight.' [6] 'mine.' [7] 'take away material from.' [8] (knowingly) 'skilfully.' [9] 'iron mine.' [10] 'familiar.' [11] 'cover.' [12] 'hide.' [13] 'cover.' [14] 'daily (addition to the).' [15] 'increase.' [16] 'splice.' [17] 'post.' [18] 'pitch.' [19] 'hot.' [20] 'perpendicular' (to the front of the wall). [21] **perpetuae in longitudinem**: 'along the entire length.' [22] 'mortise.' [23] 'rubble'; earth and stone. [24] 'completely fill.'

tātīs[1] alius īnsuper[2] ōrdō additur, ut idem illud inter-
vāllum servētur neque inter sē contingant trabēs, sed
paribus intermissīs spatiīs, singulae[3] singulīs saxīs inter-
iectīs artē[4] contineantur. Sīc deinceps omne opus con- 4
texitur dum iūsta[5] mūrī altitūdō expleātur.[6] Hōc cum in 5
speciem varietātemque opus dēfōrme nōn est alternīs tra-
bibus āc saxīs, quae rēctīs līneīs[7] suōs ōrdinēs servant,
tum ad ūtilitātem et dēfēnsiōnem urbium summam habet
opportūnitātem, quod et ab incendiō lapis et ab ariete mā-
teria dēfendit, quae perpetuīs[8] trabibus pedum quadrāgē-
num[9] plērumque intrōrsus revincta neque perrumpī neque
distrahī potest.

24. Hīs tot rēbus impedītā oppūgnātiōne mīlitēs, cum
tōtō tempore frīgore et assiduīs imbribus tardārentur,
tamen continentī labōre omnia haec superāvērunt et diē-
bus vīgintī quīnque aggerem lātum pedēs trecentōs et
trīgintā altum pedēs octōgintā exstrūxērunt. Cum is 2
mūrum hostium paene contingeret, et Caesar ad opus
cōnsuētūdine excubāret[10] mīlitēsque hortārētur nē quod
omnīnō tempus ab opere intermitterētur, paulō ante ter-
tiam vigiliam est animadversum fūmāre[11] aggerem, quem
cunīculō hostēs succenderant; eōdemque tempore, tōtō 3
mūrō clāmōre sublātō, duābus portīs ab utrōque latere
turrium ēruptiō fīēbat: aliī facēs[12] atque āridam māte- 4
riam dē mūrō in aggerem ēminus[13] iaciēbant; picem reli-
quāsque rēs quibus īgnis excitārī potest fundēbant; ut,
quō prīmum occurrerētur aut cuī reī ferrētur auxilium,
vix ratiō inīrī posset. Tamen, quod īnstitūtō Caesaris 5

[1] 'cement.' [2] 'above.' [3] sc. *trabēs.* [4] 'closely.' [5] 'intended.'
[6] 'reach.' [7] 'line.' [8] 'repeated.' [9] 'forty each.' [10] 'watch.'
[11] 'smoke.' [12] 'torch.' [13] 'from a distance.'

duae semper legiōnēs prō castrīs excubābant plūrēsque partītīs temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est ut aliī ēruptiōnibus resisterent, aliī turrēs redūcerent aggeremque interscinderent,[1] omnis vērō ex castrīs multitūdō ad restinguendum[2] concurreret.

25. Cum in omnibus locīs, cōnsūmptā iam reliquā parte
noctis, pūgnārētur semperque hostibus spēs victōriae red-
integrārētur, eō magis quod deūstōs[3] pluteōs[4] turrium
vidēbant nec facile adīre[5] apertōs ad auxiliandum anim-
advertēbant, semperque ipsī recentēs dēfessīs succēde-
rent omnemque Galliae salūtem in illō vestīgiō[6] temporis
positam arbitrārentur; accidit īnspectantibus nōbīs quod
dīgnum[7] memoriā vīsum[8] praetereundum nōn exīstimā-
2 vimus. Quīdam ante portam oppidī Gallus per manūs
sēbī[9] āc picis trāditās glēbās[10] in īgnem ē[11] regiōne turris
prōiciēbat; scorpiōne[12] ab latere dextrō trāiectus exani-
3 mātusque concidit. Hunc ex proximīs ūnus iacentem
4 trānsgressus eōdem illō mūnere[13] fungēbātur[14]; eādem
ratiōne ictū scorpiōnis exanimātō alterō successit tertius
et tertiō quārtus; nec prius ille est ā prōpūgnātōribus
vacuus relictus locus quam, restinctō aggere atque omnī
parte submōtīs hostibus, fīnis est pūgnandī factus.

26. Omnia expertī Gallī, quod rēs nūlla successerat,
posterō diē cōnsilium cēpērunt ex oppidō profugere hor-
2 tante et iubente Vercingetorīge. Id silentiō noctis cōnātī
nōn māgnā iactūrā[15] suōrum sēsē effectūrōs spērābant;
propterea quod neque longē ab oppidō castra Vercingeto-
rīgis aberant, et palūs perpetua, quae intercēdēbat, Rō-

[1] 'cut into.' [2] 'extinguish (the flames).' [3] *dē, ūrō.* [4] 'screen.' [5] sc. *nostrōs* as subj. [6] 'moment.' [7] 'worthy.' [8] 'seeming.' [9] 'suet. [10] 'ball.' [11] **e—turris**: 'opposite a tower.' [12] '(a dart from a) scorpion.' [13] 'service.' [14] 'perform'; w. abl. [15] 'loss.'

mānōs ad īnsequendum tardābat. Iamque hōc facere 3
noctū apparābant, cum mātrēs familiae repentē in pūbli-
cum prōcurrērunt flentēsque prōiectae ad pedēs suōrum
omnibus precibus petiērunt nē sē et commūnēs līberōs
hostibus ad supplicium dēderent, quōs ad capiendam fu-
gam nātūrae et vīrium īnfīrmitās impedīret. Ubi eōs in 4
sententiā perstāre[1] vīdērunt, quod plērumque in summō
perīculō timor misericordiam nōn recipit,[2] conclāmāre et
sīgnificāre dē fugā Rōmānīs coepērunt. Quō timōre per- 5
territī Gallī, nē ab equitātū Rōmānōrum viae praeoccupā-
rentur, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

27. Posterō diē Caesar prōmōtā turrī dērēctīsque[3] ope-
ribus quae facere īnstituerat, māgnō coortō imbrī, nōn
inūtilem hanc ad capiendum cōnsilium tempestātem arbi-
trātus, quod paulō incautius cūstōdiās in mūrō dispositās
vidēbat, suōs quoque languidius in opere versārī iūssit
et quid fierī vellet ostendit. Legiōnibusque [intrā vīneās] 2
in occultō expedītīs, cohortātus ut aliquandō[4] prō tantīs
labōribus frūctum victōriae perciperent, iīs quī prīmī mū-
rum āscendissent praemia prōposuit mīlitibusque sīgnum
dedit. Illī subitō ex omnibus partibus ēvolāvērunt mū- 3
rumque celeriter complēvērunt.

28. Hostēs rē novā perterritī, mūrō turribusque dēiectī,
in forō[5] āc locīs patentiōribus cuneātim[6] cōnstitērunt, hōc
animō ut, sī quā ex parte obviam venīrētur, aciē īnstrūctā
dēpūgnārent. Ubi nēminem in aequum[7] locum sēsē dē- 2
mittere, sed tōtō undique mūrō circumfundī vīdērunt,
veritī nē omnīnō spēs fugae tollerētur, abiectīs armīs ūl-
timās oppidī partēs continentī[8] impetū petīvērunt, pars-

[1] 'persist.' [2] 'show.' [3] 'arrange.' [4] 'at length.' [5] 'market place.' [6] 'in close formation.' [7] 'level.' [8] **continenti impetu**: 'without halting.'

3 que ibi, cum angustō exitū portārum sē ipsī premerent, ā
mīlitibus, pars iam ēgressa portīs ab equitibus est inter-
4 fecta. Nec fuit quisquam quī praedae studēret. Sīc et
Cēnabēnsī caede et labōre operis[1] incitātī nōn aetāte cōn-
5 fectīs, nōn mulieribus, nōn īnfantibus pepercērunt. Dē-
nique ex omnī numerō, quī fuit circiter mīlium quadrā-
gintā, vix octingentī, quī prīmō clāmōre audītō sē ex
oppidō ēiēcerant, incolumēs ad Vercingetorīgem pervē-
6 nērunt. Quōs ille multā iam nocte silentiō ex fugā
excēpit, et veritus nē qua in castrīs ex eōrum concursū et
misericordiā vulgī sēditiō orerētur, [ut] procul in viā dis-
positīs familiāribus suīs prīncipibusque cīvitātum, dispa-
randōs[2] dēdūcendōsque ad suōs[3] cūrāvit, quae cuīque
cīvitātī pars[4] castrōrum ab initiō obvēnerat.

Bellum ā Vercingetorīge continuātur. Caesar discēdere cōgitur ut dissēnsiōnem Aeduōrum sēdet.

29. Posterō diē conciliō convocātō cōnsōlātus cohor-
tātusque est: nē sē admodum animō dēmitterent nēve
2 perturbārentur incommodō; nōn virtūte neque in aciē
vīcisse Rōmānōs, sed artificiō[5] quōdam et scientiā oppū-
3 gnātiōnis, cūius reī fuerint ipsī imperītī; errāre, sī quī in
4 bellō omnēs secundōs rērum prōventūs[6] exspectent; sibi
numquam placuisse Avaricum dēfendī, cūius reī tēstēs
ipsōs habēret, sed factum imprūdentiā Biturīgum et
nimiā[7] obsequentiā[8] reliquōrum utī hōc incommodum
5 acciperētur; id tamen sē celeriter māiōribus commodīs

[1] 'siege.' [2] 'separate'; sc. *esse*, and *eōs* as subj., referring to **quos**. [3] explained in the following clause. [4] attracted into subordinate clause; **quae pars castrorum** = *eam partem castrōrum* (explaining **suos**) **quae.** [5] 'cunning.' [6] 'result.' [7] 'excessive.' [8] 'willingness to yield.'

sānātūrum.[1] Nam, quae ab reliquīs Gallīs cīvitātēs dis- 6
sentīrent, hās suā dīligentiā adiūnctūrum atque ūnum
cōnsilium tōtīus Galliae effectūrum, cūius cōnsēnsuī nē
orbis quidem terrārum possit obsistere; idque sē prope
iam effectum habēre. Intereā aequum esse ab iīs com- 7
mūnis salūtis causā impetrārī ut castra mūnīre īnstitue-
rent, quō facilius repentīnōs hostium impetūs sustinēre
possent.

30. Fuit haec ōrātiō nōn ingrāta[2] Gallīs, et māximē
quod ipse animō nōn dēfēcerat tantō acceptō incommodō,
neque sē in occultum abdiderat et cōnspectum multitū-
dinis fūgerat; plūsque animō prōvidēre et praesentīre 2
exīstimābātur, quod rē integrā prīmō incendendum Ava-
ricum, post dēserendum cēnsuerat. Itaque, ut reliquōrum 3
imperātōrum rēs adversae auctōritātem minuunt, sīc
hūius ex contrāriō dīgnitās incommodō acceptō in diēs
augēbātur. Simul in spem veniēbant ēius affīrmātiōne 4
dē reliquīs adiungendīs cīvitātibus; prīmumque eō tem-
pore Gallī castra mūnīre īnstituērunt, et sīc erant animō
cōnsternātī hominēs īnsuētī labōris, ut omnia quae impe-
rārentur sibi patienda exīstimārent.

31. Nec minus quam est pollicitus Vercingetorīx
animō labōrābat ut reliquās cīvitātēs adiungeret, atque
eārum prīncipēs dōnīs[3] pollicitātiōnibusque alliciēbat.
Huīc reī idōneōs hominēs dēligēbat, quōrum quisque aut 2
ōrātiōne subdolā[4] aut amīcitiā facillimē capere[5] posset.
Quī Avaricō expūgnātō refūgerant, armandōs vestien- 3
dōsque cūrat; simul, ut dēminūtae cōpiae redintegrāren- 4
tur, imperat certum numerum mīlitum cīvitātibus, quem,
et quam ante diem, in castra addūcī velit; sagittāriōsque

[1] (cure) 'make up for.' [2] 'displeasing.' [3] 'gift.' [4] 'crafty.' [5] 'win.'

omnēs, quōrum erat permāgnus in Galliā numerus, conquīrī et ad sē mittī iubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter id quod
5 Avaricī dēperierat explētur. Interim Teutomatus Ollovicōnis fīlius, rēx Nitiobrogum, cūius pater ab senātū nostrō amīcus erat appellātus, cum māgnō numerō equitum suōrum et quōs ex Aquītāniā condūxerat[1] ad eum pervēnit.

32. Caesar Avaricī complūrēs diēs commorātus summamque ibi cōpiam frūmentī et reliquī commeātūs nac-
2 tus exercitum ex labōre atque inopiā reficit. Iam prope hieme cōnfectā, cum ipsō annī tempore ad gerendum bellum vocārētur et ad hostem proficīscī cōnstituisset, sīve[2] eum ex palūdibus silvīsque ēlicere sīve obsidiōne premere posset, lēgātī ad eum prīncipēs Aeduōrum veniunt ōrātum ut māximē necessāriō tempore cīvitātī sub-
3 veniat: summō esse in perīculō rem, quod, cum singulī magistrātūs antīquitus creārī atque rēgiam potestātem annum obtinēre cōnsuēssent, duo magistrātum gerant et
4 sē uterque eōrum lēgibus creātum dīcat. Hōrum esse alterum Convictolitavem, flōrentem[3] et illūstrem adulēscentem, alterum Cotum, antīquissimā familiā nātum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et māgnae cōgnātiōnis,[4] cūius frāter Valetiācus proximō annō eun-
5 dem magistrātum gesserit. Cīvitātem esse omnem in armīs, dīvīsum senātum, dīvīsum populum, suās[5] cūiusque eōrum clientēlās. Quod sī diūtius alātur controversia, fore utī pars cum parte cīvitātis cōnflīgat. Id nē accidat positum in ēius dīligentiā atque auctōritāte.

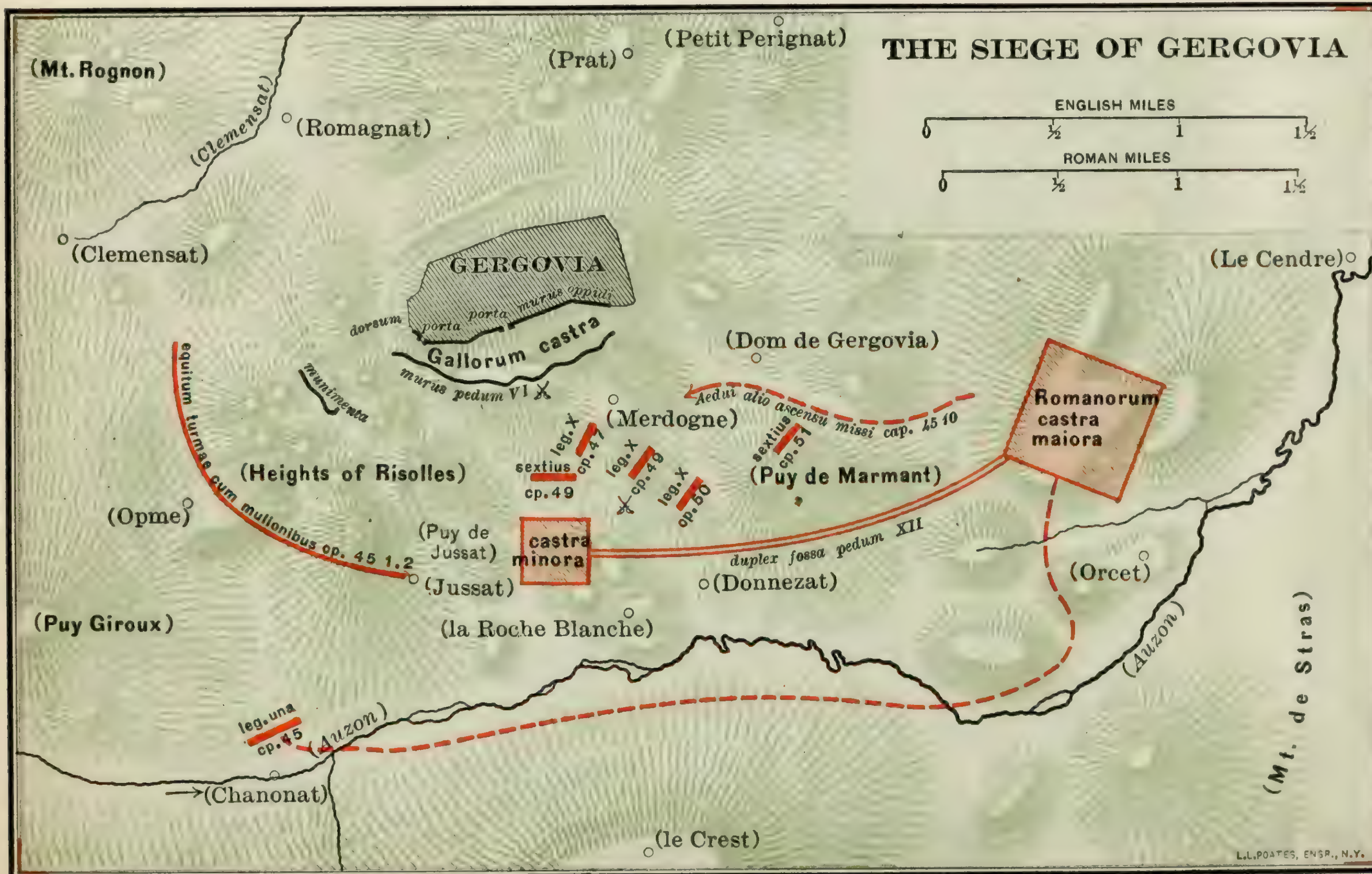
[1] 'hire.' [2] '(to see) whether.' [3] 'influential.' [4] 'number of kinsmen.' [5] **suas—clientelas** : lit. 'of each of them his own clientage'; i.e. 'each had his own organized partisans.'

33. Caesar, etsī ā bellō atque hoste discēdere dētrīmen-
tōsum[1] esse exīstimābat, tamen nōn īgnōrāns quanta ex
dissēnsiōnibus incommoda orīrī cōnsuēssent, nē tanta et
tam coniūncta populō Rōmānō cīvitās, quam ipse semper
aluisset omnibusque rēbus ōrnāsset,[2] ad vim atque arma
dēscenderet, atque ea pars quae minus sibi cōnfīderet
auxilia ā Vercingetorīge arcesseret, huīc reī praeverten-
dum[3] exīstimāvit; et, quod lēgibus Aeduōrum iīs quī 2
summum magistrātum obtinērent excēdere ex fīnibus nōn
licēret, nē quid dē iūre aut dē lēgibus eōrum dēminuisse
vidērētur, ipse in Aeduōs proficīscī statuit senātumque
omnem et quōs[4] inter contrōversia esset ad sē Decetiam
ēvocāvit. Cum prope omnis cīvitās eō convēnisset docē- 3
rēturque,[5] paucīs clam convocātīs, aliō[6] locō, aliō[6] tem-
pore atque oportuerit, frātrem[7] ā frātre[8] renūntiātum,[9]
cum lēgēs duo ex ūnā familiā vīvō utrōque nōn sōlum
magistrātūs creārī vetārent,[10] sed etiam in senātū esse
prohibērent, Cotum imperium dēpōnere coēgit; Convic- 4
tolitavem, quī per sacerdōtēs[11] mōre cīvitātis intermissīs
magistrātibus esset creātus, potestātem obtinēre iūssit.

Caesar Labiēnum cum quattuor legiōnibus in Senonēs et Parīsiōs mittit; ipse sex ad Gergoviam oppidum dūcit.

34. Hōc dēcrētō interpositō, cohortātus Aeduōs ut contrōversiārum āc dissēnsiōnis oblivīscerentur atque omnibus omissīs [hīs] rēbus huīc bellō servīrent,[12] eaque quae meruissent praemia ab sē dēvictā Galliā exspectārent equitātumque omnem et peditum mīlia decem sibi

[1] 'disadvantageous.' [2] 'honor.' [3] 'attend first.' [4] obj. of **inter**; sc. *eōs* as antecedent. [5] subj. is **fratrem—renuntiatum** (*esse*). [6] **alio—atque**: 'other than.' [7] i.e. Cotus. [8] i.e. Valetiacus. [9] 'declare elected.' [10] 'forbid.' [11] 'priests,' i.e. the Druids. [12] 'attend.'


THE SIEGE OF GERGOVIA
ENGLISH MILES
0 ½ 1 1½
ROMAN MILES
0 ½ 1 1½
(Mt. Rognon)
(Clemensat)
(Romagnat)
(Prat)
(Petit Perignat)
(Clemensat)
GERGOVIA
murus oppidi
porta
porta
porta
dorsum
Gallorum castra
murus pedum VI
munimenta
equitum turmae cum mulionibus cp. 45 1.2
(Heights of Risolles)
(Opme)
(Puy de Jussat)
(Jussat)
(Puy Giroux)
(la Roche Blanche)
castra minora
sextius cp. 49
leg. X cp. 47
leg. X cp. 49
leg. X cp. 50
(Merdogne)
(Dom de Gergovia)
Aedui alio ascensu missi cap. 45 10
sextius cp. 51
(Puy de Marmant)
duplex fossa pedum XII
(Donnezat)
Romanorum castra maiora
(Le Cendre)
(Orcet)
(Auzon)
leg. una cp. 45
(Auzon)
(Chanonat)
(le Crest)
(Mt. de Stras)
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiīs reī frūmentāriae
causā dispōneret, exercitum in duās partēs dīvīsit: quat-
2 tuor legiōnēs in Senonēs Parīsiōsque Labiēnō dūcendās
dedit; sex ipse in Arvernōs ad oppidum Gergoviam
secundum flūmen Elaver dūxit; equitātūs partem illī
3 attribuit, partem sibi relīquit. Quā rē cōgnitā Vercin-
getorīx omnibus interruptīs ēius flūminis pontibus ab
alterā flūminis parte iter facere coepit.

35. Cum uterque utrimque exīsset exercitus, in cōn-
spectū ferēque ē [1] regiōne Caesaris castra pōnēbat. Dis-
positīs explōrātōribus, nēcubi [2] effectō ponte Rōmānī
cōpiās trādūcerent, erat in māgnīs Caesarī difficultātibus
rēs nē māiōrem aestātis partem flūmine impedīrētur,
quod nōn ferē ante autumnum Elaver vadō trānsīrī solet.
2 Itaque, nē id accideret, silvestrī locō castrīs positīs, ē [1]
regiōne ūnīus [3] eōrum pontium quōs Vercingetorīx re-
scindendōs cūrāverat, posterō diē cum duābus legiōnibus
3 in occultō restitit [4]; reliquās cōpiās cum omnibus impedī-
mentīs, ut cōnsuērat, mīsit, distrāctīs quibusdam cohorti-
4 bus, ut numerus legiōnum cōnstāre vidērētur. Hīs quam
longissimē possent prōgredī iūssīs, cum iam ex diēī tem-
pore coniectūram [5] caperet in castra perventum,[6] īsdem
sublicīs,[7] quārum pars īnferior integra remanēbat, pon-
tem reficere coepit. Celeriter effectō opere legiōnibusque
trāductīs et locō castrīs idōneō dēlēctō reliquās cōpiās
revocāvit. Vercingetorīx rē cōgnitā, nē contrā suam
voluntātem dīmicāre cōgerētur, māgnīs itineribus ante-
cēssit.

[1] **e regione:** 'opposite.' [2] 'in order that nowhere.' [3] with **e regione**; (to) 'one.' [4] 'remain behind.' [5] **coniecturam capere** 'conjecture, judge.' [6] sc. *esse ab iīs;* impersonal. [7] 'pile.'

36. Caesar ex eō locō quīntīs castrīs[1] Gergoviam per-
vēnit, equestrīque eō diē proeliō levī factō, perspectō
urbis sitū, quae posita in altissimō monte omnēs adi-
tūs difficilēs habēbat, dē oppūgnātiōne dēspērāvit; dē
obsessiōne nōn prius agendum cōnstituit quam rem frū-
mentāriam expedīsset. At Vercingetorīx castrīs prope 2
oppidum in monte positīs, mediocribus circum sē inter-
vāllīs sēparātim singulārum cīvitātum cōpiās collocā-
verat, atque omnibus ēius iugī collibus occupātīs quā
dīspicī poterat, horribilem[2] speciem praebēbat; prīnci- 3
pēsque eārum cīvitātum, quōs sibi ad cōnsilium capi-
endum dēlēgerat, prīmā lūce cotīdiē ad sē convenīre
iubēbat, seu quid commūnicandum, seu quid administran-
dum vidērētur; neque ūllum ferē diem intermittēbat quīn 4
equestrī proeliō, interiectīs sagittāriīs, quid in quōque
esset animī āc virtūtis suōrum perīclitārētur. Erat ē 5
regiōnē oppidī collis sub ipsīs rādīcibus montis ēgregiē
mūnītus atque ex omnī parte circumcīsus[3]; quem sī tenē-
rent nostrī, et aquae māgnā parte et pābulātiōne līberā
prohibitūrī hostēs vidēbantur. Sed is locus praesidiō 6
ab hīs nōn īnfīrmō tenēbātur. Tamen silentiō noctis 7
Caesar ex castrīs ēgressus, prius quam subsidiō ex oppidō
venīrī posset, dēiectō praesidiō potītus locō, duās ibi
legiōnēs collocāvit· fossamque duplicem duodēnum[4] pe-
dum ā māiōribus castrīs ad minōra perdūxit, ut tūtō
ab repentīnō hostium incursū etiam singulī commeāre
possent.

[1] 'day's march.' [2] 'formidable.' [3] 'with abrupt slope.' [4] 'each (part) of twelve'; gen. plu.

Novae apud Aeduōs turbae; dēficiunt auxilia Caesarī missa, quibus obviam proficīscitur Caesar. Aegrē interim castra contrā Gallōs dēfenduntur.

37. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis
Aeduus, cuī magistrātum adiūdicātum [1] ā Caesare dēmōn-
strāvimus, sollicitātus [2] ab Arvernīs pecūniā cum quibus-
dam adulēscentibus colloquitur, quōrum erat prīnceps
Litaviccus atque ēius frātrēs, amplissimā familiā nātī
2 adulēscentēs. Cum hīs praemium commūnicat hortātur-
3 que ut sē līberōs et imperiō nātōs meminerint. Ūnam
esse Aeduōrum cīvitātem, quae certissimam Galliae vic-
tōriam distineat; ēius auctōritāte reliquās continērī; quā
trāductā locum cōnsistendī Rōmānīs in Galliā nōn fore.
4 Esse nōn nūllō sē Caesaris beneficiō affectum, sīc tamen
5 ut iūstissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plūs com-
mūnī lībertātī tribuere. Cūr enim potius Aeduī dē suō
iūre et dē lēgibus ad Caesarem disceptātōrem,[3] quam
6 Rōmānī ad Aeduōs veniant? Celeriter adulēscentibus et
ōrātiōne magistrātūs et praemiō dēductīs, cum sē vel
prīncipēs ēius cōnsiliī fore profiterentur, ratiō perficiendī
quaerēbātur, quod cīvitātem temerē ad suscipiendum bel-
7 lum addūcī posse nōn cōnfīdēbant. Placuit ut Litaviccus
decem illīs mīlibus quae Caesarī ad bellum mitterentur
praeficerētur, atque ea [4] dūcenda cūrāret frātrēsque ēius ad
Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua quā ratiōne agī placeat
cōnstituunt.

38. Litaviccus acceptō exercitū, cum mīlia passuum circiter trigintā ā Gergoviā abesset, convocātīs subitō mīlitibus lacrimāns,[5] 'Quō proficīscimur,' inquit 'mīlitēs?

[1] 'award.' [2] **sollicitatus pecunia**: 'bribe.' [3] '(as) arbitrator.'
[4] sc. *mīlia.* [5] 'weep.'

Omnis noster equitātus, omnis nōbilitās interiit; prīncipēs 2
cīvitātis, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, īnsimulātī prōdi-
tiōnis, ab Rōmānīs indictā[1] causā interfectī sunt. Haec 3
ab hīs cōgnōscite, quī ex ipsā caede effūgērunt; nam ego
frātribus atque omnibus meīs propinquīs interfectīs, dolōre
prohibeor quae gesta sunt prōnūntiāre.' Prōdūcuntur iī 4
quōs ille ēdocuerat quae dīcī vellet, atque eadem quae
Litaviccus prōnūntiāverat multitūdinī expōnunt: omnēs 5
equitēs Aeduōrum interfectōs, quod collocūtī cum Arver-
nīs dīcerentur; ipsōs sē inter multitūdinem mīlitum occul-
tāsse atque ex mediā caede effūgisse. Conclāmant Aeduī 6
et Litaviccum obsecrant ut sibi cōnsulat. 'Quasi[2] vērō,' 7
inquit ille, 'cōnsiliī sit rēs, āc nōn necesse sit nōbīs Ger-
goviam contendere et cum Arvernīs nōsmet coniungere.
An dubitāmus quīn nefāriō[3] facinore admissō Rōmānī
iam ad nōs interficiendōs concurrant? Proinde, sī quid in 8
nōbīs animī est, persequāmur[4] eōrum mortem quī indīgnis-
simē interiērunt, atque hōs lātrōnēs interficiāmus.' Osten- 9
dit cīvēs Rōmānōs, quī ēius praesidiī fīdūciā ūnā[5] erant;
continuō māgnum numerum frūmentī commeātūsque dīri-
pit, ipsōs crūdēliter excruciātōs interficit. Nūntiōs tōtā 10
cīvitāte Aeduōrum dīmittit, eōdem mendāciō[6] dē caede
equitum et prīncipum permovet; hortātur ut similī ratiōne
atque ipse fēcerit suās iniūriās persequantur.

39. Eporēdorīx Aeduus, summō locō nātus adulēscēns et summae domī potentiae, et ūnā Viridomārus, parī aetāte et grātiā, sed genere disparī, quem Caesar ab Dīviciācō sibi trāditum ex humilī locō ad summam dīgnitātem perdūxerat, in equitum numerō convēnerant nōminātim

[1] adj. 'unsaid'; w. **causa**: 'without a trial.' [2] 'as if.' [3] 'abominable.' [4] 'avenge.' [5] 'with him.' [6] 'lie.'

2 ab eō ēvocātī. Hīs erat inter sē dē prīncipātū contentiō,
et in illā magistrātuum contrōversiā alter prō Convicto-
3 litave alter pro Cotō summīs opibus pūgnāverant. Ex hīs
Eporēdorīx cōgnitō Litaviccī cōnsiliō mediā ferē nocte
rem ad Caesarem dēfert; ōrat nē patiātur cīvitātem prā-
vīs[1] adulēscentium cōnsiliīs ab amīcitiā populī Rōmānī
dēficere; quod futūrum prōvideat, sī sē tot hominum
mīlia cum hostibus coniūnxerint, quōrum salūtem neque
propinquī neglegere neque cīvitās levī mōmentō[2] aesti-
māre posset.

40. Māgnā affectus sollicitūdine hōc nūntiō Caesar,
quod semper Aeduōrum cīvitātī praecipuē indulserat,
nūllā interpositā dubitātiōne[3] legiōnēs expedītās quattuor
2 equitātumque omnem ex castrīs ēdūcit; nec fuit spatium
tālī tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod rēs posita in
3 celeritāte vidēbātur; C. Fabium lēgātum cum legiōnibus
duābus castrīs praesidiō relinquit. Frātrēs Litaviccī cum
comprehendī iūssisset, paulō ante reperit ad hostēs pro-
4 fūgisse. Adhortātus mīlitēs nē necessāriō tempore iti-
neris labōre permoveantur, cupidissimīs omnibus prōgres-
sus mīlia passuum quīnque et vīgintī, āgmen Aeduōrum
cōnspicātur; immissō equitātū iter eōrum morātur atque
impedit interdīcitque omnibus nē quemquam interficiant.
5 Eporēdorīgem et Viridomārum, quōs illī interfectōs exī-
stimābant, inter equitēs versārī suōsque appellāre iubet.
6 Hīs cōgnitīs et Litaviccī fraude perspectā, Aeduī manūs
tendere, et dēditiōnem sīgnificāre, et prōiectīs armīs mor-
7 tem dēprecārī incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suīs clientibus,
quibus mōre Gallōrum nefās est etiam in extrēmā fortūnā
dēserere patrōnōs,[4] Gergoviam profugit.

[1] 'vicious.' [2] 'consequence.' [3] 'hesitation.' [4] 'leader.'

41. Caesar nūntiīs ad cīvitātem Aeduōrum missīs quī
suō beneficiō cōnservātōs docērent, quōs iūre bellī interfi-
cere potuisset, tribusque hōrīs [noctis] exercituī ad quiē-
tem datīs castra ad Gergoviam movet. Mediō ferē itinere 2
equitēs ā Fabiō missī, quantō rēs in perīculō fuerit expō-
nunt. Summīs cōpiīs castra oppūgnāta dēmōnstrant, cum
crēbrō[1] integrī dēfessīs succēderent nostrōsque assiduō
labōre dēfatīgārent, quibus propter māgnitūdinem castrō-
rum perpetuō esset īsdem[2] in vāllō permanendum. Mul- 3
titūdine sagittārum atque omnī genere tēlōrum multōs
vulnerātos; ad haec sustinenda māgnō ūsuī fuisse tor-
menta. Fabium discēssū eōrum duābus relictīs portīs 4
obstruere cēterās pluteōsque[3] vāllō addere et sē in po-
sterum diem similemque cāsum apparāre. Hīs rēbus 5
cōgnitīs Caesar summō studiō mīlitum ante ortum sōlis in
castra pervēnit.

Dēficiunt Aeduī.

42. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aeduī prīmīs
nūntiīs ab Litaviccō acceptīs nūllum sibi ad cōgnōscen-
dum spatium relinquunt. Impellit aliōs avāritia, aliōs 2
īrācundia[4] et temeritās,[5] quae māximē illī hominum
generī est innāta, ut levem audītiōnem habeant prō rē
compertā. Bona cīvium Rōmānōrum dīripiunt, caedēs 3
faciunt, in servitūtem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem prōcli- 4
nātam[6] Convictolitavis plēbemque ad furōrem impellit,
ut facinore admissō ad sānitātem revertī pudeat.[7] M. Ari- 5
stium, tribūnum mīlitum, iter ad legiōnēs facientem fidē

[1] adv. of *crēber*. [2] w. **quibus**. [3] 'screen.' [4] 'passion.' [5] 'rashness.' [6] '(already) started (in that direction).' [7] 'shame,' impers.; translate, 'they may be ashamed.'

datā ex oppidō Cavillōnō ēdūcunt; idem facere cōgunt
6 eōs quī negōtiandī causā ibi cōnstiterant. Hōs continuō[1]
in itinere adortī omnibus impedīmentīs exuunt; repū-
gnantēs diem noctemque obsident; multīs utrimque inter-
fectīs māiōrem multitūdinem ad arma concitant.

43. Interim nūntiō allātō omnēs eōrum mīlitēs in po-
testāte Caesaris tenērī, concurrunt ad Aristium; nihil
pūblicō factum cōnsiliō dēmōnstrant; quaestiōnem dē bo-
2 nīs dīreptīs dēcernunt; Litaviccī frātrumque bona pūbli-
cant; lēgātōs ad Caesarem pūrgandī suī grātiā[2] mittunt.
3 Haec faciunt recuperandōrum suōrum causā; sed contā-
minātī[3] facinore et captī compendiō[4] ex dīreptīs bonīs,
quod ea rēs ad multōs pertinēbat, et timōre poenae exter-
ritī cōnsilia clam dē bellō inīre incipiunt cīvitātēsque
4 reliquās lēgātiōnibus sollicitant. Quae tametsī Caesar
intellegēbat, tamen quam mītissimē[5] potest lēgātōs ap-
pellat: nihil sē propter īnscientiam levitātemque vulgī
gravius dē cīvitāte iūdicāre neque dē suā in Aeduōs
5 benevolentiā dēminuere. Ipse māiōrem Galliae mōtum
exspectāns, nē ab omnibus cīvitātibus circumsisterētur,
cōnsilia inībat quem ad modum ā Gergoviā discēderet
āc rūrsus omnem exercitum contraheret, nē prōfectiō nāta
ā timōre dēfectiōnis similisque fugae vidērētur.

Rōmānōrum ad Gergoviam clādēs.

44. Haec cōgitantī accidere vīsa est facultās bene ge-
rendae reī. Nam cum in minōra castra operis perspi-
ciendī causā vēnisset, animadvertit collem quī ab hostibus
tenēbātur nūdātum hominibus, quī superiōribus diēbus

[1] 'immediately.' [2] like **causa**. [3] 'implicated' (in). [4] 'profit.'
[5] 'mildly.'

vix prae multitūdine cernī poterat. Admīrātus quaerit
ex perfugīs causam, quōrum māgnus ad eum cotīdiē nu- 2
merus cōnfluēbat.[1] Cōnstābat inter omnēs, quod[2] iam 3
ipse Caesar per explōrātōrēs cōgnōverat, dorsum[3] esse
ēius iugī prope aequum, sed silvestre et angustum, quā
esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidī; vehementer huīc 4
illōs locō timēre nec iam aliter sentīre, ūnō colle ab
Rōmānīs occupātō, sī alterum āmīsissent, quīn paene cir-
cumvāllātī atque omnī exitū et pābulātiōne interclūsī
vidērentur; ad hunc mūniendum locum omnēs ā Vercin- 5
getorīge ēvocātōs.

45. Hāc rē cōgnitā Caesar mittit complūrēs equitum
turmās eō dē mediā nocte; imperat ut paulō tumultuōsius
omnibus locīs pervagentur. Prīmā lūce māgnum nume- 2
rum impedīmentōrum[4] ex castrīs mūlōrumque prōdūcī
dēque hīs strāmenta[5] dētrahī mūliōnēsque[6] cum cassidi-
bus,[7] equitum speciē āc simulātiōne, collibus circumvehī
iubet. Hīs paucōs addit equitēs quī lātius ostentātiōnis 3
causā vagentur. Longō circuitū eāsdem omnēs iubet pe-
tere regiōnēs. Haec procul ex oppidō vidēbantur, ut erat 4
ā Gergoviā dēspectus in castra, neque tantō spatiō, certī
quid esset, explōrārī poterat. Legiōnem decimam eōdem 5
lūce mittit et paulum prōgressam īnferiōre cōnstituit locō
silvīsque occultat. Augētur Gallīs sūspīciō atque omnēs 6
illō ad mūnītiōnem cōpiae trādūcuntur. Vacua castra 7
hostium Caesar cōnspicātus tēctīs īnsīgnibus suōrum oc-
cultātīsque sīgnīs mīlitāribus rārōs mīlitēs, nē ex oppidō
animadverterentur, ex māiōribus castrīs in minōra trā-
dūcit, lēgātīsque quōs singulīs legiōnibus praefēcerat quid 8

[1] 'stream' (into camp). [2] sc. *id.* [3] 'summit.' [4] 'beast of burden.' [5] 'pack-saddle.' [6] 'mule-driver.' [7] 'helmet.'

fierī velit, ostendit: in prīmīs monet ut contineant mīlitēs
nē studiō pūgnandī aut spē praedae longius prōgredian-
tur; quid inīquitās locī habeat incommodī prōpōnit; hōc
9 ūnā celeritāte posse vītārī; occāsiōnis esse rem, nōn proe-
10 liī. Hīs rēbus expositīs sīgnum dat et ab dextrā parte
aliō āscēnsū eōdem tempore Aeduōs mittit.

46. Mūrus oppidī ā plānitiē atque initiō āscēnsūs rēctā[1]
regiōne,[2] sī nūllus amfrāctus[3] intercēderet, mīlle et ducen-
2 tōs passūs aberat; quicquid hūc circuitūs ad molliendum[4]
3 clīvum accēsserat, id spatium itineris augēbat. Ā mediō
ferē colle in longitūdinem, ut nātūra montis ferēbat, ex
grandibus saxīs sex pedum mūrum quī nostrōrum impe-
tum tardāret praedūxerant Gallī atque, īnferiōre omnī
spatiō vacuō relictō, superiōrem partem collis usque ad
4 mūrum oppidī dēnsissimīs castrīs[5] complēverant. Mīlitēs
datō sīgnō celeriter ad mūnītiōnem perveniunt eamque
5 trānsgressī trīnīs[6] castrīs[5] potiuntur; āc tanta fuit in
castrīs capiendīs celeritās ut Teutomatus, rēx Nitiobro-
gum, subitō in tabernāculō oppressus, ut merīdiē conquiē-
verat,[7] superiōre parte corporis nūdā, vulnerātō equō, vix
sē ex manibus praedantium mīlitum ēriperet.

47. Cōnsecūtus id quod animō prōposuerat Caesar re-
ceptuī[8] canī[9] iūssit, legiōnisque decimae, quācum erat,
2 continuō sīgna cōnstitērunt. At reliquārum legiōnum
mīlitēs nōn audītō sonō tubae, quod satis māgna vallēs
intercēdēbat, tamen ā tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque, ut erat
ā Caesare praeceptum, retinēbantur. Sed ēlātī spē celeris

[1] 'straight.' [2] 'line.' [3] 'bend.' [4] **molliendum clivum**: (lit. 'softening the slope'), 'lessening the steepness.' [5] plu. in signification. [6] distributive of *trēs;* used to show that **castris** is plu. in signification. [7] 'rest.' [8] 'retreat.' [9] 'sound'; impers. pass. infin.

victōriae et hostium fugā et superiōrum temporum secun-
dīs proeliīs nihil adeō arduum sibi exīstimābant quod
nōn virtūte cōnsequī possent; neque fīnem prius sequendī
fēcērunt quam mūrō oppidī portīsque appropinquārunt.
Tum vērō ex omnibus urbis partibus ortō clāmōre, quī 4
longius aberant repentīnō tumultū perterritī, cum hostem
intrā portās esse exīstimārent, sē ex oppidō ēiēcērunt.
Mātrēs familiae dē mūrō vestem[1] argentumque iactābant 5
et pectore[2] nūdō prōminentēs[3] passīs manibus obtēstā-
bantur Rōmānōs ut sibi parcerent; neu,[4] sīc ut Avaricī[5]
fēcissent, nē ā mulieribus quidem atque īnfantibus absti-
nērent. Nōn nūllae dē mūro per manūs dēmissae sēsē 6
mīlitibus trādēbant. L. Fabius, centuriō legiōnis octāvae, 7
quem inter suōs eō diē dīxisse cōnstābat excitārī sē Ava-
ricēnsibus praemiīs, neque commissūrum ut prius quis-
quam mūrum āscenderet, trēs suōs[6] nactus manipulārēs
atque ab iīs sublevātus mūrum āscendit. Hōs ipse rūrsus
singulōs exceptāns[7] in mūrum extulit.

48. Interim iī quī ad alteram partem oppidī, ut suprā
dēmōnstrāvimus, mūnītiōnis causā convēnerant, prīmō
exaudītō clāmōre, inde etiam crēbrīs nūntiīs incitātī op-
pidum ā Rōmānīs tenērī, praemissīs equitibus māgnō
cursū eō contendērunt. Eōrum ut quisque prīmus vēne- 2
rat, sub mūrō cōnsistēbat suōrumque pūgnantium nume-
rum augēbat. Quōrum cum māgna multitūdō convēnis- 3
set, mātrēs familiae, quae paulō ante Rōmānīs dē mūrō
manūs tendēbant, suōs obtēstārī et mōre Gallicō passum
capillum ostentāre līberōsque in cōnspectum prōferre coe-
pērunt. Erat Rōmānīs nec locō nec numerō aequa con- 4

[1] 'robes.' [2] 'breast.' [3] 'lean over.' [4] 'and not.' [5] locative.
[6] **suos manipulares**: 'of his own maniple.' [7] 'help.'

tentiō; simul et cursū et spatiō pūgnae dēfatīgātī nōn facile recentēs atque integrōs sustinēbant.

49. Caesar cum inīquō locō pūgnārī hostiumque cōpiās
augērī vidēret, praemetuēns[1] suīs ad T. Sextium lēgātum,
quem minōribus castrīs praesidiō relīquerat, mīsit ut co-
hortēs ex castrīs celeriter ēdūceret et sub īnfimō colle ab
2 dextrō latere hostium cōnstitueret; ut, sī nostrōs locō
dēpulsōs vīdisset, quō minus līberē hostēs īnsequerentur
3 terrēret. Ipse, paulum ex eō locō cum legiōne prōgressus
ubi cōnstiterat, ēventum pūgnae exspectābat.

50. Cum ācerrimē comminus pūgnārētur, hostēs locō et
numerō, nostrī virtūte cōnfīderent, subitō sunt Aeduī vīsī
ab latere nostrīs apertō, quōs Caesar ab dextrā parte aliō
2 āscēnsū manūs distinendae causā mīserat. Hī similitū-
dine armōrum vehementer nostrōs perterruērunt, āc, ta-
metsī dextrīs umerīs[2] exsertīs[3] animadvertēbantur,[4] quod
īnsīgne[5] pāctum[6] esse cōnsuērat, tamen id ipsum suī fal-
lendī causā mīlitēs ab hostibus factum exīstimābant.
3 Eōdem tempore L. Fabius centuriō quīque ūnā mūrum
āscenderant circumventī atque interfectī dē mūrō prae-
4 cipitābantur. M. Petronius, ēiusdem legiōnis centuriō,
cum portās excīdere cōnātus esset, ā multitūdine oppressus
āc sibi dēspērāns, multīs iam vulneribus acceptīs, manipu-
lāribus suīs quī illum secūtī erant, 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'mē
ūnā vōbīscum servāre nōn possum, vestrae quidem certē
vītae prōspiciam, quōs cupiditāte glōriae adductus in
5 perīculum dēdūxī. Vōs datā facultāte vōbīs cōnsulite.'
Simul in mediōs hostēs irrūpit duōbusque interfectīs re-
6 liquōs ā portā paulum submōvit. Cōnantibus auxiliārī

[1] 'fear in advance.' [2] 'shoulder.' [3] (thrust out) **'bare.'**
[4] **'identify.'** [5] 'signal.' [6] part. of *pangō*, 'agree.'

suīs, 'Frūstrā,' inquit, 'meae vītae subvenīre cōnāminī, quem iam sanguis vīrēsque dēficiunt. Proinde abīte dum est facultās vōsque ad legiōnem recipite.' Ita pūgnāns post paulum concidit āc suīs salūtī fuit.

51. Nostrī cum undique premerentur, sex et quadrā-
gintā centuriōnibus āmissīs dēiectī sunt locō. Sed in-
tolerantius[1] Gallōs īnsequentēs legiō decima tardāvit,
quae prō subsidiō paulō aequiōre locō cōnstiterat. Hanc
rūrsus tertiae decimae legiōnis cohortēs excēpērunt,
quae ex castrīs minōribus ēductae cum T. Sextiō lēgātō 2
cēperant locum superiōrem. Legiōnēs ubi prīmum plāni- 3
tiem attigērunt, īnfestīs contrā hostem sīgnīs cōnsti-
tērunt. Vercingetorīx ab rādīcibus collis suōs intrā 4
mūnītiōnēs redūxit. Eō diē mīlitēs sunt paulō minus
septingentī dēsīderātī.

Cōntiōne habitā et cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, Caesar contrā Aeduōs exercitum dūcit.

52. Posterō diē Caesar cōntiōne advocātā temeritātem
cupiditātemque mīlitum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsī iūdi-
cāvissent quō prōcēdendum aut quid agendum vidē-
rētur, neque sīgnō recipiendī datō cōnstitissent neque ā
tribūnīs mīlitum lēgātīsque retinērī potuissent. Exposuit 2
quid inīquitās locī posset, quod ipse ad Avaricum sēnsis-
set, cum sine duce et sine equitātū dēprehēnsīs hosti-
bus explōrātam victōriam dīmīsisset, nē parvum modo
dētrīmentum in contentiōne propter inīquitātem locī ac-
cideret. Quantō opere eōrum animī māgnitūdinem admī- 3
rārētur, quōs nōn castrōrum mūnītiōnēs, nōn altitūdō
montis, nōn mūrus oppidī tardāre potuisset, tantō opere

[1] 'too recklessly.'

licentiam[1] arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plūs sē
quam imperātōrem dē victōriā atque exitū rērum sentīre
exīstimārent; nec minus sē ā mīlite modestiam[2] et con-
tinentiam[3] quam virtūtem atque animī māgnitūdinem
dēsīderāre.

53. Hāc habitā cōntiōne et ad extrēmum [ōrātiōne]
cōnfīrmātīs mīlitibus, nē ob hanc causam animō permo-
vērentur, neu, quod inīquitās locī attulisset, id virtūtī
hostium tribuerent; eadem dē profectiōne cōgitāns quae
ante sēnserat, legiōnēs ex castrīs ēdūxit aciemque idōneō
2 locō cōnstituit. Cum Vercingetorīx nihilō magis in
aequum locum dēscenderet, levī factō equestrī proeliō
3 atque eō secundō, in castra exercitum redūxit. Cum hōc
idem posterō diē fēcisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentātiōnem
minuendam mīlitumque animōs cōnfīrmandōs factum
4 exīstimāns in Aeduōs mōvit castra. Nē tum quidem
īnsecūtīs hostibus, tertiō diē ad flūmen Elaver vēnit;
pontem refēcit exercitumque trādūxit.

54. Ibi ā Viridomārō atque Eporēdorīge Aeduīs appel-
lātus dīscit cum omnī equitātū Litaviccum ad sollicitan-
dōs Aeduōs profectum; opus esse ipsōs antecēdere ad
2 cōnfīrmandam cīvitātem. Etsī multīs iam rēbus perfidiam
Aeduōrum perspectam habēbat atque hōrum discēssū
mātūrārī dēfectiōnem cīvitātis exīstimābat, tamen eōs
retinendōs nōn cēnsuit nē aut īnferre iniūriam vidērētur
3 aut daret timōris aliquam sūspīciōnem. Discēdentibus
iīs breviter sua in Aeduōs merita exposuit; quōs[4] et quam
4 humilēs accēpisset, compulsōs in oppida, multātōs[5] agrīs,
omnibus ēreptīs sociīs, impositō stipendiō, obsidibus

[1] 'insubordination.' [2] 'subordination.' [3] 'self-restraint.' [4] **quos humiles:** 'in what condition and how humble.' [5] 'deprive.'

summā cum contumēliā extortīs,[1] et quam in fortūnam
quamque in amplitūdinem dūxisset, ut nōn sōlum in prī-
stinum statum redīssent, sed omnium temporum dīgnitātem
et grātiam antecēssisse vidērentur. Hīs datīs mandātīs
eōs ab sē dīmīsit.

55. Noviodūnum erat oppidum Aeduōrum ad rīpās
Ligeris opportūnō locō positum. Hūc Caesar omnēs 2
obsidēs Galliae, frūmentum, pecūniam pūblicam, suōrum
atque exercitūs impedīmentōrum māgnam partem con-
tulerat; hūc māgnum numerum equōrum hūius bellī 3
causā in Ītaliā atque Hispāniā coēmptum mīserat. Eō 4
cum Eporēdorīx Viridomārusque vēnissent et dē statū
cīvitātis cōgnōvissent, Litaviccum Bibracte[2] ab Aeduīs
receptum, quod est oppidum apud eōs māximae auctōri-
tātis, Convictolitavem magistratum māgnamque partem
senātūs ad eum convēnisse, lēgātōs ad Vercingetorīgem
dē pāce et amīcitiā conciliandā pūblicē missōs, nōn praeter-
mittendum tantum commodum exīstimāvērunt. Itaque 5
interfectīs Noviodūnī cūstōdibus quīque eō negōtiandī
causā convēnerant, pecūniam atque equōs inter sē partītī
sunt; obsidēs cīvitātum Bibracte ad magistrātum dēdū- 6
cendōs cūrāvērunt; oppidum, quod ā sē tenērī nōn posse 7
iūdicābant, nē cuī esset ūsuī Rōmānīs, incendērunt;
frūmentī quod subitō potuērunt nāvibus āvexērunt, reli- 8
quum flūmine atque incendiō corrūpērunt. Ipsī ex fīni- 9
timīs regiōnibus cōpiās cōgere, praesidia cūstōdiāsque
ad rīpās Ligeris dispōnere, equitātumque omnibus locīs
iniciendī timōris causā ostentāre coepērunt, sī ab rē frū-
mentāriā Rōmānōs exclūdere [aut adductōs inopiā ex
prōvinciā expellere] possent. Quam ad spem multum eōs

[1] 'force from (them).' [2] abl.



EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS

ENGLISH MILES 0 5 10 15 20

ROMAN MILES 0 5 10 15 20

adiuvābat quod Liger ex nivibus crēverat, ut omnīnō
vadō nōn posse trānsīrī vidērētur.

56. Quibus rēbus cōgnitis Caesar mātūrandum sibi
cēnsuit, sī esset in perficiendīs pontibus perīclitandum, ut
prius quam essent māiōrēs eō coāctae cōpiae dīmicāret.
2 Nam nē commūtātō cōnsiliō iter in prōvinciam conver-
teret, ut [nōn] nēmō tum quidem necessāriō faciundum
exīstimābat, cum īnfāmia atque indīgnitās reī et opposi-
tus mōns Cebenna viārumque difficultās impediēbat, tum
māximē quod abiūnctō[1] Labiēnō atque iīs legiōnibus
3 quās ūnā mīserat vehementer timēbat. Itaque admodum
māgnīs diurnīs nocturnīsque itineribus cōnfectīs, contrā
4 omnium opīniōnem ad Ligerim vēnit vadōque per equitēs
inventō prō reī necessitāte opportūnō, ut bracchia modo
atque umerī ad sustinenda arma līberī ab aquā esse pos-
sent, dispositō equitātū, quī vim flūminis refringeret,
atque hostibus prīmō āspectū perturbātīs incolumem
5 exercitum trādūxit frūmentumque in agrīs et pecoris
cōpiam nactus replētō[2] hīs rēbus exercitū iter in Senonēs
facere īnstituit.

Rēs ā Labiēnō prōsperē in Parīsiīs gestae.

57. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labiēnus eō
supplēmentō quod nuper ex Ītaliā vēnerat relictō Agē-
dincī, ut esset impedīmentīs praesidiō, cum quattuor
2 legiōnibus Lutetiam proficīscitur. Id est oppidum Parī-
siōrum positum in īnsulā flūminis Sēquanae. Cūius ad-
ventū ab hostibus cōgnitō māgnae ex fīnitimīs cīvitātibus
cōpiae convēnērunt. Summa imperiī trāditur Camulo-
3 genō Aulercō, quī prope cōnfectus aetāte tamen propter

[1] 'detach.' [2] 'supply amply.'

singulārem scientiam reī mīlitāris ad eum est honōrem
ēvocātus. Is cum animadvertisset perpetuam esse palū- 4
dem, quae īnflueret in Sēquanam atque illum omnem
locum māgnopere impedīret, hīc cōnsēdit nostrōsque
trānsitū prohibēre īnstituit.

58. Labiēnus prīmō vīneās agere, crātibus atque aggere
palūdem explēre atque iter mūnīre[1] cōnābātur. Post- 2
quam īd difficilius fierī[2] animadvertit, silentiō ē castrīs
tertiā vigiliā ēgressus eōdem quō vēnerat itinere Meti-
osēdum pervēnit. Id est oppidum Senonum in īnsulā 3
Sēquanae positum, ut paulō ante dē Lutetiā dīximus.
Dēprehēnsīs nāvibus circiter quīnquāgintā celeriterque 4
coniūnctīs atque eō mīlitibus impositīs et reī novitāte
perterritīs oppidānīs, quōrum māgna pars erat ad bel-
lum ēvocāta, sine contentiōne oppidō potītur. Refectō 5
ponte, quem superiōribus diēbus hostēs resciderant, exer-
citum trādūcit et secundō flūmine ad Lutetiam iter facere
coepit. Hostēs rē cōgnitā ab iīs quī Metiosēdō profū- 6
gerant, Lutetiam incendī pontēsque ēius oppidī rescindī
iubent; ipsī profectī ā palūde in rīpā Sēquanae ē regiōne
Lutetiae contrā Labiēnī castra cōnsīdunt.

59. Iam Caesar ā Gergovia discēssisse audiēbātur, iam
dē Aeduōrum dēfectiōne et secundō Galliae mōtū rumōrēs
afferēbantur, Gallīque in colloquiīs interclūsum itinere et
Ligerī[3] Caesarem inopiā frūmentī coāctum in prōvinciam
contendisse cōnfīrmābant. Bellovacī autem dēfectiōne 2
Aeduōrum cōgnitā, quī iam ante erant per sē īnfidēlēs,[4]
manūs cōgere atque apertē bellum parāre coepērunt.
Tum Labiēnus tantā rērum commūtātiōne longē aliud 3
sibi capiendum cōnsilium atque anteā sēnserat intellegē-

[1] 'construct.' [2] 'be accomplished.' [3] abl. [4] 'wavering.'

4 bat, neque iam ut aliquid acquīreret proeliōque hostēs
lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agēdincum redū-
5 ceret cōgitābat. Namque alterā ex parte Bellovacī, quae
cīvitās in Galliā māximam habet opīniōnem virtūtis,
īnstābant, alteram Camulogenus parātō atque īnstrūctō
exercitū tenēbat; tum legiōnēs ā praesidiō atque impedī-
6 mentīs interclūsās māximum flūmen distinēbat. Tantīs
subitō difficultātibus obiectīs ab animī virtūte auxilium
petendum vidēbat.

60. Itaque sub vesperum cōnsiliō convocātō cohortātus
ut ea quae imperāsset dīligenter industriēque administrā-
rent, nāvēs quās Metiosēdō dēdūxerat singulās equitibus
Rōmānīs attribuit et prīmā cōnfectā vigiliā quattuor
mīlia passuum secundō flūmine silentiō prōgredī ibique
2 sē exspectāre iubet. Quīnque cohortēs quās minimē
fīrmās ad dīmicandum esse exīstimābat castrīs praesidiō
3 relinquit; quīnque ēiusdem legiōnis reliquās dē mediā
nocte cum omnibus impedīmentīs adversō flūmine māgnō
4 tumultū proficīscī imperat. Conquīrit etiam lintrēs; hās
māgnō sonitū rēmōrum incitātās in eandem partem mit-
tit. Ipse post paulō silentiō ēgressus cum tribus legiōni-
bus eum locum petit quō nāvēs appellī iūsserat.

61. Eō cum esset ventum, explōrātōrēs hostium, ut
omnī flūminis parte erant dispositī, inopīnantēs, quod
māgna subitō erat coorta tempestās, ā nostrīs opprimun-
2 tur; exercitus equitatusque, equitibus Rōmānīs admini-
strantibus quōs eī negōtiō praefēcerat, celeriter trānsmit-
3 titur. Ūnō ferē tempore sub lūcem hostibus nūntiātur
in castrīs Rōmānōrum praeter cōnsuētūdinem tumultu-
ārī[1] et māgnum īre āgmen adversō flūmine sonitumque

[1] 'be in confusion'; impers.

rēmōrum in eādem parte exaudīrī et paulō īnfrā mīlitēs
nāvibus trānsportārī. Quibus rēbus audītīs, quod exī- 4
stimābant tribus locīs trānsīre legiōnēs, [atque omnēs
perturbātōs dēfectiōne Aeduōrum fugam parāre,] suās
quoque cōpiās in trēs partēs distribuērunt. Nam prae- 5
sidiō ē regiōne castrōrum relictō et parvā manū Metio-
sēdum versus[1] missā quae tantum prōgrederētur quantum
nāvēs prōcēssissent, reliquās cōpiās contrā Labiēnum
dūxērunt.

62. Prīmā luce et nostrī omnēs erant trānsportātī et
hostium aciēs cernēbātur. Labiēnus mīlitēs cohortātus 2
ut suae prīstinae virtūtis et tot secundissimōrum proeliō-
rum retinērent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cūius
ductū saepe numerō hostēs superāssent, praesentem adesse
exīstimārent, dat sīgnum proeliī. Prīmō concursū ab dex- 3
trō cornū, ubi septima legiō cōnstiterat, hostēs pelluntur
atque in fugam cōiciuntur; ab sinistrō, quem locum duode- 4
cima legiō tenēbat, cum prīmī ōrdinēs hostium trānsfīxī
pīlīs concidissent, tamen ācerrimē reliquī resistēbant, nec
dabat sūspīciōnem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium 5
Camulogenus suīs aderat atque eōs cohortābātur. At in- 6
certō etiam nunc exitū victōriae, cum septimae legiōnis tri-
būnīs esset nūntiātum, quae in sinistrō cornū gererentur,
post tergum hostium legiōnem ostendērunt[2] sīgnaque in-
tulērunt. Nē eō quidem tempore quisquam locō cēssit, 7
sed circumventī omnēs interfectīque sunt. Eandem fortū- 8
nam tulit Camulogenus. At iī quī in praesidiō contrā
castra Labiēnī erant relictī, cum proelium commissum au-
dīssent, subsidiō suīs iērunt collemque cēpērunt, neque
nostrōrum mīlitum victōrum impetum sustinēre potuē-

[1] 'toward.' [2] 'unmask.'

9 runt. Sīc cum suīs fugientibus permixtī, quōs nōn silvae
10 montēsque tēxērunt, ab equitātū sunt interfectī. Hōc
negōtiō cōnfectō Labiēnus revertitur Agēdincum, ubi
impedīmenta tōtīus exercitūs relicta erant; inde cum om-
nibus cōpiīs ad Caesarem pervēnit.

Dēficiunt omnēs ferē Gallī; summum ducem cōnstituunt Vercingetorīgem; vincuntur ā Caesare equestrī proeliō.

63. Dēfectiōne Aeduōrum cōgnitā bellum augētur. Lē-
2 gātiōnēs in omnēs partēs circummittuntur; quantum grā-
tiā, auctōritāte, pecūniā valent, ad sollicitandās cīvitātēs
3 ūtuntur; nactī obsidēs quōs Caesar apud eōs dēposuerat,
4 hōrum suppliciō dubitantēs territant. Petunt ā Vercin-
getorīge Aeduī ut ad sē veniat ratiōnēsque bellī gerendī
5 commūnicet. Rē impetrātā contendunt ut ipsīs summa
imperiī trādātur; et rē in contrōversiam dēductā tōtīus
Galliae concilium Bibracte indīcitur. Conveniunt undique
6 frequentēs. Multitūdinis suffrāgiīs rēs permittitur; ad
7 ūnum omnēs Vercingetorīgem probant imperātōrem. Ab
hōc conciliō Rēmī, Lingonēs, Trēverī āfuērunt: illī, quod
amīcitiam Rōmānōrum sequēbantur; Trēverī, quod abe-
rant longius et ā Germānīs premēbantur, quae fuit causa
quā rē tōtō abessent bellō et neutrīs auxilia mitterent.
8 Māgnō dolōre Aeduī ferunt sē dēiectōs prīncipātū; que-
runtur fortūnae commūtātiōnem et Caesaris in sē indul-
gentiam requīrunt[1]; neque tamen susceptō bellō suum
9 cōnsilium ab reliquīs sēparāre audent. Invītī summae
speī[2] adulēscentēs, Eporēdorīx et Viridomārus, Vercinge-
torīgī parent.

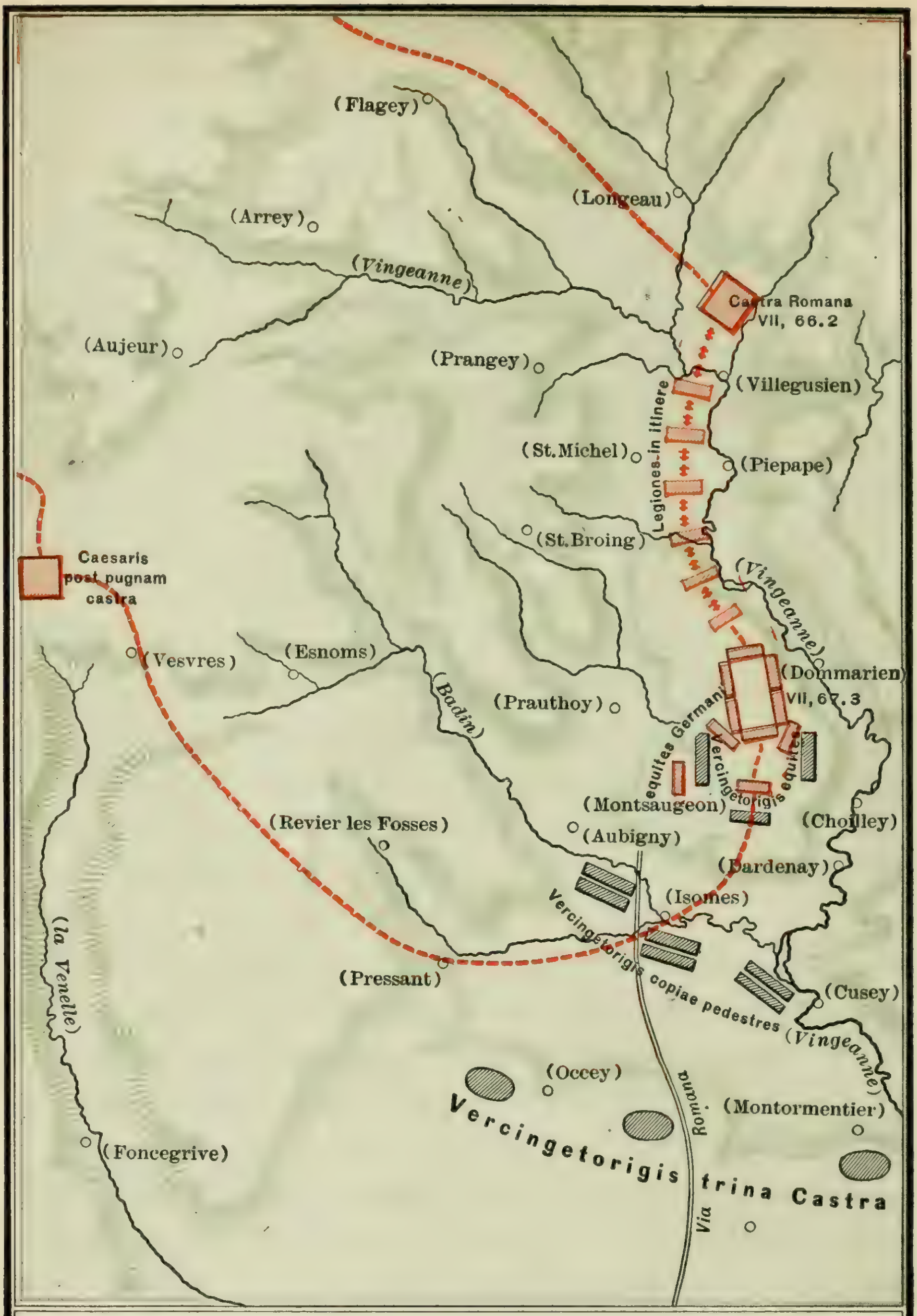
64. Ille imperat reliquīs cīvitātibus obsidēs; dēnique

[1] 'recall.' [2] 'ambition.'

eī reī cōnstituit diem. Hūc omnēs equitēs, quīndecim
mīlia numerō, celeriter convenīre iubet: peditātū, quem 2
ante habuerit sē fore contentum dīcit, neque fortūnam
temptātūrum aut aciē dīmicātūrum; sed quoniam abundet
equitātū, perfacile esse factū frūmentātiōnibus pābulātiō-
nibusque Rōmānōs prohibēre; aequō modo[1] animō sua 3
ipsī frūmenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant; quā reī
familiāris iactūrā perpetuum imperium lībertātemque sē
cōnsequī videant. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus Aeduīs Segusiā- 4
vīsque, quī sunt fīnitimī prōvinciae, decem mīlia peditum
imperat; hūc addit equitēs octingentōs. Hīs praeficit frā- 5
trem Eporēdorīgis bellumque īnferre Allobrogibus iubet.
Alterā ex parte Gabalōs proximōsque pāgōs Arvernōrum 6
in Helviōs, item Rutēnōs Cadūrcōsque ad fīnēs Volcārum
Arecomicōrum dēpopulandōs mittit. Nihilō minus clan- 7
destīnīs nūntiīs lēgātiōnibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quō-
rum mentēs nōndum ab superiōre bellō resēdisse spērābat.
Hōrum prīncipibus pecūniās, cīvitātī autem imperium 8
tōtīus prōvinciae pollicētur.

65. Ad hōs omnēs cāsūs prōvīsa erant praesidia cohor-
tium duārum et vīgintī, quae ex ipsā coācta prōvinciā ab
L. Caesare lēgātō ad omnēs partēs oppōnēbantur. Helviī 2
suā sponte cum fīnitimīs proeliō congressī pelluntur et
C. Valeriō Domnotaurō, Cabūrī fīliō, prīncipe cīvitātis,
complūribusque aliīs interfectīs intrā oppida mūrōsque
compelluntur. Allobrogēs crēbrīs ad Rhodanum dispo- 3
sitīs praesidiīs māgnā cum cūrā et dīligentiā suōs fīnēs
tuentur. Caesar, quod hostēs equitātū superiōrēs esse in- 4
tellegēbat et interclūsīs omnibus itineribus nūllā rē ex
prōvinciā atque Ītaliā sublevārī poterat, trāns Rhēnum in

[1] 'only.'



VICTORY OVER VERCINGETORIX

ENGLISH MILES
0 1 2 3 4 5

ROMAN MILES
0 1 2 3 4 5

L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

Germāniam mittit ad eās cīvitātēs quās superiōribus annīs
pācāverat; equitēsque ab hīs arcēssit et levis armātūrae
5 peditēs, quī inter eōs proeliārī cōnsuērant. Eōrum ad-
ventū, quod minus idōneīs equīs ūtēbantur, ā tribūnīs
mīlitum reliquīsque equitibus Rōmānīs atque ēvocātīs[1]
equōs sūmit Germānīsque distribuit.

66. Intereā, dum haec geruntur, hostium cōpiae ex Ar-
vernīs equitēsque quī tōtī Galliae erant imperātī conveni-
2 unt. Māgnō hōrum coāctō numerō, cum Caesar in Sēqua-
nōs per extrēmōs Lingonum fīnēs iter faceret, quō
facilius subsidium prōvinciae ferre posset, circiter mīlia
passuum decem ab Rōmānīs trīnīs castrīs Vercingetorīx
3 cōnsēdit, convocātīsque ad consilium praefectīs equitum
vēnisse tempus victōriae dēmōnstrat: fugere in prōvin-
4 ciam Rōmānōs Galliāque excēdere. Id sibi ad praesentem
obtinendam lībertātem satis esse; ad reliquī temporis
pācem atque ōtium parum[2] prōficī[3]; māiōribus enim
coāctīs cōpiīs reversūrōs neque fīnem bellandī factūrōs;
proinde in āgmine impedītōs adoriantur; sī peditēs suīs
auxilium ferant atque in eō morentur, iter facere nōn
5 posse; sī, id quod magis futūrum cōnfīdat, relictīs impe-
dīmentīs suae salūtī cōnsulant, et ūsū rērum[4] nēces-
6 sāriārum et dīgnitāte spoliātum īrī. Nam dē equiti-
bus hostium, quīn nēmō eōrum prōgredī modo extrā
āgmen audeat, nē ipsōs quidem dēbēre dubitāre. Id
quō māiōre faciant animō, cōpiās sē omnēs prō castrīs
7 habitūrum et terrōrī hostibus futūrum. Conclāmant
equitēs, sānctissimō iūre iūrandō cōnfīrmārī oportēre, nē
tēctō recipiātur, nē ad līberōs, nē ad parentēs, nē ad

[1] 'veteran' (who had been personally 'called out'). [2] 'too little.'
[3] 'gain advantage'; impers. [4] **res necessariae**: 'necessities.'

uxōrem aditum habeat, quī nōn bis per āgmen hostium perequitārit.[1]

67. Probātā rē atque omnibus ad iūs iūrandum adāctīs,
posterō diē in trēs partēs distribūtō equitātū duae sē aciēs
ab duōbus lateribus ostendunt, ūna ā prīmō āgmine iter
impedīre coepit. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar suum quoque 2
equitātum tripertītō dīvīsum contrā hostem īre iubet.
Pūgnātur ūnā omnibus in partibus. Cōnsistit āgmen; 3
impedīmenta inter legiōnēs recipiuntur. Sī quā in parte 4
nostrī labōrāre aut gravius premī vidēbantur, eō sīgna
īnferrī Caesar aciemque convertī iubēbat; quae rēs et
hostēs ad īnsequendum tardābat et nostrōs spē auxiliī
cōnfīrmābat. Tandem Germānī ab dextrō latere sum- 5
mum iugum nactī hostēs locō dēpellunt: fugientēs ūsque
ad flūmen, ubi Vercingetorīx cum pedestribus cōpiīs cōn-
sēderat, persequuntur complūrēsque interficiunt. Quā rē 6
animadversā reliquī, nē circumvenīrentur veritī, sē fugae
mandant. Omnibus locīs fit caedēs. Trēs nōbilissimī 7
Aeduī captī ad Caesarem perdūcuntur: Cotus, praefectus
equitum, quī contrōversiam cum Convictolitave proximīs
comitiīs[2] habuerat, et Cavarillus, quī post dēfectiōnem
Litaviccī pedestribus cōpiīs praefuerat, et Eporēdorīx, quō
duce ante adventum Caesaris Aeduī cum Sēquanīs bellō
contenderant.

Vercingetorīx Alesiam sē cōnfert, omnem Galliam ad bellum ēvocat.

68. Fugātō omnī equitātū Vercingetorīx cōpiās suās, ut prō castrīs collocāverat, redūxit prōtinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiōrum, iter facere coepit celeri-

[1] 'ride' (through). [2] 'election'; no sing.

terque impedīmenta ex castrīs ēdūcī et sē subsequī iūssit.
2 Caesar impedīmentīs in proximum collem ductīs, duābus
legiōnibus praesidiō relictīs, secūtus hostēs quantum diēī
tempus est passum, circiter tribus mīlibus ex novissimō āg-
mine interfectīs, alterō diē ad Alesiam castra fēcit. Per-
3 spectō urbis sitū perterritīsque hostibus, quod equitātū, quā
māximē parte exercitūs cōnfīdēbant, erant pulsī, adhortā-
tus ad labōrem mīlitēs Alesiam circumvāllāre īnstituit.

69. Ipsum erat oppidum in colle summō admodum
ēditō locō, ut nisi obsidiōne expūgnārī nōn posse vi-
2 dērētur; cūius collis rādīcēs duo duābus ex partibus
3 flūmina subluēbant.[1] Ante oppidum plānitiēs circiter
4 mīlia passuum tria in longitūdinem patēbat; reliquīs ex
omnibus partibus collēs, mediocrī interiectō spatiō, parī
5 altitūdinis[2] fāstīgiō[3] oppidum cingēbant. Sub mūrō,
quae pars collis ad orientem sōlem spectābat, hunc om-
nem locum cōpiae Gallōrum complēverant fossamque et
māceriam[4] in altitūdinem sex pedum praedūxerant.
6 Ēius mūnītiōnis quae ab Rōmānīs īnstituēbātur circuitus
7 ūndecim mīlia passuum tenēbat. Castra opportūnīs locīs
erant posita octōna castellaque tria et vīgintī facta; qui-
bus in castellīs interdiū statiōnes pōnēbantur, nē qua su-
bitō ēruptiō fieret; haec eadem noctū excubitōribus[5] āc
fīrmīs praesidiīs tenēbantur.

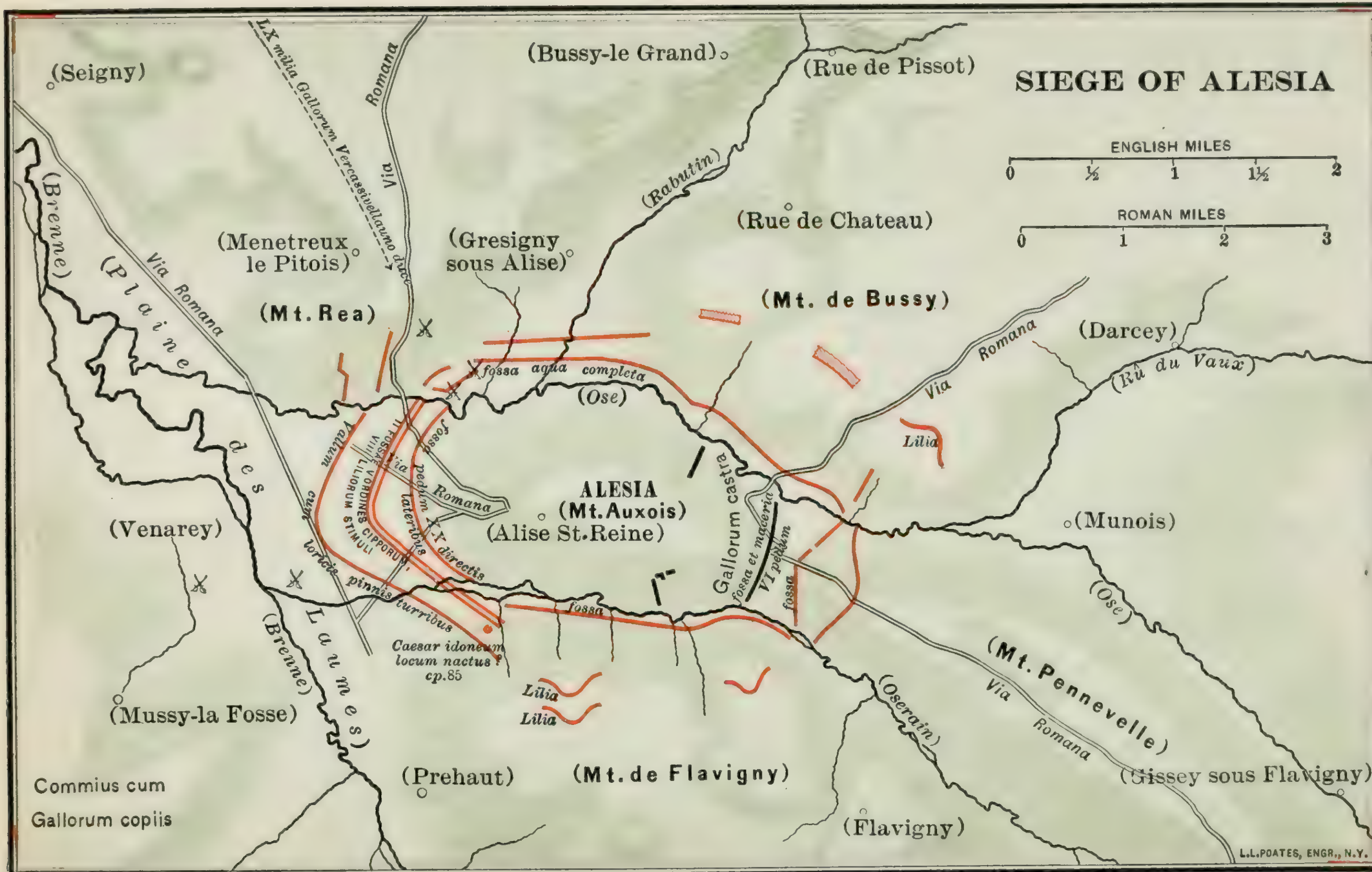
70. Opere īnstitūtō fit equestre proelium in eā plānitiē
quam intermissam[6] collibus tria mīlia passuum in longi-
tūdinem patēre suprā dēmōnstrāvimus. Summā vī ab
2 utrīsque contenditur. Labōrantibus nostrīs Caesar Ger-
mānōs submittit legiōnēsque prō castrīs cōnstituit, nē qua

[1] 'wash.' [2] w. **pari.** [3] 'summit.' [4] 'wall.' [5] 'sentinel.'
[6] 'interrupt.'

subitō irruptiō ab hostium peditātū fīat. Praesidiō legi- 3
ōnum additō nostrīs animus augētur; hostēs in fugam
coniectī sē ipsī multitūdine impediunt atque angustiōribus
portīs relictīs coartantur.[1] Germānī ācrius ūsque ad mū- 4
nītiōnēs sequuntur. Fit māgna caedēs; nōn nūllī relictīs 5
equīs fossam trānsīre et māceriam trānscendere cōnantur.
Paulum legiōnēs Caesar quās prō vāllō cōnstituerat prō-
movērī iubet. Nōn minus quī intrā mūnītiōnēs erant 6
Gallī perturbantur; venīrī ad sē cōnfestim exīstimantēs
ad arma conclāmant; nōn nūllī perterritī in oppidum
irrumpunt. Vercingetorīx iubet portās claudī, nē castra 7
nūdentur. Multīs interfectīs, complūribus equīs captīs,
Germānī sēsē recipiunt.

71. Vercingetorīx, prius quam mūnītiōnēs ab Rōmānīs
perficiantur, cōnsilium capit omnem ab sē equitātum
noctū dīmittere. Discēdentibus mandat ut suam quisque 2
eōrum cīvitātem adeat omnēsque quī per aetātem arma
ferre possint ad bellum cōgant. Sua in illōs merita prō- 3
pōnit obtēstāturque ut suae[2] salūtis ratiōnem habeant,
neu sē[2] optimē dē commūnī lībertāte meritum hostibus
in cruciātum dēdant. Quod sī indīligentiōrēs fuerint,
mīlia hominum dēlēcta octōgintā ūnā sēcum interitūra
dēmōnstrat. Ratiōne initā frūmentum sē exiguē diērum 4
trīgintā habēre, sed paulō etiam longius tolerārī posse
parcendō. Hīs datīs mandātīs, quā erat nostrum opus 5
intermissum, secundā vigiliā silentiō equitātum dīmittit.
Frūmentum omne ad sē referrī iubet; capitis poenam iīs 6
quī nōn paruerint cōnstituit; pecus, cūius māgna erat 7
cōpia ā Mandubiīs compulsa, virītim[3] distribuit; frūmen-

[1] 'crowd together.' [2] i.e. Vercingetorix. [3] (man by man) 'individually.'


SIEGE OF ALESIA
ENGLISH MILES
0 ½ 1 1½ 2
ROMAN MILES
0 1 2 3
(Seigny)
(Bussy-le Grand)
(Rue de Pissot)
(Rue de Chateau)
(Menetreux le Pitois)
(Gresigny sous Alise)
(Mt. Rea)
(Mt. de Bussy)
(Darcey)
(Rû du Vaux)
LX milia Gallorum Vercassivellauno duce
Via Romana
(Brenne)
(Plaine des Laumes)
fossa aqua completa
(Ose)
Vallum cum loricis pinnis turribus
II FOSSAE VIII ORDINES CIPPORUM LILIORUM STIMULI
fossa pedum XX directis lateribus
ALESIA
(Mt. Auxois)
(Alise St. Reine)
Gallorum castra
fossa et maceria VI pedum
fossa
Lilia
(Munois)
(Venarey)
Caesar idoneum locum nactus? cp. 85
(Mussy-la Fosse)
(Oserain)
(Mt. Pennevelle)
(Prehaut)
(Mt. de Flavigny)
(Flavigny)
(Gissey sous Flavigny)
Commius cum Gallorum copiis
L.L.POATES, ENGR., N.Y.

8 tum parcē[1] et paulātim mētīrī īnstituit. Cōpiās omnēs
quās prō oppidō collocāverat in oppidum recipit. Hīs
ratiōnibus auxilia Galliae exspectāre et bellum admini-
strāre parat.

Caesar oppidum variīs mūnītiōnibus cingit.

72. Quibus rēbus cōgnitīs ex perfugīs et captīvīs Caesar
haec genera mūnītiōnis īnstituit. Fossam pedum vīgintī
dērēctīs lateribus dūxit, ut ēius fossae solum[2] tantundem[3]
2 patēret quantum summa labra[4] dīstārent. Reliquās
omnēs mūnītiōnēs ab eā fossā pedēs quadringentōs re-
dūxit; [id] hōc cōnsiliō, quoniam tantum esset necessāriō
spatium complexus, nec facile tōtum opus corōnā[5] mīlitum
cingerētur, nē dē imprōvīsō aut noctū ad mūnītiōnēs
multitūdō hostium advolāret,[6] aut interdiū tēla in no-
3 strōs operī dēstinātōs[7] cōicere possent. Hoc intermissō
spatiō duās fossās quīndecim pedēs lātās, eādem altitū-
dine perdūxit; quārum interiōrem campestribus[8] āc dē-
4 missīs[9] locīs aquā ex flūmine dērīvātā complēvit. Post
eās aggerem āc vāllum duodecim pedum exstrūxit. Huīc
lōrīcam[10] pinnāsque[11] adiēcit, grandibus cervīs[12] ēmi-
nentibus[13] ad[14] commissūrās[15] pluteōrum atque aggeris,
quī āscēnsum hostium tardārent, et turrēs tōtō opere
circumdedit quae pedēs octōgintā inter sē dīstārent.

73. Erat eōdem tempore et māteriārī[16] et frūmentārī et tantās mūnītiōnēs fierī necesse, dēminūtīs nostrīs cōpiīs, quae longius ā castrīs prōgrediēbantur; āc nōn

[1] 'sparingly.' [2] 'bottom.' [3] 'as much.' [4] 'edge.' [5] 'cordon.' [6] 'charge' (upon). [7] 'detail.' [8] 'level.' [9] 'low.' [10] 'parapet.' [11] 'battlement.' [12] 'chevaux-de-frise.' [13] 'project.' [14] 'at.' [15] 'junction.' [16] 'cut timber.'

numquam opera nostra Gallī temptāre atque ēruptiōnem
ex oppidō plūribus portīs summā vī facere cōnābantur.
Quā rē ad haec rūrsus opera addendum Caesar putāvit, 2
quō minōre numerō mīlitum mūnītiōnēs dēfendī possent.
Itaque truncīs arborum aut admodum fīrmīs rāmīs abscīsīs
atque hōrum dēlibrātīs[1] āc praeacūtīs cacūminibus[2] per-
petuae fossae quīnōs pedēs altae dūcēbantur. Hūc[3] illī 3
stīpitēs[4] dēmissī et ab īnfimō revinctī, nē revellī possent,
ab[5] rāmīs ēminēbant. Quīnī erant ōrdinēs coniūnctī 4
inter sē atque implicātī; quō quī intrāverant, sē ipsī
acūtissimīs vāllīs[6] induēbant.[7] Hōs cippōs[8] appellābant. 5
Ante hōs oblīquīs ōrdinibus in[9] quīncūncem dispositīs
scrobēs[10] in altitūdinem trium pedum fodiēbantur[11] pau-
lātim angustiōre ad īnfimum fāstīgiō. Hūc teretēs[12] 6
stīpitēs feminis[13] crassitūdine[14] ab summō praeacūtī et
praeūstī dēmittēbantur ita, ut nōn amplius digitīs[15] quat-
tuor ex terrā ēminērent; simul cōnfīrmandī et stabili- 7
endī[16] causā singulī[17] ab īnfimō solō pedēs terrā exculcā-
bantur[18]; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandās īnsidiās
vīminibus āc virgultīs integēbātur. Hūius generis oc- 8
tōnī[19] ōrdinēs ductī ternōs inter sē pedēs dīstābant. Id
ex similitūdine flōris[20] līlium[21] appellābant. Ante haec 9
tāleae[22] pedem longae ferreīs hamīs[23] īnfīxīs[24] tōtae in

[1] 'trim.' [2] 'top.' [3] 'in these trenches. [4] 'tree trunks.' [5] 'with.' [6] nom. *vallus,* 'stake.' [7] 'impale.' [8] 'boundary-post': used ironically. [9] **in quincuncem**: (like a five-spot on cards or dice) 'unevenly,' i.e. the alternate rows having the holes opposite each other, the intervening ones having theirs opposite the middle of the space between two holes in the other. [10] 'pit.' [11] 'dig.' [12] 'round and smooth.' [13] 'thigh.' [14] 'thickness.' [15] 'finger's breadth.' [16] 'secure.' [17] **singuli pedes**: 'a foot of each stake.' [18] 'pack down.' [19] 'eight' (distrib.). [20] 'flower.' [21] 'lily'; cf. **cippos** above. [22] 'bar.' [23] 'hook.' [24] 'set in.'

terram īnfodiēbantur mediocribusque intermissīs spatiīs omnibus locīs disserēbantur,[1] quōs stimulōs[2] nōminābant.

74. Hīs rēbus perfectīs regiōnēs secūtus quam potuit
aequissimās prō locī nātūrā, quattuordecim mīlia pas-
suum complexus parēs ēiusdem generis mūnītiōnēs, dīver-
sās[3] ab hīs, contrā exteriōrem hostem perfēcit, ut nē
māgnā quidem multitūdine [sī ita accidat ēius discēssū],
2 mūnītiōnum praesidia circumfundī possent; nē autem
cum perīculō ex castrīs ēgredī cōgātur, diērum trīgintā
pābulum frūmentumque habēre omnēs convectum iubet.

Gallī māximīs cōpiīs coāctīs ad Alesiam proficīscuntur.

75. Dum haec ad Alesiam geruntur, Gallī conciliō
prīncipum indictō nōn omnēs quī arma ferre possent, ut
cēnsuit Vercingetorīx, convocandōs statuunt, sed certum
numerum cuīque cīvitātī imperandum; nē tantā multi-
tūdine cōnfūsā nec moderārī nec discernere suōs nec frū-
2 mentandī ratiōnem habēre possent. Imperant Aeduīs
atque eōrum clientibus, Segusiāvīs, Ambivaretīs, Auler-
cīs Brannovīcibus, [Blannōviīs,] mīlia trīgintā quīnque;
parem numerum Arvernīs adiūnctīs Eleutetīs, Cadūrcīs,
Gabalīs, Vellaviīs, quī sub imperiō Arvernōrum esse cōn-
3 suērunt; Sēquanīs, Senonibus, Biturīgibus, Santonīs, Ru-
tēnīs, Carnutibus duodēna mīlia; Bellovacīs decem;
totidem Lemovīcibus; octōna Pictonibus et Turonīs et
Parīsiīs et Helvētiīs; sēna Andibus Ambiānīs, Medio-
matricīs, Petrocoriīs, Nerviīs, Morinīs, Nitiobrogibus;
quīna mīlia Aulercīs Cēnomanīs; totidem Atrebātibus;
quattuor Veliocassīs; [Lexoviīs et] Aulercīs Eburovīci-

[1] 'scatter.' [2] 'spur.' [3] 'opposite.'

bus tria; Rauricīs et Bōiīs bīna; decem ūniversīs cīvi- 4
tātibus quae Ōceanum attingunt quaeque eōrum cōnsuē-
tūdine Aremoricae appellantur, quō sunt in numerō
Coriosolitēs, Redonēs, Ambibariī, Caletēs, Osismī, Venetī,
Lexoviī, Venellī. Ex hīs Bellovacī suum numerum nōn 5
contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine atque arbitriō[1] cum Rō-
mānīs bellum gestūrōs dīcerent neque cūiusquam impe-
riō obtemperātūrōs[2]; rogātī tamen ā Commiō prō ēius
hospitiō duo mīlia mīsērunt.

76. Hūius operā Commiī, ut anteā dēmōnstrāvimus,
fidēlī atque ūtilī superiōribus annīs erat ūsus[3] in Britan-
niā Caesar; prō quibus meritīs cīvitātem ēius immūnem[4]
esse iūsserat, iūra lēgēsque reddiderat atque ipsī[5] Morinōs
attribuerat. Tanta tamen ūniversae Galliae cōnsēnsiō 2
fuit lībertātis[6] vindicandae et prīstinae bellī laudis[6] re-
cuperandae ut neque beneficiīs neque amīcitiae memoriā
movērētur, omnēsque et animō et opibus in id bellum
incumberent.[7] Coāctīs equitum mīlibus octō et peditum 3
circiter ducentīs et quīnquāgintā, haec in Aeduōrum
fīnibus recēnsēbantur,[8] numerusque inībātur,[9] praefectī
cōnstituēbantur. Commiō Atrebātī, Viridomārō et Epo-
rēdorīgī Aeduīs, Vercassivellaunō Arvernō, cōnsōbrīnō[10]
Vercingetorīgis, summa imperiī trāditur. Hīs[11] dēlēctī ex 4
cīvitātibus attribuuntur quōrum cōnsiliō bellum admini-
strārētur. Omnēs alacrēs et fīdūciae plēnī ad Alesiam 5
proficīscuntur; neque erat omnium quisquam quī āspec- 6
tum modo tantae multitūdinis sustinērī posse arbitrārē-
tur, praesertim ancipitī proeliō, cum ex oppidō ēruptiōne

[1] 'discretion.' [2] 'obey.' [3] 'find.' [4] 'exempt (from tribute).'
[5] i.e. *Commiō.* [6] sc. *causā.* [7] 'bend one's energies.' [8] 'muster'
[9] 'record.' [10] 'cousin.' [11] w. **attribuuntur.**

pūgnārētur, forīs[1] tantae cōpiae equitātūs peditātūsque cernerentur.

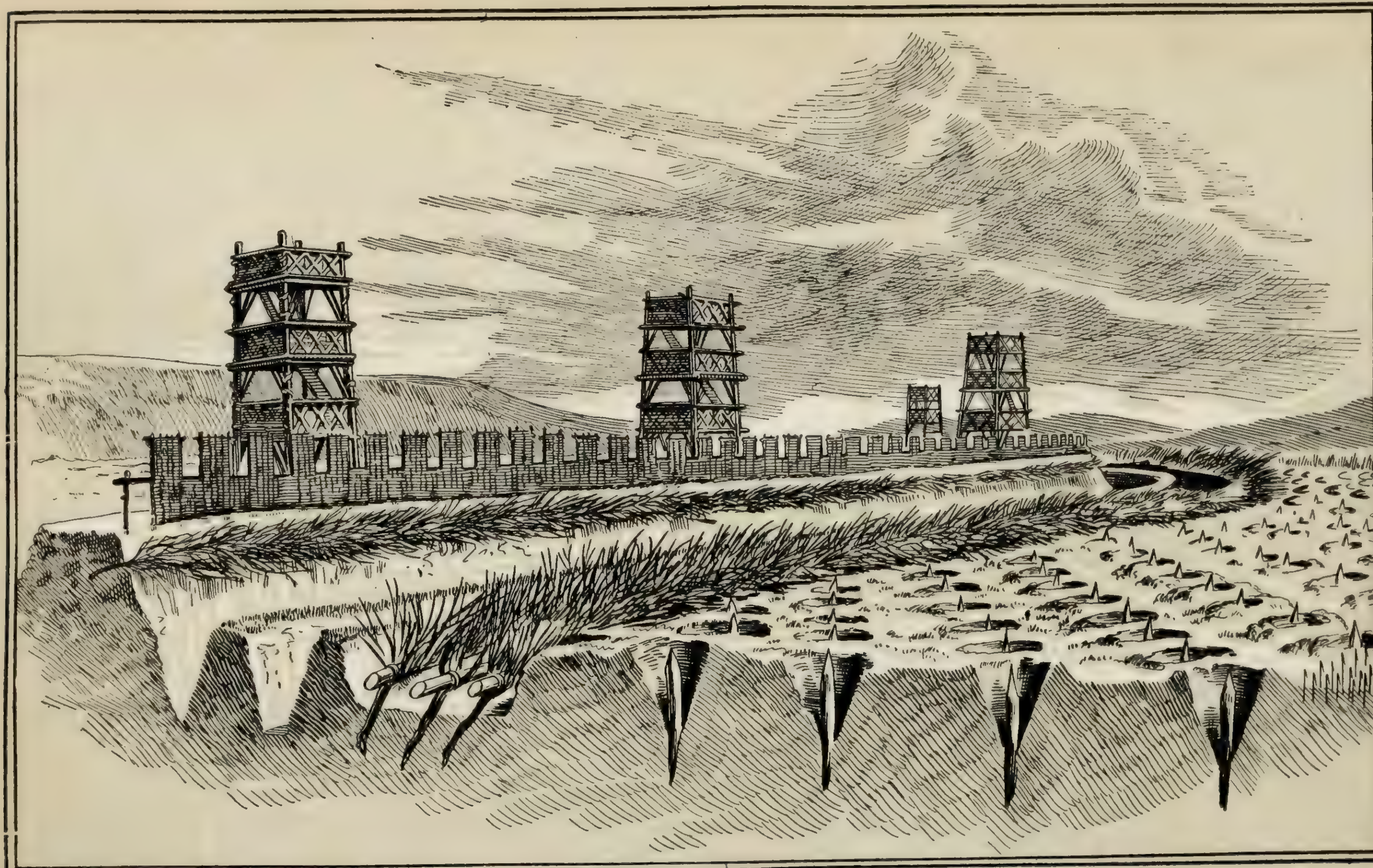
Iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, conciliō coāctō, dē condiciōne suā dēlīberant.

77. At iī quī Alesiae obsidēbantur, praeteritā diē quā
auxilia suōrum exspectāverant, cōnsūmptō omnī frūmentō,
īnsciī quid in Aeduīs gererētur, conciliō coāctō dē exitū
2 suārum fortūnārum cōnsultābant. Ac variīs dictīs sen-
tentiīs, quārum pars dēditiōnem, pars, dum vīrēs sup-
peterent, ēruptiōnem cēnsēbat, nōn praetereunda ōrātiō
Critognātī vidētur propter ēius singulārem et nefāriam[2]
3 crūdēlitātem. Hīc summō in Arvernīs ortus locō et
māgnae habitus auctōritātis: 'Nihil,' inquit, 'dē eōrum
sententiā dictūrus sum quī turpissimam servitūtem dēdi-
tiōnis nōmine appellant, neque hōs habendōs cīvium locō
4 neque ad concilium adhibendōs cēnseō. Cum hīs mihi[3]
rēs est quī ēruptiōnem probant; quōrum in cōnsiliō
omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū prīstinae residēre[4] virtūtis
5 memoria vidētur. Animī est ista[5] mollitia,[6] nōn virtūs,
paulisper inopiam ferre nōn posse. Quī sē ūltrō mortī
offerant facilius reperiuntur quam quī dolōrem patienter
6 ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probārem (tantum
apud mē dīgnitās potest), sī nūllam praeterquam[7] vītae
7 nostrae iactūram fierī vidērem; sed in cōnsiliō capiendō
omnem Galliam respiciāmus, quam ad nostrum auxilium
8 concitāvimus. Quid[8] hominum mīlibus octōgintā ūnō locō
interfectīs, propinquīs cōnsanguineīsque nostrīs animī

[1] 'outside' (of the Roman works). [2] 'abominable.' [3] **mihi res est**: 'I am concerned.' [4] 'be lost.' [5] 'that.' [6] 'weakness. [7] 'except.' [8] **w. animi**: 'what feelings.'

fore exīstimātis, sī paene in ipsīs cadāveribus proeliō
dēcertāre cōgentur? Nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspo- 9
liāre[1] quī vestrae salūtis causā suum perīculum neglēxē-
runt, nec stultitiā[2] āc temeritāte vestrā aut animī im-
becillitāte[3] omnem Galliam prōsternere[4] et perpetuae
servitūtī subicere. An, quod ad diem nōn vēnērunt, dē 10
eōrum fidē cōnstantiāque dubitātis? Quid ergō?[5] Rō-
mānōs in illīs ūlteriōribus mūnītiōnibūs animīne[6] causā
cotīdiē exercērī putātis? Sī illōrum[7] nūntiīs cōnfīrmārī 11
nōn potestis omnī aditū praesaeptō,[8] hīs ūtiminī tēstibus
appropinquāre[9] eōrum adventum; cūius reī timōre exter-
ritī diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergō meī 12
cōnsiliī est? Facere quod nostrī māiōrēs nequāquam[10]
parī bellō Cimbrōrum Teutonumque fēcērunt; quī in
oppida compulsī āc similī inopiā subāctī,[11] eōrum cor-
poridus quī aetāte ad bellum īnūtilēs vidēbantur vītam
tolerāvērunt neque sē hostibus trādidērunt. Cūius reī 13
sī exemplum nōn habērēmus, tamen lībertātis causā īn-
stituī et posterīs prōdī pulcherrimum[12] iudicārem. Nam
quid illī simile bellō fuit? Dēpopulātā Galliā Cimbrī 14
māgnāque illātā calamitāte fīnibus quidem nostrīs ali-
quandō excēssērunt atque aliās terrās petiērunt; iūra,
lēgēs, agrōs, lībertātem nōbīs relīquērunt. Rōmānī vērō 15
quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidiā[13] adductī,
quōs fāmā nōbilēs potentēsque bellō cōgnōvērunt, hōrum
in agrīs cīvitātibusque cōnsīdere atque hīs aeternam
iniungere servitūtem? Neque enim umquam aliā con-

[1] 'deprive.' [2] 'folly.' [3] 'feebleness.' [4] 'destroy.' [5] (therefore) 'then.' [6] **animi causa**: 'for their health.' [7] i.e. the other Gauls. [8] 'cut off.' [9] ind. dis.: 'is at hand.' [10] 'by no means': w. **pari.** [11] 'constrain.' [12] 'a glorious act'; agreeing w. **institui** and **prodi,** and used as pred. appos. [13] 'envy.'



THE FORTIFICATIONS BEFORE ALESIA.

6 diciōne bella gessērunt. Quod sī ea quae in longinquīs
nātiōnibus geruntur īgnōrātis, respicite fīnitimam Gal-
liam, quae in prōvinciam redācta, iūre et lēgibus commū-
tātīs, secūribus [1] subiecta perpetuā premitur servitūte.'

78. Sententiīs dictīs cōnstituunt ut iī quī valētūdine [2]
aut aetāte inūtilēs sint bellō oppidō excēdant, atque omnia
prius experiantur quam ad Critognātī sententiam dē-
2 scendant: illō tamen potius ūtendum cōnsiliō, sī rēs cōgat
atque auxilia morentur, quam aut dēditiōnis aut pācis
3 subeundam condiciōnem. Mandubiī, quī eōs oppidō re-
cēperant, cum līberīs atque uxōribus exīre cōguntur.
4 Hī cum ad mūnītiōnēs Rōmānōrum accēssissent, flentēs
omnibus precibus ōrābant, ut sē in servitūtem receptōs
5 cibō iuvārent. At Caesar dispositīs in vāllō cūstōdiīs
recipī prohibēbat.

Gallī bis repulsī ā septentriōnibus castra Caesaris adorīrī cōnstituunt.

79. Intereā Commius reliquīque ducēs, quibus summa
imperiī permissa erat, cum omnibus cōpiīs ad Alesiam
perveniunt et colle exteriōre occupātō nōn longius mīlle
2 passibus ā nostrīs mūnītiōnibus cōnsīdunt. Posterō diē
equitātū ex castrīs ēductō omnem eam plānitiem, quam
in longitūdinem mīlia passuum tria patēre dēmōnstrā-
vimus, complent pedestrēsque cōpiās paulum ab eō locō
3 abductās in locīs superiōribus cōnstituunt. Erat ex op-
pidō Alesiā dēspectus in campum. Concurrunt hīs auxi-
liīs vīsīs; fit grātulātiō inter eōs atque omnium animī ad
4 laetitiam excitantur. Itaque prōductīs cōpiīs ante oppi-
dum cōnsistunt et proximam fossam crātibus integunt

[1] the lictor's 'axes,' as symbolizing subjection; dat. [2] 'ill health.'

atque aggere explent sēque ad ēruptiōnem atque omnēs cāsūs comparant.

80. Caesar omnī exercitū ad utramque partem mūnī-
tiōnum dispositō, ut, sī ūsus veniat, suum quisque locum
teneat et nōverit, equitātum ex castrīs ēdūcī et proelium
committī iubet. Erat ex omnibus castrīs, quae summum 2
undique iugum tenēbant, dēspectus, atque omnēs mīlitēs
intentī pūgnae prōventum[1] exspectābant. Gallī inter 3
equitēs rārōs sagittāriōs expedītōsque levis armātūrae
interiēcerant, quī suīs cēdentibus auxiliō succurrerent et
nostrōrum equitum impetūs sustinērent. Ab hīs com-
plūrēs dē imprōvīsō vulnerātī proeliō excēdēbant. Cum 4
suōs pūgnā superiōrēs esse Gallī cōnfīderent et nostrōs
multitūdine premī vidērent, ex omnibus partibus et iī quī
mūnītiōnibus continēbantur et iī quī ad auxilium con-
vēnerant clāmōre et ululātū suōrum animōs cōnfīrmābant.
Quod in cōnspectū omnium rēs gerēbātur neque rēctē 5
aut turpiter factum celārī poterat, utrōsque et laudis
cupiditās et timor īgnōminiae ad virtūtem excitābat.
Cum ā merīdiē prope ad sōlis occāsum dubiā victōriā 6
pūgnārētur, Germānī ūnā in parte cōnfertīs turmīs in
hostēs impetum fēcērunt eōsque prōpulērunt; quibus in 7
fugam cōniectīs sagittāriī circumventī interfectīque sunt.
Item ex reliquīs partibus nostrī cēdentēs ūsque ad castra 8
īnsecūtī suī colligendī facultātem nōn dedērunt. At iī 9
quī Alesiā prōcēsserant, maestī[2] prope victōriā dēspērātā
sē in oppidum recēpērunt.

81. Ūnō diē intermissō Gallī atque hōc spatiō[3] māgnō crātium, scālārum, harpagōnum[4] numerō effectō, mediā nocte silentiō ex castrīs ēgressī ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs

[1] 'outcome.' [2] 'sad.' [3] sc. *temporis.* [4] 'hook for tearing down walls.'

2 accēdunt. Subitō clāmōre sublātō, quā sīgnificātiōne quī
in oppidō obsidēbantur dē suō adventū cōgnōscere pos-
sent, crātēs prōicere, fundīs, sagittīs, lapidibus nostrōs dē
vāllō prōturbāre reliquaque quae ad oppūgnātiōnem per-
3 tinent parant administrāre. Eōdem tempore clāmōre
exaudītō dat tubā sīgnum suīs Vercingetorīx atque ex
4 oppidō ēdūcit. Nostrī, ut superiōribus diēbus suus cuīque
erat locus attribūtus, ad mūnītiōnēs accēdunt; fundīs[1]
lībrīlibus sudibusque quās in opere disposuerant āc glan-
5 dibus[2] Gallōs prōterrent. Prōspectū tenebrīs[3] adēmptō
multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complūra tormen-
6 tīs tēla cōniciuntur. At M. Antōnius et C. Trebōnius
lēgātī, quibus hae partēs ad dēfendendum obvēnerant,
quā ex parte nostrōs premī intellēxerant, hīs auxiliō ex
ūlteriōribus castellīs dēductōs submittēbant.

82. Dum longius ā mūnītiōne aberant Gallī, plūs mul-
titūdine telōrum prōficiēbant; posteā quam propius suc-
cēssērunt, aut sē stimulīs inopīnantēs induēbant aut in
scrobēs dēlātī trānsfodiēbantur aut ex vāllō āc turri-
2 bus trāiectī pīlīs mūrālibus interībant. Multīs undique
vulneribus acceptīs, nūllā mūnītiōne perruptā, cum lūx
appeteret, veritī nē ab latere apertō ex superiōribus
castrīs ēruptiōne circumvenīrentur, sē ad suōs recēpērunt.
3 At interiōrēs, dum ea quae ā Vercingetorīge ad ērup-
tiōnem praeparāta erant, prōferunt, priōrēs fossās explent;
4 diūtius in hīs rēbus administrandīs morātī prius suōs dis-
cēssisse cōgnōvērunt quam mūnītiōnibus appropinquā-
rent. Ita rē īnfectā in oppidum revertērunt.

83. Bis māgnō cum dētrīmentō repulsī Gallī quid agant,

[1] **fundis librilibus**: 'stones weighing a pound each' (thrown from slings). [2] 'leaden slugs.' [3] 'darkness.'

cōnsulunt; locōrum perītōs adhibent; ex hīs superiōrum
castrōrum sitūs mūnītiōnēsque cōgnōscunt. Erat ā sep- 2
tentriōnibus collis, quem propter māgnitūdinem circuitūs
opere circumplectī[1] nōn potuerant nostrī; necessāriōque
paene inīquō locō et lēniter dēclīvī castra fēcerant. Haec 3
C. Antistius Rēgīnus et C. Canīnius Rebilus lēgātī cum
duābus legiōnibus obtinēbant. Cōgnitīs per explōrātōrēs 4
regiōnibus ducēs hostium sexāgintā mīlia ex omnī nu-
merō dēligunt, eārum cīvitātum quae māximam virtūtis
opīniōnem habēbant; quid quōque pāctō[2] agī placeat, 5
occultē inter sē cōnstituunt; adeundī tempus dēfīniunt
cum merīdiēs esse videātur. Hīs cōpiīs Vercassivellau- 6
num Arvernum, ūnum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum
Vercingetorīgis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castrīs prīmā vigiliā 7
ēgressus, prope cōnfectō sub lūcem itinere, post montem
sē occultāvit mīlitēsque ex nocturnō labōre sēsē reficere
iūssit. Cum iam merīdiēs appropinquāre vidērētur, ad ea 8
castra quae suprā dēmōnstrāvimus contendit; eōdemque
tempore equitātus ad campestrēs mūnītiōnēs accēdere et
reliquae cōpiae prō castrīs sēsē ostendere coepērunt.

Vercingetorīx ex oppidō auxiliō Gallīs ēgreditur māgnā caede fugantur Gallī. Alesiā expūgnātā Vercingetorīx capitur.

84. Vercingetorīx ex arce Alesiae suōs cōnspicātus ex
oppidō ēgreditur; crātēs, longuriōs,[3] mūsculōs,[4] falcēs
reliquaque quae ēruptiōnis causā parāverat prōfert.
Pūgnātur ūnō tempore omnibus locīs atque omnia temp- 2
tantur; quae minimē vīsa pars fīrma est hūc concurritur.
Rōmānōrum manus tantīs mūnītiōnibus distinētur nec 3
facile plūribus locīs occurrit. Multum ad terrendōs no- 4

[1] 'surround.' [2] 'manner.' [3] 'long pole.' [4] 'shed.'

strōs valet clāmor, quī post tergum pūgnantibus exsistit,
quod suum perīculum[1] in aliēnā vident virtūte cōnstāre;
5 omnia enim plērumque quae absunt vehementius homi-
num mentēs perturbant.

85. Caesar idōneum locum nactus quid quāque in parte
gerātur cōgnōscit; labōrantibus subsidium submittit.
2 Utrīsque ad animum occurrit ūnum esse illud tempus,
3 quō māximē contendī conveniat: Gallī, nisi perfrēgerint
mūnītiōnēs, dē omnī salūte dēspērant; Rōmānī, sī rem
4 obtinuerint, fīnem labōrum omnium exspectant. Māximē
ad superiōrēs mūnītiōnēs labōrātur, quō Vercassivellau-
num missum dēmōnstrāvimus. Inīquum[2] locī ad dēclī-
5 vitātem fāstīgium māgnum habet mōmentum. Aliī tēla
cōiciunt, aliī tēstūdine factā subeunt; dēfatīgātīs in vicem
6 integrī succēdunt. Agger[3] ab ūniversīs in mūnītiōnem
cōniectus et āscēnsum dat Gallīs et ea quae in terrā oc-
cultāverant Rōmānī contegit[4]; nec iam arma nostrīs nec
vīrēs suppetunt.

86. Hīs rēbus cōgnitīs, Caesar Labiēnum cum cohorti-
2 bus sex subsidiō labōrantibus mittit. Imperat, sī susti-
nēre nōn possit dēductīs cohortibus ēruptiōne pūgnet; id
3 nisi necessāriō nē faciat. Ipse adit reliquōs, cohortātur
nē labōrī succumbant[5]; omnium superiōrum dīmicātiō-
4 num[6] frūctum in eō diē atque hōrā docet cōnsistere.
Interiōrēs dēspērātīs campestribus locīs propter māgni-
tūdinem mūnītiōnum loca praerupta [ex] āscēnsū temp-
5 tant; hūc ea quae parāverant cōnferunt. Multitūdine
tēlōrum ex turribus prōpūgnantēs dēturbant, aggere et

[1] Eng. idiom, 'safety.' [2] **iniquum—momentum:** 'the unfavorable downward slope gives great advantage' (to the enemy). [3] i.e. earth, stones, etc. [4] 'cover.' [5] 'give way under.' [6] 'struggle.'

crātibus fossās explent, falcibus vāllum āc lōrīcam re-
scindunt.

87. Mittit prīmum Brūtum adulēscentem cum cohorti-
bus Caesar, post cum aliīs C. Fabium lēgātum; postrēmō 2
ipse, cum vehementius pūgnārētur, integrōs subsidiō ad-
dūcit. Restitūtō proeliō āc repulsīs hostibus, eō quō 3
Labiēnum mīserat contendit; cohortēs quattuor ex prox- 4
imō castellō dēdūcit, equitum partem sē sequī, partem
circumīre exteriōrēs mūnītiōnēs et ā tergō hostēs adorīrī
iubet. Labiēnus, postquam neque aggerēs neque fossae 5
vim hostium sustinēre poterant, coāctīs ūndecim co-
hortibus, quās ex proximīs praesidiīs dēductās fōrs ob-
tulit, Caesarem per nūntiōs facit certiōrem quid faci-
endum exīstimet. Accelerat Caesar ut proeliō intersit.

88. Ēius adventū ex colōre vestītūs[1] cōgnitō, [quō
īnsīgnī in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērat,] turmīsque equitum et
cohortibus vīsīs quās sē sequī iūsserat, ut dē locīs superi-
ōribus haec dēclīvia et dēvexa cernēbantur, hostēs proe-
lium committunt. Utrimque clāmōre sublātō excipit 2
rūrsus ex vāllō atque omnibus mūnītiōnibus clāmor. No-
strī ēmissīs pīlīs gladiīs rem gerunt. Repentē post 3
tergum equitātus cernitur; cohortēs aliae appropinquant.
Hostēs terga vertunt; fugientibus equitēs occurrunt. Fit 4
māgna caedēs. Sedulius, dūx et prīnceps Lemovīcum oc-
cīditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vīvus in fugā com-
prehenditur; sīgna mīlitāria septuāgintā quattuor ad
Caesarem referuntur; paucī ex tantō numerō sē inco-
lumēs in castra recipiunt. Cōnspicātī ex oppidō caedem 5
et fugam suōrum dēspērātā salūte cōpiās ā mūnītiōni-
bus redūcunt. Fit prōtinus hāc rē audītā ex castrīs

[1] 'dress,' i.e. his purple or scarlet military cloak.

6 Gallōrum fuga. Quod nisi crēbrīs subsidiīs āc tōtīus
diēī labōre mīlitēs essent dēfessī, omnēs hostium cōpiae
7 dēlērī potuissent. Dē mediā nocte missus equitātus no-
vissimum āgmen cōnsequitur: māgnus numerus capitur
atque interficitur; reliquī ex fugā in cīvitātēs discēdunt.

89. Posterō diē Vercingetorīx conciliō convocātō id
bellum sē suscēpisse nōn suārum necessitātum sed com-
2 mūnis lībertātis causā dēmōnstrat; et quoniam sit for-
tūnae cēdendum, ad utramque rem sē illīs offerre, seu
morte suā Rōmānīs satis facere seu vīvum trādere velint.
3 Mittuntur dē hīs rēbus ad Caesarem lēgātī. Iubet arma
4 trādī, prīncipēs prōdūcī. Ipse in mūnītiōne prō castrīs
cōnsīdit[1]; eō ducēs prōdūcuntur; Vercingetorīx dēditur;
5 arma prōiciuntur. Reservātīs Aeduīs atque Arvernīs, sī
per eōs cīvitātēs recuperāre posset, ex reliquīs captīvīs
tōtī exercituī capita singula praedae nōmine distribuit.

Aeduī et Arvernī in dēditiōnem accipiuntur. Caesar legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Rōmae supplicātiō redditur.

90. Hīs rēbus cōnfectīs in Aeduōs proficīscitur; cīvitā-
2 tem recipit. Eō lēgātī ab Arvernīs missī quae imperāret
sē factūrōs pollicentur. Imperat māgnum numerum
3 obsidum. Legiōnēs in hīberna mittit. Captīvōrum cir-
4 citer vīgintī mīlia Aeduīs Arvernīsque reddit. T. Labi-
ēnum cum duābus legiōnibus et equitātū in Sēquanōs
proficīscī iubet; huīc M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit.
5 C. Fabium lēgātum et L. Minucium Basilum cum legiōni-
bus duābus in Rēmīs collocat, nē quam ā fīnitimīs Bel-
6 lovacīs calamitātem accipiant. C. Antistium Rēgīnum
in Ambivarētōs, T. Sextium in Biturīgēs, C. Canīnium

[1] 'take position.'

Rebilum in Rutēnōs cum singulīs legiōnibus mittit. Q.
Tullium Cicerōnem et P. Sulpicium Cavillōnī et Mati- 7
scōne in Aeduīs ad Ararim reī frūmentāriae causā col-
locat. Ipse Bibracte hiemāre cōnstituit. Hīs [rēbus ex
Caesaris lītterīs] cōgnitīs Rōmae diērum vīgintī suppli- 8
cātiō redditur.

NOTES

The references are to the section numbers in the Appendix.

BOOK I.

58 B.C.

TITLE.

Various headings for this work are found in the manuscripts; the whole is sometimes called *Commentarii de Bello Gallico,* " Commentaries on the Gallic War," with the additional heading *Liber Primus,* etc., for each book. *Commentarius Primus* amounts to the same thing. The subject of a Roman book was usually expressed by *de* with the ablative; in English the nominative case is usually employed. Thus, *Ciceronis de Senectute* becomes in English " Cicero's Old Age."

I. DESCRIPTION OF GAUL.

Chapter I.

This outline of the geography of the country was necessary to enable Caesar's readers at Rome to understand the situation, because Gaul had been entirely unknown to them until Caesar went there.

1. **Gallia**: for the sense in which the word is used here as compared with l. 19, see vocabulary. **omnis**: predicate use, *as a whole.* **est divisa**: the force of each part of the compound tense form is retained, the perfect participle showing that the division was made in the past, and the **est** that it still exists. Translate by the present. **quarum**: §§ 47 and 136. The structure of the sentence is:

	Object.	*Verb.*	*Subject.*	
quarum	**unam (partem)**	**incolunt**	**Belgae**	
	aliam (")	**(")**	**Aquitani**	
	tertiam (")	**(")**	**(ei)**	**qui—appellantur**

2. **Belgae**: the Belgians were closely related to the Germans. **aliam**: *another, a second,* used instead of **alteram,** *the second,* because the

three parts are not enumerated in order; contrast l. 33. **Aquitani:** their descendants are the modern Basques in southwestern France, who are still very different from the people surrounding them, being short and thickset, dark-complexioned, and speaking an entirely different language. **(ei) qui:** § 129. **ipsorum:** § 132. **lingua:** § 82.

3. **Celtae:** sc. **appellantur;** for the case, see § 17. The Celts were to the Romans the typical Gauls; they were probably of mixed descent, but mainly of the division of the Aryan race known to us as Celtic, probably akin to the Irish. **nostra:** i.e. **(sed) nostrā (linguā).**

4. **inter se:** see vocabulary under **inter.** **Aquitanis:** § 65.

5. **flumen:** §§ 1 and 2. **dividit:** § 142. A portion of the boundary is omitted.

6. **horum:** §§ 47 and 52. **propterea quod:** see vocabulary and §§ 170 and 215, 1, *b*.

7. **cultu, humanitate:** *civilization, refinement;* the former refers to customs of life, the latter to the mental and moral condition of the people. **provinciae:** the sense shows this to be genitive singular; for the district thus named, see vocabulary and map.

8. **minime,** etc.: construe **saepe** with **commeant, minime** with both **commeant** and **important;** *least of all do traders* (often resort) *make frequent journeys back and forth to them and bring in,* etc. **mercatores:** nom. *Traders* and peddlers from Massilia (Marseilles) and northern Italy brought wine (their most attractive commodity) and other luxuries on pack mules or even on their own backs.

9. **ad effeminandos animos;** §§ 271 and 272. **animos:** *character.*

10. **proximique sunt:** i.e. **et Belgae fortissimi sunt propterea quod proximi sunt.** **Germanis:** § 33.

11. **qua de causa:** § 136. This refers to the reason just given for the bravery of the Belgians.

12. **quoque:** i.e. as well as the Belgians. **virtute:** § 82. **quod contendunt:** §§ 170 and 215, 1, *b*. This explains **qua de causa** more particularly.

13. **proeliis:** such border warfare as half-civilized people carry on. For the case, see § 72. **cum prohibent:** § 182. **suis:** § 125. This sentence shows that it is often necessary to translate pronouns by the nouns to which they refer; Latin has so many more pronouns than English that it can make clear distinctions with pronouns where we can not.

14. **finibus:** § 65. **eos:** §§ 121 and 129. **ipsi:** § 130. **finibus:** § 91. **eorum:** §§ 121 and 125.

15. Eorum: *of all these,* i.e. of the Gauls in general. **quam—est:** § 257. **Gallos:** i.e. the Gauls in the narrower sense (= **Celtas**).

16. initium capit: see vocabulary under **capio.** **ab:** *at;* § 98.

17. ab: see vocabulary.

18. vergit: i.e. looking at the country from the Roman province. All the directions are from the same standpoint, e.g. **extremis, l. 19, spectant,** l. 20, **spectat,** l. 23.

21. in—solem: i.e. northeast.

23. ad: *off* or *near.* **inter—septentriones:** i.e. in what direction?

II. THE WAR WITH THE HELVETIANS.

Chapters 2–29.

The Helvetians after three years of preparation were now on the move with all their possessions, bound for the western part of Gaul. Caesar hastened from Rome to Geneva and prepared to stop the Helvetian horde from entering the province. He had one legion and some hastily gathered recruits. He constructed fortifications between the Lake of Geneva and the Jura Mountain. By this means the march of the Helvetians was stopped, and they took the only other route available through the Jura by way of the Pas de l'Écluse, about 18 miles below Geneva.*

Caesar now returned to Cisalpine Gaul for more troops.

With five legions he hastened to Ocelum, the frontier town of Cisalpine Gaul, and thence by way of Mount Genèvre across the Alps. In seven days he made his way into the country of the Vocontii, thence into that of the Allobroges, and thence into the land of the Sequanians, which lay between the rivers Rhone and Saône (Arar). The precise route is uncertain, and is not essential. The Helvetians had already passed through the country of the Sequanians, and were in the land of the Aeduans. They now attempted to cross the Arar not far from the site of the modern city of Lyons. A part of the Helvetian forces, the Tigurini, had not yet crossed, and they were cut to pieces by Caesar. He now built a bridge and crossed the Arar in order to follow up the Helvetians. The route of the latter is uncertain, but Caesar says they moved about five miles ahead of his vanguard for a fort-

* The above and subsequent summaries are based mainly upon the conclusions of Mr. T. Rice Holmes, as stated in his lately published work. *Caesar's Conquest of Gaul.* London, 1899.

night, and remarks that they had moved away from the Arar. From his various statements, it seems that the general direction of the march was northwest. When Caesar had reached a point 18 miles from Bibracte (Mont Beuvray), he turned towards that place. In this neighborhood was fought the battle which settled the case of the Helvetians for all time. Just where this battle occurred is not certainly known, but it was less than 18 miles from Bibracte, and probably to the south of that town.

After the battle the survivors of the Helvetians fled into the territory of the Lingones, northeast of Bibracte. Caesar remained three days on the battlefield, and then started in pursuit. He had previously notified the Lingones that they should give no assistance to the fugitives, who, reduced to the utmost extremity, finally surrendered at discretion.

Movement of the Helvetians, stirred up by Orgetorix; his secret plans and death.

Chapter 2.

Caesar's first operations in Gaul were directed towards preventing the Helvetians from leaving their territory and attempting a conquest of the other Gallic states. He gives the history of this movement, though its beginning was three years before he came to Gaul to prevent its execution.

Helvetia embraced in a general way the country now included within the limits of Switzerland, although it was somewhat smaller. The population, as stated by Caesar in Chapter 29, was 368,000.

26. Orgetorix: note the position, as the emphatic word of the sentence. **is:** § 122. **consulibus:** §§ 87 and 88; that is, the year 61 B.C. As the term of office of the consuls was one year, the Romans designated the year of any event by naming the consuls of that year. Educated Romans might be supposed to know the list of consuls as a matter of necessary general information, but undoubtedly this knowledge was often no more accurate than our knowledge of the presidents of the United States. **regni:** § 40.

27. nobilitatis: the political system of Helvetia was a confederacy of leaders, each of whom had a large body of retainers; thus it somewhat resembled the feudal system of later times; but the kings had nearly all been deposed, and these rough, strong, turbulent "nobles," or chiefs, held the power among themselves. **nobilitas, civitas,** etc.: such

words, originally abstract or collective in meaning, like English *nobility*, *state*, may often be better translated by concrete nouns like *nobles*, *citizens*. That the thought is plural in Latin is shown by **exirent**, following. **civitati**: § 23.

28. **ut exirent**: §§ 25 and 208. **de**: notice the use of **de** with **ex** in composition. **copiis**: *possessions*.

29. **esse**: §§ 227 and 236. **cum**: §§ 172, 228 and 239. **omnibus**: § 27.

30. **Galliae**: § 40. **imperio**: § 73. **potiri**: this is the subject accusative of **esse**, and **perfacile** agrees with it. **id**: §§ 12 and 25. **hoc**: § 84. **eis**: §§ 23 and 25.

31. **loci natura**: *by natural boundaries*. **continentur**: *are shut in*.

32. **parte**: see vocabulary. **flumine**: § 71. **Rheno**: §§ 1 and 2. **latissimo atque altissimo**: § 117. Caesar adds these adjectives after their noun, like a short parenthesis, for the benefit of his Roman readers, who knew little or nothing about the Rhine.

33. **parte**: see **parte**, l. 32.

34. **altissimo**: see note on l. 32. **tertia**: sc. **ex parte**.

36. **rebus**: § 84. **fiebat**: § 148. **ut vagarentur**: § 213. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and*.

37. **finitimis**: § 27.

38. **qua ex parte**: (from this side, i.e. of the matter), *for this reason*. **homines**: (*being*) *men*. **bellandi**: §§ 58 and 267. **cupidi**: agrees with **homines**. **afficiebantur**: § 148.

39. **pro**: *in proportion to*. **multitudo hominum**: (number of human beings), *population*. **gloria—fortitudinis**: (glory of war and bravery), *reputation for bravery in war;* §§ 280 and 40. **se habere**: (*that*) *they had;* §§ 228, 235 and 238. **angustos**: (*too*) *narrow*.

41. **milia**: § 14. **passuum**: § 47. The distance indicated by **mille passus** was about 4854 English feet; but it may be considered roughly as a mile and so translated. Helvetia then, according to these figures, was not far from the size of New York State, whose population in 1900 was over 7,000,000.

Chapter 3.

43. **rebus**: the word **res** does not mean *thing* in the sense of *any thing*, but always refers to some definite thing or circumstance previously mentioned. Here it refers to all the *considerations* mentioned in Chapter 2 which tended to cause the Helvetians to leave their country.

44. **proficiscendum**: § 267. **pertinerent**: § 229.

45. quam: see vocabulary, and § 117. **carrorum:** § 48. These were two-wheeled, drawn mostly by oxen. See the rear wagons in the following illustration.



BAGGAGE WAGONS.

48. ad eas res conficiendas: §§ 271 and 272.

49. sibi: § 28. **duxerunt:** see vocabulary. **in:** see vocabulary. **in annum tertium** means directly after the end of the two years' preparation; we might say, *at the beginning of the third year.*

50 lege: i.e. by a popular vote, by which the Gauls and Helvetians made their laws. **confirmant:** *establish, determine ;* § 147.

51. sibi: § 27.

52 Castico: § 23. **filio, Sequano:** § 1.

53. cuius—appellatus erat: in order to get at the meaning of a complicated Latin sentence, the most important words to be considered are the connectives. Observe these words carefully and thus determine the dependence of clauses upon one another. Here the clause, **cuius—appellatus erat,** is parenthetical; in working out the sentence, omit it until the rest has been thoroughly grasped. Then go back and translate this clause ; then read the entire sentence. **regnum:** *chief power,* not that of a king (see note on l. 27), but the authority of the most powerful chief in the state ; compare **principatum,** below. **annos:** § 14.

54. amicus: § 17; the Romans sometimes gave this distinction to barbarian chiefs whose aid they wished to gain.

55. ut occuparet: with **persuadet;** §§ 25, 152 and 208. **quod:** relative.

56. itemque, etc.: the structure of this sentence is exactly like that of the preceding.

57. tempore: § 89.

58. plebi: § 33.

59. perfacile esse: cf. l. 30. **factu:** § 276. **filiam dat:** this was a common method of securing friendly relations, like intermarriage among the royal families of Europe to-day.

60. perficere: for construction, see **portiri,** l. 30. **civitatis:** § 40.

61. obtenturus esset: §§ 153, 228 and 277. **esse quin:** § 214.

62. Galliae: §§ 47 and 52. **plurimum:** see vocabulary and § 12. **se conciliaturum:** § 237. Note the very common omission of **esse.** **copiis:** § 71.

63. illis: § 19. **regna:** plural, because the Latin thinks of a **regnum** for each man; English uses the singular.

65. regno occupato: (the royal power having been seized), *after seizing the power in their respective states;* this modifies **posse.**

66. Galliae: § 73, note. **sese:** subject acc. of **posse;** there is no fut. infin. of **possum,** and **posse** here refers to the future; *they hope* (*hoped*) *that they will* (*would*) *be able,* etc.

Chapter 4.

67. res: here, *conspiracy.* **moribus:** § 86.

69. damnatum, etc.: **poenam** is subject acc. of **sequi,** and **poenam sequi** taken together is the subject of the impers. verb **oportebat;** for translation, see § 257. **damnatum** agrees with **eum (Orgetorigem)** understood, which is the object of **sequi.** **damnatum** literally means *having been condemned,* but is best translated freely, *if condemned;* § 264, 3. **ut igni cremaretur** explains **poenam;** § 213.

70. die—causae: (the day of the pleading of the case having been appointed), *on the day appointed for trying the case.* **die,** § 36. **causae,** § 40. **ad iudicium:** *at the place of trial.*

71. familiam: his clansmen and retinue of followers. **ad:** *to the number of.*

72. clientes: 'supporters,' a general term for those who followed his lead. **obaeratos:** men who had got into debt to him, who, according to the Gallic customs, had bound themselves over to his service (Book VI., Chapter 13).

73. eodem: adverb; so most demonstrative pronouns have a corresponding adverb, e.g. **eo, illo.** **per eos:** *through* (*the help of*) *these.* **ne diceret:** § 209.

74. Cum conaretur: *while the state was trying;* § 182.

75. armis: with **exsequi;** § 71. **multitudinem—cogerent:** the same as when we have the militia called out to enforce the law and preserve order.

77. ut: see vocabulary.

78. quin: § 214. **ipse:** § 133.

The Helvetians first attempt to march through the province, but afterward, being prevented from doing this by Caesar's fortifications, they start through the country of the Sequanians.

Chapter 5.

79. nihilo: see vocabulary and § 81. Although the scheme of Orgetorix had been shown to be one of personal ambition, its brilliancy had fascinated the Helvetians.

80. ut—exeant: explains **id quod (facere) constituerat;** (*namely*), *to go out;* § 208. **e:** compare with **de,** l. 28. **ubi arbitrati sunt:** § 176.

81. se—esse: § 228, etc.

82. numero: § 82. **ad:** *about.*

84. quod: sc. **id,** (that which), *what;* so often, when antecedent is omitted. **secum:** § 90, note. **portaturi erant:** § 277. **domum:** § 95; it modifies **reditionis,** a verbal noun. This construction is contrary to the usage of the best Latin style ; we should expect **redeundi. reditionis:** § 40. **spe:** § 87. **paratiores:** see vocabulary. **ad—subeunda:** §§ 271 and 272.

86. mensium: §§ 44 and 45. **molita cibaria:** as this must have been the chief article of food, an immense amount had to be carried in order to feed 368,000 persons; no wonder they had decided to obtain **iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum** (l. 45). The length of the caravan has been variously estimated at from thirty to seventy miles. **sibi:** § 32.

87. domo: § 97. **Rauracis:** § 23.

88. uti, . . usi . . oppidis suis . . exustis, . . . proficiscantur: (that they, having used . . , their towns . . having been burned, should set out), *to adopt . . , burn their towns . . , and set out . . .* **una:** adverb.

89. Boios receptos—asciscunt: (they associate to themselves the Boii, having been received to themselves *as* allies), *they allow the Boii to join their movement and make them their allies;* but the Latin order may be retained thus: *and the Boii, who,* etc. . . ., *they allow to join their movement and make their allies.*

Chapter 6.

93. erant: *there were.* **duo itinera:** one on each side the Rhone. **quibus:** § 135. **itineribus:** when an antecedent is repeated after a relative adjective, omit it in translation. Here the repetition seems to be for the sake of emphasis only.

94. possent: § 168. **unum:** sc. **iter.**

95. vix—ducerentur: *where carts could barely be drawn one at a time.*

97. ut possent: §§ 165 and 167. **alterum:** sc. **iter.**

98. multo: § 81.

100. non nullis: *some.* **locis:** § 92. **vado transitur:** (is crossed by a ford), *is fordable.* The choice of routes here described was either to move down the right bank of the Rhone through the country of the Sequanians, who were friendly, or to pass through the province of the Allobroges and thence into the Roman territory. About nineteen miles below Geneva by the former route they must pass through the narrow defile described in the text; the passage of this by so large a force was well-nigh impossible. **pacati erant:** they had been annexed to the Roman province some time before, had rebelled and again been subdued ("pacified," the Romans called it) in 61 B.C.

101. proximum: (*the one*) *nearest.* Note the order; Geneva is the key to the situation, hence its place at the end of the sentence. See l. 26.

102. finibus: § 33.

103. Helvetios: compare this with **finibus Helvetiorum** above. So the name of any tribe may be used for its territory; the repetition of **fines** is thus avoided. **sese,** etc.: § 228, etc.

104. animo: § 80. **in:** *toward.* **viderentur:** § 229.

105. ut—paterentur: this is the object of both **persuasuros** and **coacturos:** § 208. Elsewhere Caesar uses the infinitive after **cogo.**

107. qua die: see **quibus itineribus,** l. 93 and § 163.

108. conveniant: § 162. **is dies:** compare gender with **l. 107,** and see vocabulary. **a.d.** etc.: § 108.

109. consulibus: see l. 26. Year 58 B.C.

Chapter 7.

110. cum esset: § 182. **eos—conari:** in apposition with **id;** **conari** is progressive, (in direct discourse **conantur,** *they are trying*), *that they were trying.*

111. urbe: *the city,* i.e. Rome. Though appointed governor of Gaul at the close of his consulship two or three months before, Caesar had not yet gone to his province; on the other hand, he was not in Rome but in its vicinity, under the law that forbade any one holding military authority to be inside the gates.

112. quam—itineribus: (by the greatest marches that he is able to make), *with all possible speed;* § 71. We learn from Plutarch that he travelled 90 miles a day.

113. ad Genavam: § 95. **provinciae:** § 27. **quam—numerum:** see l. 112.

115. una legio: this was the famous *tenth legion* of the Roman "standing army"; **una** here has the force of *only one.*

116. de: *of.* **certiores facti sunt:** § 17.

117. legatos: § 2, note. **nobilissimos:** § 111.

119. qui dicerent: § 162. **sibi esse in animo:** see § 30.

120. facere: subject of **esse.**

121. haberent: §§ 229, 239 and 170. **rogare:** coördinate with **esse;** *that they asked.* **ut liceat:** see vocabulary under **licet. voluntate:** § 86.

122. memoria: see vocabulary and § 92.

123. occisum: 107 B.C. Supply **esse** and so with **pulsum, missum** and **concedendum.**

124. concedendum: § 277; sc. **sibi** (§ 31); for translation, see § 215, 1, *a.*

125. neque existimabat: *neither did he think* (*that men,* etc.). **animo:** § 80. **data facultate:** § 264, 3.

126. faciundi: old form for **faciendi;** § 267.

128. dum convenirent: § 180.

129. diem: see vocabulary. **quid:** § 139. **vellent:** § 242, 1.

130. reverterentur: § 245.

Chapter 8.

131. legione: § 71.

134. milia: § 14. **milia—novem** is best translated after **murum fossamque,**—(*both*) *nineteen miles long.* This wall and ditch formed a rampart on the south side of the Rhone. A great part of the distance was occupied by steep cliffs, and it was necessary to construct the artificial defences only where the natural failed. The undertaking was not so formidable as might appear from a mere statement of height and distance.

135. pedum: § 45.

136. disponit, communit: the omission of the conjunction (asyndeton) indicates the haste of the action.

137. quo—posset: § 160. **si conarentur:** § 242, 5.

139. negat: see vocabulary. **more:** § 86.

141. facere: see vocabulary.

142. spe: figurative use of the abl. of separation; § 65. **deiecti:** see vocabulary. **navibus—factis:** (boats having been joined and many rafts having been made), (*some*) *by bridges of boats and numerous rafts that they had made;* ablative absolute.

143. alii: § 4. The first **alii** is carelessly omitted.

145. conati si—possent, repulsi, destiterunt: (having tried . . ., if they were able, having been repulsed, desisted), *tried* (*to see*) *if they could,* etc.; (*but*) *being repulsed, they gave up.* **si possent:** § 243, note. **munitione:** see vocabulary.

146. concursu: (running together), *charges.* **telis:** *weapons* (*showered upon them*). **conatu:** § 65.

Chapter 9.

147. Relinquebatur: (was left), *there remained.* **una:** *only.*

148. angustias: see ll. 94–97. **cum:** § 172.

150. eo: i.e. Dumnorix; § 88. **a Sequanis:** § 67.

151. gratia: § 84.

153. Orgetorigis—duxerat: see l. 59. **cupiditate regni adductus:** almost the same phrase used to describe Orgetorix, l. 26. They were evidently " kindred spirits."

154. novis: see vocabulary. **rebus:** § 23. **quam:** see vocabulary and § 117.

155. habere obstrictas: a case of the so-called "maintenance of the result,"—(*to bind and*) *keep bound.*

156. ut—patiantur: obj. of **impetravit.**

157. obsides: object of **dent.** When an agreement was made by a tribe, certain members were often put into the hands of the other party to the agreement, as a pledge of good faith. This was the only form of security known among barbarous tribes; the idea was, that the friends of these hostages would use their influence to have the tribe keep the agreement. Now national honor takes the place of such security. **inter:** see vocabulary.

158. Sequani: sc. as predicate **obsides dent,** (give hostages), *promise;* so after **Helvetii.** **ne—prohibeant, ut transeant:** § 208.

Chapter 10.

160. **Helvetiis—animo:** see l. 119. **per agrum,** etc.: trace this intended route on the map; it was not the most direct way, but probably the easiest on account of the topography of the country.

162. **non longe,** etc.: note on map the position of the Santones and Tolosates; the distance between them was about a hundred miles. This then does not appear to be sufficient excuse for Caesar's interference. But the Helvetian migration would undoubtedly have been the starting point for another general movement of the German tribes such as had occurred when Rome was sacked, 390 B.C., and such as had been narrowly averted by Marius fifty years before, when he crushed the Cimbri and Teutones. On this ground Caesar was justified in interfering. **quae civitas:** § 135.



LEGIONARY SOLDIER.

163. **si fieret, futurum (esse):** § 242, 5.

164. **magno—provinciae:** (with great danger of the province), *very dangerous to the province;* §§ 76 and 40. **ut haberet:** this clause is the subject of **futurum** (esse); the subject of **haberet** is **provincia.** Translate, *that it should have,* or, *to have.*

165. **locis—frumentariis:** § 92; translate exactly in the Latin order (except **-que,** of course).

166. **finitimos:** (*as*) *neighbors;* § 2, note. **munitioni, Labienum:** § 27; see also vocabulary, **Labienus.**

168. **Italiam:** Caesar speaks of Italy here as including Cisalpine Gaul (i.e. Gaul south of the Alps). As a matter of fact, however, all Italy north of the Rubicon was embraced in Caesar's province of Gaul. **magnis itineribus:** *forced marches,* usually 25 or 30 miles, but perhaps longer here, because he probably took only a small force with him as a body guard, and went through a friendly country. **duas legiones:** the eleventh and twelfth.

169. tres: the seventh, eighth and ninth. **hiemabant:** § 148.

171. quinque legionibus: as one legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's army now consisted of six legions, or about 22,000 men, together with the troops, probably cavalry, ordered from the province, as told in Chapter 6. The number of the latter is uncertain.

172. locis, etc.: these Alpine tribes, hearing of Caesar's approach, seized elevated positions along the road and tried to prevent him from passing; either because they thought he intended to annex their territory to the province, or because they sympathized with the Helvetians and thought they could help them by delaying Caesar or perhaps forcing him to turn back.

173. itinere: see vocabulary under **prohibeo.**

174. his pulsis: § 87. **compluribus proeliis:** § 72. This "interlocked" order seems very peculiar to us here, where the terminations which usually make Latin agreements clear are of no assistance and the sense alone shows the agreement.

175. extremum: sc. **oppidum; extremum** means *last*, in the sense of *most western*, the farthest from Rome. After leaving this town, Caesar passed over the Alps by the pass of Mount Genèvre, through the territory of two tribes of the western province, and moved on in pursuit of the Helvetians, who had gone something less than a hundred miles on their way. **ulterioris provinciae:** § 46; (*a tribe*) *of the further province.*

176. die septimo: i.e. *in six days;* § 104. When the Romans measured intervals of time, they included the day on which they started. The French do the same; they would call Wednesday the third day after Monday. In English the usage varies.

177. Allobrogibus: contrast with **fines Allobrogum** above, and see note on l. 103.

Complaints of the Gauls about the depredations of the Helvetians.

Chapter 11.

179. angustias: see l. 95 and l. 148.

181. Aedui: the Aeduans, it appears, had previously been recognized as allies of Rome, having been styled by the senate "brothers and kinsmen"; see ll. 670–675, 864–869. **populabantur:** contrast with the previous tense used and see § 148.

183. rogatum: §§ 274 and 275. **ita se,** etc.: (*saying that*) *they had so well*, etc., §§ 227 and 228, etc. **omni tempore:** (every time), *on every occasion.* **de:** *of.*

185. **vastari, abduci**: complementary infinitives with **non debuerint.** In cases where words are expressed with one phrase and understood with others, English usually expresses them with the first, Latin with the last.

188. **depopulatis**: § 262. **non facile**: (not easily), i.e. *with difficulty.* This is *litotes,* the use of a negative for a strong affirmative, or an expression by which more is meant than meets the ear. **ab—prohibere**: (they were keeping the force of the enemy from their towns), *they were defending their towns from the attacks of the enemy.* Note that in l. 158 **prohibere** has no **ab**; §§ 65 and 66.

191. **sibi**: § 30. **agri**: § 47.

192. **reliqui**: § 49. **exspectandum sibi (esse)**: §§ 31 and 278.

194. **pervenirent**: *should arrive,* or, less carefully in ordinary English, *arrived;* § 180. Caesar now finds a more immediate reason for attacking the Helvetians than the one mentioned in Chapter 10.

The slaughter of the Tigurini.

Chapter 12.

195. **flumen est Arar**: *there is a river (called) the Arar* (now the Saône).

196. **incredibili lenitate ita ut**: (of incredible smoothness, so that), *so very slowly that;* §§ 80 and 165.

197. **fluat**: § 243. **id**: emphatic, *this;* keep the same order in translating.

198. **ratibus, lintribus**: abl. of means, not abl. absolute; **iunctis** is used merely as an adjective modifying **lintribus,** (boats joined), *bridges of boats.* These were all rude affairs, which they either found there, intended for light weights, or built hastily on the spot.

199. **tres partes**: *three fourths,* the regular way of expressing such a fraction.

200. **flumen**: § 11.

201. **reliquam, de**: see vocabulary. **vigilia**: the night was divided into four equal *watches.* Hence the length of a watch would vary with the season, but the third would always begin at midnight. Since the time was now midsummer, the first watch would end at about 2 A.M.

205. **in**: see vocabulary under **abdo**; also § 94.

208. **domo**: § 96. **memoria**: § 89.

211. **quae pars, ea**: (which part, this), *that part which, this;* **pars,** the antecedent, is attracted into the subordinate clause, and the relative is used adjectively; § 135.

212. **princeps**: *was the first to*, etc.; § 115.

213. **re**: *affair*. **privatas**: notice how very *personal* it turns out to be!

214. **quod**, etc.: order, **quod Tigurini eodem proelio quo** (**interfecerant**) **Cassium, interfecerant L. Pisonem legatum, avum eius** (i.e. **Caesaris**) **soceri.** Piso's daughter Calpurnia was Caesar's fourth wife.

The Helvetians treat with Caesar through ambassadors.

Chapter 13.

218. **faciendum**: see §§ 269 and 270.

220. **cum**, etc.: the construction is: **cum intellegerent, illum . . . fecisse id**, *that he had done . . . that*, which is explained by **quod—confecerant**, and **ut flumen transirent**, (*namely*), *cross the river*.

223. **bello Cassiano**: see l. 122. This was 107 B.C., so Divico must have been a man of great age. From the standpoint of the Helvetians he was just the man to head the embassy.

224. **egit**: see vocabulary.

Here begins the first long speech in the indirect discourse. The direct discourse is given below. See first that you understand about direct and indirect discourse in English, as explained in §§ 217–226. Study the words that are changed and get the reasons for each change from §§ 227–246; these sections should all be read over, and then the special references looked up.

Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis **faciet** (§§ 228 and 242, 5), in eam partem **ibunt** (§§ 228 and 237) atque ibi **erunt** (like **ibunt**) **Helvetii** (§§ 222 and 237), ubi eos **tu** (§§ 222, 232 and 233) **constitueris** (fut. perf. indic., see §§ 239, 200, 203 and 153) atque esse **volueris** (like **constitueris**): sin bello persequi **perseverabis** (like **faciet**), **reminiscere** (§§ 228 and 245) et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus **es** (§§ 228, 239 and 215, 3), cum ei qui flumen **transierant** (§§ 239 and 153), possent (§ 182), **noli** (§ 347, note) ob eam rem aut **tuae** (§ 222) magnopere virtuti **tribuere** (§ 347, note) aut **nos** (§ 222) **despicere** (like **tribuere**): **nos** (§ 322) ita a patribus maioribusque **nostris** (like **nos**) **didicimus** (§237), ut magis virtute **contendamus** (§§ 239 and 208) quam dolo aut insidiis **nitamur** (like **contendamus**). Qua re **noli committere** (like **noli tribuere**) ut hic locus ubi **constitimus** (like **constitueris**, except for tense) ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen **capiat** (like **contendamus**) aut memoriam **prodat** (like **capiat**).

224. **si faceret, ituros, futuros** (**esse**): § 242, 5.

225. **partem**: sc. **Galliae**. **futuros**: (be), *remain*.

226. **ubi—voluisset**: explains **eam partem** (**Galliae**) and **ibi**. **ubi**, being relative, is correlative to a form of **is** as well as to **ibi**. **constituisset**: (should have decided), *should decide;* so **voluisset**. English rarely uses the future perfect or its representatives.

227. **perseveraret**: § 242, 5. **reminisceretur**: §§ 226 and 245.

228. **incommodi, virtutis**: § 59. This refers to the defeat of Cassius; see l. 123.

229. **quod**: § 215, 3.

231. **ne tribueret**: § 245.

232. **patribus**: § 67.

233. **magis**: see vocabulary and translate after **contenderent**. **virtute**: § 71. **contenderent, niterentur**: § 156. **dolo**: § 72.

234. **ne committeret**: like **ne tribueret**, l. 231.

236. **memoriam proderet**: i.e. to future generations.

Chapter 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given without references. The student may now find for himself the reasons for the changes.

Hoc mihi minus dubitationis **datur** quod eas res quas **vos**, legati Helvetii, **commemorastis**, memoria **teneo** atque **hoc** gravius **fero** quo minus merito populi Romani **acciderunt**; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non **fuit** difficile cavere; sed eo **deceptus est** quod neque commissum a se **intellegebat** quare timeret neque sine causa timendum **putabat**. Quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci **volo**, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod **me** invito iter per provinciam per vim **temptastis**, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas **vexastis**, memoriam deponere **possum**? Quod **vestra** victoria tam insolenter **gloriamini**, quodque tam diu **vos** impune tulisse iniurias **admiramini** eodem **pertinet**. **Consueverunt** enim **di** immortales quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci **volunt**, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum **haec** ita sint, tamen si obsides a **vobis mihi dabuntur**, uti ea, quae **pollicemini**, facturos **intellegam** et si Aeduis de iniuriis quas ipsis sociisque eorum **intulistis**, item si Allobrogibus **satisfacietis, ego vobiscum** pacem **faciam**.

237. **eo**: *on this account, for this reason;* § 84. **minus**: § 111. **dubitationis**: § 49.

239. **eo—minus:** sc. **se** as subject: (he bore them the more heavily by this, by which the less), *he was the more displeased, the less,* etc. **merito populi Romani:** (by the merit of the Roman people), *deservedly to the Roman people.* The mention by the Helvetian ambassadors of the defeat of Cassius made him grow more and more angry, the more he thought how little the Romans had deserved such a defeat. He could not allow himself to hesitate in the present matter, because this old disaster demanded revenge, and he considered that he was the man and here was the opportunity to inflict it.

240. **qui si,** etc.: he goes on to explain how this defeat had happened, how treacherously they had attacked Cassius. **qui, sibi, conscius, fuisset, deceptum, se, intellegeret, timeret, putaret,** all refer to **populus Romanus,** and so, though singular in Latin, they are all translated plural: e.g. **qui si,** *if they.* **sibi:** (to themselves); omit.

241. **fuisse:** *it would have been.* This would be **fuit** in direct discourse; § 192, note. **eo quod:** ll. 237, 238.

242. **commissum (esse):** impersonal; (*that*) (*anything*) *had been done.* **qua re timeret:** (on account of which thing they should fear), *to make them afraid* (*of being attacked*); § 163.

243. **timendum (sibi esse):** (that it ought to be feared by them), *that they ought to fear.* Caesar says that the army of Cassius was taken off its guard because they thought the Helvetians had no reason for attacking them, and they didn't think it necessary to keep guard and be ready for battle unless they expected an attack. "A poor excuse is better than none." **quod:** see vocabulary. **vellet:** the subject here changes to **Caesar.** **num:** see vocabulary. **posse:** § 246.

244. **contumeliae:** § 59.

245. **iniuriarum:** objective genitive with **memoriam.** **quod:** § 215, 2, *a.* **eo:** **se** would have been more natural, as referring to Caesar, but **eo** leaves no ambiguity.

246. **Allobrogas:** for ending, see vocabulary.

247. **quod—gloriarentur, quod—admirarentur:** the use of **quod** is the same as in l. 245; the two clauses are subjects accusative of **pertinere.** These were just two more facts pointing to the vengeance that was coming.

250. **Consuesse,** etc.: Caesar implies that he is the instrument of the gods sent to punish the Helvetians for their sins. He says that punishment comes harder on men if it is delayed, because they have concluded

that it is not coming at all. From what we know of Caesar's character, it is hard to believe that this reference to a divine government of the fortunes of men was sincere. **quo—doleant:** § 160; do not translate this clause until after the rest. **ex:** *as a result of.*

251. quos, etc.: translate **his** immediately after **concedere,** then **quos—velint,** then the accusatives, finally **quo—doleant.**

253. cum sint: §§ 197 and 199. **si dentur:** § 242, 5. Divico had at first (l. 223–225) spoken of coming to terms, but had gone on from that to making threats as to what would happen if Caesar did not meet him halfway. Caesar first replies to his threats, and then offers terms which the Helvetians could not help thinking insulting, though he really could not afford to offer anything less. It was an encounter between a free, unconquered people and a man who would not yield an inch, both looking for the sovereignty of Gaul. The Gauls would despise whichever gave way: one or the other must be destroyed.

254. facturos (esse): sc. **eos (Helvetios)** as subject accusative.

255. Aeduis: sc. **satis faciant;** § 23.

257. a maioribus: compare the similar phrase in ll. 232, 233.

259. consuerint: = **consueverint.**

Caesar's cavalry routed by the Helvetians. March of each army.

Chapter 15.

261. loco: this was just across the Saône. See Chapter 12.

264. coactum habebat: § 266. **qui videant:** § 162; plural, because the antecedent, **equitatum,** is collective. **partes:** see vocabulary.

265. faciant: § 243. **qui:** § 136. **cupidius:** *too eagerly;* § 116.

266. loco: § 92.

267. de nostris: § 53.

268. equitibus: note the use of persons as means; see § 71 and compare **militibus,** l. 131.

269. non numquam et: (*and*) *sometimes even,* modifying **lacessere.**

270. agmine: § 92. **proelio:** § 72.

271. satis: see vocabulary.

272. rapinis: § 65.

273. dies: § 14. **prohibere:** subject accusative of **(esse), satis** being a predicate adjective.

274. ita uti interesset: §§ 165 and 166.

275. amplius: § 111. **milibus:** § 69.

Caesar's conference with the Aeduan leaders Liscus and Diviciacus as to the condition of their state and the treachery of Dumnorix.

CHAPTER 16.

277. **Caesar flagitare**: § 258. **Aeduos frumentum**: § 15. **quod**: relative.

278. **essent**: § 229.

280. **frumenta**: see vocabulary, and contrast with **frumentum** and **pabulum**. **matura**: it was now probably well along in June.

283. **frumento**: § 73. **flumine**: § 72. **navibus**: § 71.

284. **a quibus = et ab eis**: § 201. **diem ex die**: see vocabulary. **ducere**: § 258, and see vocabulary.

285. **dicere**: historical infin., like **ducere** above; the other infinitives are ind. dis., with subj. acc. **frumentum** and conjunction omitted, as we might say hastily, "Said 't was being collected, brought to one spot, was right near." This historical infinitive generally occurs in groups, and **flagitare**, l. 277, is only an apparent exception, because what intervenes is parenthetical. **diutius**: *too long;* § 116.

287. **metiri**: a legionary soldier had four bushels of corn a month, a cavalryman twelve bushels of corn and forty-two bushels of barley. **oporteret**: § 228. **convocatis principibus, accusat**: (the chiefs having been called together, he blames them), *he calls together the chiefs and blames them.* After this long, loose sentence has been mastered as a whole, it should be broken into three parts. Translate **convocatis** by a main verb, as suggested above. Then make another sentence of **in his—potestatem**: *among these* (*were*), etc. Then the remainder—*these chiefs he blames,* etc.

288. **copiam**: *number.* **in**: *among.* **Diviciaco, Lisco**: § 4.

289. **magistratui praeerat**: *held the office;* § 27.

290. **annuus**: § 114.

291. **in suos**: *over his* (*countrymen*).

292. **possit**: sc. **frumentum** as subject.

293. **tempore, hostibus**: § 88; (the time so critical, the enemy so near), *at so critical a time, with the enemy so near.*

294. **ex**: *in.* **cum susceperit**: § 172. **quod sit destitutus**: *that, as he said, he was deserted* (by them); §§ 170 and 215, 2, *a.*

CHAPTER 17.

297. **quod**: see l. 84.

298. **esse**: the indirect discourse is in apposition with (id) **quod tacuerat**; *that there were some,* etc.

299. plurimum valeat: see vocabulary under **valeo,** and § 13. **plus possint:** *were more powerful;* § 13. This state of affairs exists as much to-day as it did then. Almost any community can show a politician or a man of great wealth who by his influence can nullify a law.

301. ne conferant: § 209.

302. praestare: for impersonal **praestat** (see vocabulary) in direct discourse ; (*saying that*) *it was better.* **si possint;** § 242, 1.

304. debere: sc. **multitudinem** as subject; *and that they ought not.* **quin sint:** §§ 214 and 277. **si superaverint:** § 242, 5.

305. una: adverb. **Aeduis:** § 29.

306. sint erepturi: § 277. **quaeque:** = **et quae;** see l. 84.

308. quin etiam: see vocabulary. **quod:** § 215, 3. **coactus:** see vocabulary.

309. id fecerit: i.e. had made the statement ; the antecedent of **id** is the thought of clause **quod—enuntiarit;** for the mood of **fecerit,** see § 243.

310. potuerit: § 228.

Chapter 18.

314. ex solo quaerit: sc. **eo,** *he asks from him alone about ;* § 8.

316. vera: agrees with **ea** understood, from **eadem,** whose antecedent is **ea,** l. 314. **ipsum:** *the very one.*

317. summa audacia: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness;* § 80; so **magna gratia.**

318. rerum novarum: see vocabulary under **novus,** and § 58.

319. pretio: § 75.

320. redempta habere: § 266. It was a common practice in those days for a government to get its revenue by selling the right to collect taxes to the highest bidder. Then, armed with the authority of the state, this man collected all the money he could and pocketed the difference between what he got and what he had bid. This process is known as *farming the revenues.* Tax collectors are never very popular, and since under this system they usually resorted to every means of extorting money, they were always the most hated and dreaded class of people. Such were the publicans mentioned in the Bible. **illo licente:** (he bidding), *when he bid.* **contra:** *against* (*him*). It was not safe to oppose Dumnorix.

321. his rebus: *by these means.* **auxisse: augeo** is transitive ; so **familiam** is object, and **se,** understood, the subject.

323. suo sumptu: § 72.

324. domi: § 93. **apud civitates:** § 101.

325. huius potentiae: *of* (*increasing*) *this power.* **causa:** see vocabulary and § 84.

326. in: *among;* order, **homini in Biturigibus nobilissimo ac potentissimo illic.**

328. nuptum: § 275; together with **collocasse,** here it has the same force as **collocasse** alone, l. 327.

329. Helvetiis: § 23.

332. gratiae: § 36.

333. si quid accidat: §§ 139 and 242, 5; we use exactly the same indefinite expression; it means here, *if any disaster should occur.* **spem:** see vocabulary.

334. imperio: *under the government;* § 89.

336. quod proelium: (in regard to what battle), *in regard to the* (**adversum equestre**) *battle which.* **ante:** adverb. **diebus:** §§ 81. 107.

339. equitatui: § 27. **auxilio Caesari:** § 32.

Chapter 19.

343. accederent: see vocabulary and § 172. **quod traduxisset:** § 215, 2, *b.*

344. dandos: § 270.

345. et: connecting a possessive pronoun and a genitive (i.e. possessive) case. So this is only an apparent, not a real, exception to the rule that coördinate conjunctions connect like constructions.

346. ipsis: refers to **suo et civitatis,** Caesar and the Aeduans.

347. qua re—iuberet: § 243.

349. rebus: § 23. **quod—cognoverat:** § 215, 2, *b.*

350. Diviciaci—studium: §§ 39, 41. **fratris:** § 1. **ne offenderet:** § 211.

352. eius supplicio: (by the punishment of him), *by punishing Dumnorix;* § 40.

353. animum: *feelings.* **itaque,** etc.: this incident shows Caesar's statecraft. As a deliberate policy, he never offended any one unnecessarily, though never hesitating to do so when there was no other way. Here the situation was critical. If the Aeduans were alienated, he would be forced out of the country for lack of a base of supplies. So he made his interests coincide with those of the better class of Aeduans, and held them loyal to him for six years.

354. conaretur: § 181.

357. **cui**: *in whom;* §§ 23, 24. **omnium rerum**: *in all matters.*

358. **ipso**: i.e. Diviciacus. **quae dicta sint**: § 243.

360. **apud se**: *before him* (Caesar).

361. **ut ipse statuat**: (that he himself may take measures), *that he* (*Caesar*) *be allowed to take measures;* § 208. **sine—animi**: (without hurting his feelings), *but in such manner as not to hurt his feelings;* § 40.

362. **causa cognita**: (the case having been ascertained), *after investigating the case.*

Chapter 20.

363. **multis cum lacrimis**: modifies **obsecrare.** **complexus**: § 261.

364. **in**: *against.* **ne—statueret**: see vocabulary and § 139.

365. **illa**: *those* (*charges*), referring to the matters mentioned in ll. 358–360. **scire se**: § 227; (*saying that*) *he knew* (*that*), etc. **eo**: *that fact.* **plus doloris capere**: (took more of grief), *was more grieved;* §§ 47, 49 and 111. Note carefully the use of pronouns in this passage, and in translation use names of persons referred to whenever the meaning of the translation would be obscure without them.

366. **cum ipse plurimum (posset et) ille minimum posset, per se crevisset**: *when he* (Diviciacus) *was very powerful and Dumnorix had very little power, the latter had increased* (*his power*) *at his expense.*

368. **opibus**: *power.*

370. **fraterno**: = **fratris,** objective genitive. **suam**: this refers to Diviciacus, and is understood with **gratiam.** **uteretur**: coördinate with **crevisset;** this might have been considered a main clause, and the infinitive used.

371. **si accidisset**: see § 242, 5 or 6. **a**: *at the hands of.* **existimatione vulgi**: (the thought of the common people), *public opinion.*

373. **apud**: *with.* **neminem existimaturum (esse) non factum (esse)**: *no one would think that it had not happened,* i.e. *every one would think that it had happened.*

374. **futurum (esse)**: *it would* (be) *happen.*

377. **faciat**: § 212. **tanti**: § 62.

378. **rei publicae**: § 40.

379. **condonet**: §§ 165 and 166. The dative accompanying this verb is the indirect object, due to the original meaning *present;* when not a person, use *at* in translating; otherwise, as below, *for the sake of.*

380. **quae**: interrogative, and so below.

381. **quae queratur**; § 8.

Caesar's plan is foiled by the mistake of Publius Considius.

CHAPTER 21.

386. hostes consedisse: indirect discourse after **certior factus.**

387. milia: § 99.

388. qui: antecedent omitted because indefinite,—(*men*) *who;* the indefiniteness is kept by translating by the infinitive, *he sent to ascertain;* §§ 162 and 164. **facilem:** agrees with (**ascensum**), subject of **esse.**

390. legatum pro praetore: a lieutenant acting temporarily as commander. This was a special designation for Labienus, as second in command.

391. iis ducibus qui: (*as*) *guides, those who.*

393. consili: § 46.

394. quo: *by which;* §§ 71 and 72.

395. rei: § 58.

CHAPTER 22.

398. luce: § 104. **summus:** § 113.

399. ipse: (*and when*) *he himself.*

400. passibus: § 103. **neque . . . aut . . . aut:** *and neither . . . nor.*

404. Gallicis: i.e. Helvetian. Caesar concluded from this information that Labienus had been repulsed in his attempt to seize the hill, that perhaps his force had been overwhelmed, and that he himself with diminished forces might be attacked at once.

406. erat ei praeceptum: (it had been commanded him), *he had been commanded;* § 27. The subject is **ne—committeret,** a *substantive* clause of purpose (§ 208), while it is modified by **ut—fieret,** an *adverbial* clause of purpose (§157).

407. nisi visae essent: § 242, 5.

409. exspectabat, abstinebat: translate accurately; § 148.

410. multo die: see vocabulary and § 113. **et . . . et . . . et:** omit the first in translation; the English *both* implies only two statements. Notice the effect of leisurely progress here as compared with the hurried report of Considius above.

412. quod: see l. 84. **vidisset:** § 168. **pro viso:** (for seen), *as a fact.*

413. quo—intervallo: (at the interval at which he had become accustomed), *at the usual interval.* Caesar now resumes the pursuit, looking for another opportunity to attack the Helvetians.

The slaughter of the Helvetians, their flight and return to their own country.

CHAPTER 23.

416. diei: § 56. **omnino :** (in all), *only.*

417. cum: *before.* **oporteret:** § 182

419. milibus: § 103. **rei:** § 23.

420. prospiciendum (sibi esse): (that it ought to be looked out for by him), *that he ought to look out for ;* §§ 31 and 278. His conference with Liscus and Diviciacus had not yet had the effect of securing grain.

421. Bibracte: § 94.

422. Aemilii: i.e. who belonged to the troop of Aemilius ; hence the genitive (§ 37).

423. seu quod existimarent—sive eo: *either because they thought* (§170) —*or on this account,* explained by **quod—confiderent.** **timore perterritos:** (having been terrified by fear), *because they* (the Romans) *were afraid of them.*

424. eo magis—commisissent: this is a parenthesis, explaining that the Helvetii thought that the Romans were afraid of them (**timore perterritos**), not only on general principles, but especially on account of their curious movements the day before; translate, *and still more for this reason, because,* etc.; § 170. **superioribus locis occupatis:** ablative absolute, *although they had seized,* etc.; § 264, 4.

427. commutato, converso: translate as finite verbs,—*changed their plan, reversed their direction, and,* etc. The Helvetians would have done better to go about their business; they could then have got a long distance ahead; but they could not resist the opportunity of turning on the man who had caused them so much trouble and the loss of one-fourth of their number.

CHAPTER 24.

429. id animum advertit: § 11.

430. qui sustineret: §§ 162 and 163.

431. medio: see vocabulary and § 113.

432. triplicem aciem: see introduction. **legionum:** § 36.

433. [ita uti supra]: these words do not make sense and probably got into the manuscript by mistake ; omit in translating.

435. ac: *and* (*in this way*).

436. eum: sc. **locum.**

439. acie: § 78. **reiecto . . . facta:** *having driven back . . .* (*and*)

having formed ; the cavalry were generally used in such cases to check the advance of the enemy until the legions were ready for battle.

440. sub: see vocabulary.

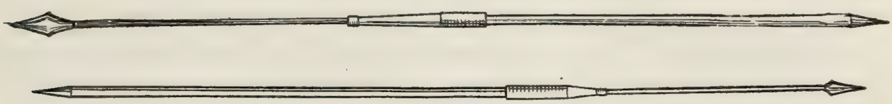
CHAPTER 25.

442. suo: sc. **equo remoto.** **omnium:** i.e. of all his staff officers.

443. aequato periculo: (the danger having been made equal), *by making the danger equal.*

444. cohortatus: a Roman army always expected a few words of encouragement before going into battle. **e loco:** limits **missis.**

445. pilis missis: § 264, 6. The position of advantage in the ancient style of fighting was of course the higher ground.



PILA.

447. ad pugnam: *in fighting.* **impedimento:** § 32.

448. quod: § 215, 2, *a.* **scutis transfixis et colligatis:** ablative absolute ; translate as coördinate with **poterant,**—*their shields would be pierced and pinned together, and,* **cum ferrum,** etc.

449. se inflexisset: (had bent itself), *bent.* The tip of the Roman spear was of hardened iron, but the shank was of soft iron, and the weight of the long wooden shaft caused the shank to bend.

451. ut: translate before **multi.** **iactato:** as the shields overlapped one another and the Roman javelins had pierced several, there was no freedom of motion for the soldiers holding the shields, but they were pulled about by every movement of the phalanx.



GLADIUS.

454. eo: adverb. **capto, succedentibus:** notice the change of tense and voice;—*when they had gained the mountain and our men were coming up.*

456. milibus: § 71.

457. praesidio: § 32; see **impedimento,** l. 447, and vocabulary. **latere aperto:** this means the right flank, because the shield was carried on the left arm. Hence the right was the post of honor in battle.

458. circumvenire: sc. **coeperunt** from l. 460; in military language, they tried to turn the right flank of the Romans.

460. conversa, etc.: see vocabulary. The first and second lines kept

the same front, while the third wheeled and faced the oncoming Boii and Tulingi.

461. victis ac submotis: see §§ 23 and 111; (*those who had once been*) *conquered and driven back*, i.e. the Helvetians.

462. venientes: (*those who were*) *coming*, i.e. the Boii and Tulingi.

Chapter 26.

463. pugnatum est: § 144, 2.

465. alteri . . . alteri: i.e. the Helvetians—the Boii and Tulingi; see vocabulary.

467. proelio: § 92. **cum pugnatum sit**: §§ 199 and 144, 2.

469. pro vallo: *as a barricade*.

470. in: *upon*. **venientes**: (coming), *as they came up*.

471. coniciebant: notice the change of tense, and see § 148. Perhaps the most common error in translating arises from a lack of care in observing these things. The Latin is very exact in its use of tenses,—much more so than English.

473. impedimentis castrisque: § 73.

474. e filiis: § 53. **captus est**: not the usual form of agreement; § 110.

476. nocte: it is impossible to draw a distinct line between the three expressions of time, see §§ 104, 105 and 106; this seems like duration of time, but the Latin might regard it as answering the question, When? This is regularly the case when **totus** is employed.

477. partem: § 106 ; contrast with **nocte** above.

479. occisorum: (of the having-been-slain), *of the dead*. **triduum morati**: this statement, together with the reasons assigned for the delay, shows that the Romans were pretty severely handled in the battle.

481. alia: see vocabulary. **ne iuvarent**: § 208; *not to help*. **qui si iuvissent**: §§ 227 and 242, 5; (*saying that*) *if they did help them*.

482. loco quo Helvetios (haberet) habiturum: (he would hold them in the place in which he held the Helvetians), *he would treat them like the Helvetians*.

Chapter 27.

485. rerum: § 40.

486. qui cum: *when they*.

488. iussisset: supply **Caesar** as subject.

489. essent: § 203.

491. perfugissent: § 168.

492. conquiruntur: § 178.

494. perterriti: agrees with **milia** in number and case, but takes its gender from **hominum,** which is here the real but not the grammatical gender of **milia.** **ne—afficerentur:** in apposition with **timore,** which takes the construction of a verb of fearing; § 211.

496. occultari: i.e. from Caesar.

497. prima: § 113. **existimarent:** § 171.

Chapter 28.

499. quod: *this.* **quorum:** antecedent **his.**

500. his: § 23. **uti—reducerent:** §§ 25 and 208. **sibi:** (with reference to him), *in his sight;* § 28.

501. reductos habuit: (he held them, having been brought back), *when they were brought back, he considered them.* **in numero hostium:** see vocabulary under **numerus;** this is a grim way of implying that they were all put to death; they had broken the terms of surrender, and Caesar wished to make an example immediately of men who did not keep their word with him.

504. suos: by emphasis here referring to **Helvetios,** etc., instead of to Caesar; § 123.

505. quo tolerarent: § 168.

506. Allobrogibus: § 23. **ut facerent:** §§ 25 and 208; *to furnish.*

509. ne: § 159.

512. provinciae: § 33. **Boios:** object of **collocarent.** **petentibus Aeduis:** (the Aeduans seeking), *at the request of the Aeduans.*

513. virtute: § 84.

516. atque—erant: = **atque erat condicio in quā ipsi erant,** *as was the condition in which,* etc. Adjectives of similarity are followed often by **atque** for **quam.**

Chapter 29.

517. litteris Graecis: not in the Greek *language,* but merely using the Greek characters and numeral signs; perhaps they had become acquainted with them through traders from Marseilles, originally a Greek colony. The Greek system of numerals was easier to handle than the Roman.

518. relatae: sc. sunt.

519. qui: interrogative adjective, *what.*

520. exisset: § 243. **possent:** § 168.

522. capitum: omit; we use the expression, "so many head," of cattle, but we do not apply it to human beings.

The figures in this last chapter tell the story of the campaign so plainly that no comment is required.

III. THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS.

Chapters 30–54.

The assembled Gallic chieftains congratulated Caesar on his victory, and besought him to assist them against the inroads of Ariovistus, a German prince who had settled with his followers on this side of the Rhine. Caesar assented, and after fruitless negotiations took the field. Hearing that Ariovistus was advancing towards Vesontio (Besançon), a Sequanian town about 110 miles from his camp, in the country of the Lingones, Caesar hastened forward by forced marches and occupied this town.

He remained a few days in the neighborhood and then started out to find Ariovistus. He tells us that he reached his final camping-ground on the seventh day.

Where was Ariovistus? Apparently he had annexed to his German dominions the northern part (third) of the Sequanian territory, the modern Alsace. The distance from Vesontio to Caesar's camping-ground is in doubt. He says, *B. G.* I. 41, that the circuitous route he took, in order to have open country, was more than fifty miles. It is thought by many that this means that the distance by the route he took was greater by fifty miles than the distance by the most direct route. It is likely that the distance was 100 miles at least.

Here was fought Caesar's great battle with Ariovistus, and the German invasion of Gaul was checked and the career of Ariovistus practically ended. This battle was fought in September, and immediately afterwards the Roman army went into winter quarters.

Having called a general council of Gaul, the chiefs of the various states confer with Caesar secretly. Complaints about Ariovistus, a German king.

Chapter 30.

528. confecto: about the first of July. **Galliae:** i.e. Celtic Gaul. The other two divisions (see Chapter 1) had not yet fully realized Caesar's arrival.

529. gratulatum: § 275.

530. intellegere sese . . . tamen eam rem accidisse: (*saying that*) *they understood that,* (**tametsi—repetisset**), *this* (thing) *campaign nevertheless* (had happened) *had been.* **tametsi—repetisset:** § 198; direct discourse, **tametsi—repetisti, tamen ea res accidit,** *although you have sought satisfaction, nevertheless this thing has happened;* since the tenses are *present* perfect, this is a concessive sentence of the *present* time. **Helvetiorum, populi Romani:** § 42.

531. his: if this is translated before its antecedent, **Helvetiorum,** the noun should be used here and the pronoun afterward.

533. eo consilio: (this being their design), *with this design.* **florentissimis rebus:** (things being most flourishing), *though enjoying a season of great prosperity;* § 87.

534. uti: introduces a clause with four predicates, which explains **eo consilio; quem—iudicassent** is parenthetical and explains **locum;** § 203.

536. domicilio: § 32. **magna copia:** (the great supply), *the many localities that lay open to their choice.*

539. concilium: they wished to forestall objection to a convention on the part of Caesar by obtaining his consent beforehand, although technically he had nothing to do with the matter.

540. sese habere: see l. 530, **intellegere sese.** **liceret:** see vocabulary.

541. ex: *in accordance with.*

543. ne quis enuntiaret: (that not any one, etc.), *that no one should disclose* (*its proceedings*); this is the object of **sanxerunt;** §§ 139, 209. **nisi (ei) quibus mandatum esset (enuntiarent):** (unless those to whom it was ordered should disclose), *except those who were directed to do so;* §§ 23 and 242, 5.

Chapter 31.

545. eo concilio dimisso: the briefest possible way of saying that the assembly met and decided upon a plan of action, to be disclosed in the present chapter. **idem:** = **iidem.**

548. Caesari: § 28.

549. non minus quam: (not less . . . than), *as much . . . as.* **se laborare:** (*saying that*) *they strove and labored for.* **id:** § 8; it is explained by **ne—enuntiarentur,** and contrasted with **uti—impetrarent.**

550. dixissent: this would be the future perfect in direct discourse; (should have said), *were going to say.*

553. Galliae totius: i.e. eastern Gaul.

554. alterius: see vocabulary and § 40.

556. contenderent: translate by pluperfect. Latin emphasizes the

continuance, English the beginning, of the act. **factum esse**: *it came about;* the subject is the following clause.

558. postea quam: see vocabulary.

561. milium: § 35.

562. clientes: *dependent states.*

563. accepisse: sc. **eos** (i.e. **Aeduos eorumque socios**), as subject of **accepisse** and **amisisse**, modified by **pulsos**; (*that*) *they, having been routed, had suffered,* etc. **omnem**: the triple repetition of the word adds to the pathos of the complaint.

565. fractos: agreeing with (**eos**), which would be the antecedent of **qui**, and the subject of **coactos esse**; (*that*), *crushed* . . ., (*they*) *who,* etc. . . ., *had been forced,* etc.

567. obsides: (*as*) *hostages.*

569. sese, etc.: this indirect discourse is in apposition with **iure iurando**,—*that they would neither,* etc.

570. quo minus essent: § 210.

571. unum: *the only one.*

573. potuerit: §§ 168 and 152, note.

574. Romam: § 94.

575. postulatum: § 275.

576. peius: subject of **accidisse**; see vocabulary.

581. iuberet: notice the change of tense; direct discourse, **iubet,** *he is ordering;* indirect discourse, *he was ordering.* **mensibus**: § 107.

582. eum: i.e. Ariovistus.

583. futurum esse: *it would happen.* **quibus**: = **et iis,** *and for them;* § 201. **locus ac sedes**: see vocabulary under **sedes**; and § 280. **pararentur**: *was being provided.* **paucis annis**: §§ 89 and 105.

584. omnes: i.e. the natives.

585. neque enim: *for neither,* introducing a strong point of confirmation. **conferendum**: § 270.

586. Gallicum: sc. **agrum**. **hanc—suam**: i.e. **Gallorum**.

587. illa: *that* (*of the Germans*). **comparandum**: means nearly the same as **conferendum** and may be omitted in translation.

588. ut: in direct discourse **vicerit** would be indicative; hence **ut** means *as* or *when;* § 176. For tense of **vicerit**, see § 152, note.

590. nobilissimi cuiusque: § 140.

591. exempla cruciatusque: § 280. **edere**: *inflict publicly.*

592. hominem esse, etc.: observe this characterization of Ariovistus and see if it is borne out by subsequent proceedings.

593. imperia: (commands), *rule* or *authority.*

594. nisi—sit: § 242, 1. **quid:** § 139. **auxilii:** with **quid;** §§ 47 and 49. **Gallis:** § 31.

596. ut emigrent: in apposition with **idem;** *namely, emigrate;* § 213.

599. dubitare: sc. **se;** *that he did not doubt.* **Quin:** § 214. **de:** see vocabulary under **sumo.**

602. ne—traducatur: § 209.

603. Rhenum: §§ 10 and 11.

CHAPTER 32.

607. unos: see vocabulary.

609. quae—esset: with **miratus;** § 243.

610. respondere: § 258.

611. taciti: with an historical infinitive a predicate adjective is in the nominative like the subject; § 258.

613. hoc: *for this reason,* explained by **quod—horrerent.**

614. reliquorum: sc. **fortunam;** *that of the rest.*

616. crudelitatem: § 8. **velut si adesset:** § 196.

617. reliquis: indirect object; *to the rest.*

618. Sequanis: dat. of agent; *by the Sequanians.*

A conference, asked by Caesar, is refused by the king. Ambassadors are sent by Caesar. The reply of Ariovistus.

CHAPTER 33.

622. curae: see vocabulary and § 32. **futuram :** § 227.

623. se habere: (*saying that*) *he had.* **et:** *both.* **beneficio, auctoritate:** Caesar thought that Ariovistus might be influenced by the service Caesar had rendered him in getting for him the title "friend of the Roman people,"—a formal *recognition* of him, as Cuba was *recognized* by this country when fighting for independence; or if this did not weigh with Ariovistus, then perhaps the prestige which the Helvetian campaign had given Caesar would be just as effective in a different way.

624. Ariovistum facturum (esse): in apposition with **spem.**

625. secundum: see vocabulary. **multae res:** *many* (*other*) *considerations.*

626. qua re putaret : (why he should think), *to think;* § 208. **sibi:** § 31.

627. Aeduos teneri : object of **videbat.**

631. quod: relative, the antecedent being the indirect discourse, **Aeduos teneri** and **obsides esse**; translate, (*a condition of affairs*) *which*. **in**: *in the case of, under.* **populi**: (*as that*) *of*, etc.

632. sibi: § 33.

633. Germanos consuescere: these words and **multitudinem venire** taken together are the subject accusative of (**esse**) **periculosum**, which is indirect discourse governed by **videbat**; *he saw that it was dangerous that the Germans*, etc.

634. populo: § 33.

635. sibi: § 23.

636. quin exirent: § 214. **cum—occupavissent** should be translated before **quin**.

637. ut fecissent: indirect discourse, **ut fecerunt**; what then is the meaning of **ut** here? see l. 77, or vocabulary. See note on l. 768.

639. cum divideret: § 172.

640. Rhodanus: i.e. nothing but the Rhone; which we have been told (l. 100) was fordable. **rebus**: § 27, note. **occurrendum**: sc. **sibi esse**; see vocabulary.

642. ferendus: § 270.

Chapter 34.

644. ei: § 23. **ut mitteret, qui postularent, uti deligeret**: distinguish the use of these three clauses; §§ 208, 162; condense each to infinitive in translating.

646. utriusque: § 58; see vocabulary under **medius**. **colloquio**: § 32. **velle sese**: see l. 623, note to **se habere**.

647. summis utriusque rebus: (the most important matters of each), *matters of the greatest importance to each.*

648. si—esset: (that if there were any need to himself from Caesar), *that if he needed anything of Caesar;* § 30; for form of condition in protasis, see § 242, 2; for **venturum fuisse** in apodosis, see § 242, 4. **ipsi**, and **se** in ll. 649, 650, refer to Ariovistus. Why Ariovistus sent such a message is a matter of conjecture. In all probability it was merely for effect, intended to increase his prestige among his own people. He must have known, as his subsequent message shows, that the occasion was a serious one.

649. si—velit: (if he wished him at all), *if Caesar wanted anything of him;* § 242, 1. **quid**: § 13.

654. mirum: predicate adjective agreeing with clause **quid—esset**, subject accusative of **videri**.

655. quid Caesari negotii esset: (what of business there was to Caesar), *what business Caesar had;* §§ 30, 49, 243. For the variations in sequence in this speech, see § 152.

CHAPTER 35.

657. quoniam . . . affectus, (cum—appellatus esset), **hanc . . . gratiam referret,** (ut—putaret), **haec esse:** (*that*) *since . . . having been treated* (explained by the **cum** clause), *he returned this* (*sort of*) *thanks* (explained by the **ut** clause), THESE WERE THE THINGS. **tanto suo beneficio:** (with his so great kindness), *with such kindness on his part* (*and that of*, etc.).

658. consulatu suo: 59 B.C., one year before.

659. cum appellatus esset: § 172.

661. invitatus: (having been invited), *when asked to do so.* **de—cognoscendum:** *that he ought to talk or learn about their common interests.*

663. quam: § 139.

666. permitteret ut illis liceret: (allow that it might be permitted to them), *allow the Sequanians.* **illi:** i.e. the Sequanians. **eius:** i.e. Ariovistus.

667. iniuria: see vocabulary.

669. sibi populoque Romano cum eo: (to himself and the Roman people with him), *between him* (*on the one side*) *and himself and the Roman people* (*on the other*).

670. impetraret: subject, **Caesar.** **sese:** translate here.

672. provinciam: (*as a*) *province.* **quod:** § 215, 4. **commodo:** § 79.

674. se: a repetition of **sese,** l. 670, for emphasis; to be repeated in English for the same reason; *he, since,* etc., HE *would not,* etc.

CHAPTER 36.

The direct discourse of this chapter is given for comparison:

Ius **est** belli ut qui **vicerunt** eis quos **vicerunt** quem ad modum **velint imperent**; item **populus Romanus** victis non ad alterius praescriptum . . . imperare **consuevit.** Si **ego** populo Romano non **praescribo** quem ad modum suo iure **utatur,** non **oportet me . . . in meo** iure impediri. **Aedui mihi,** quoniam belli fortunam **temptaverunt** et . . . superati **sunt, stipendiarii sunt facti.** Magnam **Caesar** iniuriam **facit** qui suo adventu vectigalia **mihi** deteriora **faciat.** Aeduis (**ego**) obsides non **reddam,** neque his . . . bellum **inferam,** si in eo **manebunt** quod con-

venit stipendiumque . . . **pendent** ; si id non **fecerint**, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani **aberit**. Quod **mihi** Caesar **denuntiat** se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, **nemo mecum** sine sua pernicie **contendit**. Cum **volet**, **congrediatur** ; **intelleget** quid invicti Germani . . . qui inter annos xvi tectum non **subierunt (subierint)** virtute **possint**.

677. **qui**: sc. **ei** as antecedent. **iis**: § 23. **vellent**: § 243.

678. **ad**: *at, according to.*

679. **alterius**: *another's ;* the genitive of **alius** is not in common use, so **alterius** takes its place.

680. **si praescriberet, oportere**: § 242, 1.

681. **suo, uteretur**: plural in translation, because referring to **populus Romanus**. **Suo** below refers to Ariovistus.

685. **facere**: in the direct discourse, **facit** is progressive, *is doing;* hence, in indirect discourse, *was doing.* **se** : i.e. Ariovistus. **qui** : *because he ;* § 173. **sibi**: § 28. **deteriora**: § 16.

686. **non**: very emphatic. **neque,** etc.: *but on the other hand he would not.*

687. **si—manerent**: § 242, 5; see also vocabulary.

688. **convenisset**: vocabulary; so with **fraternum, afuturum** below.

689. **iis** : § 28.

690. **populi Romani**: this modifies **fraternum** as if it were **fratrum,** to which it is equivalent. **sibi**: § 23.

691. **se**: refers to Caesar. **neminem contendisse**: in such a sentence both English and Latin may omit what is logically the main clause; *in regard to the fact that Caesar had threatened him,* (he would say) *that no one,* etc. **se cum** : refers to Ariovistus.

692. **sua**: antecedent **neminem**; translate, *without being annihilated.* **congrederetur**: §§ 245 and 226.

694. **qui,** etc.: this he states as evidence of their vigor.

695. **possent**: *could (effect).*

Alarmed by the complaints of the Aeduans, Caesar hastens against Ariovistus and occupies Vesontio.

Chapter 37.

697. **Aedui**: sc. **veniebant.**

698. **questum**: § 275. **quod,** etc.: §§ 170, 229.

700. **datis**: *by giving;* § 264, 6. **Treveri**: sc. **veniebant questum.**

704. vehementer commotus: the only use of this expression in Caesar. It marks a very serious condition of affairs, in Caesar's opinion, for he was very seldom *seriously alarmed.* **ne:** § 159.

706. resisti posset: sc. **iis;** (it could be resisted them), *they could be resisted;* §§ 23 and 26.

707. quam—potuit: see **quam potest,** l. 112.

CHAPTER 38.

709. tridui: §§ 44 and 45. **viam:** § 12, note.

711. Vesontionem: Caesar's description fits very nearly the site of the modern French town of Besançon (see map), and excavations have brought to light many remains of an ancient town.

713. magnopere praecavendum: (it ought to be guarded in advance earnestly), *that he ought to take great precaution.*

714. usui: see vocabulary and § 32.

717. ut (flumen) circumductum: (as a river drawn around), *as though its course had been described.*

719. pedum: §§ 45 and 70. The distance given in the manuscripts is 600 feet, but since the distance now is found to be nearly 1,600 feet, it is thought that the M of the Roman MDC may have disappeared in process of manuscript transmission.

720. altitudine: § 80. **radices:** accusative. **ripae:** nominative.

722. hunc (montem): § 11. **circumdatus:** (having been put around), *surrounding.*

Panic in the Roman camp; Caesar's speech, and march against Ariovistus.

CHAPTER 39.

727. percontatione, etc.: the soldiers naturally inquired about this unknown foe from those traders who always follow and mingle with an army.

728. qui—praedicabant: this with the following parenthesis would best be omitted until the rest of the sentence is understood. **magnitudine:** § 80; so **virtute** and **exercitatione,** all predicate with **esse.**

731. cum his congressos: (having met with them), *when they encountered them in battle.* This, then, is a statement of the Gauls, not of the traders.

732. timor, etc.: i.e. the army was thrown into a panic. The description that follows, while very brief, shows exactly the way in which

a body of men becomes demoralized. You can see the spread of the panic in each successive sentence, until it culminates in the report (really a threat) that not a man will stir from Vesontio except to retreat.

733. non : modifies **mediocriter** ; another example of litotes; see l. 188.

735. tribunis, etc.: see introduction.

736. amicitiae causa: (for the sake of friendship), *out of friendship;* these men were politicians, who had attached themselves to Caesar for the patronage he had to bestow; they were after what they could get for themselves, were ready to desert when danger threatened, and Caesar is either ironical or politic in using this expression.

737. alius: see vocabulary. **quorum**: §§ 47 and 136.

738. diceret: § 229; singular, agreeing with **alius,** but may be translated plural. **voluntate**: *with his consent ;* § 86.

744. castris: § 92.

745. horum vocibus ac timore; *from their expressions of fear;* § 280.

747. centuriones, etc.: these officers had risen from the ranks, in contrast to those mentioned in l. 735.

748. qui ex his: *those of these who;* § 53.

751. ut posset: § 211.

754. dicto: see vocabulary under **audio** and § 33.

Chapter 40.

756. convocatis, adhibitis; *calling, admitting.*

757. omnium ordinum: as a rule only centurions of the first rank were admitted to such assemblies, but in this case Caesar wanted to get at a man in every maniple, so that his words could reach the whole army more quickly; not so much for the purpose of argument as to inspire every officer in the army with confidence instead of fear, through his own wonderful personality and magnetism.

758. vehementer eos incusavit: *he lectured them severely,* or *he reproached them bitterly.* In the same way that the successive steps in the spread of the panic are shown in Chapter 39, note the course of Caesar's speech to quiet it. It is wonderfully shrewd.

758-760. Censure for breach of discipline. Obedience was the first duty of a Roman soldier. They had no business to ask or even to think where they were going or why.

759. ducerentur: § 245. **sibi quaerendum (esse)**: (it ought to be asked by them), *they ought to ask.* **putarent**: § 229.

760-765. But (since they had made these things their business) he wanted to tell them that Ariovistus was not going to fight at all; he would find there was no reason for it; so there was no need for them to be afraid of those Germans.

760. Ariovistum appetisse: all the rest of the speech is in indirect discourse; the introductory conjunction *that* of English indirect discourse may be omitted. **se consule:** § 88.

761. hunc: § 128.

762. iudicaret: direct discourse, **iudicet;** § 155. **sibi—persuaderi:** (it was persuaded him indeed), HE, *indeed, was persuaded* (*that*); § 26.

764. eum: *Ariovistus.*

765-780. But just supposing (merely for the sake of argument), that Ariovistus was fool enough to fight, what in the world were they afraid of ? The Cimbri and Teutones, a generation before, and more lately the Gladiators, many of whom were Germans, trained to Roman methods of fighting, had gone down before Roman armies; and two weeks ago they themselves had annihilated the Helvetii, who had fought on equal terms with these very Germans.

765. quod: see vocabulary.

766. intulisset: *did declare war ;* § 242, 5. **quid—vererentur:** see synopsis above; § 228.

767. sua: *their own.* **ipsius:** *his;* § 132. By this he puts the soldiers in the position of going back on themselves as well as on him.

768. desperarent: § 155. **factum:** supply **esse.** **hostis:** § 40. **periculum:** see vocabulary. Rome (all but the capitol) had once been taken and sacked by the Gauls, in 390 B.C. After that time, the words *Gaul* and *German* struck terror to the Romans. A similar threatened invasion by the Cimbri and Teutones had been checked in northern Italy (102 and 101 B.C.) by Marius, to the intense relief of Rome. **memoria:** § 105.

771. meritus: sc. **esse,** forming complementary infinitive with **videbatur.** **videbatur:** §§ 182 and 240. **factum:** supply **eius hostis periculum** from l. 768. **servili:** **quos** follows as if we had **servorum,** to which **servili** is equivalent.

772. aliquid: *somewhat;* § 13.

773. ex quo: *from this* (*experience*).

774. quantum—constantia: (how much of good firmness had in itself), *how much advantage there was in firmness.*

775. quos, hos: (*those*) *whom, these;* the antecedent is postponed in Latin, and repeated in English, for emphasis.

777. quibuscum saepe numero Helvetii congressi plerumque superarint: (with whom the Helvetii having met had generally defeated), *whom the Helveti had very often encountered . . . and generally defeated.*

779. exercitui: § 33.

780-788. It was true that Ariovistus had defeated the Gauls at Magetobriga; but it was by a threadbare stratagem, which he would scarcely try to repeat against the Romans.

780. quos: *any,* i.e. of these men who were so scared. **proelium:** see synopsis above, and l. 589.

781. hos: antecedent **quos,** l. 780. **posse:** the structure of the rest of the sentence, in indirect discourse after **reperire,** is as follows: **Ariovistum, cum tenuisset . . . (Gallos) desperantes et dispersos adortum, vicisse:** (*that*) *Ariovistus, after he had,* etc., *having attacked the Gauls when they were despairing and were dispersed, had conquered them.*

782. defatigatis Gallis: ablative absolute, *when the Gauls,* etc.

783. castris ac paludibus: § 92. **sui:** § 43.

784. de: *of.*

786. cui rationi, hac (ratione): *by this stratagem for which.* Compare **si quos . . . hos,** above.

787. locus: *opportunity.* **ipsum:** Ariovistus.

788. capi: see vocabulary.

788-794. The supply of grain would be all right; three tribes were furnishing it. As for the road, they would soon have a chance to judge for themselves.

788. rei: *concerning,* etc.; § 40.

790. facere arroganter: *were assuming a good deal.* **cum viderentur:** *in seeming;* § 172.

791. praescribere: i. e. *to him.* **curae:** § 32.

793. de itinere: see synopsis above. This is a good example of Caesar's "nerve." He knew nothing at all about the country into which they were going, and he could rely on no one except Diviciacus to tell him anything. But so thoroughly had he shamed and at the same time encouraged the officers that, when he came to the one point on which he could not give them assurances, he felt that he could just pass over it, though a few minutes before it had been one chief reason for the panic.

794-800. It was said that the army would mutiny if ordered to advance. He did not believe it, for an army never mutinied except for one of two reasons, neither of which applied in his case.

794. quod non fore dicantur: *in regard to the fact that* (they were said not to be about to be) *it was said that they would not be;* Latin uses the

personal construction where English prefers the *impersonal*. **dicto:** see l. 754.

795. nihil: § 13.

796. scire, quibuscumque . . . aut fortunam (eis) defuisse: *he knew that, to whomsoever . . . either fortune had failed them.* **male:** see vocabulary.

797. vita: § 105.

798. innocentiam: Caesar has said that an army loses confidence in a general because he has been proven either *inefficient* (**male re gesta**) or *dishonest* (**aliquo—convictam**). He now speaks first of his *honesty*, then of his *success*. This shift in the order is rhetorical.

800-806. So he would put them to the test at once and find out immediately whether they were a set of cowards or not. The tenth legion, he knew, would go with him and the rest might do as they chose.

800. quod: *what.*

801. collaturus fuisset: (he had been going to put off), *he had intended to put off;* § 277.

803. utrum—an: double or alternative question; in direct discourse **utrum** is not translated.

804. quod: cf. l. 765.

806. sibi eam futuram: (it would be to him), *he would make it;* § 30.

807. legioni: § 23. Though the Latin style requires the verb at the end of the clause, the position here lays particular stress on **praecipue** and **maxime.**

Chapter 41.

811. princeps : § 115.

813. iudicium: see vocabulary. **fecisset:** § 170.

814. paratissimam: see vocabulary.

816. egerunt: *arranged.* **satis facerent:** see vocabulary under **satis,** and § 208. **se:** (*saying that*) *they,* etc. **nec umquam** = **numquam.**

817. de summa: *as to the conduct.* **suum:** predicate after **esse.**

818. imperatoris: § 46; in the same construction as **suum,** one being a possessive adjective, the other a possessive case.

820. ei: *in him;* §§ 23 and 24.

821. circuitu amplius: (*though*) *by a circuit of more than,* etc.; § 70. **locis:** § 92. The idea is that Caesar thought best to march through an open country even if he had to take a roundabout way to do it.

822. duceret: § 157; limits **exquisito.**

Caesar's conference with Ariovistus is broken off by an attack of the Germans.

Chapter 42.

827. **quod:** (*saying that*) *what.* **postulasset:** the subject is **Caesar.** **per se:** *as far as he was concerned.*

828. **quoniam accessisset:** §§ 170 and 228. **se:** supply another **se** as subject of **posse.**

831. **petenti:** sc. **sibi,** (to him asking), *when he asked it.*

832. **magnam—veniebat:** see vocabulary under **venio,** and note the tense. **pro—beneficiis:** see note on l. 657; translate after the *that* suggested in the next note.

834. **fore uti desisteret:** (that it would be that he would desist) *that he would give up;* **fore** is in indirect discourse, in apposition with **spem. uti—desisteret** is the subject accusative of **fore;** § 213, 2. **colloquio:** § 32.

837. **vereri:** see note on **se,** l. 816.

838. **ne:** § 211. **uterque venerit:** § 155, 1

839. **non esse venturum:** supply introductory verb again as for **vereri.**

843. **equitibus:** § 29. **detractis:** ablative absolute with **equis;** translate coördinate with **imponere,** *to take—and place.* **eo:** adv. (thither), *on them,* i.e. in **his equis.**

845. **quid:** § 13. **facto:** § 74.

846. **non irridicule:** another example of litotes; see note on l. 188.

847. **ex militibus:** § 53.

848. **facere:** progressive, *was doing;* direct discourse, **facit,** *is doing.* **pollicitum:** (having promised), *while he had promised merely that,* etc.

849. **ad equum rescribere:** this is Caesar's famous pun (hence **irridicule** above); and like almost every play upon words it is untranslatable. The point is that these three words were the regular formula for enrolling a man among the knights (**equites**) at Rome, while the soldier considered that the phrase also described pretty well what Caesar was doing with the legion. Translate, *he was actually knighting them.*

Chapter 43.

850. **terrenus:** (of earth), perhaps *smooth.*

851. **spatium:** § 99. **castris:** here plural in sense.

862. **cum haberet:** § 199. **postulandi:** sc. **aditum.**

864. quam: *how.*

865. cum: *and.*

866. quotiens: adv., (how often); translate as adjective, *how frequent.*

867. ut: *how.*

869. prius quam appetissent: § 181.

871. sui nihil: (nothing of their own), *none of their prestige.* **gratia:** § 82.

872. auctiores: *more (and more) increased.*

873. iis: § 29. **posset:** §§ 228, 243 and 244. **postulavit eadem:** (demanded the same things), *made the same demands;* § 12.

877. quos: § 139.

Chapter 44.

878-879. pauca respondit, multa praedicavit; cf. **postulavit eadem,** ll. 873, 874; § 12.

881. spe praemiisque: hendiadys = **spe praemiorum;** § 280.

882. ipsis: i.e. **Gallis.**

884. capere: *exacted.* **quod:** antecedent, **stipendium.**

889. si velint: § 242, 1.

892. ornamento, etc.: § 32.

893. petisse: sc. **eam** (i.e. **amicitiam populi Romani**), as object. **si remittatur:** § 242, 5.

896. appetierit: § 228. **quod:** § 215, 3.

897. traducat: progressive; cf. l. 848; so **facere,** in the next line. **sui muniendi causa:** §§ 55 and 272.

899. quod: § 215, 2, *b.*

900. defenderit: sc. **bellum,** and see vocabulary.

903. quid—vellet: see vocabulary under **volo,** and § 28. **sibi** refers to Caesar, **suas** to Ariovistus.

904. veniret: §§ 243 and 244. **hanc Galliam:** i.e. Celtic Gaul, contrasted with Transalpine Gaul; the latter was limited, as Ariovistus considered, to the small territory near the Mediterranean coast and bounded by the Rhone; this was all that had really been subdued to Rome before Caesar came.

905. ut oporteret: (as it ought not to be yielded to him, i.e. by the Roman people), *as we ought not to yield to him;* **ut** would have the indicative in direct discourse.

909. rerum: § 58. **ut non sciret:** (that he did not know), *as not to know;* §§ 165 and 166.

913. debere: see vocabulary. **simulata Caesarem amicitia:**

(that) *Caesar under the pretence of friendship, had,* etc. When an ablative absolute has a word inserted which does not belong to it, this word is almost always one which denotes the real agent of the participle; so here the friendship was feigned by Caesar.

914. sui opprimendi causa: see l. 897.

915. nisi decedat: § 245, 5.

916. pro: *as.*

917. eum: i.e. Caesar. **interfecerit:** § 245, 5. The statement here given was probably true, but Caesar had as little fear of his enemies at Rome as of Ariovistus, and he publishes this threat to show it.

918. se id compertum habere: (he had this foundo ut), *he had found this out;* § 266.

921. discessisset: same construction as **interfecerit** above; these two verbs show how little the law of sequence is regarded in a long speech. Other examples may easily be found.

922. praemio: § 75.

923. eius: *on his* (Caesar's) *part;* § 39.

Chapter 45.

926. qua re posset: § 243. The clause is in apposition with **sententiam.**

927. uti desereret: (that he desert), *him to desert.* **optime meritos:** *well-deserving.*

929. Ariovisti: § 46.

930. quibus: § 23. With **redegisset** we ought strictly to have **quos,** and with **imposuisset** we would have **quibus** again, but with different construction; English uses the objective in each case.

932. quod: *therefore.* **si oporteret:** § 242, 1. **antiquissimum—tempus:** (each most ancient time), *priority of arrival in Gaul.*

935. si oporteret: § 242, 1. **liberam:** i.e. from such encroachments as that of Ariovistus. Caesar does not allow for a moment that he is taking away the freedom of Gaul, but poses as the champion of an invaded country.

936. victam: (*though*) *conquered.* **suis:** *its own,* referring to **Galliam.** **voluisset:** § 228; the subject is **is** (i.e. the senate), *it.*

The argument beginning with l. 929 is as follows: Rome had established a claim to Gaul before Ariovistus, though she had not made it a province; so Ariovistus had no claim on the ground of previous possession. Furthermore, if he still paid any regard to the Roman senate, he was in the wrong, for the senate had taken the ground that Gaul

was to remain free. Caesar's coming was no encroachment, that of Ariovistus was.

CHAPTER 46.

937. propius tumulum: § 33, note.

940. suis: § 23.

941. quod: § 139.

942. legionis: § 40.

943. committendum ut dici posset: (that it ought to be permitted that it could be said), *that he should give the enemy a chance to say;* the subject of **committendum** is **ut dici posset,** and the subject of **dici posset** is the following infinitive clause.

944. pulsis hostibus: *when they were routed.*

946. usus: see vocabulary.

947. Gallia: § 65. **Romanis:** § 27. **interdixisset:** § 243.

948. ut: *how.*

949. multo: § 81.

950. exercitui: § 27.

Two Gauls, sent to Ariovistus as ambassadors, are thrown into chains.

CHAPTER 47.

951. biduo: § 81.

952. coeptae essent: see vocabulary.

953. uti—constitueret: object of **velle;** § 208.

954. minus: *less,* i.e. than the other proposition; translate, *not.* **ex legatis:** § 53.

955. Caesari visa non est: *there did not seem to Caesar* (*to be*).

956. diei: § 56.

957. quin conicerent: *from hurling;* § 214.

958. legatus ex suis: as we say, "a lieutenant of his"; *one of his legati.*

959. missurum (esse) cum: (would send with), *could not send without.*

960. visum est: subject, **mittere,** l. 866.

961. virtute: § 80.

962. civitate: §§ 20 and 21.

963. et: *both.*

964. qua multa utebatur: (which he used much), *which he spoke freely;* **multa** agrees with **qua.**

965. in eo: (in the case of him), *in his case.* **Germanis:** § 30.

970. quid venirent: *why did they come:* §§ 243 and 244.

971. conantes: sc. **eos:** (trying), *when they tried.*

A cavalry battle.

Chapter 48.

972. promovit: Caesar had been marching northeast toward Ariovistus. The latter now moves forward, i.e. south. **milibus:** § 81.

973. diei: § 56.

974. traduxit: he probably took his line of march some distance up the slope of neighboring hills, so that, if Caesar tried to attack him, as he undoubtedly would have done had he tried to pass in the plain, the Romans would have to fight uphill. Thus he really outgeneralled Caesar.

976. supportaretur: § 203; the tense indicates continued action; use past progressive to translate.

980. ei: § 30. **non deesset = esset;** litotes again.

981. diebus: § 105; contrast with **dies,** l. 977.

984. numero: § 82.

985. singuli singulos: *each selecting a man.* **cum:** *in company with.*

986. versabantur: § 148; so with the following imperfects.

987. hi: i.e. **pedites. quid erat durius:** (there was anything harder), *the engagement was unusually sharp.* **quid, qui:** § 139. **concurrebant:** *ran to their aid.*

988. quo: see vocabulary.

989. longius: *further* (*than usual*), and so **celerius. prodeundum:** § 278.

990. exercitatione: *as a result of their practice;* § 84. The method of fighting here described was afterwards adopted by Caesar.

Ariovistus attacks Caesar's smaller camp, but does not dare to fight a pitched battle.

Chapter 49.

992. castris: § 92. **ut—prohiberetur:** this shows that Ariovistus was suceeding in his design; see ll. 972–977.

993. ultra: i.e. to the south, along the line of his communications.

994. passus: § 99.

995. castris: § 32 or § 33.

999. numero: § 82. **hominum milia expedita:** (light-armed thousands of men), *thousand light-armed troops.*

1000. quae prohiberent: § 162.

1001. nihilo: see vocabulary and § 81.

CHAPTER 50.

1006. instituto suo: § 86.

1007. paulum: § 99.

1009. circiter: this adverb modifies the adjectival idea in **meridie.**

1012. pugnatum est: § 144, 2.

1013. multis — vulneribus: (many wounds having been both inflicted and received), *after an indecisive engagement.*

1015. quam ob rem: see vocabulary under **ob** and § 243.

1016. quod—esset: § 215, 2, *a.*

1017. ut—declararent: § 213.

1018. utrum—esset: § 243.



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

Being finally forced to fight, the Germans are conquered and flee to the Rhine. The Gallic ambassadors are freed.

CHAPTER 51.

1021. praesidio: § 32.

1024. minus valebat: (was less strong), *was weaker.* **multitudine:** § 82. **pro hostium numero:** (in proportion to the number of the enemy), *than the enemy.*

1031. eo: (thither), *on these*; see l. 843.

1032. proficiscentes: (setting out), *as they advanced.*

1033. manibus: § 78. **flentes:** with **quae.** **se:** i.e. **mulieres.**

CHAPTER 52.

1035. legionibus: § 27. **quaestorem:** Caesar perhaps had only five *legati,* and had to use his *quaestor* as general officer for the other legion.

1037. a: § 98.

1039. ita: with **acriter.**

1040. itaque: = **et ita,** with **repente celeriterque.**

1041. ut daretur: §§ 165 and 166.

1043. ex: *as a result of, according to;* § 85.

1045. insilirent: § 168.

1047. a: § 98; see l. 1037.

1051. tertiam aciem: for the use of the third line in battle, see introduction.

1052. laborantibus: see vocabulary. **subsidio:** § 32.

This was the end of the battle. "The victory was decisive. The Suevi, who were on the point of crossing the Rhine, lost heart and set out homewards. And Caesar—where was he to go? What was he to make of his victory? It would be fatal to withdraw his legions into the Province. That would be to invite the German to attempt a new invasion: to confess weakness to the Gaul. Fortune beckoned him on. Gaul was disunited: her foremost state was on his side: and others felt the spell of his success. For the present indeed he must return to Cisalpine Gaul to conduct the civil duties of his government and watch the politics of Italy : but leaving his legions under the command of Labienus, he quartered them for the winter in the stronghold of Vesontio. In this last act of his we may read the registration of a great resolve: and doubtless he reflected, as he travelled southward, upon the magnitude of the undertaking to which he had committed himself. For to all who had eyes to see and ears to hear he had made it evident that his purpose was nothing less than the conquest of Gaul."—HOLMES.

CHAPTER 53.

1056. viribus: § 72.

1057. inventis, reppererunt: invenio means *find* (by chance), *come upon;* **reperio,** *find* (by seeking).

1060. consecuti interfecerunt: (having followed, killed), *followed and killed.*

1061. natione: § 82. **duxerat:** *had brought.*

1063. duxerat: sc. **in matrimonium.**

1064. filiae: sc. **fuerunt,** from l. 1060.

1066. trinis: (triple), *three sets of.* **hostes:** object of **insequentem.**

1071. restitutum: sc. **et,** connecting with **ereptum.** **calamitate.** *loss.* **tanta:** (so great *as his*), *his great.*

1073. consultum (esse): impersonal;—(it had been consulted), *the Germans had consulted.*

1075. beneficio: see vocabulary.

The Suebi return home. The army is stationed in winter quarters. Caesar hastens into nearer Gaul.

CHAPTER 54.

1077. **Suebi:** the most powerful German tribe; see ll. 700-708.

1078. **quos:** *that they;* § 136.

1079. **Ubii:** the most civilized German tribe. **Rhenum:** § 33, note. **perterritos:** sc. esse.

1081. **paulo:** § 81.

1084. **ad conventus agendos:** see vocabulary under **ago;** § 271.

BOOK II.

57 B.C.

For the heading **Commentarius Secundus,** see note on similar heading for Book I. Those who have not studied the first book should read the summaries of the two campaigns given on pp. 3 and 28.

I. THE WAR WITH THE BELGIANS.

CHAPTERS 1–33.

The campaign of 58 B.C. had brought to Caesar the submission of central Gaul, at least for the time being. But the Belgians were as yet unterrified. They formed a league to resist the further progress of Caesar and, if possible, to drive him from the country. The Remi cast in their lot with Caesar. Every other Belgian tribe joined the league against him. Galba, king of the Suessiones, was chosen commander-in-chief, and was able to muster more than 200,000 men, while Caesar had less than 50,000.

But Caesar was not caught napping for a moment. He made preparations during the late winter and crossed from Cisalpine Gaul in the early spring. He marched from the country of the Sequani, entered the territory of the Remi and remained there some days. His headquarters probably were near Durocortorum (Rheims), their chief town.

Hearing that the Belgae were marching against him, he crossed the Axona by a bridge which was within an easy march of the eastern frontier of the Suessiones, and there, close to the right bank of the river, pitched his camp. The camp was on a hill, which, with the defences which he constructed, is described in Chapter 8. It was probably situated near the modern town of Berry-au-Bac, about seven miles from Bibrax, a stronghold of the Remi, which the Belgae proceeded to attack.

Caesar came to the assistance of the garrison and defeated the Belgae, but did not care to attack the camp of so vast a host. The armies faced each other for some time, neither caring to make an advance, although the Roman cavalry was making havoc with the Belgian forces. Caesar at length led his army back into camp.

The Belgae finally moved down the Axona about two miles, to a place where the river was fordable. Caesar attacked them while

they were crossing with his cavalry and light-armed troops and inflicted serious losses upon them. Disheartened by this, they decided to disband and go home. Caesar pursued with his cavalry and slaughtered them in great numbers. He then pushed on to the westward, down the river to Noviodunum, the stronghold of the Suessiones. This town surrendered shortly after and Caesar moved on still farther westward to Bratuspantium, chief town of the Bellovaci, which also surrendered. Continuing northward, he received the submission of the Ambiani.

"But now he learned that his progress was about to be disputed. On the northeast, among the inhospitable forests of the Sabis (Sambre) and the marshes of the Scaldis (Scheldt), dwelt a tribe whose primitive virtues had not yet been enfeebled by contact with civilization. No traders were suffered to cross their frontier, for fear the luxuries of which the rude warriors were still ignorant might sap their manhood." These people would not yield without a stubborn resistance, and here was fought one of the hottest fights of Caesar's career. After the battle, Caesar moved eastward against the Aduatuci, whose stronghold was finally taken; and the campaign of 57 B.C. ended in the complete overthrow of the Belgian Confederacy.

Confederation of the Belgians, with the exception of the Remi, who intrust themselves to Caesar's protection.

Chapter 1.

1. **cum esset**: §182. **citeriore Gallia**: this was the part of modern Italy north of the Po. **ita**: omit in translation. **uti**: for the meaning with the indicative, see vocabulary. **supra demonstravimus**: this refers to the closing statement of Book I.

2. **afferebantur, fiebat**: note the imperfect tense used of repeated action; §148.

3. **certior**: see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. **omnes Belgas coniurare**: in direct discourse, **omnes Belgae coniurant,** progressive, *all the Belgians are uniting;* hence in indirect discourse, *that all the Belgians were uniting;* it is governed by **certior fiebat,** an expression of *saying.* If indirect discourse has not been studied before, see §§ 217–246.

4. **quam**: subject accusative of **esse**; it agrees with **partem,** but in English we must make it agree with its antecedent and say *whom.* **dixeramus**: see Book I, Chapter 1. In such an expression the English prefers the present perfect, which the Latin may use, as in l. 2, above.

5. dare: like **coniurare**; see l. 3. For the phrase **inter se dare,** see vocabulary under **inter.**

6. coniurandi: §§ 40 and 267. **has esse**: indirect discourse, like **coniurare** and **dare**; *that these were,* etc.; for the case, see § 1. **quod vererentur, quod sollicitarentur**: substantive clauses in apposition with **causas**: §§ 215, 2, *a*, 170 and 228. **ne adducerentur**: § 211.

7. omni pacata Gallia: (all Gaul having been "pacified"), *now that all (Celtic) Gaul was subdued.* For the sense in which **Gallia** is used, see notes on Book I, Chapter 1. **ad**: *against.*

8. ab non nullis Gallis: § 68.

9. qui: sc. **eis** as antecedent, in distributive apposition with **non nullis Gallis** (§ 4); *those who.* **Germanos versari noluerant**: § 257. The subjunctive might have been expected instead of **noluerant, ferebant,** etc. (§ 228). In using the indicative, Caesar gives the explanations as a fact; § 170.

10. hiemare, inveterascere: progressive, like **coniurare,** l. 5.

11. qui: see note, l. 9. **mobilitate,** etc.: § 84. **ferebant, studebant** and **occupabantur**: these imperfects denote a continued condition; § 148.

12. novis imperiis: see vocabulary under **novus,** and § 23. **ab non nullis**: this is in addition to those designated by the **non nullis** of l. 8.

13. ad conducendos homines: § 272.

14. regna: plural, because the Latin thinks of a **regnum** in each state; translate, *the power in individual states.*

15. imperio nostro: *under our rule;* a combination of the idea of time and cause: §§ 84 and 89.

This chapter means that the Belgians feared "(1) annexation, (2) foreign garrisons, (3) repression of irregular native greatness founded on birth or wealth."—Moberley.

Chapter 2.

17. duas legiones novas: the thirteenth and fourteenth; he already had six in transalpine Gaul, numbered seventh to twelfth inclusive; see Book I, Chapter 10.

18. inita aestate: ablative absolute; see vocabulary under **ineo.**

19. qui deduceret: §§ 156, 162 and 163. **legatum**: §§ 1 and 2.

20. cum primum inciperet: (when first began), *as soon as there began;* § 182. This would be late in June; see Book I, Chapter 16. **cum primum** almost always takes the indicative.

21. **dat negotium:** see vocabulary under **negotium,** and §147.

22. **Belgis:** § 33. **uti cognoscant, faciant:** in apposition with **negotium:** § 208. **quae gerantur:** § 203.

24. **de:** *of.* **certiorem:** see vocabulary and §§ 16 and 17. **manus, exercitum:** the former refers to small numbers of men from single localities, the latter to the force that was organized when the small bands had been drilled and brought together. So in this country in 1861 companies were recruited in towns and villages, and regiments were organized in the cities, which were afterwards united into brigades, divisions and corps. **cogi, conduci:** progressive passive: *were being collected,* etc.

25. **dubitandum (sibi esse):** §278.

26. **quin proficisceretur:** § 214. **re frumentaria comparata:** (a grain supply having been prepared), *after he had provided for a supply of grain.*

27. **castra movet:** (he moves camp), *he breaks up his winter quarters.* **diebus:** §§ 89 and 105.

CHAPTER 3.

29. **cum venissent:** § 182. **opinione:** see vocabulary and § 69.

30. **Galliae:** § 33. **ex Belgis:** § 53.

31. **primos:** § 111.

32. **qui dicerent:** §§156, 162 and 163. The rest of the chapter is indirect discourse. For the use to be made in study of the direct form given below, see Book I, l. 224.

Nos (§ 222) **nostraque** (like **nos**) omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani **permittimus** (§ 237); neque [**nos**] (§§ 222 and 122) cum Belgis reliquis **consensimus** (like **permittimus**) neque contra populum Romanum **coniuravimus, paratique sumus** et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare: **reliqui omnes Belgae** (§ 237) in armis **sunt, Germanique,** qui cis Rhenum **incolunt** (§§ 239 and 202), sese cum his **coniunxerunt, tantusque est** eorum omnium **furor** ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque **nostros,** qui eodem iure et isdem legibus **utuntur** (like **incolunt**), unum imperium unumque magistratum **nobiscum habent,** deterrere **potuerimus** (§§ 239 and 165) quin cum his **consentiant** (§§ 239 and 214).

32. **se:** this is object, as shown by **suaque omnia** (§ 111); another **se** is to be understood as subject accusative of **permittere**; *that they intrusted,* etc.

35. et: see note, Book I, l. 410. **dare**: this and the three following infinitives are complementary to **paratos,** which is to be considered as a predicate adjective.

36. facere: see vocabulary. **oppidis**: §92. **frumento**: §71. **recipere, iuvare**: supply object.

37. esse, coniunxisse, esse: these are infinitives of indirect discourse after **dicerent,** like **permittere,** etc.

38. cis: *on this side of,* i.e. on the side towards Rome, the southwestern side. **incolant**: §228.

40. ut potuerint: §§ 151, 152, note, 165 and 166. **Suessiones**: accusative; this may be translated after **ut ne quidem,** then the following appositives and clauses, finally **deterrere potuerint,** *could they prevent.*

41. iure: § 73. **isdem**: = **iisdem. utantur**: § 228; after it supply **et qui,** with **habeant.**

43. quin consentirent: § 214.

The origin of the Belgians and their forces.

CHAPTER 4.

44. ab his: § 67. **quae, quantae**: interrogative adjectives.

45. essent: § 243. **quid**: interrogative pronoun; contrast with **quae** above. **quid possent**: (what they were able), *how strong they were;* §13. **sic reperiebat**: the direct discourse of the rest of the chapter would be as follows:

Plerique Belgae sunt orti ab Germanis, Rhenumque antiquitus **traducti** propter loci fertilitatem ibi **consederunt,** Gallosque qui ea loca **incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt** qui patrum nostrorum memoria, . . . Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint: qua ex re **fit** uti . . . magnam sibi auctoritatem . . . **sumant.** De numero eorum omnia **(nos) habemus** explorata . . . propterea quod propinquitatibus . . . coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem . . . ad id bellum pollicitus sit **cognovimus.** Plurimum inter eos **Bellovaci . . . valent; hi possunt** conficere armata milia centum, **polliciti (sunt)** ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi **postulant.** Suessiones **nostri sunt finitimi;** fines latissimos feracissimosque agros **possident.** Apud eos **fuit rex** nostra etiam memoria **Diviciacus,** totius Galliae **potentissimus,** qui cum magnae partis harum regionum tum etiam Britanniae imperium **obtinuit;** nunc **est rex Galba;** ad hunc . . . summa totius bell i . . . **defertur;** oppida **habent** numero duodecim, **pollicentur** milia armata quinquaginta: totidem **Nervii,** qui maxime feri inter ipsos **habentur,** longissimeque **absunt;** quindecim milia **Atrebates, Ambiani** XXV milia, **Morini,**

etc. . . . Condrusos, Eburones, etc. . . . qui . . . Germani appellantur **arbitramur** ad XL milia.

46. **ab Germanis**: § 67.

48. **Gallos**: object of **expulisse**; **Belgas** is the subject of all the infinitives in this sentence. **solos**: *the only ones.*

49. **patrum**: § 39. **memoria**: see vocabulary and §§ 89 and 105. **omni Gallia vexata**: *when all,* etc.; §§ 87 and 264, 1.

50. **ingredi prohibuerint**; see vocabulary under **prohibeo,** and §168. Verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid* (e.g. **iubeo** and **prohibeo**) govern the infinitive as a rule; **impero,** which takes an **ut** clause, means *command.*

51. **qua ex re fieri**: (from which fact it was happening), *the result was;* the subject accusative of **fieri** is the clause **uti—sumerent** (§ 213). **rerum**: § 40; contrast with **patrum,** l. 49. **memoria**: § 84.

53. **omnia habere explorata**: § 266.

54. **propterea**: modifies **habere.**

55. **coniuncti**: agrees with the subject of **cognoverint.** **quantam —polliciti sint**: indirect question after **cognoverint.**

57. **cognoverint**: §§ 170 and 228. For the primary tenses of the subjunctive here and below, as compared with **sumerent,** l. 53, see § 152, note. **plurimum valere**: (availed most), *were strongest;* § 13. **virtute,** etc.; § 84.

59. **conficere**: see vocabulary. **armata milia**: (armed thousands), *thousand armed men.* **pollicitos**: sc. **esse.** **electa**: agrees with **milia**; translate similarly, *picked men.*

61. **suos**: i.e. of the Remi. **fines—agros**: notice the so-called chiastic arrangement of the words—noun, adjective; adjective, noun.

62. **possidere**: subject, **eos** (i.e. **Suessiones**).

63. **memoria**: see vocabulary and § 105.

64. **cum . . . tum**: § 279, 3.

66. **hunc**: § 128. **summam**: see vocabulary under **summa.**

67. **voluntate**: § 86.

68. **numero**: § 82. **milia armata**: see l. 59.

69. **maxime feri**: superlative, *fiercest;* this adjective is not compared by terminations. **inter ipsos**: (among themselves, i.e. the Belgians), *among them.* **habeantur**: *were considered;* this is a quite common meaning of **habeo.**

70. **absint**: i.e. from the Remi; they were in the northwest of Belgic Gaul. **quindecim milia Atrebates, Ambianos decem milia**: see note on l. 61. This and the different forms of expression employed here serve to break the monotony of the passage.

74. appellantur: § 240. Contrast with **habeantur,** l. 69.

75. arbitrari: i.e. (Remos) **arbitrari Condrusos, . . . ad XL milia (conficere posse);** *that they (the Remi) thought that the Condrusi . . . (could furnish) about forty thousand;* or, *they rated them at,* etc.

Caesar's camp at the Aisne.

CHAPTER 5.

76. cohortatus: § 261.

77. prosecutus: see vocabulary. **senatum venire:** § 255.

78. obsides: § 2, note. This was a characteristic act on Caesar's part. He took the Remi at their word when they said they intrusted **se suaque omnia** to him, and thus got security that they would assist him. The Gauls were notably fickle (see Chapter 1 of this book), and Caesar never felt that he could trust them unless their direct interests or their fears compelled them to side with him. In this case, however, as it turned out, the Remi proved the most faithful to Caesar of all the Gallic states. **quae:** § 136. **omnia:** § 111. **ab his:** § 68.

79. diem: see vocabulary. **Diviciacum Aeduum:** the year before, Caesar had taken the part of the Aeduans, one of the strongest states of Celtic Gaul, in their contests with other states for the leadership; Diviciacus was the most influential leader of the conservative party among the Aeduans, and a trusted adviser of Caesar.

80. quanto—distineri: § 63.

82. ne confligendum (sibi) sit: (that it might not have to be contended by him), *that he might not have to contend;* §§ 31, 156 and 278.

83. id: i.e. **manus hostium distineri.** **posse:** sc. **docet.**

84. si introduxerint: § 242, 5 or 6.

85. postquam vidit: § 176.

86. venire: in direct discourse, **veniunt,** *are coming* (§145, *a*); hence in indirect discourse, *were coming.* **neque:** connects **vidit** and **cognovit,** but negatives **longe.** **abesse:** sc. **a se,** *from him;* the subject is **copias Belgarum.** **ab iis . . . exploratoribus et ab Remis:** ablatives of source modifying **cognovit;** translate immediately after it.

88. flumen: § 11.

90. quae res: *this movement.* **et:** see note, Book I, l. 410.

91. ripis: § 71. **post eum quae essent:** (what were behind him), in military language, *his communications.*

92. tuta: predicate adjective agreeing with **ea** understood, the antecedent of **quae;** § 16. **commeatus ut possent efficiebat:** (effected that provisions were able), *made it possible for provisions;* § 213.

95. in altera parte: i.e. on the southern side; see map.

97. pedum duodecim: §§ 44 and 45.

98. munire: sc. **eum** (i.e. **Sabinum**), as subject.

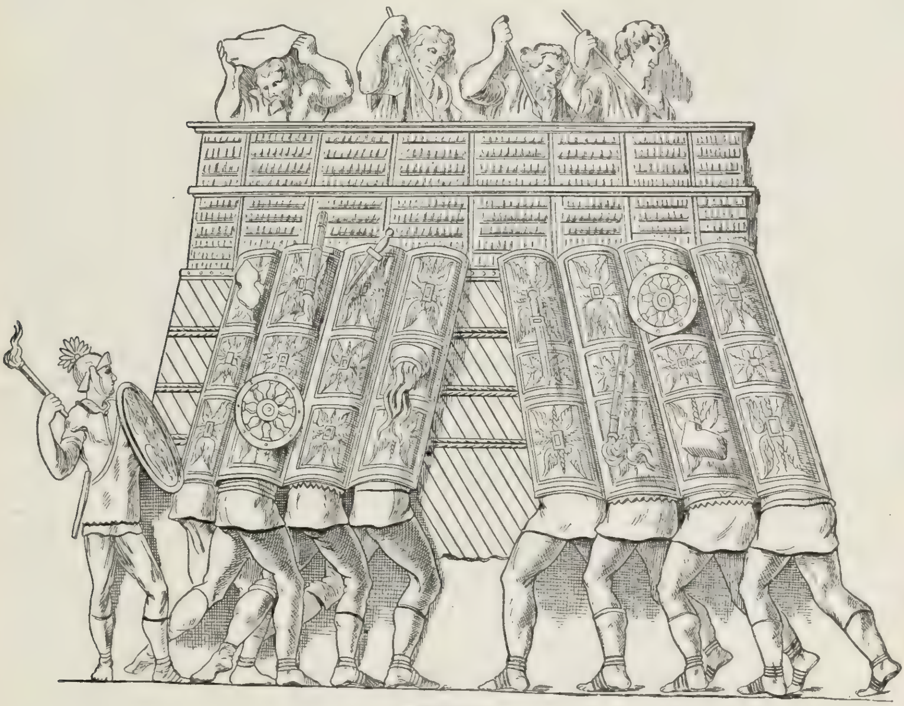
Bibrax, a town of the Remi besieged by the Belgians, is relieved by Caesar. The Belgians, while withdrawing, suffer heavy loss.

CHAPTER 6.

99. nomine: § 82.

100. milia: §§ 14 and 99. **magno impetu**: § 78.

101. die: § 104. **sustentatum est**: § 144, 2.



TESTUDO.

102. eadem atque Belgarum: (*which is*) *the same as that of the Belgians*; parenthetical.

103. moenibus: § 27.

105. defensoribus: § 65. **testudine facta**: (a "testudo" having been made), *they form a testudo and*.

106. quod: § 136. **tum**: i.e. in the storming of Bibrax.

107. conicerent: § 143.

108. potestas erat nulli: § 30. Note the emphatic position of nulli. **finem oppugnandi**: § 267.

109. summa nobilitate: § 80.

110. oppido: § 27. **ex iis:** § 53.

111. legati: § 2, note. **de:** *concerning, to sue for.*

112. nisi, etc.: (*saying that*) *unless,* etc.; § 227. For mood and tense, see § 242, 5.

Chapter 7.

114. de media nocte: (from, i.e. after, the middle of the night), *about midnight;* § 113. **isdem:** = **iisdem hominibus. ducibus:** § 2, note. So **nuntii,** l. 115.

115. Cretas: notice Greek ending. **sagittarios:** appositive to **Numidas et Cretas,** but the latter may be translated as adjectives.

116. subsidio: § 32.

117. et . . . et: *not only . . . but also.* **Remis:** § 27.

118. hostibus: § 29. **potiundi:** old form of gerundive. For the use of the gerundive of such verbs, see § 273, 2.

121. quo adire potuerant: (whither they were able to go to), *which they could get at.* **omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis:** this ablative absolute is coördinate with **morati** and **populati,** but since deponent verbs have no passive participle and active verbs have no perfect active participle, we find this awkward combination. In translating make the voices of all the participles the same, here rendering **incensis** by the perfect active. **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

122. a: adverb, *away.* **milibus duobus:** §§ 70 and 81.

123. quae: § 136.

124. milibus: § 69. This statement is given to show the great number in the Belgian army. See Chapter 4.

Chapter 8.

126. primo: § 115.

127. virtutis: § 40. **proelio:** § 65.

128. quid—posset: (what the enemy could in bravery), *how brave the enemy was;* §§ 13, 82 and 243.

129. quid—auderent: like the above clause, *how daring our men were.* **periclitabatur:** notice tense; § 148.

130. loco pro castris idoneo: *the ground in front of the camp* (*being*) *convenient.* This use of **pro,** local, is rare. It is so employed only when it means *immediately before,* practically, *on the edge of.*

131. natura: § 84.

132. quod redibat: this gives the reason for **opportuno atque idoneo.**

133. editus: agrees with **collis;** *rising.* **tantum—patebat:** (extended in breadth, turned toward *the camp,* so much as of place as a line drawn up could occupy), *covered as much space in front of the camp as his line of battle would fill.* In describing a hill it is hard to use definitely such terms as *width, end, side,* etc., unless it has a very distinct ridge, which was not the case here. **tantum:** § 14.

134. quantum: object of **occupare.** **loci:** § 47.

135. ex utraque parte: *on each end* (*of the ridge*); § 98. **lateris deiectus:** (slopes of side), *comparatively steep slopes.*

136. ab utroque latere: compare **ex utraque parte** above. It means, on either side of the ridge at the end near which the camp was.

137. transversam: *at right angles* (*to the front of his line of battle*); this was on his right, the **latus apertum;** see Book I, line 457, note.

"The camp was situated on rising ground between the river (Aisne) and its tributary, the Miette, a small stream flowing through a marshy ooze. The camp was, as usual, quadrilateral, as nearly square as the lie of the land permitted. The rampart, eight feet high, was faced with sods and revetted with timbers and fascines, to keep its slope of the requisite steepness; along the top of it was set a palisade of interlaced branches, and the ditch which surrounded it was eighteen feet wide and ten feet deep. Caesar's rear was protected by the Aisne; and his supplies could be brought up in safety by the Remi."—HOLMES.

138. extremas: § 113.

139. tormenta: *engines,* which corresponded exactly to modern artillery. **ne possent:** § 158. **cum instruxisset:** § 182.

140. quod—poterant: *because they were so strong in numbers; with their superior numbers;* it modifies **possent,** and should be translated immediately after it. **ab lateribus circumvenire:** (to come around on the sides), *to outflank.*

141. pugnantes: (*while*) *fighting; during the battle.*

143. si quo: (if anywhere), *wherever;* **quo,** adverb, is indefinite after **si,** like forms of **quis** and **qui** (§ 139). **opus:** the indeclinable noun; see vocabulary. **esset:** § 242, 5. **subsidio:** § 32.

145. copias eductas instruxerunt: (drew up their troops, having been led out), *led out their troops and drew them up.*

CHAPTER 9.

147. si transirent: § 243, note. **exspectabant:** § 148.

148. si—fieret: (in case a beginning of crossing should be made

by them), *if they began to cross;* § 242, 5. **transeundi:** § 267. **impeditos:** sc. **eos**; for translation, see vocabulary.

150. proelio equestri contendebatur: impersonal; (it was contended by means of a cavalry battle), *a cavalry battle was going on;* § 144. **ubi faciunt:** § 176.

151. neutri: *neither army;* when designating one of two *bodies of men,* the plural of this word, as of **alter,** is used. **secundiore proelio:** §§ 87 and 88. For the translation of **secundiore,** see § 116.

152. nostris: § 33.

156. eo consilio: (this being their plan), *with this design.* **si possent:** § 242, 5. **cui:** § 27.

157. pontemque interscinderent: they would thus have the Romans cut off from provisions and from retreat. It was good strategy, if they could have carried it out.

158. minus potuissent: (should be less able), *could not do this;* § 242, 5. **popularentur, prohiberent:** sc. **ut**; they are coördinate with **ut expugnarent, interscinderent,** above. **qui:** the antecedent is **agros.**

159. usui: see vocabulary and § 32. **gerendum:** gerund or gerundive? See § 271. **commeatu:** § 65.

Chapter 10.

161. certior factus: it is not stated of what he was informed, but it can be easily supplied,—*of their attack, of what was going on,* etc.

162. levis armaturae: § 44. He takes these troops because they can get there more quickly than the heavily armed legionaries. The fact that he goes with them shows that he understood the vital importance of preventing the enemy from crossing.

163. ponte: § 71. This is the bridge mentioned in l. 94. **eos:** i.e. the Belgians.

164. pugnatum est: § 144. **hostes:** the case is shown by **impeditos;** for the latter, see l. 148.

165. per: *on, over.* Without any fear or sentiment, the others tried to use the bodies of the men in the front ranks as a causeway across the stream, so as to be better able to get at the Romans.

166. reliquos . . . conantes . . . reppulerunt: keep the Latin order; *the rest, trying . . . , they drove back.* Observe Caesar's terse description of the fight. He divides the slaughter into three parts: first, those who were trying to cross when he came (**hostes impeditos in flumine**); second, those who tried to cross after them (**reliquos per eorum corpora audacissime transire conantes**); third, those who had crossed before he

arrived (**primos qui transierat**). He did not deal first, as might at first thought be expected, with this last division, because not enough had crossed to do any harm and it was more important to stop the rest; but he kept them occupied with the cavalry, while dealing with the others, and finally cut them to pieces.

168. equitatu: § 71. **primos circumventos interfecerunt:** keep the order and translate participle by main verb, *they surrounded and killed.*

169. oppido: i.e. Bibrax; see Chapters 6 and 7. **spem se fefellisse:** (that the hope had deceived them), *that they were disappointed in the hope* (*of,* etc.).

170. neque: = **et non;** take the negative part of the conjunction with **progredi,** *did not advance.* It was a great feature of Caesar's tactics in Gaul to get the enemy to attack him in a place of his own choosing.

171. pugnandi causa: §§ 54 and 55. **ipsos:** emphatic, contrasted with the Romans, whom a little while before they had hoped to cut off from their base of supplies.

172. convocato consilio: translate by main clause: *called a council and,* etc.

173. optimum: predicate adjective agreeing with the subject accusative of **esse,** i.e. the infinitive clauses following. **domum:** § 94. **suam quemque:** in this combination the possessive regularly precedes. **quemque reverti:** § 257. **quorum in fines:** *into whose territory;* the antecedent of **quorum** is **eos,** l. 175. **introduxissent:** *should lead;* §§ 153 and 203.

175. convenirent: this is the second object of **constituerunt;** the first was a mere statement of a fact, that a certain thing was best; hence the accusative and infinitive. The *purpose* of their decision was that they should reassemble; hence the subjunctive, which, used thus without **ut,** is much like the use that appears when an imperative becomes subjunctive in indirect discourse; §§ 208, 212, 221 and 245. **ut—uterentur:** adverbial purpose clause modifying **convenirent.**

176. finibus: § 91. **copiis:** § 73.

178. quod—cognoverant: § 215, 2, *b.*

179. finibus: § 27. **appropinquare:** progressive, *was approaching.*

180. his persuaderi non poterat: (it could not be persuaded these), *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded;* §§ 23 and 26. So this terrible league dissolved, and Caesar proceeds against the various tribes separately.

181. neque: *and not;* see l. 170.

Chapter 11.

182. ea re constituta: *when this move had been settled on.* **magno —tumultu:** § 78.

183. nullo—imperio: attendant circumstance; § 78.

184. cum—properaret: § 172: this clause modifies **fecerunt ut—videretur.** **sibi:** § 28.

185. ut videretur: § 213.

186. fugae: § 33. **hac re cognita:** § 264, 4.

187. veritus: § 261. **qua de causa:** *for what reason, why.* **qua** is here an interrogative adjective.

188. discederent: § 245. Note the tenses of **perspexerat** and **discederent;** the latter is progressive.

189. castris: § 92.

190. qui moraretur: §§ 162 and 163.

191. his: § 27. **Pedium, Cottam:** these two *legati* were often detailed together. We find that they were men of different characteristics, so that perhaps Caesar thought that one would serve to balance the other.

192. Labienum: see vocabulary.

195. fugientium: (*while*) *fleeing.* **cum (ei) ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent . . . (et) priores** (i.e. **priores hostes**) **praesidium ponerent:** (since those on the extreme end of the line of march, to whom it had been come, made a stand, . . . and those in front placed a guard), *since,* (*while*) *those on the extreme rear who were overtaken made a stand . . . those in advance took refuge.* **ab:** § 98. **extremo:** § 113.

197. priores: § 111. **quod viderentur:** § 170. **abesse a:** *be out of.*

199. perturbatis ordinibus: (their ranks having been disturbed), *broke ranks and.*

201. tantam quantum fuit diei spatium: *as great as* (was the space of the day) *the day allowed.* The comparison is careless and illogical.

The Suessiones are received in surrender.

Chapter 12.

205. postridie eius diei: § 56. **prius quam reciperent:** § 181.

207. Remis: what other case might have been used? See § 33, note.

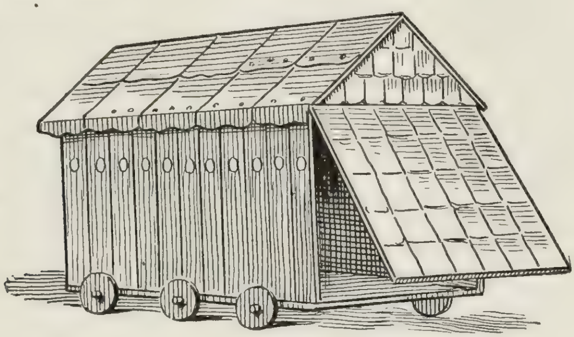
208. ex itinere: i.e. without encamping or making any especial preparations.

209. ab defensoribus: § 65.

211. paucis defendentibus: § 264, 4.

212. quaeque: *and (the other things) which.*

213. usui: see l. 159.



VINEA.

215. actis: *being pushed.* For the methods of the Romans in siege operations, see introduction.

216. quae: *such as; the like of which.*

219. petentibus Remis: see note on Book I, l. 512. **ut conservaretur:** object of **petentibus;** § 208.

At the request of Diviciacus, Caesar receives the Bellovaci in surrender; he inquires about the character and customs of the Nervii.

Chapter 13.

220. primis: (the first), *the chief men;* § 111.

221. ex oppido: we use an adjective phrase, *the arms in the town;* the Latin uses an adverbial phrase, *having been handed over out of the town.*

223. qui—contulissent: *when they had retired with all their possessions into the town (of) Bratuspantium.*

226. natu: see vocabulary under **magnus,** and § 276.

227. voce: *tone of voice,* for Caesar would not have understood their language.

230. accessisset, ponerent: notice tenses.

231. ex muro: (*standing*) *on the wall.* **more:** § 86.

Chapter 14.

The direct discourse of this chapter would be as follows:

Bellovaci omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae

fuerunt; impulsi ab suis principibus, qui **dicebant, "Aedui** a Caesare **in** servitutem **redacti** omnes indignitates . . . **preferunt,"** et ab Aeduis **defecerunt** et populo Romano bellum **intulerunt.** Qui eius consili principes **fuerant,** quod **intellegebant** quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam **profugerunt. Petunt** non solum **Bellovaci** sed etiam pro his **Aedui** ut **tua** clementia ac mansuetudine in eos **utaris.** Quod **si feceris,** Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnis Belgas **amplificabis,** quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella **inciderunt,** sustentare **consuerunt.**

235. omni tempore, fide: see vocabulary. **civitatis:** § 39.

236. impulsos, etc.: the construction is **(eos), impulsos . . . , et defecisse et intulisse,** (*that*) *they* (the Bellovaci), (having been) *urged on . . . , had both revolted and waged.* **qui dicerent:** § 228; this governs the indirect discourse, **Aeduos . . . redactos, . . . perferre,** *that the Aeduans, having been*, etc. . . . , *were enduring.*

239. Qui: sc. **eos** as antecedent and subject accusative of **profugisse**; *that those who* etc. . . . , *had fled.*

240. quod: conjunction. **quantam—intulissent:** § 243.

242. Bellovacos, Aeduos: subjects of **petere,** the object of which is the clause **ut—utatur.**

243. sua: *his* (*usual*), *his* (*well known*); this is not an unusual force of **suus. quod si fecerit**: *if he did this;* § 242, 5.

245. amplificaturum: sc. **eum (Caesarem)** as subject. **si qua bella inciderint (Aedui) consuerint:** for the form in direct discourse, see above; English, *if any wars happen, we are accustomed.* Indirect discourse, *if any wars happened, they were accustomed;* § 228. **qua:** this form may be used instead of **quae** in the feminine singular and neuter plural of the indefinite pronoun.

Chapter 15.

247. honoris Diviciaci causa: (for the sake of the honor of Diviciacus), *as a mark of honor to Diviciacus;* **honoris,** § 54; **Diviciacus,** § 40.

249. magna auctoritate: § 80.

250. multitudine: § 82.

251. ex oppido: see note on l. 221.

254. quorum: § 135. **Caesar cum quaereret:** *when Caesar inquired.* It would be possible here to consider **Caesar** the subject of **reperiebat;** but often a nominative preceding a **cum** clause cannot be the subject of the main verb. This shows that, in such a sentence as we have here, the subject that is expressed belongs to the subordinate clause.

255. mercatoribus: § 30.

256. vini: § 49. **pati:** sc. **eos** as subject.

259. magnae virtutis: § 44.

260. qui: *because they;* § 173.

261. confirmare: progressive; see note on l. 179. It is coördinate with **esse, increpitare** and **incusare.** **sese—accepturos:** this is indirect discourse, object of **confirmare.**

The Nervii, with the Atrebates and Viromandui, are defeated by Caesar with heavy loss on both sides, and their surrender is accepted.

Chapter 16.

263. cum fecisset: § 182. **eorum:** i.e. *of the Nervii.* **triduum:** § 14.

264. ex captivis: § 67. **Sabim:** note the ending.

265. milia: §§ 14 and 70.

266. consedisse, exspectare: note change of tense, *had encamped, were waiting for.*

268. uti—experirentur: object of **persuaserant;** §§ 25 and 208. **eandem:** (the same), *with them.*

270. copias: notice the voice of **exspectari;** then is **copias** subject or object? **quique:** = **et eos qui.**

271. coniecisse: notice voice; then is **mulieres** subject or object? **eum locum quo:** = **talem locum ut eo,** *such a place that to it;* §§ 165 and 166.

272. exercitui: § 30.

Chapter 17.

273. exploratores, centuriones: the former would try to find various possible sites; then the latter, experienced officers, would confer and select the best place.

274. qui deligant: §§ 162 and 163. **castris:** § 33. **cum facerent:** § 182. **ex:** § 53. Notice here the difference between a bad and a good translation. Following the Latin we might say, "When from the surrendered Belgians and the remaining Gauls, several, having followed Caesar, were making a march," etc. This is "Latin-English." Contrast the following: "When quite a number of other Gauls and of the recently surrendered Belgians had joined Caesar and were marching with him," etc.

276. ex his: cf. **ex—Gallis,** above. **ex captivis**: § 67.

277. cognitum est: § 148. **eorum dierum**: (of) *during these days;* with **itineris**; § 37. **consuetudine**: (custom), *order.*

278. nostri exercitus: with **itineris**; § 39. **nocte**: § 89.

279. inter singulos legiones: *between* (the single) *every two legions.*

280. numerum: *amount.* **neque—negotii**: (nor was anything of trouble), *and that it was not a difficult matter;* § 49.

281. cum venisset, abessent: in direct discourse, **cum venerit** (future perfect indicative), **aberunt,** (when it shall have come, shall be away), *when it has come, are behind;* § 182. In indirect discourse the English tenses are like the Latin.

283. adoriri: subject of **esse.** **qua pulsa**: (which having been driven), *that when this had been routed.*

284. futurum (**esse**): *it would* (be) *happen* (*that,* etc.); object of **demonstrant.**

285. adiuvabat, etc.: the subject is the clause **quod—effecerant**; (the fact that the Belgians had made . . . , aided the plan of those who . . .); translate passively, *the advice of those who . . . , was reënforced by the fact that the Belgians . . .*

286. equitatu nihil possent: (since they were nothing able in respect to cavalry), *since they had no cavalry at all;* §§ 13 and 82.

287. neque enim: see vocabulary under **enim.** **ad hoc tempus**: (to this time), *at present;* i.e. when Caesar was writing. **ei rei**: *this arm of the service.* **quicquid possunt**: *so far as they can.*

288. valent, etc.: (they are strong in), *they rely on.* **quo facilius impedirent**: § 160.

289. si venissent: § 242, 5. **praedandi causa**: see vocabulary under **causa.**

290. teneris, etc.: (tender trees having been cut into and bent over, and numerous branches having grown out laterally, and brambles and briars having been planted among them); *had planted young trees and then cut into them and bent them over;* thus they would remain bent over but would keep on growing; *numerous branches would then grow out sidewise, and by planting briars and brambles among them they had made* (that) *these hedges* (should) *furnish,* etc.; § 213.

292. instar: in apposition with **munimentum.** **muri**: § 57.

293. quo . . . intrari, . . . perspici posset: § 168; verbs impersonal; (whither it was able . . . to be entered, . . . to be seen through), *such that one could . . . penetrate it, . . . see through it.*

294. cum—impediretur: this clause modifies **omittendum (esse)**; in direct discourse the future indicative would be used (§ 182). **cum**

iter agminis eorum impedietur, non omittendum nobis consilium erit; *when the advance of their column* (shall be) *is impeded, we ought not,* etc.

295. sibi: § 31.

Chapter 18.

296. haec: (this), *as follows.* **castris:** § 32.

297. ab summo: *from the top.*

299. pari acclivitate: *with a similar slope;* § 80. **adversus:** note that this, with **contrarius, infimus, apertus** and **silvestris** are all adjectives modifying **collis.**

300. huic: § 33. **passus:** § 99. **infimus apertus:** the former of these adjectives is partitive in force (§ 113), the latter predicate; (the lower part open), *open at the base.*

301. a superiore parte: contrasted with **infimus;** (on the higher part), *towards the top.* **ut perspici posset:** see l. 293 and § 166.

303. continebant: compare the different uses of the imperfect in this chapter; § 148. **secundum:** a preposition; see vocabulary.

305. pedum trium: § 45. This is a clear description of a battlefield; try to imagine how it looked, and draw a plan.

Chapter 19.

306. subsequebatur: note the imperfect again; with which imperfect in Chapter 18 does this correspond? Note also the meaning of the compounds of **sequor** with the various prepositions. **omnibus copiis:** § 77.

308. hostibus: § 27.

309. consuetudine sua: § 86.

311. duae legiones: see l. 18.

312. praesidio: § 32.

315. illi: i.e. **hostes.**

317. quem—pertinebant: (to what limit the open places extended, stretched out), *to the edge of the woods.* **quem ad finem:** = **ad eum finem ad quem.**

318. cedentes: sc. **eos** (i.e. **hostes**); (*when*) *retreating.* **interim:** i.e. while this game of hide and seek was going on between the two bodies of cavalry.

319. opere dimenso: this had been done by the centurions who had been sent ahead; see l. 273.

320. prima: § 113.

321. abditi latebant: *were lying hidden.* **quod:** relative pronoun, subject of **convenerat,** having for its antecedent the clause **ubi—visa sunt.** **tempus:** predicate nominative; (*as*) *the moment;* § 2, note.

322. convenerat: see vocabulary. **ut—confirmaverant:** *as they had formed . . . and had urged each other* (*to do*).

323. ipsi sese confirmaverant: *had made their plans;* § 133.

327. ut viderentur: § 166.

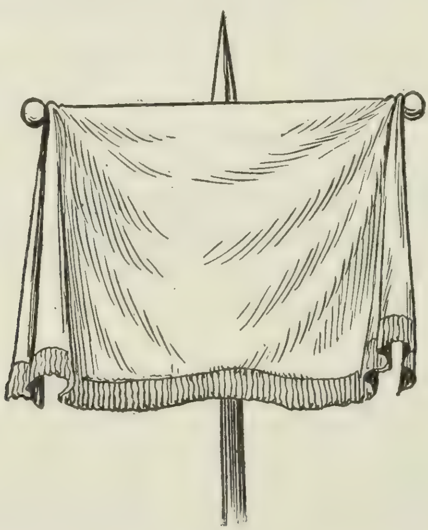
328. in manibus nostris: (in our hands), *within our reach.*

329. adverso: see vocabulary. **ad:** *toward.*

Chapter 20.

This passage is one of the most brilliant in Caesar. Notice the directness of statement and the rapidity of style corresponding to the action described.

331. Caesari—agenda: (all things were to be done by Caesar at one time), *Caesar had to do everything at once;* §§ 31 and 278.

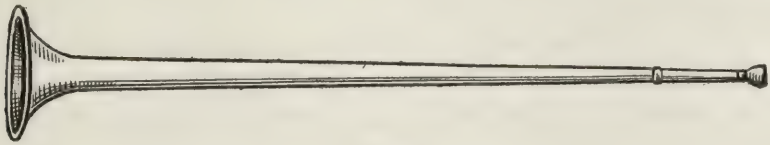


VEXILLUM.

332. proponendum, etc.: supply the proper form of **sum** with this and each of the following gerundives, and compare **erant agenda** for translation; these clauses explain **omnia.** **concurri oportebat:** both impersonal, § 144; (it ought to be run), *the soldiers were to rush;* **occurri** is the subject of **oportebat.**

333. tuba: those who did not see the **vexillum** might hear the **tuba.**

334. qui: the antecedent is **ei,** indefinite, the subject of **arcessendi (erant).** **longius**: § 116. **aggeris**: see vocabulary.



TUBA.

335. milites cohortandi: see note on Book I, l. 444.

336. signum: this means the signal to begin fighting or to charge.

337. difficultatibus: § 92.

338. subsidio: § 32.

339. duae res: the first of these is **scientia atque usus** taken together as a single thing, *discipline,* which is explained by the clause **quod—poterant;** the second is the clause **quod—vetuerat,** *the fact that,* etc. **superioribus**: *former.* **exercitati**: participle agreeing with **ei** (i.e. **milites**), the subject of **poterant.** **quid—oporteret**: § 243; it is the direct object of **praescribere** and the second object of **doceri** (§ 15, end). **quid fieri** taken as a whole is the subject of **oporteret.**

340. non minus commode . . . quam: (not less readily than), *as easily . . . as.* **ipsi sibi**: (themselves to themselves), *to each other;* § 133.

341. singulis legionibus singulos legatos: (the single legati from the single legions), *each commander from his particular command.*

342. nisi munitis castris : here we have an ablative absolute introduced by a subordinating conjunction. This happens most frequently after **nisi,** but also after conjunctions such as **tamquam, quasi, quamquam,** etc. Translate, *unless the camp was fortified.*

344. nihil exspectabant: (awaited not at all), *did not wait a moment for;* § 13.

345. per se: *on their own responsibility.* **videbantur**: see vocabulary.

Chapter 21.

It is part of Caesar's design to show his own part in the battle, and attention is called to him at the beginning of this and the preceding chapter.

346. necessariis rebus imperatis: (the necessary things having been ordered), *after giving the necessary orders.*

347. quam [in] partem: *in whatever direction; wherever.*

348. non longiore oratione quam uti: *with a speech not longer than* (*to urge them*) *to*, etc. "Keep cool, men, and remember the honor of the legion. Stand up against that rush."—Holmes.

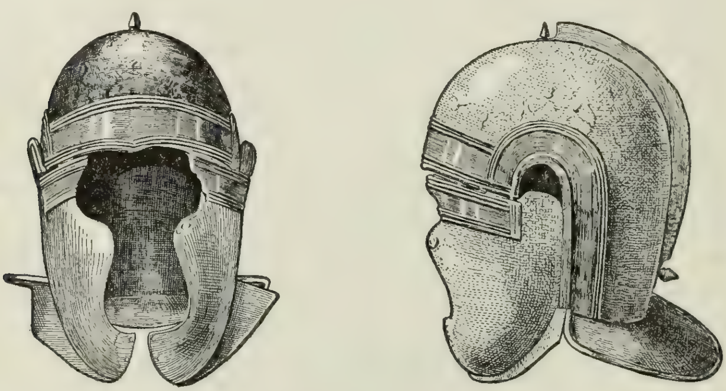
350. animo: § 82.

352. non—posset: *the enemy were* (away not farther than whither a javelin could be driven), "*within a javelin's cast.*"

354. pugnantibus occurrit: (he ran against fighting *men*), *he found them* (*already*) *fighting.*

355. temporis—exiguitas: (so great was the shortness of the time); what does this mean? **hostium animus**: scarcely different from **hostes.**

356. ut: what Latin words should be translated directly after **ut**, to give the English order? **insignia**: *decorations;* i.e. badges indicating rank, medals won for bravery, and perhaps colored crests or some other sign for every soldier to indicate the legion and maniple to which he belonged. These latter would correspond to the different devices used to distinguish the army corps and divisions in the Union army in the Civil War.



GALEAE.

357. galeas: the helmets that were worn in battle would be too heavy and uncomfortable to be worn all the time. These, with the shields in their leather coverings (**tegimenta**) and the **insignia,** the soldier while marching carried in his pack or hung on his person, as our soldiers carry their cartridges and canteens. **scutis**: § 65.

358. quam in partem: see l. 347. **defuerit**: this sequence of tense is exceptional in a result clause.

359. prima: *were the first that;* § 115.

360. ad haec: (at these), *here.*

Chapter 22.

363. rei—ordo: (the reason and custom of military affairs), *the principles of military science.* The first subjects of **postulabat** are **natura, deiectus** and **necessitas,** which are contrasted with **ratio atque ordo.** For the agreement of **postulabat,** see § 142.

364. cum legiones resisterent, -que prospectus impediretur: § 172. **aliae alia in parte:** (some in another part), *some in one place, and others in another.* Such an abridged form of expression is called *brachylogy.*

365. saepibusque, etc.: repeat the **cum** here to keep the connection clear; *and since,* etc. **saepibus interiectis:** *by the intervening hedges;* § 264, 7.

367. neque: *neither;* this begins the main clause. **neque provideri (poterat):** impersonal; the subject is the clause **quid—esset;** *nor could it be foreseen what need there would be in each part* (*of the field*).

370. fortunae eventus: *vicissitudes of fortune; fortunes.*

Chapter 23.

Having described the circumstances under which the battle began, Caesar now begins to tell what actually happened,—what the **fortunae eventus varii** were. He begins with the success of his own left wing.

372. cursu—confectos: translate this after **compulerunt** and its modifiers and the parenthesis; (out of breath from running and weariness and exhausted with wounds), *because they were tired out with running and* (*so many*) *were wounded* (*by the javelins*).

375. conantes: accusative, agreeing with **eos** understood; (*when they were*) *trying.* **transire:** i.e. *to recross the river.* **gladiis:** if this modified **secuti,** it would probably be before it, so we may conclude that it modifies **interfecerunt.** **impeditam:** (*while thus*) *embarrassed; by taking them at this disadvantage.*

376. ipsi: i.e. **legionis nonae et decimae milites,** l. 371.

377. locum iniquum: *an unfavorable position;* i.e. they were now fighting up hill.

378. rursus—proelio: resistentes hostes is accusative, object of **coniecerunt,** *the enemy,* (*who were*) *beginning to resist again and trying to renew the battle.*

381. ex—proeliabantur: *were fighting from their higher position right on the bank of the river;* i.e. they had driven the Viromandui back down the hill, but the latter were making a stand on the edge of the water and were between this and the Romans, who were still fighting down hill.

The plural (ripis) refers to different points on the same side of the river.

382. **at totis nudatis:** *and so, while the whole,* etc. At the start the eighth and eleventh legions were in front of the camp, the ninth and tenth on the left, and the twelfth and seventh on the right. By the success of those in the front and on the left, and because of their pursuit of the flying enemy, the places they had occupied were left open and the camp exposed on these two sides.

385. **confertissimo agmine:** § 78. **duce Boduognato:** *under the lead of;* § 88.

386. **summam:** see vocabulary. **imperii:** § 47. **ad eum locum:** where they saw the two legions.

387. **ab aperto latere circumvenire:** (to come around on the exposed flank), *to turn their right flank.* They had numbers enough so that those in front could divide and pass to either side of the two legions so as to attack them more advantageously, and, at the same time, those coming behind could attack them and keep them busy in front.

388. **summum castrorum locum:** (the highest part of the camp's location), *the top of the hill where the camp was;* § 113.

Chapter 24.

More than anything that has preceded, the description of this battle marks Caesar as an artist in literature. He begins with the left, the point of the easiest and most complete Roman success, then takes the less decisive victory of the centre, and at the close of Chapter 23 he hints of disaster on the right. Chapter 24 might be omitted; but like a dramatist he waits before telling the outcome of the Nervian attack, and details the movements of the cavalry, the camp-followers and the muledrivers in such a manner as to present to the reader in the most vivid form the picture of the crushing reverse which had apparently been inflicted on the Roman arms.

389. **levis armaturae:** see l. 162.

390. **quos pulsos (esse) dixeram:** either, *whom I had said to have been routed,* or, *who, I had said, had been routed;* do not mix the two.

391. **cum reciperent:** § 182; the action is progressive.

392. **adversis, occurrebant, partem:** see vocabulary.

393. **porta:** sc. **castrorum.**

394. **summo:** § 113.

395. **egressi:** i.e. **a castris;** they had followed the ninth and tenth legions.

396. versari: (were turning about), *were actually;* it is a strong synonym for **esse.** **praecipites:** § 114.

398. oriebatur: (was rising), *began to be heard.* **alii—partem:** compare ll. 364, 365.

401. virtutis: § 40. **opinio:** see vocabulary.

402. cum: conjunction, introducing **vidissent;** § 182.

405. dispersos dissipatosque fugere: *were fleeing, dispersed and scattered.* As a result of this report, the Treveri lost pretty much all their respect for Caesar and gave him repeated trouble. Had such a report gone out three years later, it is probable that there would instantly have been a general uprising of Gaul.

Chapter 25.

For the time being, we have lost sight of Caesar. The last mention of him was in l. 354. Notice how he brings out his own part in the battle. He had started the successful charge on the left. Now, after the scene showing the desperate pass to which affairs had come without him, he reappears and assumes command in person.

409. Caesar, etc.: the structure of this, the longest sentence in the Bellum Gallicum, is as follows: **Caesar, . . . profectus, ubi . . . vidit** (l. 412) . . . **vidit** (l. 421), **processit . . . -que . . . iussit;** each **vidit** governs some clauses of indirect discourse; **quartae—posset** consists of ablatives absolute and their modifiers, giving various circumstances; **scuto—detracto** is an ablative absolute that is practically coördinate with **profectus** (l. 410). The sentence should first be mastered as it stands, then broken up into shorter sentences in translation, as suggested below. **cohortatione:** see ll. 346–348.

410. signis collatis: ablative absolute denoting cause (§ 246, 2); *and (that), because the standards were collected,* etc.

411. confertos: *being (therefore) huddled together.* **sibi ipsos esse impedimento:** (themselves were for a hindrance to themselves), *hindered each other;* §§ 32 and 133.

416. multis—confecto: (overcome by many and severe wounds), *who had received many severe wounds.* When **multi** is followed by another attributive adjective, the two are regularly connected by a conjunction, contrary to the English idiom.

418. tardiores esse, etc.: here begins the indirect discourse which is the object of the second **vidit** (l. 421); this verb should be translated here, repeating the **ubi** for clearness, and supplying a conjunction; *(and when) he saw that the rest were,* etc. **tardiores:** § 116. **non**

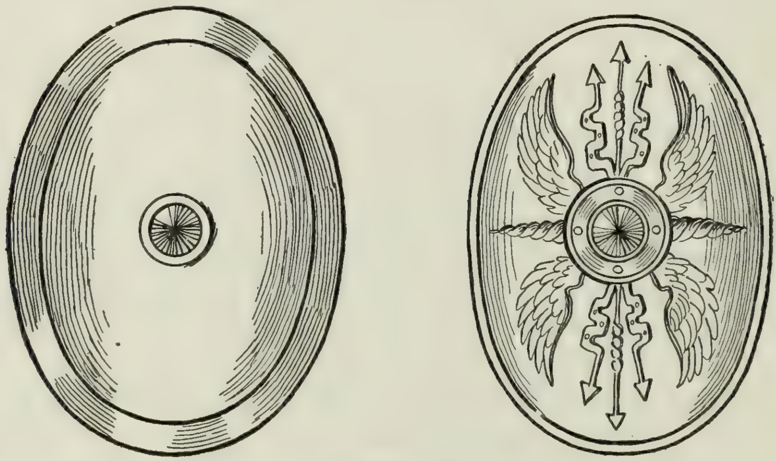
nullos: for clearness express the introductory particle *that* (§ 220) before each clause of indirect discourse; *and that some,* etc. **ab:** *at* or *in;* § 98.

419. deserto loco: ablative absolute, (their place having been deserted), *deserting their posts.* **proelio:** § 65. **discedere:** progressive, *were withdrawing;* so also **vitare.** **hostes neque:** = **et hostes non;** *and that the enemy did not.*

420. subeuntes intermittere: an example of what is called the *supplementary participle,* agreeing with the subject but really adding to the predicate; *cease coming.* **ab:** § 98.

421. neque: see note on **neque,** l. 419; take the negative with **ullum.** **rem esse in angusto:** (that the thing was in a narrow *place*), *that a crisis had come;* compare our colloquial expression, "things were in a tight place."

422. scuto detracto: (a shield having been seized), *seizing a shield;* see note on l. 409. **ab novissimis:** see l. 418.



CLIPEI.

423. [uni]: omit. See note on Book I, l. 433. **militi:** § 29.

424. centurionibusque appellatis: *and, calling,* etc. "Among them (his soldiers) there was hardly one not known to him by name or one who had not formed more or less of a personal relation to the general." —MOMMSEN.

425. cohortatus: (*and*) *encouraging.*

426. quo posset: § 160.

The sentence may now be broken up as follows. Make the first statement include what he saw when he came, i.e. as far as **vidit,** l. 412,

—"When Caesar reached the right wing, he saw that . . ." Next, state in simple sentences what is told in the following ablatives absolute,—"All the centurions were killed . . ." Then bring in the second **vidit** with its indirect discourse,—"He saw *also that* . . ." Finally tell what he did,—"So, seizing a shield, . . ."

The effect of this long sentence may be explained. Caesar takes in at a glance all the varying conditions of the field. With the same instantaneous decision he takes his resolution to put his own life to the hazard, the last resort of a desperate position. All the confusion of the field, all the quickness and resoluteness of Caesar's marvellous mind, are shown in the structure of this sentence, and by this single event in his life he made his reputation as one of the world's greatest commanders secure. *He did not lose his head.*

427. cuius: § 135. **militibus:** § 27.

428. cum cuperet: § 172.

429. in extremis suis rebus: (in his own extreme affairs), *though his own danger was extreme.*

Chapter 26.

431. Caesar cum: see note on l. 254.

433. conversa: see vocabulary. Just what manœuvre this phrase describes we do not know, but it appears that one line, probably the third, took a new front: to right, to left, or to the rear. Here if the third line of the twelfth legion swung around to the left, and that of the seventh legion to the right, the two legions would then form three sides of a rectangle with double line to the front where the attack was heaviest. This formation could then easily be closed in to nearly a hollow triangle if necessary. See plan, and Book I, l. 461.

435. cum—ferrent: (since some bore aid to others), *since they aided each other.* **aversi:** see vocabulary.

438. impedimentis: § 32. **proelio nuntiato:** *learning of the battle.*

439. cursu incitato, conspiciebantur: *quickened their speed and began to be seen;* § 148.

441. gererentur: see vocabulary.

442. subsidio: like **impedimentis,** l. 438.

443. qui cum: *when they.* **qui—esset:** (in what place the thing was), *what was the condition of affairs.*

446. reliqui: see vocabulary. The whole phrase means that they came as fast as their legs would carry them.

Chapter 27.

448. qui: (*those*) *who.* **volneribus confecti:** (finished with wounds), *severely wounded.* **procubuissent:** § 168.

449. scutis: § 72. **innixi:** *leaning;* § 261. So **conspicati** below. **calones:** sc. **et** before it.

450. inermes: (*though*) *unarmed.*

451. vero: emphasizing **equites;** *while* THE CAVALRY.

452. pugnando: § 82.

453. extrema spe salutis: (their last hope of safety), *their last stand.*

455. (**eis**) **iacentibus:** modifies **insisterent** (§ 27); observe that this cannot be a form of **iacio.**

456. his, etc.: the result clause, **ut . . . insisterent atque . . . pugnarent,** is continued by **remitterent;** to show this clearly, repeat a part of the main statement before beginning the ablatives absolute; (*such courage, indeed, that,*) *when these,* etc.

457. qui: as in l. 448. **ut:** see vocabulary.

458. pila intercepta remitterent: (sent back intercepted javelins), *caught javelins as they flew past and threw them back.* **ut non—deberet:** this clause expresses the result of all that has preceded. **nequiquam:** modifies **ausos esse;** translate after it.

459. virtutis: § 44. **homines:** the subject of **iudicari deberet** (impersonal) is **homines tantae virtutis nequiquam ausos esse,** etc. The sense is, that the Belgians were so brave that they were justified in expecting success in the execution of their daring plan. Nowhere else does Caesar pay such a tribute to the Gauls, which is at the same time an indication of the peril he had himself so narrowly escaped.

461. ex: *instead of.*

462. animi magnitudo: (the greatness of their courage), *their great courage.*

"The two legions which guarded the baggage had heard of the fight and were marching up at their utmost speed. Suddenly above the ridge they appeared, and presently the tenth, despatched by Labienus, recrossed the river, hurried up the hill-side and threw themselves upon the enemy's rear. The effect was electrical. Even the wounded leaned on their shields and plied their swords; the scattered camp-followers plucked up courage and turned upon the enemy; while the cavalry did all they could to atone for their flight.

"The Nervii in their turn were hemmed in. But in their last agony they made good their proud boast [ll. 260, 261]. Man by man, beneath the javelin and the thrust of the short sword, their front ranks fell.

Higher rose the heap of prostrate bodies; and leaping into them, the survivors snatched up the fallen javelins and flung them back, till they too fell; and all was still. So ended this wild fight, a soldier's battle, and withal the battle of a great man. Within an hour it was over, fought and wellnigh lost and won."—HOLMES.

CHAPTER 28.

463. prope ad internecionem: this is greatly overstated. They had plenty of men left, as events three years later proved.

464. natu: § 82. **quos coniectos dixeramus:** see note on l. 390.

466. cum: § 172. **victoribus:** § 28.

467. impeditum (esse): *stood in the way of.*

468. consensu: § 86.

470. sexcentis: sc. **senatoribus.**

471. vix: modifies **quingentos.** **qui possent:** § 168.

473. usus (esse): we would use the present infinitive. This is a cynical confession that his humane action was also partly politic.

474. uti: (to use), *to return to.*

475. finitimis: (their neighbors), *the chiefs of the neighboring tribes.*

The Aduatuci also are subdued.

CHAPTER 29.

478. venirent: progressive. **nuntiata:** see note on l. 438. **ex itinere:** modifies **reverterunt;** it means, *without stopping to encamp.*

480. sua omnia: sc. *possessions;* § 111. **egregie natura munitum:** (conspicuously fortified by nature), *naturally well fortified.*

481. quod cum: *while* this; § 199. **ex—partibus:** *on all sides in succession;* if one began at a certain place and followed around, he found himself facing ledges and cliffs all the way until he got *nearly* around.

484. pedum: §§ 45 and 70. **duplici altissimo muro:** = **duobus altissimis muris;** these had a space between them so that, if the enemy succeeded in getting through the first, they would be more or less between two fires.

485. tum: i.e. when Caesar arrived. Notice tenses. **magni ponderis:** § 44.

486. in muro collocabant: i.e. for ammunition.

488. iis impedimentis depositis: (that baggage having been put down), *had deposited that baggage . . . and.*

489. agere ac portare: (to drive and carry), *to take.* The **impedimenta** included not only the ordinary baggage of an army, but cattle, sheep, etc., taken along for food; also prisoners and captured spoils. The Latin word (literally, *hindrances*) is much more inclusive in its meaning than the English *baggage.* We cannot speak of *driving* baggage, so we must use one less accurate word that will combine the idea of the two employed in Latin.

490. custodiam ex suis: (a watch of theirs), *some of their number as a watch,* to take care of it. **praesidium:** *a guard,* to defend it.

491. eorum: (their), *of the rest of the two tribes.* **obitum:** see note on Book I, l. 769.

492. annos: § 14. **alias:** adverb. **cum bellum inferrent, illatum (bellum) defenderent:** (since they were either bringing on war and warding off war brought on), *since they were waging offensive and defensive war.*

493. eorum omnium: *of all those concerned.*

494. pace facta: in translating, make this a main clause, like **impedimentis depositis,** ll. 488, 490.

Chapter 30.

495. primo: adverb.

496. faciebant: § 148. The subject is **Aduatuci.**

498. milium: sc. **pedum** from l. 497. **circummuniti:** (having been), *being hemmed in* by Caesar. **oppido:** § 93.

499. ubi, vineis actis, etc.: *when, after the vineae,* etc.

500. constitui: progressive; *was being built.* **irridere:** § 258.

501. a: see **ab,** l. 122.

502. spatio: § 81. **instrueretur:** § 170. **quibusnam,** etc.: (*asking*) *with what,* etc.; §§ 223 and 227.

503. praesertim homines: *especially* (*being*) *men.* **nam,** etc.: reserve the parenthesis until the end.

504. omnibus: emphatic, including Belgians, Celts and Aquitanians.

505. contemptui: see vocabulary and § 32.

506. sese posse confiderent: *did they trust that they could;* § 243.

Chapter 31.

507. moveri, appropinquare: progressive; see line 500; sc. **turrim** as subject.

509. de: see l. 111. **qui,** etc.: the construction is: **qui, locuti, dixerunt;** (who, having spoken, said), *who spoke and said.* **ad**

hunc modum: *to this effect;* this is explained by the indirect discourse **non—possent; dixerunt** governs **se—permittere.**

510. non se existimare: the negative makes a difference in the form of translation; **existimamus,** *we think;* **non existimamus,** *we do not think;* indirect discourse of the latter, *that they did not think* (*that,* etc.).

511. qui possent: § 172. **tanta celeritate:** § 78.

512. se: this, as shown by **suaque omnia,** is object accusative; strictly, another **se** is to be supplied as subject accusative, but it is regularly omitted in such cases. This phrase is the formula for "surrender at discretion," or "unconditional surrender."

513. unum petere: sc. **se** as subject; keep the Latin order; *one thing they sought.* **unum** is explained by the clause **ne—spoliaret** (§ 208), *that he would not,* etc. In translating, place the *that* before the **si** clause. **petere ac deprecari:** (sought and entreated), *most earnestly begged.* Latin frequently emphasizes one idea by employing two words of similar meaning to express it; see **clementia ac mansuetudine,** l. 514.

514. pro sua: *in accordance with his usual;* this force of **suus** is not uncommon. **audirent:** the direct discourse would be the imperfect indicative, *were* (*continually*) *hearing of.*

515. esse conservandos: § 278. **se:** i.e. **Aduatucos;** § 123.

516. armis: § 65. **sibi:** § 33.

517. virtuti: § 23. **traditis armis:** *if their arms were surrendered;* § 264, 3.

518. possent: § 228. It might be expected that this would have been treated as a main clause, with the verb in the infinitive. **praestare:** direct discourse, **praestat,** impersonal, *it is better* (subject, **pati**); indirect discourse, *that it was better* (subject, **pati**). **si—deducerentur:** *if they were brought to this pass,* i.e. if they must submit to somebody; § 242, 1.

519. a: *at the hands of.*

520. per cruciatum interfici: (to be killed through torture), *to be tortured to death.*

Chapter 32.

522. merito eorum: (because of their merit), *because they deserved it;* § 84. **si dedidissent:** § 242, 5.

524. prius quam attigisset: § 181.

525. nisi armis traditis: see note on l. 342.

526. in: *in the case of.*

527. quam: § 139.

529. facere: progressive; see l. 500.

531. summam altitudinem: *the greatest height,* i.e. the height where it was greatest.

534. portis patefactis: *they opened . . . and,* etc. **die:** § 89. **pace:** § 73. **usi:** see vocabulary.

Chapter 33.

535. sub vesperum: *towards evening.* Caesar uses **sub** in a temporal sense only with **lucem, occasum solis, noctem** and **vesperum.**

536. quam: § 139.

537. ante inito consilio: (the plan having been gone into before), *according to a plan previously arranged.* **ut intellectum est:** that is, by the subsequent attack.

539. denique: see vocabulary. **indiligentius:** the standard of comparison is often omitted when it is self-evident; so here, supply *than usual.*

540. partim—partim: this is in distributive apposition with **illi,** the subject of **fecerunt** below; it may be loosely translated: *some—others.*

541. ex cortice: § 67. **viminibus intextis:** § 71.

542. pellibus: § 71.

543. qua: adverb.

545. fecerunt: the whole sentence beginning with **illi** is apparently very complicated, but, like most of Caesar's long sentences, is clear and easy if the proper relation of the clauses is observed.

547. concursum est: (it was run together), *the soldiers all ran ;* § 148. Treat in the same way **pugnatum ab hostibus est.** **ita:** *as.* **in—salutis:** see l. 453.

548. a viris fortibus pugnari debuit: compare l. 547.

550. iacerent: (*were so situated as*) *to throw ;* § 168.

551. consisteret: see vocabulary. **ad:** adverb.

553. diei: § 56.

555. Caesar vendidit: Caesar's constant purpose in dealing with the Gauls was, indeed, to subdue them to Rome, but to make subjection as easy as possible for them; to absorb them ultimately into the Roman state as contented people, rather than to hold them down, discontented, under an iron rule. To do this he granted them easy terms, but insisted that these be strictly kept. So when a tribe broke faith with him they were made a terrible example, for the warning and ultimate benefit of the rest.

556. milium: explanatory to **numerus**; § 36. The translation should be the nominative.

II. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO THE AREMORICAN STATES.

Chapter 34.

559. miserat: this is the first intimation of the detachment of Crassus. It must have been after the battle with the Nervii, for all the eight legions were engaged there. Crassus seems to have been a very energetic officer, who was quite capable of independent command.

561. Oceanum: except for the description of the geography of Gaul in Book I, Chapter 1, we have had no reference to the ocean. Of course the Atlantic is meant, although it was understood to include also the North Sea, into which the Rhine empties ; see Book IV, l. 138.

III. OCCURRENCES AT THE CLOSE OF THE YEAR.

Chapter 35.

564. omni Gallia pacata: this ablative absolute should be distinguished in translation from **his rebus gestis.** The latter is the means by which Gaul was subdued: *when all Gaul had been subdued by these operations.*

565. opinio: see vocabulary.

566. incolerent: § 203.

567. qui pollicerentur: § 162. **daturas, facturas:** feminine, because **se** refers to **nationibus.** The conjunction **et** is omitted between these two participles, to increase the effect. There is thus brought about a kind of rhyme, which under ordinary circumstances the Romans avoided.

569. inita aestate: see vocabulary and l. 537.

570. quae civitates: (what states), *those states which.* **in Carnutes,** etc.: modifies **deductis.**

572. legionibus . . . deductis: the location of these legions was thus such that the Gallic tribes on different sides of the river could not combine. This was characteristic of all Caesar's plans.

573. ex litteris: *on receipt of despatches.* **supplicatio:** this was a religious ceremony, a thanksgiving and a rejoicing for victory, with which the people were ordered by the senate to honor the gods when there was cause for it. And now there *was* cause for it; as Plutarch says: "The enemies from the north who had so long threatened Italy had been followed to their remote fastnesses, conquered, slaughtered and sold." Now for the first time the republic was released from the fear of Gallic invasion, the only dread the Romans had.

574. quod: the antecedent is the preceding clause; (*an honor*) *which.* **accidit nulli:** note the position of the pronoun; *had been bestowed upon no one.* This action of the senate was partly spontaneous as shown above, partly political; for no doubt Caesar's supporters made the most of the opportunity to shower honors upon him for political effect. The longest previous thanksgiving was of twelve days, in honor of Pompey after the war with Mithradates.

BOOK III.

I. WAR WITH THE ALPINE TRIBES.

Fall of 57 B.C.

CHAPTERS 1–6.

After the campaign of 57 B.C. was finished, the legions, eight in all, were sent to various parts of Gaul for wintering. The twelfth legion, under Galba, was sent to open up the road leading to Italy through the Alps by way of the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, the shortest route between Gaul and the valley of the Po. Galba's course was up the south side of the valley of the Rhone. This valley was narrow, with the mountains increasing in height as he proceeded. His camp at Octodurus was on the river Dranse near its confluence with the Rhone, upon the site of the modern Martigny. The events narrated in these chapters took place in the fall of 57 B.C., and might properly have been included in Book II, from which they were separated because perhaps of the anti-climax which they would form to the triumphant close of the latter.

CHAPTER 1.

Certain tribes, situated among the Alps, rebel; they are subdued by Galba, one of Caesar's legati, who afterward returns into the Province.

1. **proficisceretur:** for the circumstance, see Book II, ll. 568, 569. Note that the imperfect indicative was used there and that here the same tense of the subjunctive has the corresponding progressive force.

4. **ad summas Alpes:** i.e. to the watershed between the Rhone and the Po.

5. **iter . . . patefieri volebat:** keep the Latin order; *the road . . . he wished to be opened.* This route was used by Napoleon in 1800. **quo:** § 71.

6. **cum:** (*but only*) *with.* **periculo:** i.e. danger of attack by the lawless mountaineers. **portoriis:** if they let the traders pass unmolested, it was because the latter paid them tolls.

7. huic: i.e. Galba; § 128. The direct object of **permisit** is the clause **uti—collocaret.** **si arbitraretur**: §§ 229 and 242, 5; it modifies **collocaret.** **opus**: indeclinable; see vocabulary.

9. proeliis factis, etc.: this is the first of five ablatives absolute; the agent of the action of the first two is Galba, of the last three the Alpine tribes; so while we might begin by saying, "Galba, having fought," etc., we cannot for the fourth say, "having sent ambassadors." Translate the first two as main verbs and the last three by a causal clause; *Galba fought . . . , and captured . . . , and then, since ambassadors were sent . . . , decided.*

17. vacuam relictam: *left vacant;* **vacuam** is a predicate adjective.

18. ab his: i.e. the Gauls. It modifies **vacuam**; § 65. **cohortibus**: dative with **attribuit.**

Chapter 2.

20. dies: nominative.

22. certior factus est: put the *that*, which is to introduce the English indirect discourse, immediately after this phrase. **concesserat**: § 240. Contrast with **impenderent**, l. 23, which follows the general rule (§ 228).

23. montesque: *and (that) the mountains.*

25. id: *it*, explained by **ut—caperent.** **aliquot causis**: explained by **primum quod—despiciebant**, and **tum etiam quod—existimabant**; and continued in the next sentence by **accedebat quod—dolebant et—sibi persuasum habebant.**

27. quod, etc.: **propter paucitatem despiciebant** is to be translated directly after the **quod.** **legionem**: *the (single) legion.* **neque eam plenissimam**: (nor this very full), *this indeed having very small numbers.* **detractis duabus cohortibus et compluribus absentibus**: § 264, 2.

31. cum decurrerent: *would rush down*; § 172.

33. accedebat: see vocabulary. **suos liberos abstractos (esse)**: the indirect discourse construction governed by **dolebant.**

34. obsidum nomine: § 35. **Romanos conari**: the indirect discourse construction, object of **habebant**, having **persuasum** agreeing with it as predicate participle; (they had that-the-Romans-were-trying, persuaded to themselves), *they had persuaded themselves that the Romans were trying.*

35. possessionis: sc. **causā**, *for the sake;* § 54.

37. adiungere: complementary infinitive with **conari**, like **occupare.**

Chapter 3.

38. hibernorum: *on the winter quarters;* § 40.

39. de: *for.*

40. satis, provisum: see vocabulary.

41. deditione—acceptis: *now that they had surrendered and he had received their hostages;* compare ll. 9–11. **nihil—timendum (esse):** (that nothing was to be feared concerning war), *that he need have no fear of war.*

46. neque subsidio veniri (posset): impersonal; (and it could not be come *by any one* for aid), *and since no aid could come;* § 32.

47. interclusis itineribus: § 264, 2. **prope—salute:** (safety having been now nearly despaired of), *since many now almost despaired of successful resistance.*

48. eius modi: *of this sort; to this effect;* § 44.

51. parti: § 23. **placuit:** see vocabulary. **reservato:** *to reserve . . . and.*

Chapter 4.

54. spatio: sc. **temporis.** **ut vix tempus daretur:** § 165. **rebus collocandis atque administrandis:** *for assigning duties and carrying out the measures.* For the case, see § 19. **constituisset:** § 203.

56. decurrere, conicere: § 258. So five other infinitives below.

58. ex loco superiore: i.e. from the rampart.

59. nudata: *being stripped of.*

61. hoc superari: (were overcome in respect to this), *were at a disadvantage in this respect.*

62. defessi: (*when*) *tired out.* **integris viribus:** § 80.

63. quarum rerum: with **nihil;** § 47.

64. non modo: supply another **non,** which may be omitted when a negative (here **ne quidem**) follows and when the two expressions are used with substantives which are connected with a common predicate; contrast Book II, l. 293. **defesso (facultas non dabatur) excedendi:** *to a tired (soldier) was opportunity not offered, of withdrawing,* etc.

65. saucio: like **defesso.** **eius loci relinquendi:** *of leaving the place,* explained by **ubi constiterat.** **facultas dabatur:** this is expressed only once in Latin, but it would best be repeated in translating, using different words, *was chance given.*

Chapter 5.

67. **horis sex:** § 69. **pugnaretur:** § 144. Translate by the pluperfect.

69. **languidioribusque nostris:** *and, because our men were fighting without much spirit.*

70. **resque,** etc.: *and matters had come to the last degree of desperation.*

73. **confectum vulneribus:** see Book II, l. 417, and note.

74. **et consilii magni et virtutis:** §§ 44 and 110.

75. **unam esse spem, si,** etc.: (that there was one hope, if they should, etc.), *that the only hope was to make . . . and try.*

76. **extremum auxilium:** *their last resort.*

78. **certiores:** see vocabulary. **(ut) intermitterent:** § 212.

79. **tantum modo:** see vocabulary under **tantum.**

80. **post:** notice that this cannot be a preposition.

Chapter 6.

82. **iussi sunt:** sc. **facere,** which governs **quod.**

84. **sui colligendi:** § 273,1.

85. **in spem venerant:** see vocabulary under **venio.** **potiundorum castrorum:** § 273, 2.

86. **circumventos interficiunt:** *they surround and kill.*

87. **milibus amplius XXX:** doubtless an exaggeration. **quem numerum:** (which number), *the number which.* **quem numerum venisse** is the subject of **constabat.** It cannot be translated literally, but **constabat** must be made parenthetical; *the number which, it was admitted, had come.*

91. **armis:** § 65; the Gauls threw them away in their flight. **exutis:** agrees with **copiis.**

92. **saepius:** see vocabulary.

93. **alio consilio:** *with one design;* § 78.

94. **aliis rebus:** *other matters;* § 27. **meminerat:** what tense in translation? **viderat:** (*but*) *had seen.*

II. THE WAR WITH THE VENETI.

56 B.C.

Chapters 7–16.

The seventh legion under Crassus had been stationed among the Andes near the west coast. The remaining six spent the winter in the

valley of the Liger with the purpose of preventing communication between northern and southern Gaul. Caesar spent the winter in Illyricum. The various tribes of the west coast were as yet unsubdued, and did not propose to submit tamely to the conqueror. Trusting in their natural defences and their skill in seamanship, they determined to try conclusions with Caesar. This is the campaign described in Chapters 7–16. The allies of these people on the northwest were next subdued (Chapters 17–19), while Crassus was carrying on a successful campaign in Aquitania (Chapters 20–27). The year ended with a campaign against the Morini and the Menapii in the extreme northwest. Thus all the operations of the year 56 B.C. were confined to the coast regions of the west and north.

The Aremorican tribes, following the example of the Veneti, demand the return of their hostages.

Chapter 7.

102. **inita hieme:** see note on Book II, l. 18.

103. **Illyricum:** Caesar made no effort to enlarge the limits of this province, since it offered no such opportunities as did Gaul. It gave him no trouble except on one unimportant occasion (see Book V, Chapter 1).

104. **regiones cognoscere:** *become acquainted with the country.*

106. **adulescens:** see vocabulary and Book I, Chapter 52. **proximus:** this means *the nearest* of any of Caesar's commanders. **mare Oceanum:** see vocabulary under **mare,** and, for the case, § 33, note.

107. **is:** § 122.

108. **praefectos tribunosque:** see Introduction.

Chapter 8.

112. **huius:** *the last named.*

113. **omnis—earum:** (of all the sea coast of these sections), *of all the maritime states in these sections* (Holmes). **orae maritimae = maritimarum civitatum,** objective genitive modifying **auctoritas; regionum** is possessive genitive modifying **orae.**

114. **plurimas:** *the most* (i.e. of any of these states). **quibus—consuerunt:** this is parenthetical, just an interesting fact that Caesar inserts about them, having nothing in particular to do with their prestige, except that it made them a rugged set of men, thoroughly accus-

tomed to the sea in all its moods. These characteristics gave Caesar a chance to show his ability in a new kind of warfare, and he proved equal to the task.

115. scientia atque usu: *knowledge (of) and experience (in)*; for the case, see § 82. **rerum nauticarum:** § 40.

116. in magno, etc.: a phrase primarily denoting place, and limiting **vectigalia habent.** It also expresses cause as an attendant circumstance. Translate: (in the great violence of the vast and open sea), *on a coast exposed to the full violence of the sea.*

117. paucis portibus interiectis: (only a few harbors having been thrown among), *and in view of the fact that there are only a few harbors on this part of the coast, these some distance apart.* **quos ipsi tenent:** (which they themselves hold), *and in their own possession.*

118. omnes habent . . . vectigales: *they hold all . . . tributary.* Distinguish **vectīgal,** noun, and **vectīgālis,** adjective. **ab—Silii:** (by these a beginning was made of retaining Silius), *these began by retaining Silius.*

119. eos: i.e. Silius and Velanius. **se:** i.e. the Veneti; subject of **recuperaturos** (esse).

122. subita: *sudden.* **repentina:** *unexpected.* See Book II, Ch. 1.

125. eundem: (the same), *together.* **fortunae:** *battle.*

126. ut mallent: in translation express the verb with **permanere** and let it be understood with **perferre.**

128. quam: used as a comparative conjunction with the **magis** which appears in **mallent** (= **magis vellent**).

130. si velit: §§ 227 and 242, 1.

131. remittat: § 245.

Caesar prepares a fleet to subdue them.

Chapter 9.

133. quod—longius: this clause modifies **iubet.** **longius:** § 116. **interim:** i.e. while he was on his way to the scene of action.

134. in—Ligeri: most of Caesar's troops had spent the winter in the valley of this river.

136. cum primum—potuit: (when first he was able through the time of the year), *as soon as the season permitted;* about the first of May.

139. simul: *at the same time* (that they heard this news). It modifies **instituunt.** **quod intellegebant:** § 170. **quantum—admisissent:** object of **intellegebant:** § 243. **in se admittere:** (ad-

mit to themselves), *commit.* **facinus**: explained by the indirect discourse **legatos—coniectos,** namely, *that legati,* etc.

140. quod nomen: (which name), *a name which.* **ad**: *among.*

142. pro: *in view of.*

144. hcc maiore spe: *their hope (being) greater for this reason.* **multum**: *greatly;* § 13. **natura**: § 72.

147. neque nostros exercitus posse confidebant: *and they were confident that our armies could not.*

148. diutius: *longer* (than the winter).

149. ut omnia acciderent: *though everything was happening;* § 199. This force of **ut,** its only occurrence in Caesar, is clearly shown by the following **tamen.**

150. opinionem: see vocabulary. **tamen se plurimum navibus posse**: *still (they considered) that they had a very strong navy;* §§ 13 and 82.

151. Romanos: *and that the Romans.* **facultatem**: *great number.*

153. aliam: see vocabulary. **navigationem**: *managing ships.*

154. concluso mari: what sea is meant?

157. Caesarem—gesturum: indirect discourse, subject of **constabat.**

Chapter 10.

163. multa: *many* (things), *considerations.* **ad**: *to (undertake).*

164. iniuriae: in apposition with **multa**; so the following nominatives, and the clause **ne—arbitrarentur.** **retentorum**: § 265.

165. obisdibus datis: translate like **post deditionem,** *after giving,* etc.; § 264, 1.

166. in primis: see vocabulary under **prior.** **ne—arbitrarentur**: (*the fear*) *that,* etc.; § 211. **hac parte neglecta**: § 264, 3.

167. idem: subject of **licere.** Impersonal verbs usually have only clauses or infinitives as subjects, but they may have a neuter pronoun.

168. cum intellegeret: § 172.

170. studere, odisse: §§ 146 and 221, note.

171. prius quam conspirarent: § 181.

Chapter 11.

174. flumini: § 33. Contrast l. 106. **huic**: § 128.

175. adeat: § 212.

176. auxilio: *to help them;* § 32. **arcessiti**: sc. **esse.**

183. qui distinendam curet: §§ 162 and 270.

186. cum primum posset: § 228,

187. copiis: § 77.

The arrangement of his troops as described in this chapter well illustrates Caesar's skill as a commander. His purpose always was to keep his barbarian foes well scattered. During all of his campaigns in Gaul he had a comparatively small army. His only means of success, therefore, against the vast hordes of the Gauls was to "divide and conquer."

Description of the towns and ships of the Veneti.

Chapter 12.

188. eius modi: (of this sort), *such.* **fere:** *generally.* **ut haberent:** § 165. **posita:** *being situated.*

189. in extremis: *on the end of;* § 113. **neque pedibus:** *neither* (by feet), *by land;* correlative to **neque navibus**, l. 191.

190. cum incitavisset: § 182. **[bis]:** omit.

191. spatio: § 105.

192. afflictarentur: *would be stranded;* § 242, 5. The condition is here understood,—*if they should attempt to approach.*

193. utraque re: (on account of each thing), *on both accounts,* whether the tide was flood or ebb **ac si,** etc.: the structure of the sentence is as follows: **ac si quando (Veneti) superati, (extruso—adaequatis) . . . coeperant, magno appulso . . . deportabant,** etc.; *and if ever, conquered . . . ,* **(extruso—adaequatis),** *they had begun . . . , bringing up a number of ships, they would put on board,* etc.

195. aggere ac molibus: ablative of means with **extruso. atque:** connects **extruso mari** with **his** (i.e. **aggere ac molibus) adaequatis. moenibus:** § 27.

196. fortunis suis: § 28.

197. cuius rei: (of which thing), *of which,* referring to the ships.

198. deportabant: notice translation above; § 148. **omnia:** notice the emphatic position; they could load the ship at leisure with *all* their effects.

202. magnis—portibus: *because the tides were high and the harbors few and* (almost none) *far between.*

In lines 193–196 Caesar gives us a running description of the means he used to attack the strongholds of the Veneti. This has been interpreted to mean that he built two parallel dykes or embankments from the land side toward the town. At low tide, work could be carried on; and when they were joined to the town, the water was shut out and a dry passage-way from the mainland was made. This availed nothing

for the reason that, when they reached the town, the inhabitants had sailed away.

Chapter 13.

204. **ad hunc modum:** *in this way.*

205. **carinae planiores: erant** may be supplied here and below, but it is not necessary, as we have the same abbreviated form of expression in Eng., *bottoms flatter.*

206. **nostrarum navium:** (*those*) *of,* etc. **quo possent:** § 160. **vada ac decessum aestus:** (the shallows and the ebbing of the tide), *the shallows left by the ebbing tide;* § 280.

209. **totae:** (whole), *wholly, entirely.* **ex robore:** § 67.

210. **ex—trabibus:** (out of foot-in-thickness timbers), *consisting of timbers a foot thick.* **digiti pollicis crassitudine:** modifying **clavis;** (characterized by the thickness of the thumb finger), *as thick as a man's thumb;* § 80.

212. **pro:** *instead of.*

213. **pro:** *as;* translate after **confectae.**

214. **eius:** (i.e. **lini**), *its.* **eo quod . . . quod:** *for the following reason, which . . . because.*

215. **veri:** see vocabulary and § 58. **tantas tempestates Oceani:** (so great storms of the ocean), *such severe storms as those on the ocean.*

216. **tantos impetus ventorum:** (so great attacks of the winds), *such violent winds.* **sustineri:** sc. **velis non satis commode posse:** *could not very well be met with sails.*

218. **cum—classi:** *between these ships and our fleet;* § 28. **eius modi:** see l. 188.

219. **ut praestaret:** § 165; subject, **nostra classis,** *it.* **una:** *only.*

220. **pro:** *in view of.* **illis:** § 33.

221. **his:** § 23. **nostrae:** sc. **naves.** **rostro:** (with the beak), *by ramming.*

223. **facile telum adigebatur:** (was a weapon driven to *them* easily), *did a weapon reach them effectively.*

224. **copulis:** the ancient method of fighting at sea was to grapple and fasten ships together and then fight it out hand to hand. **accedebat:** see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause.

225. **dedissent:** see vocabulary. **et:** *both;* omit in translation.

227. **relictae:** (*when*) *left.* **nihil:** § 13.

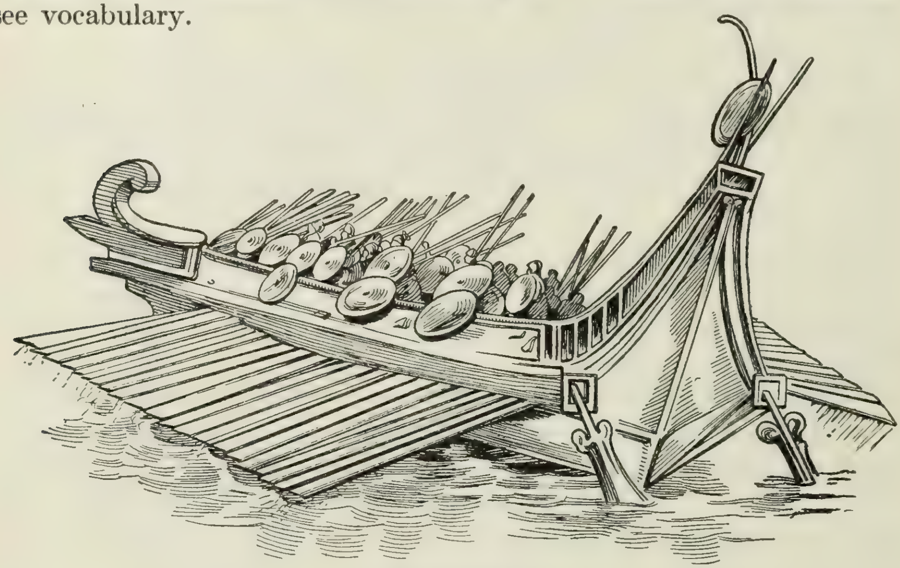
228. **navibus:** § 31 or 28. **rerum:** § 39. **casus:** *occurrence.* **erat extimescendus:** § 278.

The Veneti, defeated in a sea fight, surrender and are sold into slavery.

CHAPTER 14.

231. captis oppidis: § 264, 6. **iis:** § 26.

235. ex portu: Caesar's fleet had assembled at the mouth of the Liger (Loire) and sailed thence to meet the Veneti, who came out of the mouth of one of their harbors (**ex portu**). Where this harbor was is by no means certain at the present day. Napoleon claimed that the battle took place in what is now Quiberon Bay to the northwest of the mouth of the Liger. **nostris:** sc. **navibus;** § 33. **satis:** with **constabat;** see vocabulary.



WAR GALLEY.

238. agerent: § 243; in direct discourse, **agamus;** § 155, 2. **rostro:** § 71.

239. noceri: sc. **eis,** i.e. **navibus Venetorum.** **turribus excitatis:** § 264, 4.

240. ex: *of.* **has:** sc. **turres.**

242. adigi: compare l. 223. **missa:** sc. **tela,** (*those*) *thrown.*

243. usui: see vocabulary. **praeparata:** translate after **una res.**

244. insertae affixaeque longuriis: *inserted in and fastened to long poles;* § 27. **non absimili forma (formae) muralium falcium:** (characterized by a form not dissimilar to the form of wall hooks), *much like the hooks used in pulling down walls*; **forma** modifies **falces** (§ 80); (**formae**), § 33

246. erant: § 182.

248. ut eriperetur: § 165. **cum consisteret:** § 172.

249. Gallicis navibus: § 28.

250. his ereptis: § 264, 1.

254. paulo: § 81. **fortius:** *braver (than usual).*

CHAPTER 15.

257. cum circumsteterant: § 182. **singulas:** sc. **naves Venetorum.** **binae ac ternae naves (nostrae):** the Roman ships were not necessarily more numerous, but by agreement, and through the advantage of being propelled by oars, two or three of them would close in together on one of the enemy, and thus make the danger of boarding less by doing it at several points at once. **summa vi:** see vocabulary under **vis.**

259. quod: *this;* subject of **fieri,** which is progressive.

263. in eam partem quo, etc.: i.e. so as to run before the wind.

268. cum pugnaretur: § 172.

CHAPTER 16.

270. Venetorum: *with,* etc.

271. cum . . . etiam . . . tum: § 279, 3.

272. gravioris aetatis: see vocabulary under **gravis** and § 44. **consilii:** § 47.

273. navium quod: *what* (of) *ships.*

274. fuerat: sc. **eis** (§ 30), (had been to them), *they had had.*

275. quo se reciperent: (whither they might betake themselves), *a place to which they could retire;* § 156. The following clause is like it, **quem ad modum defenderent:** (after what manner they should defend), *means for defending.*

277. in quos eo gravius vindicandum (esse): (that it ought to be punished more severely against these on this account), *that they ought to be punished more severely than usual for this reason.*

278. quo diligentius conservaretur: § 160. **reliquum:** see vocabulary.

In the latter part of Chapter 7 the cause of this war is stated. The agents of Crassus were sent to obtain supplies. These people of the coast had previously professed submission to the Romans and given hostages against breaking the truce. By retaining these agents of Crassus, they had broken their promise and Caesar resolved to take severe measures of punishment. His action seems to us unnecessarily cruel; but he was dealing with a desperate people, ready to rise in arms at the first opportunity, and his object was the conquest of Gaul. Therefore, from his point of view, no other course was feasible.

III. THE WAR WITH THE VENELLI.

56 B.C.

CHAPTERS 17–19.

Sabinus, one of Caesar's legati, overcomes the Venelli.

CHAPTER 17.

281. dum—geruntur: § 178.

283. summam imperii tenebat: see vocabulary under **summa.**

285. exercitum magnasque copias: *a well equipped army;* § 280.

286. his—diebus: *within the last few days* (*before Sabinus arrived*).

287. senatu interfecto: i.e. by the people. **auctores belli:** (promoters of the war), *responsible for the war.*

292. rebus: *respects;* § 82. limits **idoneo.**

293. castris: § 33. **cum consedisset:** concessive; § 199. **duorum milium spatio:** (at a space of two miles), *two miles away;* § 103.

295. hostibus: § 28.

297. non nihil: see vocabulary under **nihil** and § 13.

300. eo absente: *in the absence of*—whom? (**qui—teneret**).

301. nisi aequo loco: *unless the position was favorable;* see note on Book II, l. 342.

302. legato dimicandum (esse) non existimabat: translate directly after **quod:** §§ 31 and 278.

CHAPTER 18.

305. ex iis: (*one*) *of those;* § 53.

306. magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque: (by great rewards and promises), *by promises of great rewards;* § 280.

309. quibus angustiis Caesar prematur: (with what narrowness Caesar was pressed), *how hard Caesar was pressed.*

310. neque longius abesse quin, etc.: § 214.

312. auxilii ferendi causa: (for the purpose of bearing aid), *to reinforce him.*

314. negotii bene gerendi: (of carrying on the matter successfully), *of winning a victory.* **ad castra iri oportere:** impersonal, (it ought to be gone to the camp), *they ought to attack the camp.*

316. superiorum dierum: *during,* etc.; § 45. Notice the many varieties of adnominal genitive following.

317. cui rei—provisum: see l. 40, and note the dative here for **de** with the ablative there. **diligenter:** see vocabulary.

318. spes: *the hope* (*of the outcome*). **quod—credunt:** in same construction as the preceding nominatives; *the fact that,* etc.

319. credunt: § 146.

320. prius . . . quam sit concessum: § 181.

323. laeti: § 114. **ut explorata victoria:** (as *men are,* victory having been found out), *as though they had already gained the victory;* see note on Book II, l. 342.

324. quibus compleant: *with which to fill;* § 156.

Chapter 19.

328. minimum: § 113. **spatii:** § 49.

330. cupientibus: sc. **eis,** (to them desiring *it*), *for which they were impatiently waiting.*

338. equites: nominative. **paucos:** object of **reliquerunt.**

343. animus: *disposition,* the emotional side of the character. **minime resistens:** (by no mean resisting), *feeble.*

344. mens: *intellect, resolution.*

IV. THE EXPEDITION OF CRASSUS INTO AQUITANIA.

56 B.C.

Chapters 20–27.

It is stated in Chapter 11 that Crassus had been sent into Aquitania with twelve cohorts and a large number of cavalry. There seems to have been no uprising there before the arrival of Crassus, and it is likely that Caesar deemed it best to show these people of the southwest of what stuff his army was made in order that they might fear his power for all time. Having no use for his cavalry in his campaign on the coast, he sent it all, or nearly all, with Crassus, but gave him only about five thousand legionaries.

The Sotiates are conquered by Crassus.

Chapter 20.

347. latitudine: see vocabulary and § 84. **hominum:** see vocabulary. **ex:** *as.* **tertia parte:** this is inaccurate, as Aquitania, while one of the three divisions of Gaul, was much smaller than

either of the others. Perhaps Caesar thought that the Garonne had a course about due west through its entire length.

348. **aestimanda:** § 270, 1.

349. **sibi bellum gerendum:** § 278. **L. Valerius,** etc.: these two generals had been defeated twenty-two years before by Hirtuleius, a lieutenant of Sertorius (see l. 403). **annis:** § 107.

356. **finitimae:** agrees with **civitates.** **his regionibus:** § 33.

358. **quo:** § 82.

359. **adorti:** § 261. **primum:** adverb, correlative to **deinde;** § 115.

Chapter 21.

365. **victoriis:** § 72. This refers to ll. 350, 351.

366. **autem:** *while.*

367. **adulescentulo duce:** *under the command of a mere youth.*

368. **perspici:** (*it*) *to be seen;* the subject is **quid—possent.** **confecti vulneribus:** (finished with wounds), *many being wounded; after heavy loss.*

370. **ex itinere:** see note on Book II, l. 478.

373. **cuius rei:** *for in such matters;* § 58. **peritissimi:** i.e. of the Gauls.

375. **diligentia:** cause. **his rebus:** means. Contrast the two.

Chapter 22.

The structure of this sentence is as follows. **Adiatunnus, . . . conatus, . . . repulsus, . . . impetravit.** Everything from **quorum** (l. 382) to **recusaret** is parenthetical, and should be omitted in working out the sentence until the rest is understood. **cum his Adiatunnus** (l. 387) is a repetition of the **Adiatunnus cum DC devotis** above, which is necessary on account of the long parenthesis.

379. **intentis animis:** *while the attention . . . was fixed.*

381. **illi:** i.e. the Aquitanians.

382. **quorum haec est condicio ut fruantur:** *whose conditions of service are* (these) *that they shall enjoy.* **fruantur:** § 213.

383. **quorum amicitiae:** *to whose friendship;* antecedent, **his.** **dediderint:** § 203. **si:** (*and that then*), *if.*

384. **quid—accidat:** (if anything happens to them violently), *if their leaders meet a violent death,* in battle or in some feud or brawl.

386. **qui recusaret:** § 168. **eo—devovisset:** (he having been

killed to whose friendship he had devoted himself), *after the death of his leader.*

388. clamore . . . sublato, cum: (a shout having been raised . . ., since), *since a shout was raised . . . and.*

390. repulsus; tamen impetravit: (having been driven back, he nevertheless obtained), *he was driven back; but* (*in spite of his violation of the agreement*), *he was allowed.*

391. uti—uteretur: (that he might use), *to receive;* object of **impetravit;** § 208.

Crassus attacks other tribes.

Chapter 23.

395. manu: see vocabulary.

396. paucis—erat: (within the few days within which it had been come thither *by Crassus*), *only a few days after Crassus had arrived.*

399. citerioris Hispaniae: § 46.

400. finitimae: agrees with **quae.** **Aquitaniae:** § 33.

401. auctoritate: *show; éclat; display.*

403. duces vero: *as commanders, moreover.*

404. omnes annos: (all years), *constantly.* **Sertorio:** see vocabulary.

406. capere: *select carefully.* These men had caught the Roman tactics from Sertorius.

407. quod: *therefore ; so.* **animadvertit:** governs the following indirect discourse.

408. non facile diduci: we say, *could not,* etc. **hostem et:** *that the enemy both.*

409. et relinquere: *and* (*at the same time*) *left.*

410. ob eam causam: (*and that*), *for this reason.*

412. cunctandum quin decertaret: § 214.

413. ad consilium: *before the council of war;* see note on Book I, l. 757.

414. pugnae: § 32.

Chapter 24.

415. duplici: the usual triple line would not have had front enough.

416. auxiliis—coniectis: the provincial auxiliaries were generally placed on the wings. The plan was usually to have the front of the legionaries broad enough to oppose the whole of the enemy, so that they would do all the fighting, while the enemy, seeing the wings extended

beyond them, would not try to turn the Roman flank. In the present case Crassus had not men enough for this, even with his double line, so he had to adopt the alternative. **quid caperent:** (*to see*) *what*, etc.; § 243.

417. illi: i.e. the Gauls.

419. se tuto dimicaturos (**esse**): (that they would fight safely), *that it would be safe to fight.* **tutius:** contrasted with **tuto;** *much more safe.* **esse:** the subject is **potiri.**

420. obsessis, etc.: *to blockade,* etc. . . . *and.* **sine vulnere victoria:** (victory without wound), *a bloodless victory.*

421. et cogitabant: *and they intended.*

422. impeditos: (*while*) *embarrassed.*

423. infirmiores animo: (weaker in mind), *when they would be more or less disheartened,* by having to retreat.

424. productis copiis: § 264, 4.

426. sua: *their,* referring to **hostes:** § 123.

428. exspectari—iretur: in apposition with **voces;** § 214.

430. omnibus cupientibus: (all desiring), *to the delight of everybody.*

Chapter 25.

431. alii multis telis coniectis: (*and*) *others, by throwing,* etc.; § 264, 6.

433. quibus: § 72. **non multum confidebat:** *did not have much confidence;* § 13.

434. lapidibus subministrandis, etc.: §§ 271 and 272. **ad aggerem:** the auxiliaries, not being trained like the Roman soldiers, did not attempt to scale the walls of the camp, but brought materials for a mound or causeway, by which to get at the enemy on even terms. Undoubtedly they pretended to be very busy about this, while all the time they were hoping that something would happen so that they would not have to make a direct assault.

436. ab hostibus pugnaretur: impersonal passive; translate personal and active.

438. circumitis castris: (the camp of the enemy having been gone around), *who had ridden entirely around the camp.*

439. ab decumana porta: § 98.

Chapter 26.

441. praefectos cohortatus ut excitarent: *urging the prefects to arouse.*

442. praemiis pollicitationibusque: see l. 306.

443. devectis: *taking.*

444. ab labore: § 65.

448. prius quam posset: § 181.

449. his: *the latter.* **videri:** sc. **possent**; the subject is the same as of **convenerunt**, i.e. the Romans.

451. quod: the antecedent is the idea of **impugnare coeperunt**; (*a thing*) *which; as.*

456. ex numero: limits **parte.** **quae:** subject of **convenisse;** see l. 87.

Almost all Aquitania surrenders.

CHAPTER 27.

463. paucae ultimae nationes: *only a few, the most distant tribes;* (NOT, "a few of"). **tempore:** § 72.

V. CAESAR'S EXPEDITION AMONG THE MORINI AND MENAPII.

56 B.C.

CHAPTER 28.

466. omni Gallia pacata: *though all Gaul was subdued;* there was no more active or open hostility, but still these two tribes had not formally surrendered.

470. longe alia ac: see l. 153. **ratione:** see vocabulary.

473. continentesque, etc.: for clearness, repeat the conjunction; *and because,* etc.

476. neque hostis: notice number; *and not an enemy.*

479. compluribus: sc. **hostium.**

480. longius: *too far.* **secuti:** *while following.*

CHAPTER 29.

483. ne quis: with **impetus;** *that no.* **militibus:** ablative absolute.

485. conversam ad: (turned toward), *with the top of the trees toward.*

488. extrema impedimenta: *the rear of their baggage trains.* **ipsi:** (*and*) *they;* the pronoun marks contrast with **impedimenta.**

BOOK IV.

55 B.C.

I. WAR WITH THE GERMANS.

CHAPTERS 1–15.

By the fall of 56 B.C. almost the whole of Gaul had formally surrendered and everything seemed to point to peace. There was still a powerful war party, however, which never rested, but was constantly seeking a way to expel the Romans.

Across the Rhine the powerful German tribe of the Suebi was harassing the weaker communities, and two of the latter were finally forced to seek homes outside their own land. Four hundred and thirty thousand of them crossed the Rhine during the winter, apparently near the modern town of Cleves. In the spring they began to spread southward, and messengers from various Gallic states opened communications with them with the obvious purpose of securing a strong ally against Caesar. The latter, with his usual rapidity of movement, met them when they had no expectation of his coming, and literally annihilated them.

Just where this rout took place is uncertain, but there are strong reasons for the belief that it was not far from the junction of the Moselle with the Rhine.

The Usipetes and Tencteri, two German tribes, cross into Gaul and overpower the Menapii.

CHAPTER 1.

1. **qui:** agrees with **annus** rather than with **hieme.** The whole expression, **qui—consulibus,** is somewhat peculiar when closely analyzed, but the sense is clear enough.

2. **Pompeio, Crasso:** in the spring of 56 B.C. a famous conference between Caesar, Pompey and Crassus was held at the town of Luca, near the southern border of Caesar's province, at which it was agreed that Pompey and Crassus were to be the next consuls.

4. **Rhenum:** the Rhine formed the western boundary of Germany

down to the close of the Franco-Prussian War in 1872. **quo:** (whither), *into which.*

7. **Sueborum gens,** etc.: the following description of the manners and customs of the Germans, together with similar passages in the succeeding books, forms one of the most valuable parts of the Commentaries, being the earliest account of these matters, of any accuracy and length, that has come down to us. Whether Caesar is to be believed in his statement of the actual numbers of the Suebi is doubtful.

9. **ex quibus singula milia:** (from which single thousands), *from each of which a thousand.*

11. **manserunt:** § 149, 2. **hi:** i.e. **reliqui.**

13. **agri cultura:** while these Germans were practically a pastoral people, they tilled the soil to some extent. **ratio atque usus:** *theory and practice.*

14. **privati . . . agri:** property in common has always been the condition of barbarous and half-civilized peoples. We hear much, in these days, of "municipal ownership." This is but a return to primitive custom, differing only in the conditions brought about by a highly refined civilization.

15. **longius anno:** by this frequent change of locality, attachment to particular places was avoided and the people retained their wild character. For the case of **anno,** see § 69.

16. **maximam partem:** § 13.

18. **quae res:** *this sort of life;* subject of **alit.** **genere,** etc.: ablative of cause with **alit.**

21. **immani magnitudine:** § 80. **corporum:** we use the singular.

22. **in—adduxerunt:** (they have brought themselves to this custom), *they have accustomed themselves.* **ut—fluminibus:** in apposition with **consuetudinem.**

23. **locis frigidissimis:** *though the climate is very cold;* § 264, 4. **vestitus:** genitive with **quicquam;** notice the emphatic position of the latter.

Chapter 2.

26. **mercatoribus:** § 30. **magis eo . . . quam quo:** § 174.

28. **iumentis:** ablative with **utuntur.**

30. **pretio:** § 75. **importatis:** (*if*) *imported;* § 264, 3. **quae . . . haec:** *those which.*

32. **summi—efficiunt:** (they effect that they be of the greatest labor), *they make capable of the greatest labor;* § 44.

33. **pedibus:** see vocabulary.

34. assuefecerunt: § 149, 2.

38. quamvis pauci: *however few* (*they may be*).

CHAPTER 3.

43. a suis finibus: *on their frontiers.* **vacare:** intransitive; hence agros is subject; § 257. **significari:** coördinate with **esse;** the subject is **numerum posse;** *that it is shown that a number can.*

45. una ex parte: see Book I, l. 32. **a:** *of.*

48. captus: noun. **paulo:** with **humaniores;** § 81. **quamquam:** § 197.

49. sunt: § 197. **generis:** § 46. **ceteris:** § 69.

53. experti . . . non potuissent: (having tried . . . had not been able), *had tried . . . but had found themselves unable* (*to accomplish their purpose completely*).

CHAPTER 4.

56. in eadem causa: *in the same situation* (*as the Ubii*).

67. reverti se: progressive, *that they were returning.*

68. viam: § 12, note.

70. qui: *for they.*

73. prius quam certior fieret: § 181.

Caesar advances to meet the Germans. Their embassy.

CHAPTER 5.

78. certior factus . . . et . . . veritus, . . . existimabat: *learned . . . and . . . since he feared, . . . thought.*

80. nihil his committendum: (that it was to be trusted these not at all), *that they were not to be trusted at all;* §§ 13 and 23.

81. consuetudinis: § 46.

82. invitos: (*though*) *unwilling; against their will.* **cogant:** subject **Galli;** *to compel.* **quisque . . . quaque:** be sure to translate both so as to get the emphasis of the Latin.

84. vulgus circumsistat: coördinate with **cogant;** *for the common people to surround.*

85. quibusque: the **-que** connects **circumsistat** with **cogant;** the real subject of the latter is **vulgus,** but since this is collective and some distance away, the verb becomes plural again; translate as in l. 82.

86. cogant: object, **eos** (i.e. **mercatores).** **rebus:** *tales.*

87. summis: *most weighty.* **quorum—est:** § 60.

88. cum serviant: § 172.

89. rumoribus: § 23. **ad voluntatem eorum:** (to their wish), *to suit them.* **ficta respondeant:** see vocabulary under **fingo.**

Chapter 6.

91. cognita: *knowing.* **graviori bello:** if this affront to Caesar's position were neglected, recruits for this war would gather from Gaul and it would thus become too formidable for his comfort.

93. ea—facta: (that those things, which he had suspected would be, had happened), *that what he had expected would happen, had happened;* this is explained by the following clauses.

95. Germanos: i.e. the Usipetes and the Tencteri.

96. postulassent: subject **Germani.** **se:** the Gauls. **fore parata:** (would be, having been prepared), *would be prepared.* This expression takes the place of the future passive infinitive (**paratum iri**), which seldom appears outside the grammars (once in the Bellum Gallicum).

Chapter 7.

103. delectis: *levy.* Caesar, pretending to be ignorant of the negotiations between the Gauls and the Germans, calls upon the former to supply him with cavalry as usual, announcing his intention to wage war on the common enemy.

107. neque priores inferre: (were not the first of the two parties to wage war), *were not seeking a quarrel with;* § 115.

108. tamen: *on the other hand.* **quin contendant:** § 214.

109. consuetudo—tradita: compare Book I, ll. 232, 258.

110. resistere neque deprecari: in apposition with **consuetudo.**

111. dicere: sc. **se** as subject; **haec,** object, is explained by the following indirect discourse, **(se) venisse,** etc.

113. attribuant vel patiantur: § 245.

114. quos armis possiderint: i.e. what had belonged to the Menapii.

116. reliquum . . . neminem: *no one else.* How such statements must have startled Caesar!

Chapter 8.

119. sibi cum eis: *between him and them.*

121. qui: (*for those*) *who.*

123. licere: sc. **eis**; (it was permitted them), *they might.* It is unlikely that this offer was made seriously by Caesar. The Ubii had placed themselves under his protection, the only German tribe to do so, and he could hardly expect them to receive into their lands this great host. It is more than likely that this suggestion was made merely for the purpose of throwing the Germans off their guard.

126. hoc Ubiis: § 25. He had hostages from the Ubii (see Chapter 16), as well as ambassadors, so that he was in a position to command, if he really so desired.

Chapter 9.

128. post diem tertium: § 107.

131. aliquot diebus ante: § 107. Compare with the above construction.

132. frumentandi causa: they had eaten up all the stores of grain belonging to the Menapii in that quarter, and were in need of more.

133. exspectari, interponi: translate in active voice; *that they were waiting for.*

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

Chapter 10.

135. Mosa, etc.: the Mosa (Meuse) is joined by an offshoot from the Rhine (**Vacalus,** the *Vaal*), and eighty miles from this junction the combined rivers flow into the sea. The island is formed by the Meuse, the Vaal, the Rhine and the sea.

137. Batavi: (belonging to the Batavi), *inhabited by the Batavi.* **neque longius inde:** *and not further than . . . from this.*

140. longo spatio: 850 miles.

142. citatus fertur: (is borne, moved rapidly), *flows swiftly.*

145. sunt qui: *there are* (*some*) *who.*

The Germans are conquered and flee across the Rhine.

CHAPTER 11.

147. Caesar cum . . . legati revertuntur: see note on Book II, l. 254.

152. pugna prohiberet: (keep them from a fight), *order them not to fight.*

155. ferretur: *offer.* **usuros:** *accept.*

156. tridui: § 44. **daret:** coördinate with **praemitteret,** etc.

157. eodem illo: adverbs; see vocabulary. It is evident that Caesar had no faith in the Germans. He believed they were trying to outwit him and gain time enough to collect their scattered forces. Ever quick to act, he had surprised them already and they did not know which way to turn.

161. frequentissimi: § 114. From his direction that great numbers of their chiefs should come to him, we strongly suspect that his intention all the time was to seize these leaders and thus further disconcert the German host. **convenirent:** § 245.

165. quoad accessisset: § 180.

CHAPTER 12.

167. cum haberent: § 199.

170. nihil: § 13.

171. indutiis: § 32.

174. subfossisque equis, etc.: *and, stabbing the horses in the belly and thus dismounting,* etc.

176. egerunt: sc. **eos,** with which **perterritos** agrees; *and drove them (back), so frightened.* **prius quam venissent:** subjunctive only because attracted to the mood of **desisterent;** § 181.

179. genere: § 67.

182. intercluso: § 264, 7.

183. ipse, etc.: *but his own horse was wounded and he himself dismounted, (yet),* etc. **quoad potuit:** § 179.

CHAPTER 13.

191. exspectare: subject of **esse.** **vero:** emphatic; *and.*

192. summae dementiae: *a piece of the greatest foolishness.* **equitatus reverteretur:** Caesar saw ruin staring him in the face. For if

eight hundred Germans had routed his five thousand Gauls, what would the latter amount to when the rest of the Germans, say two thousand more, got back? His supplies and communications would be cut off, and the Gauls would probably rise in his rear.

197. ne—praemitteret: explains **consilio.**

199. simulatione et perfidia usi: apparently Caesar means to tell us that by coming to him in this way the Germans intended to employ the same treacherous tactics that the cavalry had used in attacking his forces on the previous day. Just how this could be so is not clear. It seems rather that he was seeking an excuse for his own conduct, which did not seem quite fair when he thought it over afterwards; so that he is therefore more bitter and unfair in describing their acts than in any other part of his history.

201. natu: see vocabulary under **magnus** and § 82. **simul . . . simul:** see vocabulary.

202. purgandi sui: § 273, 1. **contra atque:** *contrary to what.*

204. quid: § 13. **fallendo:** § 267.

205. quos sibi oblatos (esse) gavisus: (having rejoiced that they had been offered to himself), *greatly pleased that they had put themselves in his power.*

Chapter 14.

209. acie—confecto: this is the only instance where Caesar appears to have marched any distance in the formation used for battle. The country was open; and if not using the actual formation of the **acies triplex**, it was one which could easily be deployed into it.

210. pervenit prius quam posset: the force of the subjunctive (§ 181) may be shown thus: *he arrived, as he intended, before,* etc.

216. quorum, etc.: *while their fear was being shown.*

Chapter 15.

225. post—audito: the men took post at the side of the camp that was attacked, while the women and children naturally fled to the rear. The Roman cavalry, passing around the flanks, soon overtook them, so that the German warriors heard and saw their families butchered.

229. oppressi: (overcome *by*), *yielding* (*to*).

231. ex: *relieved of.*

232. capitum CCCCXXX milium: thus about a hundred thousand fighting men were killed or drowned; and doubtless nearly all the rest

of this great number were either cut down by the cavalry, were taken prisoners by the Romans or by surrounding tribes and sold as slaves, or perished from starvation, exposure or grief.

Caesar's extreme severity on this occasion caused great indignation at Rome and has been a blot upon his name ever since. He did not do things, however, on impulse and we are forced to the conclusion that he thought himself justified in this case. His great object in the conquest of Gaul was the protection of Italy. The Germans had crossed the Rhine before, and, after roaming at will over southern Gaul, had come down to the very gates of Rome itself. These barbarians must be taught to fear the power of Rome.

Again, Gaul was restless and needed only a good opportunity to make trouble for the conqueror. If these two powerful peoples should once unite, not only Caesar but Italy would be doomed. Still further, if the Gauls should behold the destruction of these invaders, they would be slow to take a chance of suffering the same fate. It was a desperate deed, but it was deliberately done; and from Caesar's standpoint, we must say that it was justifiable.

II. CAESAR'S PASSAGE INTO GERMANY.

Chapters 16–19.

Wishing to show the rest of the Germans that others could cross the Rhine as well as they, Caesar builds a bridge, crosses upon it and remains in Germany eighteen days, while the Suebi retire to impenetrable fastnesses.

The foes most dreaded by all Romans were the terrible Germans. They knew their country only in the most meagre sense as bounded by the Rhine and the Danube. Thousands of these people had poured across the Rhine, and Caesar had reasons to suspect that hundreds of thousands more were ready to do the same thing. Once firmly established in Gaul, their next movement would be towards Italy. To prevent such a catastrophe was unquestionably Caesar's purpose in invading Germany. There is no reason to suppose that he ever contemplated the subjugation of that people as Gaul was to be subjugated. The moral effects of Roman skill and resourcefulness were to be propelled over the Rhine for the purpose of keeping the inhabitants of that region within their present boundaries. The purpose was achieved by

this and the subsequent expedition, and Italy was saved for centuries. It is true that the western frontier of Germany was pounded by Roman arms for generations after Caesar's time, but little impression was made, and Germany never was subdued by Roman arms.

The invasion of Britain was of a different character and undertaken solely for purposes of conquest. While Caesar seemed to have accomplished little by these invasions at the time, the effects were permanent, and Britain afterwards became a Roman province and so remained for four hundred years. His description of these two countries and their people are fragmentary and inaccurate; but they make interesting reading and are valuable as being the earliest statements made from personal observation.

Chapter 16.

239. **iustissima:** *most important.* **quod voluit:** §§ 170 and 215, 2, *a.*

240. **rebus:** *possessions;* § 28.

241. **cum:** (*as they would*) *when.* **et posse et audere:** *both could and would.*

248. **postularent:** § 212.

249. **Rhenum:** subject of **finire.**

250. **se:** i.e. Caesar.

251. **sui—imperii:** (that anything of authority be his), *the right to exercise authority;* **sui,** § 46; **imperii aut potestatis,** § 47.

254. **(et) fecerant, (et) dederant:** predicates of **qui.** **orabant:** predicate of **Ubii**; notice tense.

257. **modo:** notice quantity of final **o.** **transportaret:** § 245.

258. **auxilium:** i.e. for the present. **reliqui temporis:** *for the future;* § 40. **satis:** §§ 1 and 3.

Chapter 17.

266. **dignitatis:** *consistent with,* etc.; § 46.

267. **summa:** predicate adjective after **proponebatur;** (*as being*) *very great.*

269. **id contendendum:** *strain every nerve to accomplish it.*

271. **tigna,** etc.: *logs* (*in pairs*) *each a foot and a half in thickness, sharpened slightly at the lower end, graded* (*in length*) *according to the*

depth of the water, he joined (*by cross pieces*) *in such a way that they were always two feet apart.* (When these [**tigna bina**], having been lowered . . . he had fixed . . .), *when he had lowered these into the stream by means of engines and fixed them in position and driven them home by means of pile-drivers, not exactly vertical, after the manner of an ordinary pile, but inclining slightly in the direction of the current, he likewise set another pair opposite these at a distance of forty feet down the river* (*in such a way*) *that they leaned toward the flow of the current. By letting in from above beams two feet thick,* (how much the joining of these piles stood apart), *which was the space between the two piles of each pair, by the aid of a pair of fasteners at each end, joined to the upper end of the piles* [**ab extrema parte**], *these two pairs of piles* [**haec utraque**] *were kept at the right distance apart* [**distinebantur**]. *Since these were kept apart as well as held from spreading, such was the strength of the structure and the carefulness of the workmanship that, the* [**quo,** § 81] *greater the force with which the water drove against it, the* [**hoc,** § 81] *more firmly bound were the several parts.*

Notice that this description covers one truss only. Others similarly constructed were built all the way across the river, which is about 1,200 feet wide at this point. The remainder of the description explains the means used for connecting and covering these trusses and for protecting the bridge.

Just where this bridge was located is not certainly known. The weight of evidence seems to place it between Coblentz and Andernach.

285. haec: i.e. the different trusses which took the place of the piers of an ordinary bridge. **materia:** either ablative of means modified by predicate adjective **iniecta,** or, with the latter, an ablative absolute denoting means (§ 264, 6).

288. quae exciperent: § 156.

Chapter 18.

294. diebus decem quibus: (within ten days within which), *ten days after.* This was a very rapid piece of work. There were engineers with the army who were accustomed to bridge small streams with great rapidity. This undertaking was therefore not an unusual matter except for the width and depth of the river and the consequent size of the structure. **coepta erat:** for the voice, see vocabulary.

296. partem: *end.*

301. hortantibus iis: (those urging), *upon the advice of those.*

Chapter 19.

310. more suo: § 86. **nuntios:** *messengers* (*to direct them*).

311. uti demigrarent, etc.: dependent upon the idea of announcing implied in **nuntios.**

313. hunc—fere: *that this place had been selected* (*as being*) *at about the centre;* § 1.

320. et—utilitatem: *to secure glory for himself and to be of advantage to the public interest.*

321. prōfectum: notice **ō.**

It would seem that Caesar accomplished very little by this expedition. But he had shown the Germans what he could do in the way of engineering and by this feat had increased his influence both in Germany and Gaul.

III. THE WAR WITH THE BRITONS.

Chapters 20–36.

Having explored the coast of Britain, Caesar collects a fleet to make the passage.

Chapter 20.

326. hostibus nostris: dative with **subministrata.**

327. subministrata auxilia: there is no evidence that this was true, and Caesar himself only "understood it." It is likely that he is merely seeking to justify his expedition.

329. si adisset, etc.: § 242, 5. **modo:** see l. 257.

330. loca: *the lie of the land.* **quae:** *for these matters.*

331. temere adit: (goes rashly), *is rash enough to go.*

332. his ipsis: with **notum:** § 33.

334. vocatis—mercatoribus: § 264, 4.

Chapter 21.

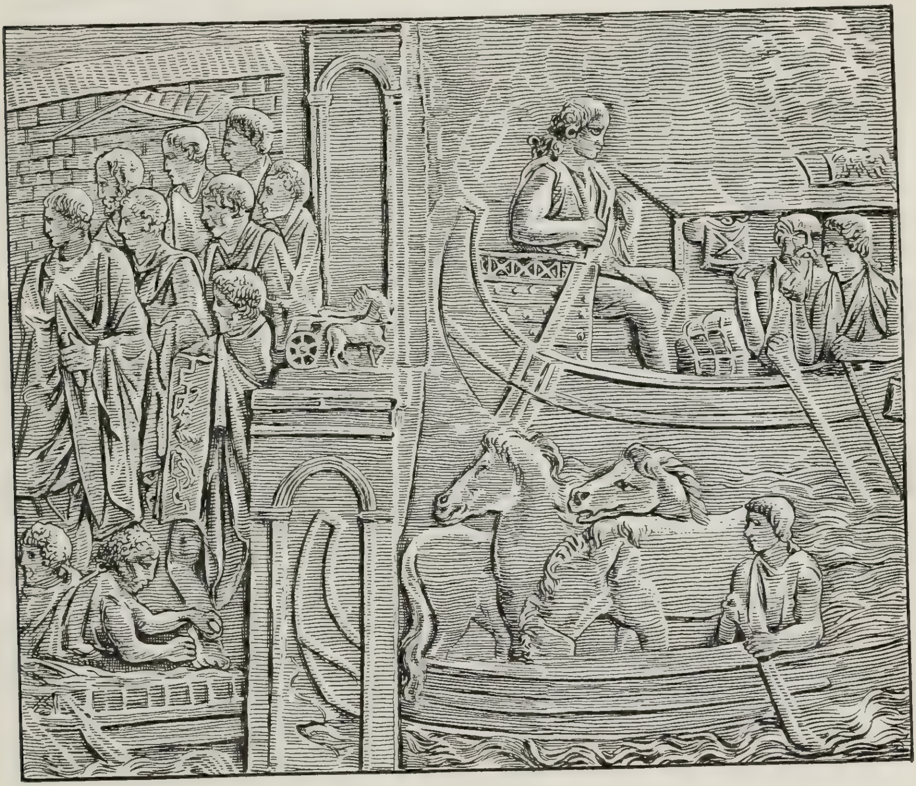
340. prius quam faceret: § 181.

342. huic: §§ 23 and 128.

355. arbitrabatur: this word becomes noteworthy when we find later that Commius joined the revolt of Vercingetorix; see Book VII, Chapter 76.

356. magni: § 62.

359. (tantum) quantum—potuit: (as much as of means could be given), *as much as opportunity allowed;* **(tantum)**, adverbial accusative with **perspectis; quantum**, subject of **potuit; facultatis**, § 47. **ei—auderet:** *to such a man as did not dare;* § 168. This is clearly a sharp reprimand of Volusenus.



ROMAN TRANSPORTS

The Morini, from whose territory there is the shortest passage to Britain, he receives in surrender.

CHAPTER 22.

365. superioris temporis consilio: see Book III, Chapters 28 and 29.

366. homines barbari: (*being*), etc. **nostrae consuetudinis:** § 58.

367. se—facturos imperasset: direct discourse, **ea quae imperaveris faciemus,** we will do what you (shall have commanded) command; compare § 242, 5; indirect discourse, . . . *he commanded.*

368. pollicerentur: notice that this is coördinate with **excusarent** and translate in the same way.

371. has—anteponendas: (that these occupations of so little things ought to be placed before Britain), *that such unimportant matters ought to take precedence over the expedition into Britain.*

375. quot: (how many), *as many as.*

376. quod—habebat: *the warships which he had besides;* **navium,** § 47.

379. tenebantur quo minus—possent: § 161.

381. Sabino, Cottae: see Book II, Chapter 11.

383. ducendum: § 270, 2.

Caesar crosses to the island.

CHAPTER 23.

387. tertia vigilia: a little after midnight.

389. cum: *although.*

390. ipse: *he* (*without them*). **hora quarta:** about 9 A.M. The distance is about thirty miles.

393. ita—continebatur: (so narrowly was the sea bounded by hills), *so steeply did the cliffs rise from the sea.* This description of the coast makes it certain that he was opposite the cliffs of Dover.

396. dum convenirent: § 180.

399. monuitque, etc.: the object of **monuit** is the whole following clause; **ut** in each case means *as*, each verb that is introduced by an **ut** being attracted (§ 229) into the mood of **administrarentur.** The latter is the verb of a substantive purpose clause, whose introductory **ut** is omitted (§ 212), to avoid having the word occur twice in succession. Translate, *and advised* (*that*) *as the art of war and especially of naval warfare demands.*

400. ut quae: (as which), *since ships;* **quae** refers to **maritimae res,** which easily passes into the idea of **naves.**

404. ab eo loco: Caesar sailed northwest to Deal.

He puts the Britons to flight. They surrender.

CHAPTER 24.

407. quo genere: (which kind), *the kind of soldiers which.*

408. copiis: § 77. **subsecuti:** seeing the fleet stand out to sea,

they guessed Caesar's purpose and marched at once to oppose his landing.

411. militibus: dative of agent with **desiliendum erat:** §§ 31 and 278. It is modified by **oppressis,** *who were handicapped;* § 264, 7. **ignotis locis:** *not knowing the bottom;* § 87. **impeditis manibus:** *having their hands full;* § 87. **autem:** *while.*

414. cum illi: *while the Britons;* § 199.

418. pugnae: § 58.



AQUILIFER

CHAPTER 25.

422. inusitatior: *quite strange.* The Britons were accustomed to sailing vessels only.

425. fundis, sagittis, tormentis: it seems a queer combination to join two instruments for throwing (**fundis, tormentis**) with a class of missiles (**sagittis,** *arrows*). Translate the latter, *bows.* **tormentis:** Caesar had mounted part of his artillery on shipboard.

426. quae res: *a movement which.*

431. ea res: *his act.*

434. praestitero: notice the tense and translate accurately. *Whatever happens,* or some similar phrase, is implied.

438. conspexissent: the subject is indefinite, the men in the nearest ships. See note on Book II, l. 221.

CHAPTER 26.

442. signa subsequi: i.e. the standards of their several maniples. There was no orderly advance such as an army would make when on land, but each fell in as best he could behind any standard in sight. **alius,** etc.: see vocabulary and Book II, l. 364.

444. vadis: *the shallow places.*

446. plures (hostes) paucos (Romanos) circumsistebant, etc.: note the imperfect tenses for vivid descriptions.

455. hoc unum: refers to Caesar's inability to pursue because his cavalry had not arrived.

Chapter 27.

457. simul atque receperunt: § 176.

459. imperasset: *he commanded;* direct form, **imperaveris;** cf. § 242, 5.

462. illi: nominative plural. **cum deferret:** § 199.

463. modo: § 79.

466. ignosceretur: sc. **sibi:** § 26.

468. bellum sine causa intulissent: we get a glimpse here of Caesar's idea that the world belonged to Rome. Why should not these people defend their country against invasion?

469. imprudentiae: see note on **ignosceretur,** l. 466.

The Roman fleet being damaged by a storm, the Britons form a conspiracy.

Chapter 28.

475. rebus: *means.* **post—quam:** this cannot be construed literally, since **post** takes an object as a preposition meaning *after,* and then is followed by **quam,** *than,* as if it were an adverb meaning *later.* Translate, *on the third day after he had come,* and see note on Book I, l. 176.

479. Britanniae: § 27. **viderentur:** *were in sight.*

482. ad inferiorem partem: i.e. to the southwest; see Book V, Chapter 13.

483. suo: *to themselves;* § 43.

484. ancoris iactis: § 264, 4. **complerentur:** *began to fill.*

485. adversa: see vocabulary. **in altum provectae:** (being borne into the deep), *put to sea and.*

Chapter 29.

488. aestus maximos: the tides in the English channel are notably high, as much as twenty feet, while the rise off the coast of Italy is only a few inches.

490. transportandum: § 270, 2.

496. id: the antecedent is the whole idea of **magna totius—facta est. id quod:** (that which), *as.* See also **necesse** in vocabulary.

499. usui: see vocabulary and § 32.

500. omnibus: § 27. **constabat:** see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 30.

502. principes: subject of **duxerunt:**

506. hoc: § 84.

508. factu: § 276.

509. rem: *the campaign.*

510. his: i.e. this detachment of Romans.

Caesar repairs the ships.

CHAPTER 31.

516. ex eo quod: *from the fact that.*

517. fore id quod accidit: (that that would be which happened), *that that would happen which actually did.*

518. ad omnes casus: *for any emergency.*

519. quae . . . naves, earum: *of those ships which.*

521. ad eas res: *for this purpose.*

524. reliquis ut navigari posset: (that it could be sailed by the rest), *that the rest could sail.* For condensing this with **effecit,** see note on Book II, l. 92.

The Britons are routed in battle and flee.

CHAPTER 32.

527. frumentatum: § 275.

529. ventitaret: notice the *frequentative* verb.

532. quam—ferret: *than usual;* see vocabulary under **fero.**

533. id quod erat: (that which was), *the truth;* compare l. 517. This is explained by the following clauses, **aliquid—initum (esse) consilii,** *that some new plan,* etc.

537. paulo longius: *some little distance;* §§ 81 and 116.

543. dispersos: agrees with **nostros** understood from l. 542.

544. incertis ordinibus: *they had bewildered the ranks and,* etc.; § 87.

CHAPTER 33.

548. perequitant: subject, **essedarii.** **ipso:** *simply.*

549. equorum: *inspired by their horses;* § **39.**

553. illi: *the fighting men.*

556. **tantum efficiunt:** *they are so skilful.* **usu:** *as a result of,* etc.; § 84.

557. **incitatos:** *when at full speed.* **sustinere:** *to control.* **brevi:** modifies both **moderari** and **flectere**; see vocabulary.

558. **per temonem,** etc.: merely a circus trick.

Chapter 34.

561. **quibus rebus:** *under these circumstances.* **nostris:** dative with **auxilium tulit,** modified by **perturbatis.** **novitate:** § 84.

564. **quo facto:** (which having been done), *then.*

565. **suo:** see vocabulary.

568. **(ei) qui:** i.e. the Britons.

569. **quae continerent:** § 168.

574. **sui liberandi:** § 273, 1. **si expulissent:** § 242, 5.

Chapter 35.

577. **idem quod acciderat fore:** see l. 517. Explained by the following clause, *namely, that,* etc.

582. **diutius:** *very long.*

583. **tanto spatio:** § 103. **cursu et viribus:** *hard running;* § 280.

584. **efficere:** *cover.*

After receiving hostages, Caesar returns to Gaul.

Chapter 36.

590. **propinqua die, infirmis navibus:** ablatives absolute. From various calculations concerning the moon it has been estimated that Caesar spent about three weeks in Britain.

595. **infra:** *below; down;* i.e. to the southwest. See l. 482.

IV. CAESAR SUBJUGATES THE REBELLIOUS MORINI AND MENAPII. A THANKSGIVING DECREED BY THE SENATE.

Chapter 37.

599. **primo,** etc.: *at first with not such a very large,* etc.

601. **celeriter,** etc.: this forms the contrast to **primo,** etc., above.

Chapter 38.

613. quo se reciperent: compare Book III, l. 275. **quo perfugio:** *the refuge which;* translate after **siccitates.**

621. His rebus gestis, etc.: compare the similar ending of Book II.

622. supplicatio: it would appear that Caesar had accomplished comparatively little in the campaign of 55 B.C. He had, however, crossed the Rhine and the Channel, two feats never before attempted by a Roman general. The people of Rome had little knowledge of either Germany or Britain. Hence this opening up of new lands excited great interest in the minds of a conquest-loving people; and in the same manner as had been the case two years before, the popular enthusiasm was worked by the politicians for all it was worth, in the face of the opposition of the conservative party, so that unheard-of honors might again be bestowed upon the coming man.

BOOK V.

54 B.C.

I. CAESAR'S JOURNEY TO ILLYRICUM. SUPPRESSION OF THE PIRUSTAE.

CHAPTER 1.

2. Italiam: i.e. Cisalpine Gaul. See note on Book I, l. 168.

4. naves aedificandas, etc.: § 270, 2.

5. earum: i.e. of the **naves aedificandae,** of course. **modum:** *size.*

9. minus magnos fluctus: the choppy seas of the English Channel are notorious, but the reason can scarcely be the one assigned; rather its shape and narrowness.

10. onera: sc. **transportanda** from l. 11.

11. paulo latiores: sc. **facit,** from l. 7.

13. quem ad rem: *and for this purpose.* **multum adiuvat:** *was a great help.* **ea quae usui,** etc.: Spain furnished especially ropes, iron and other metals.

15. Illyricum: this was a part of Caesar's province of Cisalpine Gaul.

21. omnibus rationibus: *by all (reasonable) means.*

II. CAESAR'S SECOND EXPEDITION TO BRITAIN.

CHAPTERS 2–23.

The dissensions of the Treveri are settled.

27. conventibus peractis: i.e. the matters of the province had been adjusted.

30. studio: § 84. **in:** *in spite of.*

31. cuius: attracted to case of antecedent; translate as if **quod.**

32. instructas: i.e. the frames were in position. **neque multum,** etc.: § 214.

37. traiectum: noun, explained by **transmissum,** noun; see vocabulary.

38. rei: *purpose,* i.e. to carry out his orders. **militum:** with **quod;** § 47.

41. veniebant: denoting habitual action, shown by **concilia, plural;** § 148.

CHAPTER 3.

43. equitatu: § 71 or § 82. See also Book II, l. 400, etc.

45. supra: see Book III, l. 173. **duo:** this was a situation quite to Caesar's liking. "If a kingdom be divided against itself, that kingdom cannot stand."

47. alter: *the latter,* as shown by l. 51.

49. in officio futuros: *would do their duty; would remain faithful.*

51. cogere: complementary infinitive with **statuit.**

58. ab eo petere: *to talk with him.*

59. quoniam possent: notice mood; § 170. **civitati: consulo** with accusative, *to consult;* with the dative, *to consult the interests of.*

60. veritus: agrees with **Indutiomarus.**

61. sese, etc.: (*saying that*) *he* (Indutiomarus), etc.

CHAPTER 4.

68. quaeque—deterreret: *and what cause detained him from his determined purpose.*

72. nominatim: *expressly.*

73. evocaverat: the subject is Caesar. **consolatus (est):** *he consoled him* for being deprived of his son and other relatives.

76. quod, etc.: (which he not only understood to be done by himself in accordance with his merit), *for Caesar not only considered that this was happening to him deservedly, but also thought,* etc. **cum . . . tum:** § 279, 3.

77. magni: § 62.

78. suos: refers to Cingetorix.

80. qui fuisset: *while he,* etc.; § 199.

82. dolore: *grievance;* § 84.

Caesar collects his forces at Wissant; Dumnorix, again treacherous, is summoned back from flight, and while resisting arrest is killed.

CHAPTER 5.

88. invenit: contrast with **cognoscit,** l. 84.

89. numero: § 82. **milia:** in apposition with **equitatus.**

Chapter 6.

93. de quo ante, etc.: see Book I, Chapters 16–20.

96. imperii: § 58, and so **navigandi,** l. 103. **magni animi:** *of a high spirit;* § 44.

101. id factum: *this fact.* **suis hospitibus:** i.e. the friends of Dumnorix. **ille:** Dumnorix.

103. quod: *because* (*as he said*); § 170.

104. id: *this request.*

107. territare: coördinate with **hortari** (sc. **coepit**); the indirect discourse that follows, to **necaret,** explains this phrase.

108. causa: i.e. some secret motive.

110. hos omnes: this alludes to the Gallic hostages whom Caesar intended to take to Britain with him.

111. interponere, etc.: like **trepidare;** see vocabulary.

113. intellexissent: direct discourse, **intellexerimus,** future perfect indicative.

Chapter 7.

115. quod tantum tribuebat: *because he was accustomed to pay so much respect.*

118. progredi: progressive; *was going.* **prospiciendum:** sc. **statuebat.**

119. quid: § 13.

124. cognosceret: coördinate with **contineret.**

130. retrahi: an unusual use of the infinitive.

132. qui: *since he.* **praesentis:** sc. **ipsius (Caesaris).**

134. manu: see vocabulary.

By contrast with his treatment of Dumnorix four years before, this incident shows what a mastery over Gaul Caesar had obtained, or, rather, thought he had obtained.

Caesar leads his army into Britain and puts to flight the natives.

Chapter 8.

141. pro tempore, etc.: see vocabulary under **tempus.**

142. pari: = **eodem.**

146. delatus: i.e. to the northeast.

147. relictam: *far away.*
148. secutus: *taking advantage of.*
150. laudanda: § 270, 1.
157. privatis: belonging to officers and traders.

CHAPTER 9.

162. cohortibus decem: probably two from each legion.
164. navibus: § 28. **in—aperto:** *on a smooth and open shore.*
168. equitatu atque essedis: § 77.
172. domestici belli causa: *for use in civil war.*

The fleet is wrecked by a storm and repaired on shore.

CHAPTER 10.

185. extremi: *only the rear,* i.e. of the Roman detachment.
187. afflictas: *dashed against one another.*

CHAPTER 11.

193. resistere: see vocabulary. Caesar did not wait for the legions, but returned to the shore ahead of them.

195. sic: *namely.* **amissis navibus:** § 264, 4.

196. reliquae refici posse viderentur: (the rest seemed to be able to be repaired), *it seemed possible to repair the rest.*

200. res erat multae operae ac laboris: §§ 44 and 110.

208. summa—administrandi: *the general control and conduct of the war.*

211. milia passuum LXXX: i.e. this distance north of Caesar's landing place.

212. huic—intercesserant: *between him and the other states, in former times, constant warfare had existed;* now he was the defender of the whole nation.

Description of Britain and its inhabitants.

Caesar's object in writing these details about Britain, and in Book VI about the Germans and the Gauls, is to satisfy a very strong and en-

lightened curiosity at Rome about these strange new countries. Thus Cicero writes to his brother to tell him all about the island. Compare foreign interest in America at the time of its discovery, and our own in African explorations.

Chapter 12.

216. **quos—dicunt:** (whom they say it to have been handed down in memory to have been born on the island), *who, they say there is a tradition, were born on the island;* i.e. they thought that the inhabitants of the interior were indigenous or autochthonous, i.e. sprung from the soil.

220. **quibus pervenerunt:** (having sprung from which states, they came thither), *from which they have come.*

223. **aedificia Gallicis consimilia:** "according to Strabo, the Gallic houses were large, built of planks and watling, of a round form, with a high roof. They were sometimes thatched; see Chapter 43."—Long.

226. **plumbum album:** in Cornwall, not in **mediterraneis regionibus.**

227. **ferrum:** in Sussex, quite a distance inland. Caesar got the two reversed.

230. **fas:** what is right according to divine law; **ius,** what is right according to human law. So **fas non putant** means that they had religious scruples against eating these things. **animi—causa:** (for the pleasure of the mind), *for pleasure;* § 280.

231. **sunt temperatiora:** *have a more even climate.*

Chapter 13.

233. **triquetra:** the statement of the shape of Britain is roughly accurate; but his distance of 500 miles is too great by over 150 miles if a straight line be taken.

235. **quo . . . appelluntur:** (whither . . . are driven), *where . . . land;* note **adpello, ĕre.**

238. **ad Hispaniam:** of course this is utterly wrong. **qua ex parte:** cf. **una ex parte,** Book I, l. 31.

239. **dimidio:** § 81. England is two and a half times greater than Ireland.

240. **pari spatio:** § 80. **atque :** see vocabulary under **par.**

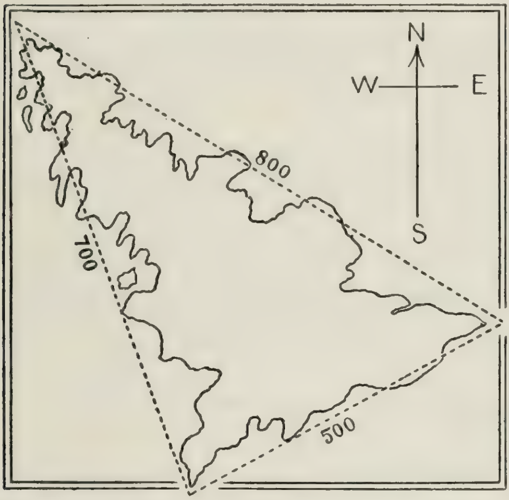
244. **noctem esse dies XXX:** here Caesar has trace of the fact that the length of the day and night grows more unequal at the solstices the

farther we recede from the equator, and his measurement (l. 246) substantiates it, but he could not generalize from it. This statement would not be true even for the northernmost islands about the coast of Britain.

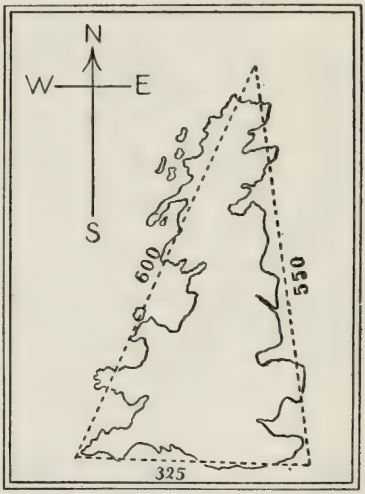
248. DCC milium: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.

250. maxime ad Germaniam: *in general toward Germany;* another error.

251. octingentum: this distance is too great by 90 Roman miles.



BRITAIN AS CAESAR THOUGHT IT WAS.



BRITAIN AS IT WAS.

These statements of Caesar are not intended to be regarded as anything else than summaries of the most apparently accurate reports which he could get from traders. He feels bound to tell what he can, but his words **circiter, ut existimatur,** etc., show that he would not vouch for the facts.

Chapter 14.

260. aspectu: § 82. **capillo promisso, corpore rasa:** § 80.

262. uxores: accusative. **deni duodenique:** distributives; (*ten* together and twelve together), *ten or twelve together*.

265. quo—deducta est: (whither each maiden was first led away), *by whom each maiden was first espoused.* **deducta** refers to the custom of conducting a bride from her father's house to that of her husband.

Caesar crosses the Thames, defeats the Britons, and subdues their leader, Cassivellaunus.

Chapter 15.

271. **spatio:** sc. **temporis,** and contrast with **loci spatio,** l. 276.

275. **atque his primis (cohortibus):** *and these, too, the first cohorts,* which were composed of veterans.

277. **per medios:** for their tactics, see Book IV, Chapter 33.

Chapter 16.

286. **ad:** *to fight with; to cope with.*

287. **illi:** the Britons.

288. **cederent,** etc.: *would retreat;* for the subjunctive, see § 228; if the indicative were used, it would be the imperfect, to denote habitual action; § 148.

290. **dispari proelio:** (in unequal battle), *with great advantage.* **[Equestris—inferebat]:** omit. No satisfactory idea can be gotten out of the sentence.

295. **defatigatis:** § 27.

Chapter 17.

302. **ab . . . non absisterent:** *were close to.*

304. **subsidio:** § 72.

306. **sui colligendi:** § 273, 1.

309. **summis copiis:** *even with their strongest forces.*

Chapter 18.

313. **pedibus transiri potest:** i.e. *is fordable.*

319. **ea, eo:** *such.*

320. **cum—exstarent:** (though they stood out of the water with the head only); what does this mean?

321. **ut:** translate after **ierunt.**

Chapter 19.

328. **iis regionibus:** ablative of separation with **compellebat.**

332. **omnibus viis semitisque:** ablative of means.

333. **nostrorum equitum:** objective; *to our cavalry.*

334. **cum his:** i.e. **cum milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum.**

335. **relinquebatur:** *the result was.*

336. discedi: impersonal; (it to be departed), *any one to depart.* **tantum . . . quantum:** (*only*) *as much . . . as.* **(in):** omit. **agris,** etc.: ablative of means.

337. hostibus noceretur: § 26.

338. labore atque itinere: *laborious marches;* § 280.

Surrender of the Trinovantes and several other states.

Chapter 20.

347. Cassivellauni: § 39.

348. qui—obtineat: § 162.

351. obsides ad numerum: (hostages to the number), *the required number of hostages.*

Chapter 21.

352. defensis: i.e. from Cassivellaunus. **militum:** sc. **nostrorum:** § 39.

357. autem: *now.*

358. silvas impeditas: *an impassable piece of woods;* i.e. they would select a place that was almost impenetrable anyway, fortify a part of it and call it a town.

Chapter 22.

381. quid . . . vectigalis: § 49. Not a sesterce of this tribute was ever paid, and Caesar never returned; not until 43 A.D. did a Roman again set foot on the island, when half the island was subdued, though never assimilated like Gaul into the Roman empire. But Caesar accomplished much, if not all that he wished, by his second invasion, since he showed the Gauls that neither the Rhine nor even the Ocean could stop him from an expedition in force.

Caesar's return to Gaul.

Chapter 23.

389. ac sic accidit, etc.: compared with the brilliant achievements of his first years in Gaul, Caesar was now accomplishing little. So he magnifies matters of less importance, and even mentions negative matters, such as *not* losing ships.

395. locum caperet: *made the port;* i.e. were able to reach Caesar again.

398. aequinoctium: thus Caesar spent about two months in Britain.

399. tranquillitate: this does not mean that there was no wind, but that the sea was smooth.

III. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX.

Chapters 24–52.

The Roman legions are distributed among more states than usual.

Chapter 24.

402. Samarobrivae: §§ 91 and 93.

413. et cohortes quinque: Caesar then mentions the dispositions for eight and a half legions. Just how or to what extent the number was last increased he does not tell us, but it appears that he had a levy during the summer, for in Book II, Chapter 2, he raises the number of legions to eight, and when he went to Britain in this campaign he took five legions with him and left three with Labienus. As any levy would probably have included an entire legion, we may perhaps conclude that he now had nine in all and kept five cohorts with him *in* Samarobriva. See note, l. 802.

From this arrangement of the army in winter quarters we may very reasonably infer that Caesar saw trouble brewing in Gaul and made the best possible arrangements to meet it.

418. inopiae: § 23.

422. milibus—continebantur: this might be supposed to mean that all except Roscius were contained within a circle of 50 miles' radius, so that no two were more than 100 miles apart. This, however, was not actually the case. But no one of these camps was more than a hundred miles from at least two others.

423. quoad—cognovisset: § 180. It modifies **morari.**

Tasgetius, a friend of Caesar, is killed by his enemies.

Chapter 25.

425. summo loco: § 67.

428. singulari: predicate; translate after **opera.** **usus:** see vocabulary.

429. tertium—regnantem: (him reigning now the third year), *just at this time, in the third year of his reign.*

430. auctoribus: *approving;* used like an adjective, as is **victor,** frequently.

431. ad plures (sc. **res**, nom.) **pertinebat:** (*the affair* pertained to more), *many were involved.*

434. quorum: antecedent, **hos.**

The Eburones under the lead of Ambiorix and Catuvolcus attack the camp of Sabinus and Cotta.

CHAPTER 26.

439. diebus, etc.: see Book III, l. 396.

441. cum fuissent: § 199.

442. Sabino Cottaeque: § 27.

450. aliqui: singular, instead of the more usual **aliquis.**

A conference being held, Ambiorix advises the Romans to leave. The legati disagree.

CHAPTER 27.

458. plurimum debere: *that he was greatly indebted.* **ei:** i.e. Caesar. **confiteri:** predicate of **sese,** and governing **plurimum debere.**

465. non minus iuris in se: *as much authority over him.*

469. ut confidat: *as to believe;* § 165.

471. omnibus hibernis oppugnandis: § 32. So **subsidio** below.

473. negare: *to say "No."*

475. quibus: i.e. the Gauls. **pro pietate satisfecerit:** *had done enough to prove his patriotism.*

477. pro hospitio: *in consideration of the ties of hospitality.*

479. conductam: (*had been*) *hired* (*and*).

480. ipsorum esse consilium: *their* (the Romans') *best move was.* **velint-ne:** *whether they wished to do so* (*or not*).

485. quod cum faciat: (when he was doing this), *in doing this.* **consulere, referre:** progressive.

CHAPTER 28.

491. civitatem—ausam (**esse**): subject of **erat credendum;** *that the state had dared . . . , was scarcely,* etc.

503. quid esse levius, etc.: § 246.

CHAPTER 29.

505. (**se**) **facturos:** *that they would act.* **clamitabat:** note tense.

508. Caesarem profectum: governed by **arbitrari,** whose subject is **se,** understood.

510. capturos fuisse : § 242, 4. The condition is supplied by **aliter** = **quae si ita non essent.**

511. si adesset, venturos: § 242, 2. **nostri:** § 43.

512. auctorem: § 2, note. **rem:** *the facts of the case.*

514. mortem Ariovisti: from this we may assume that Ariovistus died soon after his defeat by Caesar.

517. hoc: *of this,* explained by **sine—descendisse;** § 25. **sibi:** *him,* i.e. Sabinus.

519. in utramque rem: *in either event.* **si esset, perventuros:** § 242, 5.

521. si consentiret, esse: § 242, 1.

523. habere: § 246.

Chapter 30.

526. in utramque partem: *on each side.*

527. primis ordinibus: = **centurionibus primorum ordinum.** **resisteretur:** § 26.

530. qui terrear: § 168. **gravissime ex vobis:** the use of the second person, when really including the speaker, is sometimes found in English; as we might say, "I'm not the greatest coward of you."

531. si acciderit, reposcent: § 193. **gravius:** *very serious.*

532. qui: *since they.* **si liceat, sustineant:** § 194.

The Romans abandon their camp; on the march they are surrounded by the Eburones and all killed.

Chapter 31.

536. consurgitur ex consilio: *the council rises.* **comprehendunt:** sc. **centuriones** as subject.

541. dat manus: (" throws up his hands "), *yields.*

543. vigiliis: *without sleep.*

544. quid: (*to see*) *what.*

546. omnia, etc.: *everything is thought of that is calculated to prevent their remaining without danger, and to increase the danger through the weariness and sleeplessness of the soldiers;* i.e. it seems as though they omitted nothing that would make their destruction certain. Others render: *Every reason is thought of, to show that they cannot remain without danger, and that the danger will be increased,* etc.; i.e. they tried to persuade themselves in every way that this was their best course.

549. ut, etc.: *like men who were persuaded that the idea had been been suggested* (**consilium datum**).

Chapter 32.

554. a milibus, etc.: see Book II., l. 122.

559. nostris: modifying **iniquissimo**; § 33.

Chapter 33.

561. qui providisset: § 173. It gives the reason for **trepidare** only.

562. trepidare, etc.: § 258. **haec ipsa:** sc. **fecit.**

563. ut: *in such a manner that.* **omnia:** *all his wits.*

569. imperatoris officia praestabat: *did the duty of a general.*

572. pronuntiari: impersonal; (it to be announced), *command to be given.*

575. militibus: § 28.

579. quae—que: the **-que** connects **discederent** and **properaret** (subject **quisque**).

581. fletu: a sign of anger, not of weakness.

Chapter 34.

582. barbaris: § 30. **consilium:** *cunning.*

584. illorum: § 46. **discederet, esse:** see note on Book II, l. 175.

585. reliquissent: *left;* in direct discourse **reliquerint,** future perfect indicative, (shall have left), *leave.*

586. existimarent: § 245. **[erant—pares]:** omit.

Chapter 35.

596. cum excesserat: § 182.

602. sin vellent: § 242, 3.

606. resistebant: *continued to resist;* § 148.

608. ipsis: § 83. **Balventio:** § 32.

Chapter 36.

618. si velit, licere: § 242, 1.

620. quod—pertineat: subject of **posse**; *what pertained.* **ipsi:** §§ 23 and 26. **vero:** *at any rate.* **nihil:** § 13.

621. nocitum iri: only occurrence of this form in the Bellum Gallicum.

622. ut: translate before **si videatur.**

624. sua: though grammatically referring to **se** (Sabinus), it undoubtedly is intended to include Cotta.

625. in eo: *in maintaining this attitude.*

CHAPTER 37.

626. quos tribunos: = **eos tribunos quos.** **in praesentia:** *at the time.*

629. Ambiorigem: § 33, note.

640. illi: i.e. the rest of the Romans.

This was the most serious reverse Caesar suffered in Gaul. The annihilation of over 5,000 Romans at once aroused Gaul to the fact that they were not invincible, and a new hostility to the conqueror arose. We are told by the Roman historian Suetonius that, upon receipt of the news of this disaster, Caesar vowed that he would not cut his hair or beard until he had inflicted revenge upon its authors.

The winter quarters of Cicero are attacked by the Eburones, aided by the Aduatuci and the Nervii.

CHAPTER 38.

651. sui liberandi: § 273, 1.

654. nihil esse negotii: see Book II, l. 280. **oppressam legionem interfici:** (that the legion, overpowered, be killed), *in overpowering and wiping out.*

CHAPTER 39.

669. is dies sustentatur: (this day is sustained), *that day the attack is sustained;* cf. Book II, l. 101.

CHAPTER 40.

673. si pertulissent: implied indirect discourse; § 242, 5.

674. missi: (*those* sent), *the messengers.*

683. ad: *to meet.* **opus:** indeclinable; *necessary.*

CHAPTER 41.

697. eos: i.e. Cicero and his men.

698. iis qui, etc.: i.e. Caesar and the other *legati.* **rebus:** *situation;* § 23.

701. per se: see Book I, l. 827.

706. utantur: § 245.

707. se: subject of **sperare;** sc. **eos** as subject of **imperaturos esse. pro:** *by.*

CHAPTER 42.

709. vallo, etc.: the genitives indicate the height of the wall and the width of the ditch.

711. de exercitu captivos: *men who had been prisoners in the Roman army.*

717. XV: this is undoubtedly wrong, but just what the numeral should be we do not know.

719. idem: see vocabulary.

CHAPTER 43.

723. casas: which the soldiers had built for winter use.

742. introire: i.e. to come out of the tower and inside the rampart.

743. quorum nemo: *but not one of them.*

744. deturbati: sc. **hostes** as subject, and **sunt.**

CHAPTER 44.

747. appropinquarent: i.e. they were well along in the line of promotion; were approaching the point where they would become **centuriones primi ordinis;** § 168.

749. alteri: § 27. **anteferretur:** § 243. **loco:** *promotion.*

762. Pulloni: § 28.

764. conanti, etc.: sc. **ei** (§ 28); (the hand to him trying), *his hand, when he tries,* etc.

765. laboranti: sc. **ei** (§ 27), *comes to his aid while thus endangered.*

768. rem gerit: *engages.*

776. anteferendus videretur: *it seemed, ought to be considered superior.*

By the arrival of Caesar the siege is raised; the enemy are put to flight.

CHAPTER 45.

777. quanto: (by how much), *the;* § 81. **in dies:** *from day to day.*

779. res—pervenerat: (the thing had come to fewness of defenders), *only a few were left to continue the defence.*

780. tanto: (by so much), *the;* § 81; correlative with **quanto,** l. 777.

783. nomine: § 82. **loco honesto:** § 67. **prima:** § 113.

786. has: *this,* the letter.

CHAPTER 46.

790. Caesar: he was at Samarobriva (Amiens).

794. cum nuntio: i.e. as soon as possible after receipt of the order.

796. rei publicae commodo: *with advantage to the public interests;* this is the form of a discretionary order, such as Caesar would give only to Labienus.

798. veniat: § 212 or § 245.

800. proximis hibernis: i.e. those about Samarobriva.

Chapter 47.

801. hora tertia: assuming that Crassus started at midnight, he had made good time for a night march, for the soldiers were undoubtedly **sub sarcinis.**

802. certior factus: Caesar does not wait for the actual arrival of Crassus, but as soon as he was certain of his approach he starts on his relief expedition, leaving word for Crassus to take command at Samarobriva. Caesar must have had with him the legion either of Trebonius or of Plancus; see Chapter 24. We may conjecture that one of these had been encamped *near* the town, and that the half legion of recruits which he does not account for in speaking of the dispositions for the winter was *in* the town (see note, l. 413), and held it during the short interval that passed between Caesar's departure and the arrival of Crassus. Caesar thus starts with a fresh legion and replaces it by that of Crassus.

806. relinquebat: notice tense.

807. non ita multum: *not so very much;* a reprimand.

810. similem: (*which would seem*) *like.*

Chapter 48.

820. unum auxilium: *his only hope.*

832. casu adhaesit: (clung by chance), *happened to stick.*

834. (epistulam) perlectam recitat: *he reads the letter by himself and then aloud.*

Chapter 49.

846. animo: § 82.

854. vix, etc.: (belonging to), *containing scarcely,* etc.

856. angustiis viarum: *by narrowing the streets of the camp.*

857. contemptionem hostibus: see Book II, l. 295.

Chapter 50.

863. si: (*to see*) *if;* § 243, note. **suum locum:** *position of his own choosing.*

871. concursari, agi: impersonal passive; *they should run about and act.*

CHAPTER 51.

877. seu quis Gallus, etc.: (*that*) *if any one, whether Gaul,* etc.

880. obstructis portibus: § 264, 4.

881. eā: sc. **viā**, *that way; there.*

CHAPTER 52.

889. neque, etc.: take the negative with **parvulo**; he saw that if there was any lack of vigilance a great disaster might occur.

891. institutas: *which had been erected by the Romans;* § 264, 7.

893. decimum quemque: (each tenth man), *one out of ten.*

901. quod detrimentum . . . hoc: (*that*) *this defeat which.*

IV. MOVEMENTS OF THE SENONES AND THE TREVERI.

CHAPTERS 53–58.

Hearing of the slaughter of the Eburones, Indutiomarus withdraws his forces. Caesar prepares to spend the winter in Gaul.

CHAPTER 53.

907. fama perfertur: for the Gallic method of spreading news, see Book VII, ll. 40–47.

912. Indutiomarus: see Chapters 3, 4, 26 and 47 of this book.

916. tribus: those of Crassus and Cicero, and the one he had brought from Samarobriva (that of Trebonius or Plancus). **trinis:** the distributive, to show that **hibernis** is plural in sense.

919. de Sabini morte: *when Sabinus was killed.*

921. quid reliqui consilii: *what further plans.*

925. quin acciperet: § 214; it explains **sollicitudine.**

926. in his: sc. **nuntiis**; *among these reports.*

CHAPTER 54.

934. territando: § 267.

945. valuit: see vocabulary; the subject is the following clause; *that some had been found* (*to be*) *leaders.*

946. voluntatem commutationemque: *change of sentiment;* § 280.

951. nobis: § 28. **idque,** etc.: *and I do not know whether* (**-ne**) *this is so much to be wondered at.*

952. cum—tum: § 279, 3. (**ei**) **qui praeferebantur:** (*those*) *who used to be considered superior.*

953. virtute: § 82. **gentibus:** § 27. **tantum eius opinionis:** object of **deperdidisse. se—deperdidisse:** indirect discourse governed by **dolebant,** the subject of which is (**ei**), antecedent of **qui,** l. 952.

The Treveri under the lead of Indutiomarus attack the camp of Labienus.

CHAPTER 55.

962. cum dicerent: compare §§ 171 and 172.

CHAPTER 56.

971. veniri: *that individuals and embassies were coming.*

972. facinoris: Caesar terms it a "crime" for men to attempt to gain freedom from Rome. Compare Book IV, l. 468.

975. hoc: nominative, refering to **armatum concilium.**

976. more: § 86. **quo:** (whither), *to which.*

977. armati: predicate adjective.

CHAPTER 57.

990. rei bene gerendae: *of gaining a success.*

991. cogitabat: (*but*) *was planning.*

996. sub: *close to.*

Indutiomarus being killed, Gaul is restored to quiet.

CHAPTER 58.

1008. magna contumelia verborum: (great insult of words), *most insulting words.*

1012. perterritis, etc.: (*that*), *when the enemy was,* etc.

1013. fore sic ut accidit: cf. Book IV, ll. 517 and 533.

1014. petant: § 212.

1016. spatium nactum effugere: (to escape, having found space), *find opportunity to escape.*

1018. hominis: = **eius,** i.e. Labienus.

1021. redeuntes equites: nominative; i.e. after killing Indutiomarus, they go after the rest. **quos:** *as many as.*

BOOKS VI AND VII.

CAMPAIGN OF 53 B.C.

The season of 53 B.C., which is the subject of Book VI, saw no great enterprise carried out by Caesar. The Gauls were restless, and Caesar contented himself with keeping them in order and taking vengeance upon certain sections for their temerity in attacking his troops. He also crossed the Rhine for the second time, but accomplished little on the German side of the river. On the whole, this was a season of comparative quiet in Gaul, though there were signs of the great storm which was to break in the following year.

Book VI contains also an interesting account of the manners and customs of the Gauls and Germans (Chapters 11–28).

CAMPAIGN OF 52 B.C.

In 52 B.C. occurred the last and greatest struggle for independence for Gaul, a thrilling narrative, well set forth in Book VII. Under the leadership of the greatest man of his race, Vercingetorix, the Celts rose to expel the invaders and set their country free. This young man was brave, energetic, able; but it was a hopeless struggle, and he became merely the martyr of a lost cause. The sympathy of all the world has been his for almost two thousand years, and so it will be while liberty has an advocate left.

The scene of these stirring events is in central Gaul. The people of this section had learned that Rome itself was rent with factional strife. Thinking that Caesar would be embarrassed by affairs at home, they determined to strike again for freedom. Caesar was in Italy. The legions were quartered at Agedincum, the chief town of the Senones in the north, two hundred miles from the centre of rebellion, which was in the country of the Arverni.

The first outbreak took place at Cenabum, one of the important towns of the Senones. This was attacked, and every Roman put to death. Within a day's time the news of this attack reached Gergovia, the capital of the Arverni and the home city of Vercingetorix. This was admirably located on a mountain two thousand feet above the sea. The country of the Arverni also was protected by a frontier

formed by the Cevennes Mountains, as yet blocked by snow to the depth of six feet. Consequently the Gauls never dreamed that Caesar, who had only a handful of troops, could cross this range, and Vercingetorix was a hundred miles away intent upon keeping Caesar from joining his troops. Suddenly, however, Caesar appeared in the plain, having shovelled a path over the mountains. Vercingetorix hastened home to protect his capital. But Caesar, leaving a small force, went back over the mountains, gathered some cavalry, and passed swiftly around Vercingetorix and Gergovia, and rejoined his troops at Agedincum. Thus the Gallic leader was outwitted and failed in his first design.

Vercingetorix knew full well that his vast army of undisciplined recruits would be no match for the Roman legions in a pitched battle, so he adopted the plan of burning and laying waste the whole country and thus starving the Romans. The Gauls burned their towns and farms. Twenty towns of the Bituriges were destroyed by fire in a single day. Avaricum, however, was not destroyed. This Caesar besieged and captured. Of forty thousand people within its walls only eight hundred escaped death. Gergovia, the mountain stronghold of the Arverni, was next attacked, but it could not be taken. After suffering a loss of forty-six officers and seven hundred men, the Romans gave up the attack and retired. This was the only failure ever encountered by Caesar in Gaul, when he was with the army in person.

This acknowledgment of defeat aroused tremendous enthusiasm among the Gauls. They had him beaten now, as they thought; so they were rash enough to risk a battle in open field. The result was their defeat with great loss and flight to Alesia, another mountain fortress, situated in the country of the Mandubii, on the slope of the modern Mont Auxois, where now stands the French village of Alise-Sainte-Reine. Into this town Vercingetorix passed with 80,000 men. Caesar immediately undertook the siege, and built the most elaborate works ever undertaken. The story of this attack and defence is wonderfully interesting as related in this book. The result was the final destruction of the army of Gaul and the capture of the brave young leader. Thus ended the campaign, and Gaul never more attempted to throw off the Roman power.

APPENDIX

APPENDIX

The grammars cited are those of Gildersleeve (G.), Allen & Greenough (A.),*Bennett (B.), Harkness (H.), and West (W.).

SYNTAX OF NOUNS

Agreement of Appositive and Predicate Substantive. G. 321, 211 ; A. 281–284 ; B. 169, 168 ; H. 393 ; W. 291, 292, 290.

1 RULE : An appositive or a predicate substantive agrees in case with the word it explains ; when possible, it agrees in gender and number also.

reperit ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, I. 18, 3, *he finds that Dumnorix is* THE VERY ONE. **cōniūrandī hās esse causās,** II. 1, 2, *that the causes of uniting were* THESE.

In these examples both words are accusative in Latin and nominative in English, but the rule holds equally.

2 An appositive is placed beside the word it explains without a connecting verb.

NOTE.—When an appositive has also a predicate force, it is often best shown in translation by inserting the word *as*.

hominēs bellicōsōs . . . fīnitimōs habēre, I. 10, 2, *to have warlike men* (AS) NEIGHBORS. **līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī iūssit,** II. 5, 1, *he ordered the children to be brought to him* (AS) HOSTAGES.

3 A predicate substantive occurs after **sum,** and **fīō,** *become,* **videor,** *seem, appear,* **appellor,** *be called,* etc. See § 17.

quī Celtae appellantur, I. 1, 1, *who are called* CELTS. So II. 4, 10.

4 An appositive may explain in part the word it modifies; e.g. **alius, alter, pars.** This is called *distributive apposition.*

Helvētiī, . . . aliī vadīs Rhodanī, I. 8, 4, *the Helvetians*. . .SOME *by the fords of the Rhone.*

* Find references to the New Latin Grammar of Allen & Greenough at end of the Vocabulary.

Nominative Case.

Subject of Verb. G. 203; A. 339; B. 170; H. 387; W. 289.

5 Rule: The subject of a finite verb (i.e. one that has person and number) is in the nominative.

The subject of an infinitive is regularly in the accusative (§ 257). But the subject of the historical infinitive is in the nominative (§ 258).

Vocative Case.

Vocative of Address. G. 201, Remark 1; A. 340; B. 171; H. 402; W. 307.

6 Rule: The name of a person or thing addressed is in the vocative.

It is independent of the rest of the sentence in construction, and therefore has no real syntax (i.e. relation to another word).

dēsilīte, commīlitōnēs, IV. 25, 6, *jump down,* FELLOWS!

Accusative Case.

Accusative of Direct Object. G. 328–330; A. 387, 388; B. 172–174; H. 404, 405; W. 308–310.

7 Rule: The direct object of a verb is in the accusative.

8 Many verbs of emotion and the like, which are intransitive in English, may be transitive in Latin; they then require the addition of a preposition in translating, as follows: **queror** *complain* (*of*), **contendō,** *strive* (*for*) **labōrō,** *labor* (*for*), **horreō,** *shudder* (*at*), **dēspērō,** *despair* (*of*), etc.; the last only in the ablative absolute passive (see vocabulary).

9 Some verbs of motion, usually intransitive, may be used transitively, especially **fugiō,** *flee,* and its compounds **dēfugiō** and **effugiō,** in the sense of *escape*, *shun* or *avoid.* See vocabulary.

Accusative with Compounds. G. 331; A. 388, *b*, 395; B. 175, 2, *a*, 179; H. 406, 413; W. 311.

10 Rule: Verbs compounded with prepositions take the accusative, *when they become transitive,* as follows: all with

circum, per, praeter, trāns and **subter,** many with **ad, in** and **super,** some with **ante, con, inter, ob** and **sub.**

id Helvētiī trānsībant, I. **12,** 1, THIS *the Helvetians* (were going across) *were crossing.* **suōs circumvenīre,** II. **8,** 4, *to surround* HIS MEN.

So **praecēdunt** in the following example, a very unusual use. See lexicons.

reliquōs Gallōs praecēdunt, I. **1,** 5, *they* (go before) *surpass* THE REST OF THE GAULS.

11 If the simple verb is transitive, the compound verb may take two accusatives, (1) one the object of the verb, (2) the other of the preposition. In the passive the object of the verb becomes the subject (1), the object of the preposition (2) remains accusative.

trēs partēs[1] **cōpiārum id flūmen**[2] **trādūxērunt,** I. **12,** 2, *they have led* THREE FOURTHS[1] *of their troops across* THIS RIVER.[2] So II. **5,** 4. **multitūdō**[1] **Rhēnum**[2] **trādūcitur,** I. **31,** 16, A GREAT NUMBER[1] *is being led across* THE RHINE.[2] So II. **4,** 1.

With many of these compounds the preposition may be repeated, but never **circum.**

Accusative of Inner Object (Accusative of Result Produced). G. 332, 333; A. 390, *c;* B. 176, 2; H. 409; W. 312, 313.

12 RULE: Neuter pronouns and adjectives are often used to define or modify the substantive idea that lies in the verb.

idem cōnārī, I. **3,** 5, (to attempt THE SAME THING), *make the same attempt.* **id eīs persuādēre,** I. **2,** 3, (to persuade them IT), *to persuade them of it,* or *to persuade them* (*to do*) *it.*

NOTE.—When this accusative takes the form of a noun of kindred derivation or signification with the verb, it is called the *cognate accusative.* Examples in English are,—*to dream a dream, to run a race, to see a sight* or *vision.*

triduī viam prōcēdere, I. **38,** 1, *to proceed* A *three days'* MARCH. So IV. **4,** 5.

Accusative of Extent in Degree (Adverbial Accusative). G. 334; A. 390, *c, d,* 397, *a;* B. 176, 3; H. 416, 2; W. 316.

13 RULE: The accusative is used adverbially to denote extent in degree.

This accusative answers the question, *How much? To what extent?* It is an extension of the preceding use (§ 12), and is mostly confined to the neuter singular of adjectives and pronouns (often classed as adverbs), e.g. **multum,** *much,* **plūs,** *more,* **plūrimum,** *very much, very, the*

most, **paulum,** *a little*, **nihil,** *not at all*, **quid** (indefinite), *at all*, **aliquid, nōn nihil,** *somewhat*, etc. It also includes some special expressions.

plūrimum posse, I. **3,** 7, II. **4,** 5, *to be* THE MOST *powerful.* **māximam partem vīvunt,** IV. **1,** 8, *they live* FOR THE MOST PART.

Accusative of Extent in Time and Space (Accusative of Duration of Time and Extent of Space). G. 335, 336; A. 423, 2, 425; B. 181, 1; H. 417; W. 324.

14 RULE: Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative.

This construction appears in English as one form of the *adverbial objective* (see translation of examples below). It answers the question, *How long? How far?* Or, with **longus, lātus** or **altus,** simply, *How?*

rēgnum multōs annōs obtinēre, I. **3,** 4, *to hold royal power* MANY YEARS. **mīlia passuum CCXL patēre,** I. **2,** 5, *to extend two hundred and forty* MILES.

Two Accusatives, one of the Person, the other of the Thing. G. 339; A. 396; B. 178; H. 411; W. 318.

15 RULE: Verbs of *asking, demanding, teaching* and *concealing* may govern two accusatives, (1) one of the person, (2) the other of the thing.

With verbs of *asking* and *teaching*, the English may also have the same construction, e.g. *he asked me*[1] *my opinion*,[2] *he teaches me*[1] *Latin*.[2] With the verb *to demand*, the name of the person is expressed with *of*; and with *to conceal*, with *from*, e.g. *he concealed it*[2] *from me*.[1]

Aeduōs[1] **frūmentum**[2] **flāgitāre,** I. **16,** 1, *he was demanding* (§ 258) GRAIN[2] (OF) THE AEDUANS.[1] Only example in the Bellum Gallicum.

In the (rare) passive of this construction, either of the accusatives may become nominative, the other remaining accusative.

NOTE.—Verbs of asking more frequently express the person by the ablative of source (§ 67).

ab eō pōstulāre, I. **34,** 1, *to demand* OF HIM.

Two Accusatives of the Same Person or Thing. G. 340; A. 393; B. 177; H. 410; W. 317.

16 RULE: Verbs of *naming, making, choosing, calling, regarding, showing* and the like may govern two accusatives of the same person or thing.

quem vergobretum appellant, I. **16,** 5, WHOM *they call* "VERGO-

BRET." **Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, I. 11,** 4, (they make CAESAR MORE CERTAIN), *they inform Caesar.*

17 In the passive of this construction the first accusative becomes subject nominative, the second a predicate nominative (§ 3).

(Caesar) certior fīēbat, II. **1,** I, (CAESAR was made MORE CERTAIN), *Caesar was informed.* See also example under § 3.

Two Accusatives with Compounds. See § 11.

Terminal Accusative (Place to Which, Place Whither). See § 94.

Accusative, Subject of Infinitive. See § 257.

Accusative with Prepositions. G. 416 ; A. 220, *a;* B. 141 ; H. 420 ; W. 242.

18 The accusative is used with all prepositions which do not govern the ablative. For the list of the latter and of those that govern either case, see § 90.

DATIVE CASE.

Dative of Indirect Object with Transitive Verbs. G. 345; A. 362–365; B. 187, I; H. 424; W. 326, 327.

19 RULE: The dative is used to denote the indirect object, with transitive verbs which already have a direct object expressed or understood in the active voice, or which are in the passive.

It is translated in English by the indirect object or by *to* or *for*, and may be distinguished from other uses of the dative translated by the same prepositions by inquiring if it *can* be translated by an indirect object.

eī fīliam suam dat, I. 3, 5, *he gives* HIM *his daughter*, or, *he gives his daughter* TO HIM. **ea rēs est Helvētiīs ēnūntiāta, I. 4,** I, *this conspiracy was made known* TO THE HELVETIANS, or, *was told* THE HELVETIANS. **illīs rēgna conciliāre, I. 3,** 6, *to win* (FOR) THEM *the power.*

20 Some verbs, especially **dōnō**, *present*, **circumdō**, *put around, surround*, and **circumiciō**, *throw around*, may take either (1) the dative of the person and (2) the accusative of the thing, or (3) the accusative of the person and (4) the ablative (of means) of the thing. See next page.

patrem[3] **cīvitāte**[4] **dōnāre, I. 47,** 4, *to present* HIS FATHER[3] WITH CITIZENSHIP;[4] this might have been written, **patrī**[1] **cīvitātem**[2] **dōnāre,** *to present* HIS FATHER[1] CITIZENSHIP.[2] Compare VII. **11,** 9.
circumiectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus, II. **6,** 2, (a multitude of men having been thrown around THE WHOLE WALLS), *after stationing a large force of men all around the walls.*

21 In Caesar **circumdō** always takes the accusative and the ablative, except in VII. **72,** 3, where there is the accusative of the thing and the locative ablative.

Dative of Indirect Object with Intransitive Verbs. G. 346; A. 366; B. 187, II; H. 424; W. 330.

22 RULE: The dative is used to denote the indirect object with intransitive verbs.

fortūnae cēdere, VII. **89,** 2, *to yield* TO FORTUNE.

Under this construction is included the so-called

Dative with Special Verbs. G. 346; A. 367; B. 187, II. *a*; H. 426, 1, 2; W. 330 f.

23 RULE: With certain verbs the Latin uses a dative which with the corresponding English verbs is translated by an objective. These are,—

"Verbs of *advantage* or *disadvantage, yielding* and *resisting, pleasure* and *displeasure, bidding* and *forbidding.*"—GILDERSLEEVE.

"Most verbs signifying to *favor, help, please, trust,* and their contraries; also to *believe, persuade, command, obey, serve, resist, envy, threaten, pardon, spare.*"—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH.

"Verbs signifying *favor, help, injure, please, displease, trust, distrust, command, obey, serve, resist, indulge, spare, pardon, envy, threaten, believe, persuade,* and the like."—BENNETT.

"Verbs meaning to *please* or *displease, command* or *obey, serve* or *resist, benefit* or *injure, favor* or *oppose, trust* or *distrust,* and the like; and to *indulge, aid, spare, pardon, believe, persuade, flatter, threaten, envy, be angry,* and the like."—HARKNESS.

"Verbs meaning to *favor, please, trust, assist,* and their opposites; *command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, pardon, spare, persuade,* and the like."—WEST.

A dative put, remember, pray,
After *envy, spare, obey,*
Persuade, believe, command; to these
Add *pardon, succor* and *displease;*
With **vacāre,** *to have leisure,*
And **placēre,** *to give pleasure,*
With **nūbere,** of the woman said,
The English of it is *to wed.*
Servīre add, and add **studēre,**
Heal, favor, hurt, resist and **indulgēre.**

cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (THE STATE) THE CITIZENS *to emigrate.* **novīs imperiīs studēre, II. 1,** 3, *to desire* CHANGES OF GOVERNMENT.

24 The verbs in the Bellum Gallicum that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: **persuādeō** (17), **studeō** (16), **noceō** (6), **parcō** (6), **resistō** (5), **īgnōscō** (3), **indulgeō** (3), **placeō** (3), **pareō** (3), **cōnfīdō** (3), **dēspērō** (3), **diffīdō** (2), **serviō** (2), **faveō** (2), **imperō** (2), **cupiō** (1), **dēnūntiō** (1), **invideō** (1), **medeor** (1), **temperō** (1), **obtemperō** (1), **repūgnō** (1); perhaps also **prōsum** (1), **cōnsulō** (9), **prōspiciō** (2); and **audiēns sum** (4) = **oboediō,** *obey,* and **fidem habeō** (1) = **cōnfīdō;** and **satis faciō** (4).

25 Some of these verbs may also take as a direct object an accusative of a neuter pronoun, an accusative and infinitive, or a clause. But the English, having translated the dative by a direct object, has to express the Latin accusative by some other method. See the first example under § 23 and the second under § 12.

26 In the passive these verbs are used impersonally, thus: **mihi persuādētur, I. 40,** 3, (it is persuaded me), *I am persuaded.* So **tibi persuādētur,** *you are persuaded,* **eī persuādētur,** etc.

Dative with Verbs compounded with Prepositions. G. 347; A. 370–372; B. 187, III; H. 429; W. 332.

27 RULE: The dative of indirect object is used with many (but not all) verbs compounded with **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, post, prae, prō, sub, super,** and sometimes with **circum.**

This dative is due to the meaning of the compound verb and really follows the principles laid down in §§19, 22 and 23.

1. When one of these prepositions is compounded with a transitive verb, there may be both an accusative and a dative, and the construction is that of § 19; the dative is usually rendered as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin verb.

fīnitimīs bellum īnferre, I. 2, 4, *to wage war on* THEIR NEIGHBORS. **hīs lēgātōs praefēcit, II. 11,** 3, *he placed legati in command of* THESE.

2. When the simple verb is intransitive the construction is the same as that of § 22; if the English verb used in translation is transitive, the dative is translated by the objective (compare § 23); otherwise as the object of a preposition suggested by the Latin.

omnibus praestāre, I. 2, 1, *to surpass* ALL. **Rēmīs studium prōpūgnandī accēssit, II. 7,** 2, (a desire of fighting forth came to THE REMI), *a disposition to make sorties was inspired in the Remi.*

The *intransitive* verbs in the Bellum Gallicum that take the dative under this rule, with the number of times the dative is used with them, are as follows: **appropinquō** (11), **occurrō** (10), **succēdō** (6), **subveniō** (4), **obveniō** (3), **intercēdō** (2), **succurrō** (2), **accēdō** (1), **adsum** (1), **īnsistō** (1), **obsistō** (1), **praestō** (1), **succumbō** (1), **intersum** (1).

Note.—The passive of these verbs must be used impersonally; compare § 26.

Quibus rēbus occurrendum est, I. 33, 5, (it must be run against WHICH THINGS), *these conditions must be met.* **huīc reī praevertendum exīstimāvit, VII. 33,** 3, THIS MATTER *he thought should be forestalled.*

Dative of Reference. G. 345, 352; A. 376–379; B. 188; H. 425, 4; W. 335.

28 RULE: The dative denotes the person with reference to whom a statement is true.

This use of the dative may be tested by trying the translation "*with reference to*"; it is frequently rendered by a possessive. It does not modify the verb directly but belongs to the thought of the whole predicate.

Caesarī ad pedēs sēsē prōiēcērunt, I. 31, 2, (they threw themselves, WITH REFERENCE TO CAESAR, at his feet), *they threw themselves at Caesar's feet.* **mīlitibus spem minuit, V. 33,** 1, (WITH REFERENCE TO THE SOLDIERS, it lessened hope), *it lessened the soldiers' hope.*

Dative of Separation. G. 345, 1; A. 381; B. 188, 2, *d;* H. 427; W. 337.

29 This term is applied to a dative of reference which occurs with verbs of *taking away* and the like, usually with verbs compounded with **ab, dē** or **ex.** It is usually best translated as the object of the preposition *from,* suggested by the verb, though the Latin thought was simply *with reference to* (§ 28).

Aeduīs lībertātem ēripere, I. 17, 4, *to take away liberty* FROM THE AEDUANS. **hostibus spēs discēssit, II. 7,** 2, FROM THE ENEMY *hope departed.*

Dative of the Possessor. G. 349; A. 373; B. 190; H. 430; W. 340.

30 RULE: The dative is used with forms of the verb **sum** to denote the person possessing the subject.

In this construction three points are to be noticed:

	Person Possessing.	*Verb.*	*Thing Possessed.*
Latin	**mihi,** dative	**est**	**liber,** nominative
English	*I,* nominative	*have*	*a book,* objective

nōbīs nihil est, I. 11, 5, (nothing is TO US), *we have nothing.* **nōbīs est in animō iter facere, I. 7,** 3, (to make a march is TO US in mind; WE have it in mind to march), *we intend to march.* **potestās erat nūllī, II. 6,** 3, (the power was TO NO ONE, NO ONE had the power), *no one could.*

Some compounds of **sum,** especially **absum** and **dēsum,** also take this construction.

Dative of (Apparent) Agent. G. 354, A. 374; B. 189; H. 431; W. 339.

31 RULE: The dative is used to denote the agent with the passive periphrastic conjugation or the gerundive alone.

Since the preposition *by* is used to express agency in English, it must be employed in translating this dative. For the passive periphrastic conjugation, see § 278.

mihi exspectandum est, I. 11, 6, (it must be waited BY ME), *I must wait.* **omnibus Gallīs idem est faciendum, I. 31,** 14, *the same thing must be done* BY ALL THE GAULS. **(mihi) dubitandum est, II. 2,** 5, (it ought to be hesitated BY ME), *I ought to hesitate.*

Dative of the Object for Which (Dative of Purpose or End). G. 356; A. 382; B. 191; H. 433; W. 341–343.

32 RULE : A dative is used to denote the object for which a thing serves, or the purpose of an action.

This may be accompanied by another dative of indirect object or of reference, and the construction is then sometimes termed the *double dative,—object for which* and *person to whom.*

The dative of the object for which is literally translated as the object of the preposition *for;* but the best translation when used with a form of **sum** is by a predicate noun; in most other cases after *as.*

equitātus quem auxiliō Caesarī Aeduī mīserant, I. 18, 10, *the cavalry which the Aeduans had sent to Caesar* (FOR AID), AS AN AUXILIARY FORCE. So II. 8, 5. **Gallīs impedīmentō erat, I. 25,** 3, *it was* (for) A DISADVANTAGE *to the Gauls.* **praesidiō impedīmentīs erant, II. 19,** 3, (were FOR A GUARD to the baggage), *guarded the baggage.*

Dative with Adjectives. G. 359; A. 383–385; B. 192; H. 434; W. 333.

33 RULE : Adjectives of *likeness, fitness, friendliness, nearness,* and the like, with their opposites, are modified by a dative.

proximī Germānīs I. 1, 4, *nearest* (TO) THE GERMANS So **II. 3,** 1. **castrīs idoneus, I. 49,** 1, **II. 17,** 1, *suitable* FOR A CAMP.

An adverb derived from such an adjective may also take this construction.

legiōnī fēlīciter, IV. 25, 3, *fortunately* FOR THE LEGION.

NOTE.—**Propior** and **proximus,** and corresponding adverbs, *may* govern the accusative, as if prepositions.

proximī Rhēnum, I. 54, 1, *nearest* THE RHINE. So **III. 7,** 2.

GENITIVE CASE.

I. Genitive with Nouns.

Adnominal Genitive (Genitive with Nouns). G. 360, 1; A. 342; B. 195; H. 439; W. 347.

34 RULE : A substantive in the genitive is used to limit or describe another usually denoting a different person or thing.

The genitive with nouns is usually equivalent to the English possessive case or to the objective with *of*, but the following subdivisions of its use need to be distinguished.

Appositional Genitive. G. 361, 1; A. 343, *d;* B. 202; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

35 The genitive is sometimes used in the sense of an appositive after such words as **vox,** *expression,* **nōmen,** *name,* **verbum,** *word,* etc.

nōmen obsidum, III. 2, 5, *the name* (of) HOSTAGES.

Epexigetical Genitive (Explanatory Genitive, Genitive of Material). G. 361, 2; A. 344; B. 197; H. 440, 4; W. 348.

36 The genitive is sometimes used to explain the noun it modifies.

locus grātiae, I. 18, 8, *a position* OF FAVOR. **cōpia pābulī,** II. 2, 1, *plenty* OF FODDER.

Possessive Genitive. G. 362; A. 343; B. 198; H. 440, 1; W. 353.

37 The possessive genitive designates a person, more rarely a thing, to whom something (denoted by the modified noun) belongs. It may include the idea of origin or of fitness.

fīnēs Belgārum, I. 1, 5, II. 2, 6, *the territory* OF THE BELGIANS.

38 Possession in the first and second persons and in the third person *if reflexive* is indicated by the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns), instead of by the genitive of a personal pronoun. But when **omnium** is added, **nostrum** and **vestrum** (genitives plural of **ego** and **tū**) are used. Distinguish these forms from **nostrī** and **vestrī,** used as objective genitives (§ 43).

prōvinciam nostram, I. 2, 3, OUR *province.* **suīs fīnibus,** I. 1, 4, *from* THEIR OWN *territory.* **in eōrum fīnibus,** I. 1, 4, *in* THEIR (i.e. some one's else) *territory.* **omnium vestrum cōnsēnsū,** VII. 77, 4, *by the consent* OF YOU *all.*

Subjective and Objective Genitives. G. 363, 364; A. 343, Note 1, 348; B. 199, 200; H. 440, 1, 2; W. 350, 351.

39 The subjective genitive (§ 39) and the objective genitive (§40) are
40 used *only with nouns having corresponding verbal ideas.*

When the thought of the two words is expanded into a sentence, the genitive is *subjective* if it would become the subject of an active verb in such a sentence, *objective* if it would become the object of an active verb or the subject of a passive verb, or any adverbial modifier.

The subjective may also be described as denoting the one *on whose part* the action takes place or the condition is true; the objective as denoting that *toward which* the action is directed, or *with reference to which* the condition is true.

SUBJECTIVE: **occāsus sōlis, I. 1,** 7, (the setting OF THE SUN), *sunset;* the sun sets; the setting on the part of the sun. **omnium opīniō, II. 3,** 1, *the expectation* OF ALL; all expected; expectation on the part of all. **patrum nostrōrum memoria, II. 4,** 2, *the memory* (OF OUR FATHERS) *of the last generation;* our fathers remembered; memory on the part of our fathers.

OBJECTIVE: **rēgnī cupiditās, I. 2,** 1, *desire* (of) FOR ROYAL POWER; royal power was desired; desire directed toward royal power. **eārum rērum memoria, II., 4,** 3, *the memory* OF THESE DEEDS; remembering these deeds.

41 The sense is the only guide to the relation of the two nouns, for in an isolated expression it may be impossible to tell which is meant. E.g. **amor Deī,** *the love of God,* may mean in either Latin or English, (1) *the love which God has for some one, love on the part of God* (God loves), subjective, or (2), *the love which some one has for God, love directed toward God* (God is loved), objective.

To avoid this ambiguity both languages may substitute prepositional phrases for the objective genitive, Latin **in, ergā,** English *for, toward, to.*

Dīviciācī (subjective) **summum in populum Rōmānum studium, I. 19,** 2, *the great devotion* OF DIVICIACUS TO THE ROMAN PEOPLE. **dēspectus in mare, III. 14,** 9, *a view* OF THE SEA. So **ergā, V. 54,** 4.

42 Both these genitives may be connected with the same noun.

veterēs Helvētiōrum (subjective) **iniūriae populī Rōmānī** (objective), **I. 30,** 2, (THE HELVETIANS' ancient injuries OF THE ROMAN PEOPLE), *the ancient injuries inflicted by the Helvetians upon the Roman people.*

43 The subjective genitive, like the possessive (§ 38), is used only of the third person, not reflexive. For the first and second persons and the third person *if reflexive,* the possessive adjectives (possessive pronouns) are used. But for the objective relation in such cases the forms **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī** and **vestrī** are generally used.

SUBJECTIVE: **suī mōrēs, I. 4,** 1, THEIR *customs.* **nostra memoria, II. 4,** 7, OUR *memory.* But, **scelus eōrum, I. 14,** 5, THEIR *crime.* OBJECTIVE: **suī potestās, I. 40,** 8, *a chance* OF (*getting at*) HIM. But **suum perīculum, IV. 28,** 2, *danger* TO THEMSELVES.

Genitive of Quality (Descriptive Genitive, Genitive of Characteristic). G. 365; A. 345; B. 203; H. 440, 3; W. 354.

44 The genitive, *when modified by an adjective or its equivalent,* is used to denote a quality.

levis armātūrae Numidae, II. 10, 1, (Numidians OF LIGHT ARMOR), *light-armed Numidians.* **hominēs māgnae virtūtis,** II. 15, 4, *men* OF GREAT BRAVERY.

With this use compare the ablative of quality (§ 80). The use of the genitive is limited chiefly to essential qualities and is therefore used of number, measure, time and space; but often the use seems indifferent.

45 Under this use is included the *genitive of measure.* **trium mēnsium molita cibaria,** I. 5, 3, THREE MONTHS' *flour;* i.e. *flour enough to last three months.*

NOTE 1. The adjective may be implied in the noun.

triduī viam, I. 38, 1, IV. 4, 5, *a* THREE DAYS' *march.*

NOTE 2. This genitive may be connected with the predicate.

erat altitūdō pedum trium, II. 18, 3, *the depth was* (OF) THREE FEET.

Predicate Possessive Genitive. G. 366; A. 343, *b;* B. 198, 3; H. 439, second part, and 3; W. 359, 360.

46 The possessive genitive may be used in the predicate, with a form of **sum** or a similar verb. **Sum** with this construction may often be translated *belong to.*

quid suī sit cōnsiliī ostendit, I. 21, 2, *he shows* (what is OF HIS PLAN, what belongs to his plan), *what his plan includes.* **iūdicium est imperātōris,** I. 41, 3, *the decision is* THE COMMANDER'S, *belongs to the commander.* **Gallia est Ariovistī,** I. 45, 1, *Gaul belongs* TO ARIOVISTUS.

Partitive Genitive (Genitive of the Whole). G. 367–372; A. 346; B. 201; H. 440, 5–444; W. 355–358.

47 The partitive genitive denotes the whole of a class, of which the modified noun denotes a part. It is used especially as follows:

48 (1) With substantives of quantity, number and weight. This use is often hardly to be distinguished from the genitive of material (§ 36).

carrōrum numerus, I. 3, 1, *a number* OF CARTS. **multitūdō eōrum,** II. 11, 4, *a great number* OF THEM.

49 (2) With the neuter singular of many adjectives and pronouns of quantity, in the nominative and accusative. *Here the English uses no preposition.*

nihil reliquī, I. **11**, 5, *nothing* (of) LEFT. **minus dubitātiōnis**, I. **14**, 1, *less* (of) HESITATION. **satis causae**, I. **19**, 1, *sufficient* (of) REASON, *reason enough.* **tantum quantum locī**, II. **8**, 3, (so much as OF PLACE), *as much* SPACE. **nihil vīnī**, II. **15**, 4, (nothing OF WINE), *no* WINE.

This genitive is often widely separated from its noun. E.g. **quid . . . auxiliī**, I. **31**, 14; **quid . . . negōtiī**, I. **34**, 4.

NOTE.—Adjectives of the second declension can be used as substantives in the neuter in this construction; e.g. **reliquī** (see above). But adjectives of the third declension cannot be so used, unless (rarely) when combined with one of the second.

50 (3) With numerals, both general and special if used substantively; *with the latter the English uses no preposition.*

GENERAL: **multī eōrum**, V. **22**, 2, *many* OF THEM. SPECIAL: **mīlia passuum**, I. **2**, 5, II. **6**, 1, (thousands OF PACES), *miles.* **hominum mīlia**, I. **26**, 5, II. **28**, 2, (thousands OF MEN), *thousand men.*

51 **Uterque** is commonly used as an adjective with nouns but as a substantive with pronouns.

uterque eōrum, VII. **32**, 3, *each* OF THEM. Not so, however, II. **16**, **2**, and IV. **17**, **6**.

52 (4) With comparatives and superlatives, of either adjectives or adverbs.

Hōrum fortissimī, I. **1**, 3, *the bravest* OF THESE. **tōtīus Galliae plūrimum possunt**, I. **3**, 7, *they are the most powerful* (§ 13) OF ALL GAUL. **quārum interior**, VII. **72**, 3, *the interior* OF WHICH.

53 Instead of the partitive genitive with numerals, pronouns, comparatives and superlatives, the ablative with **dē** or **ex**, or, less often, the accusative with **inter** or **apud**, may be used; especially with cardinals (except **ūnus** when denoting the first of a series) and with **quīdam**. In such cases these prepositions should be translated *of.*

paucī dē nostrīs, I. **15**, 2, *a few* OF OUR MEN. **proximī ex Belgīs**, II. **3**, 1, *the nearest* OF THE BELGIANS.

Genitive with Prepositional Substantives. G. 373; A. 359, *b;* B. 198, 1, 2, 201, 3; H. 475, 2, 446, 4, 5; W. 348, 349.

54 The genitive precedes **causā** and **grātiā**, *because, on account, for the sake, for the purpose.* Examples follow on next page.

hūius potentiae causā, I. 18, 6, *for the sake* OF (*increasing*) THIS POWER. **reī frūmentāriae causā**, I. 39, 1, *for the purpose* OF (*procuring*) GRAIN; *for grain*. **auxiliī causā**, II. 24, 4, (for the purpose OF AID), *as an auxiliary force*.

55 A gerund or gerundive preceding **causā** or **grātiā** forms an expression of purpose.

suī mūniendī causā, I. 44, 6, (for the purpose OF PROTECTING HIMSELF), *to protect himself*; see § 272. **pūgnandī causā**, II. 10, 4, (for the purpose OF FIGHTING), *to fight;* see § 267.

56 The genitive **ēius diēī** is used with the adverbs **prīdiē** and **postrīdiē** (old case forms; see vocabulary). In the Bellum Gallicum, **prīdiē** is used alone four times and with the genitive once; **postrīdiē**, six times, always with the genitive.

prīdiē ēius diēī, I. 47, 2, *the day before* (THIS DAY). **postrīdiē ēius diēī**, I. 23, 1, *the day after* (THIS DAY); *the next day*.

57 The genitive is used with the indeclinable noun **īnstar**, *likeness*.

īnstar mūrī, II. 17, 4, (the likeness OF A WALL), *like a wall*. Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

II. Genitive with Adjectives.

(Objective) Genitive with Adjectives. G. 374; A. 349; B. 204, 1; H. 450, 451, 1, 2; W. 352.

58 RULE: The objective genitive is used with some adjectives denoting *fulness* and *want*, *participation*, *power*, *knowledge*, and *ignorance*, *desire* and *disgust*.

"*Desire, knowledge, memory, fulness, power, sharing, guilt* and their opposites."—ALLEN AND GREENOUGH. "*Desire, knowledge, familiarity, memory, participation, power, fulness* and their opposites."—BENNETT. "*Desire, knowledge, skill, recollection,* and the like, with their contraries." —HARKNESS.

bellandī cupidus, I. 2, 4, *desirous* OF CARRYING ON WAR. **cūius reī perītissimus**, III. 21, 3, *very skilled* IN SUCH MATTERS.

This construction occurs in the Bellum Gallicum 21 times, as follows: —with **perītus** (3), **imperītus** (6), **cupidus** (4), **medius** (3), **īnsuētus** (2), **plēnus** (1), **cōnscius** (1), and with **similis** in the phrase **vērī simile**, III. 13, 6; elsewhere **similis** takes the dative (§ 33).

The corresponding English meanings do not always admit *of* as a following preposition; the proper ones in such cases are suggested in the vocabulary.

III. Genitive with Verbs.

Genitive with Verbs of Memory. G. 376; A. 350, 351; B. 206; H. 454; W. 364.

59 RULE: Verbs of *reminding, remembering* and *forgetting* govern the genitive.

This genitive is translated by the objective in English.

reminīscere veteris incommodī, I. 13, 4, *remember* THE FORMER DEFEAT. So with **oblīvīscor, I. 14,** 3 and **VII. 34,** I. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Emotion (Genitive with Impersonals). G. 377; A. 354; B. 209; H. 457; W. 368.

60 RULE: **Misereor** and the impersonals **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet,** take[1] the accusative of the person and[2] the genitive of the thing.

cōnsilia, quōrum[2] **eōs**[1] **paenitet, IV. 5,** 3, *plans,* OF WHICH[2] (it repents THEM[1]) THEY *repent.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Judicial Action. G. 378; A. 352; B. 208; H. 456; W. 367.

61 RULE: Verbs of *accusing, convicting, condemning* and *acquitting* govern the genitive of the charge.

inīquitātis condemnārī, VII. 19, 5, *to be condemned* FOR MISCONDUCT. **prōditiōnis īnsimulātus, VII. 20,** I, *accused* OF TREASON. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

Genitive with Verbs of Buying, Selling and Rating (Genitive of Price or Value). G. 379; A. 417; B. 203, 3, 4; H. 448; W. 361–363.

62 RULE: With verbs of *buying, selling* and *rating* the genitive is usually employed to express indefinite price.

tantī tua apud mē grātia est, I. 20, 5, *your favor with me* (is worth so MUCH, is OF SO GREAT ACCOUNT), *is so great.* **cūius auctōritās māgnī habēbātur, IV. 21,** 7, *whose influence was considered* (OF GREAT WEIGHT), *great.* Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum besides the two under the following rule.

Genitive with *Interest* and *Rēfert*. G. 381, 382; A. 355; B. 212, 2; H. 458, 3; W. 369.

63 RULE: **Interest** and **rēfert,** *it concerns,* take[1] a genitive of the person, rarely of the thing, concerned.

The degree[2] of concern is expressed by an adverb, an adverbial accusative, or a genitive of value.

The thing[3] about which there is concern is expressed by the subject, which may be a neuter pronoun, an infinitive with subject accusative, or an indirect question.

docet quantō opere[2] reī pūblicae[1] intersit manūs[3] hostium distinērī,[3] II. 5, 2, *he shows* (HOW GREATLY[2] it concerns), *how important it is to* THE REPUBLIC,[1] *that* THE FORCES[3] *of the enemy* BE DIVIDED.[3] This is the only example of (1) in the Bellum Gallicum. **māgnī[2] interest,** with accusative and infinitive, V. 4, 3, VI. 1, 3, *it* GREATLY *concerns, it is* OF GREAT IMPORTANCE. **neque interest, ipsōsne[3] interficiāmus an impedīmentīs exuāmus,[3]** VII. 14, 8, *and* (it does not concern *us*), *it makes no difference,* WHETHER[3] WE KILL THEM OUTRIGHT, OR[3] STRIP THEM OF THEIR BAGGAGE. These are the only instances of **interest** in the Bellum Gallicum; **rēfert** does not occur.

Genitive with Verbs of Plenty and Want. See § 65, note.

Genitive with *Potior*. See § 73, note.

ABLATIVE CASE.

64 The ablative case unites in its different uses the functions of three cases that were originally distinct in form and meaning,—the true ablative (**ab, ferō**), denoting separation, the instrumental and the locative.

Ablative of Separation. G. 390; A. 400–402; B. 214; H. 461–466; W. 374–377.

65 RULE: Separation is expressed by the ablative sometimes with, sometimes without, the prepositions **ab, dē** or **ex.**

The preposition is regularly omitted with verbs and adjectives of *freeing, excluding, depriving, lacking, abstaining* and *removing,* but is expressed if the substantive denotes a person.

Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna dīvidit, I. 1, 2, *the Garonne separates the Gauls* FROM THE AQUITANIANS. **suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent,** I. 1, 4, *they keep them* (forth FROM) *out of* THEIR OWN TERRITORY.

tūta ab hostibus, II. **5,** *safe* FROM THE ENEMY. **ab hīs castrīs oppidum aberat,** II. **6,** 1, FROM THIS CAMP *a town was distant.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive may be used with certain verbs of *plenty and want.* The Bellum Gallicum shows but one example.

auxiliī egēre, VI. **11,** 4, (to be destitute OF AID), *to lack aid.*

66 The words with which the ablative of separation is used without a preposition can be learned only by practice. The following list contains all the verbs that are *ever* used without a preposition in the Bellum Gallicum. The first number in parenthesis indicates the number of times it is used *with* a preposition, the second the number of times it is used *without* a preposition.

Verbs and adjectives of *freeing,* etc. (§ 65): **abstineō** (1, **ā mulieribus;** 1, **proeliō**), **careō** (0; 2), **dēpellō** (0; 3), **dēspoliō** (0; 1), **exspoliō** (0; 1), **exuō** (0; 1), **interclūdō** (6, not collective or personal; 2, **ab exercitū, ā praesidiō et impedīmentīs**), **interdīcō** (0; 3), **levō** (0; 1), **līberō** (0; 3), **nūdō** (0; 2), **spoliō** (0; 3), **supersedeō** (0; 1).

Other verbs: **absum** (25; 1, **tōtō bellō**), **cēdō** (0; 1, **locō**), **dēcidō** (0; 1, **equō**), **dēiciō** (0; 6), **dēsistō** (0; 8), **ēdūcō** * (18, including **castrīs;** 2, **castrīs**), **ēgredior** * (13; 5), **ēruptiōnem faciō** (1, **ex oppidō;** 4, **portīs,** including idea of means), **excēdō** * (6; 10), **expellō** (2, **ex cīvitāte, ex silvīs;** 6), **labor** (0; 1, **spē**), **praecipitō** (0; 1, **mūrō**), **prohibeō,** in sense of *keep away* (2; 14), **prohibeō** in other senses (5; 0).

Ablative of Place from Which (Place Whence). See § 91.

Ablative of Origin (Source). G. 395, 396; A. 403; B. 215; H. 467, 469, 470; W. 378.

67 RULE: Origin or source is expressed by the ablative, generally with **ab** or **ex.**

Besides the ordinary forms of source, this use includes *parentage* and *material.* Parentage is expressed without a preposition except in the case of remote ancestors, when **ab** is used, and in the case of personal pronouns, when **ex** is used. Material is expressed with **dē** or **ex.**

SOURCE: **ab aliquō quaerere,** cf. I. **18,** 2, II. **4,** 1, *to inquire* (FROM) *of* ANY ONE. **ex sōlō quaerere,** I. **18,** 2, *to inquire* OF (*him*) ALONE. **Rhēnus oritur ex Lepontiīs,** IV. **10,** 3, *the Rhine rises* (FROM) *among* THE LEPONTII. MATERIAL: **nāvēs factae ex robore,** III. **13,** 3, *ships made* (out) OF OAK. PARENTAGE: **amplissimō genere**

* Takes and omits preposition, sometimes with the same noun, without apparent difference in meaning.

nātus, IV. 12, 4, (born) OF MOST DISTINGUISHED FAMILY. **ortī ab Germānīs, II. 4,** 1, (SPRUNG FROM THE GERMANS), *of German descent.*

Ablative of Agent. G. 401, second part; A. 405; B. 216; H. 468; W. 379.

68 RULE: Agency is regularly expressed by the ablative with **ab,** except in connection with the gerundive.

This ablative answers the question, *By whom?* It is the name of a person and is used with the passive voice.

quī ā senātū amīcus appellātus erat, I. 3, 4, *who had been called friend* BY THE SENATE. **quod ab nōn nūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, II. 1,** 3, *because they were stirred up* BY SOME (OF THE) GAULS.

For the dative of the agent see § 31.

The person through whom an action takes place is expressed by the accusative with **per.**

Ablative of Comparison. G. 398; A. 406, 407; B. 217; H. 471; W. 380.

69 When a comparison between two substantives is expressed in full, the comparative word is usually followed by **quam,** *than,* with the second substantive in the same case as the first. This construction may sometimes be condensed, however, in Latin, as follows:

RULE: The ablative may be used after comparatives, instead of **quam** with the nominative or accusative.

This ablative is translated by *than* with the case of the first substantive.

nōn amplius quīnīs mīlibus passuum, I. 15, 5, *not more* THAN FIVE MILES (*a day*). So II. **7,** 3, 4.

70 After **plūs, minus, amplius** and **longius, quam** *may* be omitted without changing the construction to the ablative. In such cases *than* must be supplied in translation.

spatium quod nōn amplius pedum sēscentōrum, I. 38, 5, *a distance which is not more* (*than*) (OF) SIX HUNDRED FEET (§ 45). **flūmen nōn amplius mīlia passuum X abest, II. 16,** 1, *the river is not more* (*than*) *ten* MILES *away* (§ 99).

Ablative of Means or Instrument. G. 401; A. 409, *c;* B. 218; H. 466; W. 386.

71 RULE: Means or instrument is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *By what means?* It is translated with the prepositions *by* or *with*, when the sense of these is *by means of*. It is almost always the name of a *thing;* if of a person, it is one considered as a "tool."

flūmine continētur, I. 1, 5, *it is bounded* BY THE RIVER. **legiōne mīlitibusque** mūrum perdūcit, I, 8, 1, WITH THE LEGION AND THE SOLDIERS *he constructs a wall.* **lītterīs** certior fīēbat, II. 1, 1, *he was informed* BY THE DISPATCHES.

72 This ablative is sometimes translated otherwise than as above; for example, when some other idea that is denoted by the ablative is combined with it, or when the English thought is different from the Latin.

proeliīs contendere, I. 1, 4, *to contend* IN BATTLES. **dolō** nītī, I. 13, 6, *to rely* ON TREACHERY. **flūmine** subvehere, I. 16, 3, *to bring up* (by) THE RIVER. **vīribus** cōnfīdere, I. 53, 2, *to rely* ON ONE'S STRENGTH. **victōriīs** frētī, III. 21, 1, *relying* ON THEIR VICTORIES. **peditātū** contentus, VII. 64, 2, *content* WITH INFANTRY.

Ablative with Deponents. G. 407; A. 410; B. 218, 1; H. 477. I; W. 387.

73 RULE: The ablative of means is used with **ūtor**, *use,* **fruor**, *enjoy,* **fungor**, *perform,* **potior**, *obtain* (*control of*), **vēscor**, *eat,* and their compounds.

This ablative is translated by the objective in English.

imperiō potīrī, I. 2, 2, *to obtain* CONTROL. **eōdem iūre et iīsdem lēgibus** ūtī, II. 3, 5, (to use THE SAME RIGHT and THE SAME LAWS), *to have the same constitution and the same laws.*

NOTE. Instead of the ablative, the genitive is once used with **potior** in the Bellum Gallicum.

tōtīus Galliae potīrī, I. 3, 8, *to obtain control* OF ALL GAUL.

Ablative with *opus* and *ūsus*. G. 406; A. 411; B. 218, 2; H. 477, III.; W. 389.

74 RULE: The ablative of means is used with **opus** (indeclinable), *need,* and **ūsus**, *need,* to denote the thing needed.

sī quid (acc.) **opus** (nom.) **factō erit,** I. **42,** 5, (if there shall be need at all, § 13), *if there is any need* OF ACTION. **sī quō opus erit,** II. **8,** 5, (if there shall be need OF ANYTHING), *if there is any need.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum.

Ablative of Price. G. 404; A. 416; B. 225; H. 478; W. 395.

75 RULE: Price is expressed by the ablative when **pretiō** or a similar word is used, or when the amount is definite.

parvō pretiō, I. **18,** 3, AT A SMALL PRICE. So IV. **2,** 2. **levī mōmentō,** VII. **39,** 3, OF SLIGHT CONSEQUENCE. **quantō dētrīmentō victōria cōnstet,** VII. **19,** 4, WITH HOW GREAT LOSS *victory would be obtained, how great a loss the victory would cost.* Only examples in the Bellum Gallicum. Compare the genitive of price, § 62.

Ablative of Attendance (Accompaniment). G. 392; A. 413; B. 220; H. 473; W. 390.

76 RULE: Attendance or accompaniment is expressed by the ablative with **cum.**

This ablative answers the question, *With whom? In company with what?*

cum omnibus cōpiīs exīre, I. **2,** 1, *to set out* WITH ALL THEIR POSSESSIONS. **Sabīnum cum sex cohortibus relīquit,** II. **5,** 6, *he left Sabinus* WITH SIX COHORTS.

77 **cum** may be omitted in military descriptions when the noun is modified by an adjective that is not a numeral.

omnibus cōpiīs contendere, II. **7,** 3, *to hasten* WITH ALL THEIR TROOPS.

Ablative of Manner (including Attendant Circumstance). G. 399; A. 412; B. 220; H. 473, 3; W. 390, 391.

78 RULE: Manner is expressed by the ablative with **cum,** which may be omitted when the noun is modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative answers the question, *How? Under what circumstances?*

māgnō cum perīculō erit, I. **10,** 2, *it will be* (WITH GREAT DANGER), *very dangerous.* **multīs cum lacrimīs obsecrāre,** I. **20,** 1, *to beseech* WITH MANY TEARS. **māgnō impetū oppūgnāre,** II. **6,** 1, *to*

attack WITH GREAT VIGOR. **māgnō cum strepitū** ēgredī, II. **11**, 1, *to set out* WITH GREAT NOISE.

79 A few words, many of which have practically become adverbs, are used without a preposition: e.g. **iniūriā**, (with injustice), *unjustly, wrongfully;* **silentiō**, (in silence), *silently;* **commodō**, (with advantage), *advantageously*.

Ablative of Quality (Characteristic). G. 400; A. 415; B. 224; H. 473, 2; W. 394.

80 RULE: A quality or characteristic is expressed by the ablative modified by an adjective or its equivalent.

This ablative always modifies a substantive, and may be tested by the translation "characterized by," which in actual rendering should be replaced by *of*.

Allobrogēs bonō animō nōn vidēbantur, I. **6**, 3, *the Allobroges did not seem* (CHARACTERIZED BY A GOOD FEELING), *of friendly disposition, well disposed.* **Iccius summā nōbilitāte**, II. **6**, 4, *Iccius*, (*a man*) (characterized by), OF THE GREATEST PROMINENCE.

With this construction compare the descriptive genitive, § 44.

Ablative of Measure (Degree) of Difference. G. 403; A. 414; B. 223; H. 479; W. 393.

81 RULE: The amount (degree) of difference between two objects or actions is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *How much?* It appears before comparatives and words implying a comparison, and in expressions of distance.

In translation it takes the construction of the English adverbial objective; hence *there is no preposition in the English rendering.*

nihilō minus, I. **5**, 1, (less BY NOTHING, NONE the less), *nevertheless.* **multō facilius**, I. **6**, 2, (easier BY MUCH), MUCH easier. **paucīs ante diēbus**, I. **18**, 10, (before BY A FEW DAYS), A FEW DAYS *before.* **ā** (adverb) **mīlibus passuum duōbus**, II. **7**, 3, TWO MILES *away.* **paulō longius**, II. **20**, 1, (too far BY A LITTLE), A LITTLE *too far.*

Ablative of Specification. G. 397; A. 418; B. 226; H. 480; W. 396.

82 RULE: Specification is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *In respect to what? In what respect?* It is translated as the object of *in*, or, less frequently, of *by*. It modifies verbs, adjectives and, more rarely, nouns.

virtūte praecēdunt, I. 1, 4, *they excel* IN (respect to) COURAGE. oppida **numerō** duodecim, II. 4, 7, *towns twelve* IN (respect to) NUMBER. **nōmine** Bibrax, II. 6, 1, *Bibrax* BY NAME.

83 Under this use of the ablative is generally considered to belong that with **dīgnus**, *worthy* (of), VII. 25, 1, and **indīgnus**, *unworthy* (of), V. 35, 5, VII. 17, 3. ALLEN and GREENOUGH, however, class this under the ablative of cause.

Ablative of Cause. G. 408; A. 404; B. 219; H. 475; W. 384, 385.

84 RULE: Cause is expressed by the ablative generally without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *Why? On what account? For what reason?* It is translated *because of, on account of, for, from*, etc., according to the English word with which it is connected.

grātiā plūrimum poterat, I. 9, 3, *he was very influential* ON ACCOUNT OF HIS POPULARITY. **virtūte** cōgnitī, I. 28, 5, *noted* FOR THEIR VALOR. **mōbilitāte** animī novīs imperiīs studēbant, II. 1, 3, ON ACCOUNT OF THEIR FICKLENESS (of mind) *they desired changes of government.*

85 Instead of the simple ablative prepositions are often used; especially **dē** or **ex** with the ablative, or **ob** (see vocabulary) and **propter** with the accusative.

quā dē causā, I. 1, 4, FOR THIS REASON. **ex cōnsuētūdine,** I. 52, 4, ACCORDING TO THEIR CUSTOM.

Ablative of Accordance.

86 An ablative translated *in accordance with* is classed by GILDERSLEEVE and ALLEN and GREENOUGH as specification, by BENNETT and WEST as manner, by HARKNESS as cause.

mōribus suīs, I. 4, 1, *according to their customs.* So II. 13, 3.

Ablative Absolute. G. 409, 410; A. 419; B. 227; H. 489; W. 397–399.

87 RULE: A noun and a participle or their equivalents are

used in the ablative to add an attendant circumstance to a sentence.

This construction corresponds to the independent *nominative* with participle in English, hence no preposition is used to translate the Latin case. On account of the rarity of this construction in good English, however, the literal translation should rarely be retained, but should be changed to an active participial construction, a phrase or a clause.

While connected logically or in thought with the rest of the sentence, it has no grammatical connection; hence the name *absolute*.

rēgnō occupātō, I. 3, 8, (the control of the government having been seized), *having seized control of the government; after seizing control of the government.* **initā aestāte, II. 2,** 1; see vocabulary under **ineō**. See also § 364.

88 Instead of a noun and a participle there may be (*a*) two nouns, (*b*) a noun and an adjective, when the lacking participle of the verb **sum** is understood.

Messālā, Pīsōne cōnsulibus, I. 2, 1, (MESSALA AND PISO) *being* CONSULS, *in the consulship of Messala and Piso.* **sē invītō**; see vocabulary.

Ablative of Place Where (Place in Which). See § 91.

Ablative of Time. G. 393, 394; A. 423, 1; B. 230, 231; H. 486–488; W. 406, 407.

89 RULE: The time when or within which an action occurs is expressed by the ablative without a preposition.

This ablative answers the question, *When?* It is translated with the preposition *at* or *on* if it is "*time when*," with the preposition *within* if it is distinctly "*time within which.*"

eō tempore, I. 3, 5, AT THAT TIME. **eō diē, II. 6,** 2, (ON) THAT DAY. **patrum nostrōrum memoriā, I. 12,** 5, WITHIN THE MEMORY (of our fathers), *of the last generation.* So **II. 4,** 7. See also § 105.

Ablative with Prepositions. G. 417; A. 220, *b, c;* B. 142; H. 490; W. 243, 245.

90 The following prepositions, used in the Bellum Gallicum, govern the ablative only: **ā (ab, abs), cum, dē, ē (ex), prae** (twice), **prō, sine.**

In and **sub** govern either accusative or ablative. See vocabulary.

Expressions of Place.

Place Where (Place in Which or at Which). G. 385–389, 411; A. 426–431; B. 228, 232; H. 482–485; W. 401–403.

91 Rule: Place where is expressed by the locative case when it exists (see § 93), otherwise by the ablative with **in.**

domī, I. **18,** 5, at home. **in eōrum fīnibus,** I. **1,** 4, in their territory. **in Galliā,** II. **1,** 1, in Gaul.

92 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition, and it is frequently omitted in expressions containing forms of **locus, pars,** or **tōtus,** and when some other idea is combined with that of place.

nōn nūllīs locīs, I. **6,** 2, in some places. So II. **33,** 4. **tōtīs castrīs,** I. **39,** 5, throughout the camp. **castrīs sē āc palūdibus tenuerat,** I. **40,** 8, *he had kept himself* in camp (and) among the marshes. **proeliō Nervicō,** III. **5,** 2, in the battle with the Nervii.

93 Locative.—Forms of the locative case are confined to the names of towns and small islands in the singular of the first and second declensions, where it is like the genitive; to a very few in the singular of the third declension, where it is like the dative; and to the following forms of common nouns,—**domī,** *at home,* **rūrī,** *in the country,* **humī,** *on the ground,* **mīlitiae** and **bellī,** *in war.*

The locative occurs as follows in the Bellum Gallicum: **domī,** I. **18,** 5, **20,** 2, **28,** 3, IV. **1,** 5, 6, VII. **4,** 8, **39,** 1; names of towns, V. **24,** 1, VI. **44,** 3, VII. **3,** 3, **10,** 4, **14,** 1 (three times), **31,** 4, **32,** 1, **47,** 5, **55,** 5, **57,** 1, **77,** 1, **90,** 7, 8.

Terminal Accusative (Place Whither, Place to Which). G. 337; A. 426–431; B. 182; H. 418, 419; W. 325.

94 Rule: Place whither or to which is usually expressed by the accusative with **ad** or **in.**

pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis, I. **1,** 6, *they extend* to the lower part *of the river.* **in interiōrem Galliam dēdūcere,** II. **2,** 1, *to lead* (*them*) into the interior of Gaul (§ 113).

95 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also **domum, domōs,** when meaning *home,* and **rūs,** *into the country.* But **ad** may be used with the name of a town to denote motion to its vicinity.

domum reditiō, I. 5, 7, *a return* HOME. **domum pervenīre, II. 11,** 1, *to get* HOME. **Bibracte īre, I. 23,** 1, *to go* TO BIBRACTE. **ad Genāvam pervenit, I. 7,** 1, *he arrives* IN THE VICINITY OF GENEVA.

Place Whence (Place from Which). G. 390, 391; A. 426–431; B. 229; H. 491, I. 2, II. 2; W. 404.

96 RULE: Place whence or from which is usually expressed by the ablative with **ab, dē** or **ex.**

dē suīs fīnibus exīre, I. 2, 1, *to go out* FROM THEIR TERRITORY. **ex castrīs ēdūcere, II. 8,** 5, *to lead out* FROM CAMP.

97 Names of towns and small islands omit the preposition; also **domō,** *from home,* and **rūre,** *from the country.* But **ab** may be used with the name of a town to denote motion from its vicinity.

domō efferre, I. 5, 3, *to take* FROM HOME. So IV. **7,** 3. **Metiosēdō fugere, VII. 58,** 6, *to flee* FROM METIOSEDUM. **ab Ocelō, I. 11,** 5, FROM THE VICINITY OF OCELUM.

98 THE POINT OF VIEW is expressed by the ablative with **ab** or **ex**; English use, *at* or *on.*

ūnā ex parte, I. 2, 3, ON ONE SIDE. **ab utrōque latere, II. 8,** 3, ON EACH SIDE.

99 DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS EXTENT OF SPACE is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14).

100 THE WAY BY WHICH is expressed by the ablative without a preposition. This is generally considered as a subdivision of the ablative of means (§ 71).

101 LOCATION AMONG TRIBES is expressed by the ablative with **in** or by the accusative with **inter** or **apud.**

102 LOCATION NEAR A PLACE is expressed by the accusative with **ad,** *near, at.*

103 DISTANCE CONSIDERED AS AN INTERVAL BETWEEN TWO PLACES is expressed by the ablative of degree of difference (§ 81).

Expressions of Time.

104 Time when (time at which) is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89).

105 Time within which is expressed by the ablative without a preposition (§ 89), or, for clearness, with the preposition **in** (e.g. **in cōnsulātū suō, I. 35, 2**).

106 Time during which (time how long) is expressed by the accusative without a preposition (§ 14). See also note to Book I., line 476.

107 The interval of time before or after an event is generally expressed by **ante** or **post** as prepositions with the accusative, or by **ante** or **post** as adverbs, modified by an ablative of degree of difference (§ 81). E.g. **post trēs annōs,** *after three years,* or **tribus annīs post,** *three years after.*

Roman Dates. G. Appendix; A. 424, *g*, 631; B. 371; H. 754, 755; W. 718–754.

108 The Romans counted backward from three points in the month, Calends (**Kalendae**), Nones (**Nōnae**), and Ides (**Īdūs**), to which the names of the months are added as adjectives: **Kalendae Iānuāriae, Nōnae Februāriae, Īdūs Mārtiae.** The Calends are the first day, the Nones the fifth, the Ides the thirteenth. In March, May, July and October the Nones and Ides are two days later. Or thus:

In March, July, October, May,
The Ides are on the fifteenth day,
The Nones the seventh; but all besides
Have two days less for Nones and Ides.

In counting backward the Romans used for "the day before" **prīdiē** with the accusative. E.g. **prīdiē Kalendās Iānuāriās,** Dec. 31.

The longer intervals are expressed by **ante diem tertium, quārtum,** *etc.*, before the accusative, so that **ante diem tertiam Kal. Iān.** means "two days before the Calends of January;" **ante diem quārtum,** or **a.d. iv.,** or **iv. Kal. Iān.,** "three days before," and so on. (See note on Book I. line 176.) These expressions are idiomatic; the nouns cannot be parsed separately, and the whole may be treated as an indeclinable noun.

To turn Roman dates into English.—For Nones and Ides, add one to the date on which these fall, and subtract the given number;

for Kalends, add two to the number of days in the preceding month, and subtract the given number.

a. d. v. Kal. Apr. (**ante diem quīntum Kalendās Aprīlīs**), I. **6,** 4, (31 + 2 — 5), *March* 28.

SYNTAX AND USES OF ADJECTIVES.

Agreement of Adjectives. G. 289, 286; A. 286, 287; B. 234, 235; H. 394, 395; W. 293–295.

109 RULE: An adjective, a participle (verbal adjective) or an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) agrees with the substantive it modifies in gender, number and case.

110 The common attributive modifier of two or more substantives usually agrees with the nearest, rarely with the most important.

vir et cōnsiliī māgnī et virtūtis, III. **5,** 2, a *man of* (both) GREAT *wisdom and courage.* So V. **11,** 5.

Substantive Use of Adjectives. G. 204, Notes 1–4; A. 288, 289; B. 236–238; H. 494, 495; W. 409–411.

111 Any gender of an adjective may be used alone as a substantive, the ending or the context showing the appropriate sense.

nōbilissimus, adjective, I. **2,** 1, THE MOST PROMINENT. **nōbilissimōs cīvitātis,** I. **7,** 3, THE MOST PROMINENT (*men*) *of the state.* **sua omnia,** II. **3,** 2, ALL THEIR (*possessions*).

112 A certain adjective may have been used most frequently with a particular noun, which comes to be regularly omitted. The gender remains that of the noun with which it was combined.

hīberna (sc. castra), I. **10,** 3, III. **2,** 1, (WINTER camp), WINTER *quarters.* hominēs **ferī,** I. **31,** 5, II. **15,** 5, FIERCE *men;* but **fera** (sc. **bestia,** *beast*), VI. **25,** 5, **28,** 2, WILD *beast.*

Partitive Use of Adjectives. G. 291, 1, Remark 2; A. 293; B. 241, 1; H. 497, 4; W. 416.

113 The following adjectives in the Bellum Gallicum, being superlatives, or implying order or sequence, sometimes designate a *part* of a following substantive,—**prīmus, extrēmus, summus, medius, īnfimus (īmus), reliquus.** See vocabulary. Examples follow.

summus mōns, I. 22, 1, THE HIGHEST PART OF *the hill,* THE TOP OF *the hill.* ad **extrēmās** fossās, II. 8, 4, *at* THE ENDS OF *the ditches.*

Predicate or Adverbial Use of Adjectives. A. 191; B. 290; H. 497, 1; W. 412.

114 Certain adjectives are best rendered adverbially when they modify the subject;—in the Bellum Gallicum, **annuus, laetus, invītus, frequēns, trīstis, praeceps.** See vocabulary.

quī creātur annuus, I. 16, 5, *who is chosen* ANNUALLY. **praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant,** II. 24, 2, *they took to flight* PRECIPITATELY.

Adjective Contrasted with Adverb. B. 241, 2; H. 497, 3, W. 417.

115 **Prīmus** and some similar adjectives must be carefully distinguished from the corresponding adverbs.

prīmus prōgressus est, (he, FIRST, advanced), *he was the first to advance;* others, it is implied, advanced afterward. So II. 19, 5. **prīmum prōgressus est,** *he* FIRST *advanced;* afterward, it is implied, he did something else. So I. 25, 1, II. 10, 4. **prīmō celeriter prōgressus est,** AT FIRST *he advanced quickly,* but presently, it is implied, he slackened his pace. So I. 31, 5, II. 8, 1.

Translation of the Comparative of Adjectives and Adverbs. G. 297; A. 291, *a;* B. 240, 1; H. 298; W. 414, 2.

116 The Latin comparative is translated not only by the English comparative, but by *too, rather, somewhat,* or *quite,* with the positive; and by *very* when the comparative is negatived.

Translation of the Superlative of Adjectives and Adverbs. G. 302, 303; A. 291, *b;* B. 240, 2, 3; H. 498; W. 414, 3, 4.

117 The Latin superlative may be translated not only by the English superlative but by *very* with the positive. It may be strengthened by **vel** (compare VII. 37, 6, where **prīncipēs = prīmī**), or by **quam** with a form of **possum** expressed or understood (see **quam** in vocabulary).

SYNTAX AND USES OF PRONOUNS.

118 All Latin pronouns may be divided into two classes as regards their syntax: substantive pronouns and adjective pronouns (pronominal adjectives).

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUN: **erant itinera duo quibus exīre possent,** *there were two routes* BY WHICH *they could emigrate.*

ADJECTIVE PRONOUN: **erant itinera duo, quibus itineribus exīre possent,** I. 6, 1, *there were two routes* BY WHICH ROUTES *they could emigrate.*

119 The syntax of an adjective pronoun (pronominal adjective) is the same as of any adjective,—it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number and case (§ 109).

Agreement of a Substantive Pronoun.

120 RULE: Any substantive pronoun agrees with its antecedent in person, number, and gender. Its case is determined by its use in the clause in which it stands.

NOTE.—The distinction is not always made clear in English grammars. Thus *my* or *mine* is sometimes considered the possessive case of the personal pronoun, *I*, sometimes a possessive adjective. Contrast, "*this box came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative adjective), with "*this came*" (where *this* is a demonstrative pronoun).

121 Table of Personal and Possessive Pronouns.

		First Person. Ordinary.	Reflexive.	*Second Person.* Ordinary.	Reflexive
Personal		**ego,** *I*	———	**tū,** (thou), *you*	———
		meī, *my*	**meī,** *of myself*	**tuī,** *your*	**tuī,** *of yourself*
		mihi, *to me*	**mihi,** *to myself*	**tibi,** *to you*	**tibi,** *to yourself*
		etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	**meus, a, um,** *my*		**tuus, a, um,** (thy), *your*	
	Plu.	**noster, tra, trum,** *our*		**vester, tra, trum,** *you*	

		Third Person. Ordinary.	Reflexive.
Personal		**is,** *he,* **ea,** *she,* **id,** *it*	———
		ēius, *his, her, its*	**suī,** *of himself, of herself, of itself*
		eī, *to him, to her, to it*	**sibi,** *to himself, to herself, to itself*
		etc.	etc.
Possessive	Sing.	**ēius,** *his, her, its*	**suus, a, um,** *his, her, its* (*own*)
	Plu.	**eōrum, eārum,** *their*	**suus, a, um,** *their* (*own*)

Nominative of the Personal Pronouns Omitted. G. 304, 1; A. 295, *a;* B. 242, 1; H. 500; W. 419.

122 The personal pronoun is regularly omitted when it would be the subject of a finite verb, being expressed only for emphasis or for contrast.

is coniūrātiōnem fēcit, I. 2, 2, HE *made a conspiracy.* Compare also **ego,** IV. 25, 3.

For the use of the possessive pronouns for the genitive of the personal pronouns see §§ 38 and 43.

Direct and Indirect Reflexives. G. 309; A. 299–301; B. 244, I, II; H. 502–504; W. 421, 422.

123 The reflexive personal and possessive pronouns may refer to the subject of the clause in which they stand (direct reflexive); but often, especially in indirect discourse, they refer to the subject of the main clause (indirect reflexive); sometimes to another particularly emphatic word.

124 Since the possessive pronouns (except the substitute possessive genitives, **ēius, eōrum, eārum**) are adjectives (see §§ 118 and 121), they take their gender, number and case from the word they modify, not from their antecedent. Therefore it is necessary to find the antecedent of a form of **suus, a, um,** in order to translate it correctly.

Casticus rēgnum in suā cīvitāte occupat, I. 3, 4, *Casticus seizes the royal power in* HIS *state.*

125 For illustration of the contrast between the two possessives of the third person (§ 121), note the following sentence.

Helvētiī aut suīs (i.e. **Helvētiōrum**) **fīnibus eōs** (i.e. **Germānōs**) **prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum** (i.e. **Germānōrum**) **fīnibus bellum gerunt,** I. 1, 4, *the Helvetians either keep them* (*the Germans*) *out of* THEIR OWN *territory or carry on war themselves in* THEIR (*the Germans'*) territory.

126 Sometimes two reflexives stand in the same clause of indirect discourse, one referring to the subject of the main verb, the other to the subject of the infinitive. English has the same ambiguity.

Ariovistus respondit . . . nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse, I. 36, 6, *Ariovistus answered . . . that no one had fought* WITH HIM *without* HIS OWN *destruction,* i.e. *without being destroyed.* Here **sēcum** refers to **Ariovistus,** and **suā** to **nēminem.**

Demonstrative Pronouns. G. 305–308; A. 296–298; B. 246–249; H. 505–509; W. 426–428.

127 The three especial demonstrative pronouns are (1) **hīc, haec, hōc,** *this* (of mine, or near me), called the demonstrative of the *first* person; (2) **iste, ista, istud,** *that* (of yours, or near you), called the demonstrative of the *second* person, and (3) **ille, illa, illud,** *that* (of his, or near him), called the demonstrative of the *third* person.

When only two objects are contrasted, **hīc** and **ille** are generally used; in such cases **hīc** usually means *the nearer,* if referring to real position, *the latter,* if referring to that which is nearer in thought; and **ille,** *the more remote, the former.*

Iste has often a contemptuous, sneering force, as in VII. 77, 5, its only occurrence in the Bellum Gallicum.

128 These pronouns, like the English demonstratives (see § 120, note), may be used either as adjectives or as substantives. When used substantively, *especially when referring to persons,* they are generally best translated by personal pronouns.

huīc (i.e. **Galbae**) **permīsit,** III., 1, 3, *he permitted* HIM. It is very bad English ever to say, "He permitted this one," or "He permitted this man."

129 **is,** when used *adjectively,* is demonstrative and means either *this* or *that* (*these* or *those*), according to the sense. When used simply as the antecedent of the relative pronoun, it is to be translated *that* (*those*).

PERSONAL PRONOUN: **eī fīliam dat,** I. 3, 5, *he gives* HIM *his daughter.*

DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVE: **ad eās rēs cōnficiendās,** I. 3, 3, *for completing* THESE *preparations.* **eō tempore,** I. 3, 5, *at* THAT *time.*

ANTECEDENT OF THE RELATIVE PRONOUN: **id quod,** I. 5, 1, THAT *which.*

130 **ipse** is the intensive or emphatic pronoun, like the English *himself,* etc., when the latter is *not reflexive* (see § 121); it emphasizes the word with which it is joined. When it is nominative its translation is shown by the person of the verb.

ipsī bellum gerunt, I. 1, 4, *they* THEMSELVES *carry on war.* **ipsī bellum gerimus,** *we* OURSELVES *carry on war.*

131 When **ipse** is used to strengthen a noun not the name of a person it may be translated in various ways.

in ipsīs ripīs, II. 23, 3, RIGHT *on the bank*(s). **hōc ipsō tempore** VI. 37, 1, *at this* VERY *time;* JUST *at this time.*

132 The genitive case of **ipse** is often used, for contrast or emphasis, instead of forms of the possessive reflexive pronoun, **suus, a, um,** and is then translated *his own, their own,* etc.

ipsōrum linguā, I. 1, 1, *in* THEIR OWN *language.* Here **suā** might have been used, but contrast with the following **nostrā** is desired. So I. 21, 1.

133 **Ipse** is often used in the nominative to intensify a reflexive pronoun. In such cases it may often be omitted in translation; it sometimes gives the reciprocal force (*each other*). See the examples.

ipse sibi mortem cōnscīvit, I. 4, 4, (he HIMSELF decreed death to himself), *he committed suicide.* **sibi ipsī sunt impedīmentō, II. 25,** 1, (they THEMSELVES are for a hindrance to themselves), *they hinder each other.*

Relative Pronouns. G. 614–619; A. 303–308; B. 250, 251; H. 510; W. 229–304.

134 RULE: A relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number. Its case is determined by the structure of the clause in which it stands. See § 120.

135 Note the use of the relative *adjective* in Latin, much more common than in English.

quae cīvitās, I. 10, 1, (WHICH state), *a state which.* See also the first example under § 118.

136 The Latin often uses a relative pronoun at the beginning of a new sentence. This should never be translated literally, but generally by a demonstrative (regularly so if it is used adjectively), sometimes by a personal pronoun.

quārum, I. 1, 1, OF THESE. **quā dē causā, I. 1,** 4, *for* THIS *reason.* **quī, I. 15,** 2, THEY. **quī cum, II. 13,** 2, *when* THEY.

For the compound relatives, **quisquis, quīcumque,** see vocabulary.

Interrogative Pronouns. G. 467, Remark 2, 106; A. 148, 104; B. 90; H. 511; W. 148.

137 In both English and Latin the relative and interrogative words are almost the same if not identical in form. Compare the following sentences:

Interrogative.	*Relative.*
Who came? What boy came? Which boy came?	The boy who came.
What happened? What event happened? Which event happened?	The event which happened.
I know who came. I know what boy came. I know which boy came.	I know the boy who came.

138 For the interrogative pronouns used in the Bellum Gallicum, **quis, quī, quisnam,** and **uter,** see vocabulary. The last is used adjectively, **I. 12,** 1, and substantively, **V. 44,** 14, **VI. 19,** 2.

Indefinite Pronouns. G. 313–319; A. 309–315; B. 252; H. 512–515; W. 430-435.

139 Forms of **quis** and **quī** are usually indefinite (meaning *any, any one*) after **sī, nisi, nē** and **num.**

See vocabulary for the uses of the other indefinite pronouns used in the Bellum Gallicum,—**aliquis, aliquī, quīdam, quispiam, quisquam, quīvīs, quisque.**

140 **Quisque** following a superlative is to be noted, as an idiom.

nōbilissimī cūiusque līberī, I. 31, 12, (the children OF EACH most prominent man), *the children of all the most prominent men.* So I. **45, 3.**

SYNTAX OF VERBS.

Agreement of Verb. G. 211, 285–287; A. 316, 317; B. 254, 255; H. 388–392; W. 296–298.

141 RULE: A verb agrees with its subject in person and number.

142 The common predicate of two or more subjects is put in the plural unless the two are considered together as a unit.

Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit, I. 1, 2, *the Marne-and-Seine* DIVIDES. Here the principal river and its tributary are considered as one, like the "Missouri to the sea."

143 Substantives of multitude often take the predicate in the plural.

cum tanta multitūdō cōnicerent, II. **6,** 3, *when such a great number* (WERE) *was throwing.* Similarly **exīrent** (sc. **cīvitās**), I. **2,** 1.

Impersonal Verbs. G. 208, 528, 2; A. 208; B. 138; H. 302, 611; W. 233, 442, 4.

144 Besides the impersonal verbs common to both Latin and English pertaining to the state of the weather (*it rains,* etc.), which do not occur in the Bellum Gallicum, and those which are active and take a neuter pronoun, an infinitive or a clause as the subject (**oportet, licet, interest** (§ 63), etc., there are the following impersonal uses of *passive* verbs.

1. Verbs that take an indirect object in the active voice. See §§ 26 and 27, note.

2. Verbs that take no object in the active voice. These are used impersonally, especially in the compound tenses. The literal translation should not be retained.

pūgnātum est, I. 26, 1, (it was fought), *they fought; the battle raged.* **sustentātum est, II. 6,** 1, (it was sustained), *the attack was sustained.*

Tenses of the Indicative. G. 222–245; A. 465–479; B. 257–264; H. 526–540; W. 445–460.

145 SPECIFIC PRESENT. The present tense is used of (a) *that which is now going on* or of (b) *that which is undefined or habitual* in the present.

(a) quō **proficīscimur,** VII. 38, 2, *where* ARE WE GOING? (b) turpissimam servitūtem dēditiōnis nōmine **appellant,** VII. 77, 3, THEY TERM *the basest slavery a surrender.*

146 UNIVERSAL PRESENT. The present tense is used of statements *that apply to all time.*

omnēs hominēs nātūrā lībertātī **student,** III. 10, 3, *all men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.*

147 HISTORICAL PRESENT. The present tense is used far more frequently than in English *as a lively representation of the past,* or in an annalistic sense.

profectiōnem **cōnfīrmant,** I. 3, 2, THEY DECREE (*decreed*) *their departure.*

148 IMPERFECT TENSE. The imperfect indicative primarily denotes an action as continued in the past, or a past condition of affairs. It is then accurately translated by the English past progressive. But if the idea of continuance is not strong, or if the voice is passive, the simple past should be used.

hiemābant, I. 10, 3, *were passing the winter.* So populābantur, I. 11, 1; exspectābant, II. 9, 1. Contrast the following: arbitrābantur, I. 2, 5, *they thought.* patēbant, I. 2, 5, *extended.* māgnō dolōre afficiēbantur, I. 2, 4, (they were being affected with great grief), *they were greatly grieved.*

The imperfect also denotes (1) attempted, (2) repeated, (3) accustomed or habitual action in the past.

(1) prohibēbant, V. 9, 6, *they tried to prevent.* (2) cōniciēbant, I. 26, 3, *they kept throwing.* (3) versābantur, I. 48, 6, *they would engage.* servī cremābantur, VI. 19, 4, *slaves used to be burned.*

149 PERFECT TENSE. The Latin perfect has two distinct uses. It is equivalent either to (1) the English past, or to (2) the English present perfect (e.g. dēmōnstrāvimus, II. 1, 1, *we have shown*).

Tenses of the Subjunctive. G. 277; A. 480–485; B. 266–269; H. 541–550; W. 461–472.

150 *The tenses of the subjunctive do not express absolute time.* (Over.)

In independent clauses (§§ 154 and 155) the tenses of the subjunctive generally have especial uses.

In dependent clauses the present and imperfect tenses of the subjunctive express incomplete action, the perfect and pluperfect completed action. Further than this, the choice of tense is usually determined by the law of *sequence of tenses.*

151 Sequence of Tenses. If the tense of the principal verb is *present, future* or *future perfect* (the so-called *principal* tenses), it is followed by the *present* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *perfect* subjunctive to denote completed action; if the tense of the principal verb is *imperfect, perfect* or *pluperfect* (the so-called *historical* tenses), it is followed by the *imperfect* subjunctive to denote incomplete action, by the *pluperfect* subjunctive to denote completed action.

152 This rule is subject to several modifications. (1) The historical present (§ 147) may be considered according to its form as present or according to its sense as past; in the Bellum Gallicum it is considered a principal tense about three times out of every four. (2) The present perfect (§ 149, 2) may be felt as giving the past starting point and so be considered as historical, or as giving the present completion and so be considered as principal.

Principal Tenses.

Pr. (Pure or Hist.),	**cōgnōscō,**	*I am finding out,*	**quid faciās,** *what you are doing;*
Fut.,	**cōgnōscam,**	*I shall* (try to) *find out,*	**quid fēcerīs,** *what you have done, what you have been doing (what you did), what you were doing (before).*
Pure Pf.,	**cōgnōvī,**	*I have found out (I know),*	
Future Pf.,	**cōgnōverō,**	*I shall have found out (shall know),*	

Historical Tenses.

Hist. Pr.,	**cōgnōscō,**	*I am (was) finding out,*	**quid facerēs,** *what you were doing;*
Impf.,	**cōgnōscēbam,**	*I was finding out,*	**quid fēcissēs,** *what you had done, what you had been doing, what you were doing (before).*
Hist. Pf.,	**cōgnōvī,**	*I found out,*	
Plupf.,	**cōgnōveram,**	*I had found out (I knew),*	

It will be noticed from the above examples that the English has the same rule. Compare also "He *comes* that he *may* see," with "He *came that he might* see."

NOTE.—Exceptions to all these rules of sequence are common, especially in indirect discourse, being sometimes required by the sense, sometimes by clearness, and being often used for vividness.

153 FUTURE TIME IN THE SUBJUNCTIVE. Since the subjunctive tenses do not represent absolute time, but only complete or incomplete action relative to the time of the principal verb, it follows that *any tense of the subjunctive may refer to the future,* when the action of the principal verb looks to the future. For especial clearness in this respect the active periphrastic conjugation is used (§ 277).

SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDEPENDENT CLAUSES.

Subjunctive as an Imperative (Hortatory Subjunctive). G. 263, 1; A. 439; B. 274; H. 559, 1; W. 482.

154 RULE: The present subjunctive, first person plural, is used to express an exhortation. The negative is **nē.**

persequāmur eōrum mortem, VII. 38, 8, LET US AVENGE *their* death. So **interficiāmus,** following, and **respiciāmus, VII. 77,** 7.

155 NOTE.—The following uses of the subjunctive appear in the Bellum Gallicum only in the changed form made necessary by indirect discourse.

1. Subjunctive as an Imperative (Jussive Subjunctive). G. 263, 3; A. 439; B. 275; H. 559, 2; W. 482.

RULE: The present subjunctive is used to express a command in the third person, more rarely in the second. The negative is **nē.**

cum volet, congrediātur I. **36,** 7, LET HIM COME ON *when he* (shall wish) *wishes.*

2. Deliberative Subjunctive. G. 265; A. 444; B. 277; H. 559, 4; W. 493.

RULE: The subjunctive is used in questions implying doubt or indignation. The negative is **nōn.**

Cūr quisquam iūdicet, I. **40,** 2, *why* SHOULD ANY ONE JUDGE ?

Moods in Subordinate Clauses.

Pure Final Sentences (Subjunctive of Purpose). G. 545; A. 531; B. 282; H. 564; W. 506–508, 517, 518.

156 Rule: The subjunctive is used to express purpose or design with **ut (utī), nē, quō, quō minus,** forms of the relative pronoun, and relative adverbs.

157 **ut,** the normal introductory word in this construction, means *in order that,* or simply *that.* When either of these conjunctions is used in English, the subjunctive is translated by *may* or *might.* See § 152, end, and § 164.

sēmentēs facere, ut cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, I. 3, 1, (to make plantings), *to plant corn,* IN ORDER THAT A SUPPLY *of grain* MIGHT BE AVAILABLE. **duās legiōnēs in castrīs relīquit ut subsidiō dūcī possent,** II. 8, 5, *he left the two legions in camp* (IN ORDER THAT THEY MIGHT BE ABLE to be led for aid) *to act as reserves* (§ 164).

158 **nē** is the negative of **ut**; it means *in order that . . . not,* or simply *that . . . not.* The verb is translated as with **ut** (§ 157).

id nē accidat, mihi praecavendum est, I. 38, 2, *I must be on my guard* THAT THIS MAY NOT HAPPEN. **ibi tormenta collocāvit nē hostēs suōs circumvenīre possent,** II. 8, 4, *he placed his artillery there,* THAT THE ENEMY MIGHT NOT BE ABLE *to surround his troops.*

159 When the sentence involves the idea of fearing that a thing *will* happen, though the purpose is that it shall *not* happen, **nē** is translated *lest,* and the subjunctive, usually, by *shall* or *should.*

nōluit eum locum vacāre, nē Germānī trānsīrent, I. 28, 4, *he did not wish this region to be unoccupied,* LEST THE GERMANS SHOULD CROSS.

160 **quō** is really an ablative of means (or degree of difference) and is generally used when there is a comparative in the purpose clause. **quō,** *by which,* = **ut eō,** *that thereby,* or simply *that.*

castella commūnit, quō facilius prohibēre posset, I. 8, 2, *he constructed forts* THAT (THEREBY) HE MIGHT BE ABLE *more easily to prevent them* (*from crossing*). So II. 17, 4.

161 **quō minus** is used after verbs of *hindering, refusing, preventing,* and the like. See § 210.

162 The relative pronoun is used chiefly when its antecedent is the object of an active or the subject of a passive or intransitive verb. The equiva-

lent translation is by the periphrastic use of the infinitive with forms of *to be*, or by *shall* or *should.*

lēgātōs mittunt quī dīcerent, I. 7, 3, *they sent ambassadors* (WHO WERE TO ASK) *to ask.* So **quī dēdūceret, II. 2,** 1.

163 A form of the relative pronoun in such clauses is equivalent to **ut** with the corresponding form of **is.**

diem dīcunt quā (= ut eā) diē conveniant, I. 6, 4, they *appoint a day* ON WHICH (day) THEY SHALL ASSEMBLE; i.e. they appoint a day that on this day they may assemble.

164 Since after many English verbs purpose is regularly expressed by the infinitive, this often forms the best translation for Latin purpose clauses. But this is impossible when the subject of the subjunctive is an expressed noun. See examples, §§ 157–163.

For substantive clauses of purpose, see §§ 208–212.

Consecutive Sentences (Subjunctive of Result). G. 552; A. 537; B. 284; H. 570; W. 519, 527, 528.

165 RULE: The subjunctive is used to denote result with **ut (utī), ut nōn** and **quīn.**

ut means *that* or *so that;* the subjunctive is usually translated by the English indicative. **ut nōn** is the negative of **ut.**

tantī tua grātia est utī condōnem, I. 20, 5, *your favor is so great* (§ 62) THAT I PARDON. **(collis) silvestris ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset, II. 18,** 2, *a hill wooded* (SO THAT IT COULD NOT easily be seen into), *so thickly that one could not easily see anything among the trees.*

166 *Purpose or Result?* Negative result clauses cannot be mistaken for purpose clauses, since **nē**, the introductory word for a negative purpose clause, is not used in expressions of result. Compare the rules.

Clauses of result frequently follow such words as **tantus,** *so great,* **tālis,** *such,* **ita,** *so,* **ēius modī, hūius modī,** *of such sort,* etc. A sentence containing one of these words is incomplete without a result clause following, so that the presence of such a word indicates this construction.

167 If there is no such word as those mentioned above (§ 166), the matter is entirely a question of *meaning,*—was there any *intention* or *will* on the part of the subject of the main clause? If so, the subordinate clause denotes *purpose;* if not, it denotes *result.*

mōns impendēbat, ut perpaucī prohibēre possent, I. 6, 1, a *mountain rose sharply near by,* SO THAT A VERY FEW (*men*) COULD *check* (*them*). Here, of course, the mountain did not have any *intentions;* hence the clause is one of result.

For substantive clauses of result see §§ 213 and 214.

Subjunctive of Characteristic. G. 631; A. 535; B. 283; H. 591; W. 587.

168 RULE : The subjunctive with **quī** or any relative word may be used to characterize an antecedent, especially when it is general, indefinite or unexpressed.

This subjunctive usually needs an expansion in accurate translation if its force is to be clearly shown. This may be done by supplying words to show its limitations.

obsidēs, arma, servōs quī ad eōs perfūgissent, popōscit, I. 27, 3, *he demanded* (*of the Helvetians*) *hostages, their arms, and the slaves* THAT HAD DESERTED *to them,* or *what slaves had deserted to them.* If the indicative had been used, the sense would have been different,—*he demanded the slaves, a class which had all escaped to them.* **domī nihil erat quō famem tolerārent,** I. 28, 3, *there was nothing at home* (BY WHICH THEY COULD SUSTAIN a famine, i.e. such that by it they could endure a famine), *to live on.* **duo itinera quibus itineribus exīre possent,** I. 6, 1, *two routes* (BY WHICH ROUTES THEY COULD go out), (*such that*) *by them they could emigrate.* **sōlī sunt quī prohibuerint,** II. 4, 2, *they are the only ones* THAT PREVENTED.

169 A subjunctive introduced by **quī** follows **dīgnus, indīgnus** and **idoneus.** This use is generally referred to the above construction, but by Bennett, to § 156. Caesar shows but one example, VII. 31, 2.

Causal Clauses.

Causal Clauses with *quod, quia, quoniam* and *quandō.* G. 539, 542; A. 540; B. 286, 1; H. 588; W. 543, 544.

170 RULE : Causal clauses introduced by **quod,** *because,* **quia, quoniam** and **quandō,** *since,* take the indicative when the reason is stated as a fact, the subjunctive when it is given doubtfully or upon the authority of another person.

The force of the subjunctive can be given in English only by adding parenthetically, " as we said," or a similar phrase.

INDICATIVE: **fortissimī sunt Belgae propterea quod longissimē absunt,** I. 1, 3, *the bravest are the Belgians* (on this account) BECAUSE THEY ARE *farthest* AWAY. [sollicitābantur], **quod rēgna vulgō occupābantur,** II. 1, 4, *they were stirred up* BECAUSE THE POWER (*in individual states*) WAS GENERALLY SEIZED.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **quod sit dēstitūtus queritur,** I. 16, 6, *he complains* BECAUSE (AS HE SAYS) HE HAS BEEN DESERTED; *he complains that he has been deserted.* **Ubiī ōrābant ut sibi auxilium ferret quod graviter ab Suēbis premerentur,** IV. 16, 5, *the Ubii were asking him to aid them* BECAUSE, AS THEY SAID, THEY WERE HARD PRESSED *by the Suebi.*

171 Verbs of *thinking* and *saying* are occasionally put in the subjunctive when the sense is the same as that which would be given by the subjunctive of the verb they govern, only less clearly expressed.

Bellovacī suum numerum nōn contulērunt, quod sē suō nōmine bellum gestūrōs esse dīcerent, VII. 75, 5, *the Bellovaci did not furnish their complement (of men),* (BECAUSE THEY SAID THAT) *because, as they said, they were going to wage war on their own account.* Similarly, **quod vidērentur,** II. 11, 5, *because they thought that they were.*

Causal Clauses with *cum*. G. 586: A. 549: B. 286, 2: H. 598: W. 542.

172 RULE: Causal clauses introduced by **cum,** *since,* take the subjunctive.

This subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

hīs cum persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs mittunt, I. 9, 2, SINCE THEY COULD *not persuade them, they send ambassadors.* So. II. 11, 1.

Causal Clauses with *quī*. G. 633; A. 535, *e;* H. 592; W. 586, 5.

173 RULE: Causal clauses introduced by **quī** take the subjunctive.

The relative is here equivalent to **cum,** causal (§ 172), and the corresponding form of **is.**

māgnam Caesar iniūriam facit quī vectīgālia mihi dēteriōra faciat, I. 36, 4, *Caesar is doing me great injury,* SINCE HE IS MAKING *my revenues less.* So V, 33, 1, 2, VI. 31, 5.

174 A peculiar use of **quō,** *because,* for **eō quod,** *for this reason, because,* occurs once in the phrase **magis eō . . . quam quō.**

mercātōribus est aditus magis eō ut (ea) quae bellō ceperint, (eōs) quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō . . . dēsiderent, IV. 2, 1, *the traders are allowed access to them* MORE FOR THIS REASON, *that they may have men to whom they may sell what they have captured in war,* THAN BECAUSE *they desire . . .*

Temporal Clauses.

175 The action of a temporal clause may be in one of three relations to the action of the principal verb:—it may be antecedent (conjunction, *after*) contemporaneous (conjunction, *while, as long as*), subsequent (conjunction, *before*).

Temporal Clauses with *postquam,* etc. G. 561–567; A. 543; B. 287; H. 602; W. 530–532.

176 RULE: Temporal clauses introduced by **postquam, posteāquam,** *after,* **ut, ubi,** *when,* **simul āc (atque),** *as soon as,* take the indicative, usually the perfect.

The historical present is used with **ubi** II. 9, 2, and the pluperfect IV. 26, 2. The English translation is frequently past perfect.

Ubi certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs mittunt, I. 7, 3, WHEN THEY WERE INFORMED, *they sent ambassadors.* **postquam . . . cōgnōvit,** exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit, II. 5, 4, AFTER HE HAD LEARNED (*this*), *he hastened to lead his army across.*

Temporal Clauses with *dum, dōnec* and *quoad.* G. 568–573; A. 553–556; B. 293; H. 603, 604; W. 533.

177 The English word *while* has two distinct meanings,—(1) *as long as,* and (2) *at some time during the time that.* Compare the following sentences:—(1) *he waited while* (i.e. *as long as*) *his friend was talking;* (2) *he arrived while* (i. e. *at some time during the time that*) *his friend was talking.*

178 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum** in the sense of *while* (= *at some time during the time that*), take the (historical) present indicative.

dum ea conquīruntur, ē castrīs ēgressī sunt, I. 27, 4, WHILE THESE WERE BEING SOUGHT FOR, *they set out from camp.* So III. 17, 1.

179 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum, dōnec, quoad,** and

quam diū, in the sense of *while* (= *as long as*), take the indicative.

quoad potuit, restitit, IV. 12, 5, *he resisted* AS LONG AS HE COULD. So V. 17, 3, and **dum**, VII. 82, 1.

180 RULE: Temporal clauses with **dum, dōnec** and **quoad** in the sense of *until* take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **antequam** and **priusquam**, § 181. The subjunctive is idiomatically translated by *can* or *could.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: ut spatium intercēdere posset, **dum mīlitēs convenīrent**, respondit, I. 7, 6, *in order that time might* (be able to) *intervene,* UNTIL THE SOLDIERS COULD ASSEMBLE, *he answered.* So IV. 13, 2, 23, 4, VII. 23, 4; and I. 11, 6, where the direct discourse would be the same. **Quoad**, IV. 11, 6, V. 24, 8.

The indicative under this construction does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum. An example is: Epamīnōndās ferrum in corpore retinuit **quoad renūntiātum est** vīcisse Boeōtiōs, Nepos, XV. 9, 3, *Epaminondas retained the iron in his body* UNTIL WORD WAS BROUGHT BACK *that the Beotians had conquered.*

Temporal Clauses with *antequam* **and** *priusquam.* G. 574–577; A. 551; B. 292; H. 605; W. 534.

181 RULE: Temporal clauses with **antequam** and **priusquam** take the indicative of an actual fact, the subjunctive when design or suspense is involved (*or* to represent an act as expected or anticipated).

Compare the construction with **dum**, § 180. The subjunctive is sometimes idiomatically translated by *can* or *could.* The words are often separated,—**ante quam, prius quam**, *sooner than* = *before, until.* **antequam** does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

INDICATIVE: nec **prius** fugere dēstitērunt **quam** ad Rhēnum **pervēnērunt**, I. 53, 1, *and they did not stop fleeing* (SOONER THAN) UNTIL THEY REACHED *the Rhine.* So VII. 25, 4, 47, 3.

SUBJUNCTIVE: **prius quam** quicquam **cōnārētur**, Dīviciācum vocārī iubet, I. 19, 3, (SOONER THAN) BEFORE HE ATTEMPTED (*to do*) *anything, he ordered Diviciacus to be summoned.* **prius quam hostēs** sē ex

terrōre reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum exercitum dūxit, II. 12, 1, BEFORE THE ENEMY COULD RECOVER *from their fright, he led his army into the territory of the Suessiones.* The indicative would mean "before the enemy recovered," and would imply that they did recover afterward. The subjunctive indicates that they did *not* recover.

Temporal Clauses with ***cum.*** G. 578–588; A. 545–548; B. 288–290; H. 600–601; W. 535–539.

182 RULE: Temporal clauses with **cum** take the indicative of any tense when they define the *date* at which the action of the leading verb took place, takes place or will take place; the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive to define the *circumstances* under which the action of the leading verb took place.

Either mood is translated by the indicative.

INDICATIVE: contendunt **cum** suīs fīnibus **prohibent**, I. 1, 4, *they fight* WHEN THEY ARE KEEPING THEM OUT *of their own territory.* hīs **cum fūnēs comprehēnsi adductīque sunt**, praerumpēbantur, III. 14, 6, WHEN THE ROPES HAD BEEN CAUGHT *by these* (*hooks*) AND DRAWN TAUT, *they were snapped off short.*

SUBJUNCTIVE: **cum cīvitās** iūs suum exsequī **cōnārētur**, Orgetorīx mortuus est, I. 4, 3, WHEN THE STATE WAS TRYING *to assert its lawful power by force of arms, Orgetorix died.*

183 **Cum** INVERSE. When the two actions are independent, **cum** is sometimes used with the one which seems to be logically the principal clause, just as in English.

iam nōn longius bīduī viā aberant, **cum** duās vēnisse legiōnēs **cōgnōscunt**, VI. 7, 2, *they were now not more than two days' march away,* WHEN THEY LEARNED *that the two legions had come.*

Conditional Sentences.

Conditional Sentences with ***sī, nisi, sīn.*** G. 589–597: A. 511–525; B. 301–306; H. 572–583; W. 551–562.

184 Conditional sentences with **sī, nisi, sīn,** may be divided into *three* classes as regards *time,*—present, past, and future; and into *two* classes as regards *form,*—whether the condition is regarded as a *fact,* or not. A condition is thus fully described by two terms.

185 When a condition is regarded as a *fact*, it may be called a "logical" condition; or, in the present and past a "simple" or "assumed" condition, and in the future a "more vivid" or "probable" condition.

186 When a condition is regarded not as a fact but as an assumption, it may be called in the present and past an "unreal" or "contrary to fact" condition, and in the future an "ideal," "less vivid," or "possible" condition.

187 In both English and Latin, a condition that is regarded as a fact is put in the indicative, in whatever tense is required. A condition that is regarded as an assumption is put in the potential or subjunctive in English, the subjunctive in Latin.

188 TABLE OF CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.

	REGARDED AS A FACT Called "LOGICAL," "SIMPLE," or "ASSUMED"	REGARDED AS AN ASSUMPTION Called "UNREAL" or "CONTRARY TO FACT"
Mood / Time of Condition	*Indicative*	*Subjunctive*
	Tense of the Indicative	Tense of the Subjunctive
Present	Present, sometimes (Present) Perfect	Imperfect
Past	Imperfect or Perfect, sometimes Pluperfect	Pluperfect
		Called "IDEAL," "POSSIBLE," or "LESS VIVID"
Future	Future or Future Perfect	Present or Perfect

Type Conditional Sentence in All Its Ordinary Forms.

189 PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Present indicative.

Sī iter facit, bene est.

If he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*

190 PRESENT UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Imperfect subjunctive.

Sī iter faceret, bene esset.

If he were marching, it would be well.

This form implies that he *is* NOT *marching.*

191 PAST LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). Any past tense of the indicative.

Sī iter faciēbat, bene erat.
If he was marching, it was well.
Sī iter fēcit, bene fuit.
If he marched, it was well.

192 PAST UNREAL (CONTRARY TO FACT). Pluperfect subjunctive.

Sī iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.
If he had marched, it would have been well.

This form implies that he *did* NOT *march.*

NOTE.—The indicative is the regular construction in the conclusion, with verbs which signify *possibility* or *power, obligation* or *necessity.*

sī [populus Rōmānus] alicūius iniūriae sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuit difficile cavēre, I. 14, 2, *if the Roman people had been conscious* (to themselves) *of any injury,* IT WOULD *not* HAVE BEEN DIFFICULT (*for them*) *to be on their guard.*

193 FUTURE LOGICAL (PROBABLE OR MORE VIVID). Future indicative, sometimes the future perfect (usually in the condition).

Sī iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.
If he marches [for *shall march* (*shall have marched*)] *it will be well.*

In this form the English is peculiar in using the present tense to refer to the future.

194 FUTURE IDEAL (POSSIBLE OR LESS VIVID). Present subjunctive, sometimes the perfect (usually in the condition).

Sī iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.
If he should march, it would be well.

This form implies that the speaker considers the condition only as *possible.*

195 MIXED CONDITIONS. The above are the ordinary types of conditional sentences. But a conditional sentence may be "mixed," that is, it may have a condition of one form and a conclusion of another; in this case the two parts must be described separately. Especially, the condition and conclusion may be in different *tenses*, or the condition may be compound, containing two clauses, one of one tense and the other of another tense. E.g. "If he *was* there yesterday and *is* coming home to-day, we *shall be* glad." "If he *had been* here yesterday and *were* going away to-day, it *would be* different."

Conditional Clauses of Comparison. G. 602; A. 524; B. 307; H. 584; W. 566–568.

196 Rule: Conditional clauses of comparison introduced by **āc sī, ut sī, quasi, quam sī, tamquam (sī), velut sī,** etc., *as if, than if,* take the subjunctive.

The uses of tenses is under the law of sequence.

absentis Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī adsit, horrent, I. 32, 4, *they shudder at the cruelty of Ariovistus (though) absent,* AS IF HE WERE PRESENT. So VII. 38, 7.

Concessive Clauses.

197 **Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with** *quamquam.* G. 605; A. 527, *d;* B. 309, 2; H. 586; W. 570.

Rule: Concessive clauses introduced by **quamquam** take the indicative.

quamquam sunt ēiusdem generis, sunt humāniōrēs, IV. 3, 3, ALTHOUGH THEY ARE *of the same race, they are more civilized.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *etsi,* **etc.** G. 604; A. 527; B. 309, 2; H. 585; W. 572.

198 Rule: Concessive clauses introduced by **etsī, etiamsī,** etc., take the same construction as conditional clauses with **sī** (§§ 189–194).

nam etsī . . . vidēbat, tamen putābat, I. 46, 3, *for* ALTHOUGH HE SAW . . . , *yet he thought.*

The subjunctive under this construction does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum in direct discourse.

Concessive (Adversative) Clauses with *cum, ut,* **etc.** G. 606–608, 587, 634; A. 313, 320, *e;* B. 309; H. 586, II., 569, II.; W. 571, 586, 7.

199 Rule: Concessive clauses introduced by **cum, ut, nē, licet,** or the relative pronoun, take the subjunctive.

The subjunctive is translated by the indicative in English.

cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pūgnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit, I. 26, 2, THOUGH THE BATTLE CONTINUED *from one o'clock until evening, nobody could see one of the enemy in retreat.*

Cicerō, quī . . . mīlitēs in castrīs continuisset, quīnque cohortēs

mittit, VI. 36, 1, (Cicero WHO), THOUGH *Cicero* HAD KEPT *the soldiers in camp, he sent out five cohorts.*

ut is concessive, III. 9, 6.

Relative Clauses.

Relative Sentences. G. 624–637; A. 534, 535; B. 311, 312; H. 589–593; W. 580–589.

200 A relative clause is most often introduced by the relative pronoun, **quī**; also by relative adjectives, **quantus** (antecedent, **tantus**), **quālis** (antecedent, **tālis**), **quot** (antecedent, **tot**), etc.; and by relative adverbs, **ubi**, *where, when* (antecedent, **ibi**), **unde**, *whence, from which* (antecedent, **inde**), **quō**, *whither, where* (antecedent, **eō**), etc.

201 Relative clauses taken as a class have no especial rules of construction; the relative may take the place of almost any conjunction, coördinate or subordinate, together with its corresponding demonstrative form.

202 INDICATIVE MOOD. When a relative clause simply describes the antecedent of the relative, or states an additional fact, the indicative mood is used.

[Helvētiī] proximī sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum bellum gerunt, I. 1. 4, *the Helvetians are nearest to the Germans,* WHO LIVE *across the Rhine,* WITH WHOM THEY CARRY ON *war.* Here **quī—incolunt** simply describes the Germans, and **quibuscum—gerunt** merely gives an additional fact about the Helvetians.

203 SUBJUNCTIVE BY ATTRACTION. Relative sentences which depend on infinitives and subjunctives and form an integral part of the thought (i.e. a part which could not well be omitted if the sense is to be preserved), are put in the subjunctive.

cum . . . eōs in eō locō quō tum essent suum adventum exspectāre iūssisset, paruērunt, I. 27, 2, *when he had ordered them to await his arrival at that point* WHERE THEY *then* WERE, *they obeyed.* So **quae gerantur**, II. 2, 3.

For the subjunctive in relative clauses see the rules for the various kinds of subordinate clauses and examples of the use of the relative pronoun given under them, as follows:

Subjunctive of Purpose, §§ 156–164.

Subjunctive of Characteristic, §§ 168, 169.

Causal Clauses, § 173. Concessive Clauses, § 199.

Kinds of Subordinate Clauses.

204 Subordinate clauses may be divided into three kinds as regards their use in sentences,—(1) *attributive* (used like an adjective), (2) *adverbial* (used like an adverb) and (3) *substantive* (used like a noun).

205 ATTRIBUTIVE CLAUSES. Relative clauses which explain the antecedent of the relative word are attributive. See §§ 168 and 202, and examples.

206 ADVERBIAL CLAUSES. The following kinds of clauses may be adverbial, and all the examples given are such:—purpose (§§ 156–164), result (§§ 165–167), causal (§§170–173), temporal (§§ 175–183), conditional (§§ 184-197), and concessive (§§ 198, 199), including the equivalent relative clauses (§ 203, end).

207 SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES. Various adverbial clauses have developed into substantive clauses. Thus in the sentence, **suīs ut idem faciant imperat, V. 37,** 1, the clause is not thought of as answering the question, *For what purpose?* but as defining *what order was given.* It becomes practically the internal object of **imperat,**—*he orders his men to do the same.*

Substantive clauses are therefore described according to the adverbial clauses from which they are developed or according to the introductory word.

Complementary Final Sentences (Substantive Clauses of Purpose).

G. 546–550; A. 563–566; B. 295; H. 564; W. 510–516.

208 Verbs of *will* and *desire,* including those of *warning* and *beseeching,* of *urging* and *demanding,* of *resolving* and *endeavoring,* are followed by **ut** or **nē** with the subjunctive.

cīvitātī persuāsit ut exīrent, I. 2, 1, *he persuaded* (the state) *the citizens* TO EMIGRATE. See § 164. **obsecrāre coepit nē quid gravius statueret,** I. 20, 1, *he began to beseech* (*him*) NOT TO TAKE *any very severe measures.*

209 Verbs of *hindering,* including verbs and phrases signifying to *prevent, forbid, refuse* and *beware,* are often followed by **nē** with the subjunctive *if they are not negatived.*

nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit, I. 4, 1, *he saved himself* FROM PLEADING *his case; he escaped* PLEADING *his case.* **multitūdinem dēterrent nē frūmentum cōnferant,** I. 17, 2, *they prevent the people* FROM BRINGING *grain.* So I. 31, 16.

210 Verbs of *hindering* and *refusing* may be followed by **quō minus** (= **ut eō minus,** *that thereby the less*). See §§ 160 and 161.

recūsāre quō minus essent, I. 31, 7, *to refuse* TO BE. **nāvēs ventō tenēbantur quō minus in eundem portum venīre possent,** IV. 22, 4, *the ships were prevented by the wind* (FROM BEING ABLE to come to the same port) *from reaching the same port.* So VII. **49,** 2. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

211 After verbs of *fearing,* **ut** means *that . . . not,* and **nē** means *that.*

rem frūmentāriam timēmus ut supportārī posset, I. **39,** 6, (we fear the grain supply, THAT IT CAN NOT be furnished), *we are afraid* THAT *a supply of grain can* NOT *be furnished.* Only instance of **ut** in this construction in the Bellum Gallicum.

nē offenderet verēbātur, I. **19,** 3, *he was afraid* THAT HE WOULD HURT. So. II. **1,** 2.

212 **ut** is sometimes omitted in object clauses, especially after verbs of *wishing, necessity* and *permission.*

rogat fīnem ōrandī faciat, I. **20,** 5, *he asks* (*him*) (TO MAKE an end of his entreating), *to end his entreaties.*

Substantive Clauses of Result. G. 553, 557; A. 567–571; B. 297; H. 571; W. 521–526.

213 Substantive clauses of result include chiefly those used (1) after verbs of *effecting* and *accomplishing,* (2) as subjects of impersonal verbs signifying *to happen, to follow,* etc., (3) to explain a noun or pronoun.

(1) **nōlī committere ut hīc locus . . . nōmen capiat,** I. **14,** 7, (*be* unwilling to allow THAT THIS PLACE TAKE a name), *do not allow this place to get a name* (*in history*). **fēcērunt ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur,** II. **11,** 2, (they made THAT THEIR DEPARTURE SHOULD SEEM similar to a flight), *they made their departure seem like a flight.*

(2) **fīēbat ut vagārentur,** I. **2,** 4, *it happened* THAT THEY WANDERED. **erit ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audeant,** II. **17,** 3, *it will* (be) *happen* THAT THE REST WILL not DARE *to stand against* (*us*).

(3) **id . . . ut flūmen trānsīrent,** I. **13,** 2, *this . . .* NAMELY, CROSS *the river.* **iūs est bellī ut quī vīcērunt eīs quōs vīcērunt imperent,** I. **36,** 1, *it is a law of war* THAT (those who have conquered) *the conquerors* GIVE COMMANDS TO (those whom they have conquered) *the conquered.*

Substantive Clauses with *quīn*. G. 555, 556; A. 557–559; B. 298; H. 594, II, 595, 596; W. 573–579.

214 Substantive clauses with **quīn** are used after sentences and phrases of *doubting, hindering,* and the like when they are *negatived* or *questioned*. The general translation of **quīn** is *but that* (taken together as a subordinate conjunction), often shortened to *that;* but **quīn** and its verb are often condensed into an entirely different idiom.

nōn est dubium quīn Helvētiī plūrimum possint, I. **3,** 6, *there is no doubt* (BUT) THAT THE HELVETIANS ARE *the most* POWERFUL. Similarly I. **4,** 4, **17,** 4, **31,** 15, VII. **38,** 8, **66,** 6. **nōn dubitāre quīn proficīscātur,** II. **2,** 5, *not to hesitate* (BUT THAT HE SHOULD SET OUT) *to set out.* **nōn cunctāre quīn pūgnā dēcertet,** III. **23,** 7, *not to delay* (BUT THAT HE SHOULD FIGHT IT OUT in close conflict) *fighting a pitched battle.* Similarly V. **55,** 1, and VII. **36,** 4. **exspectārī nōn oportet quīn eātur,** III. **24,** 5, (it ought not to be awaited BUT THAT IT SHOULD BE GONE), *he ought not to defer going.* **neque longius abest quīn . . .,** III. **18,** 5, (and it is not further off BUT THAT), *and not later than . . . .* **neque multum abest ab eō quīn paucīs diēbus dēdūcī possint,** V. **2,** 2, (and it is not very far from this *stage,* THAT THEY CAN be launched within a few days), *and they will, in a few days, be nearly ready for launching.* Similarly VII. **11,** 8. **sine sollicitūdine quīn acciperet,** V. **53,** 5, *without anxiety* (THAT HE WOULD RECEIVE), *lest he should receive.* **nōn sibi temperābunt quīn exeant,** I. **33,** 4, (they will not restrain themselves BUT THAT THEY SHOULD GO OUT), *they will not refrain from passing out.* Similarly I. **47,** 2, II. **3,** 5. **nōn recūsāre quīn contendant,** IV. **7,** 3, *not to refuse* TO FIGHT. **neque aliter sentiunt quīn . . .,** VII. **44,** 4, (and they do not think otherwise THAN THAT), *and they certainly think that . . .*

These are the only instances of **quīn** in the Bellum Gallicum except in the conjunctive phrase **quīn etiam** (see vocabulary).

Substantive Clauses with *quod*. G. 524, 525; A. 572; B. 299; H. 588, 3, 4; W. 549.

215 Causal clauses with **quod** (§ 170) shade into substantive clauses. As a conjunction **quod** has four principal meanings, (1) *because,* (2) *that* or *the fact that,* (3) *in regard to the fact that,* (4) *so far as.*

1. When **quod** means *because,* the clause may be,— (*a*) adverbial (see § 170), or (*b*) substantive, in apposition with some such word as **propterea, eō, hōc,** *on this account;* this usage shades into (2).

(*a*) **Caesar quod . . . memoriā tenēbat, concēdendum nōn putābat,** I. **7,** 4, *Caesar,* BECAUSE HE REMEMBERED . . ., *did not think that* (it) *their request ought to be granted.* (*b*) **eō minus dubitātiōnis mihi datur quod . . . memoriā teneō,** I. **14,** 1, (less of hesitation is given to me), *I can hesitate less* (*in this matter*) FOR THIS REASON, BECAUSE I REMEMBER.

2. When **quod** means (*a*) *that* or (*b*) *the fact that,* it is a substantive clause, used either as subject, object, or appositive.

(*a*) **num recentium iniūriārum memoriam dēpōnere possum, quod . . . vexāstis?** I. **14,** 3, (can I lay aside the memory of your recent wrongdoing, THAT YOU HAVE HARASSED), *can I forget your recent wrongdoing, in plundering . . .*? (*b*) **accēdēbat quod . . . dolēbant,** III. **2,** 5, (there approached THE FACT THAT THEY GRIEVED), *an additional fact was that they grieved. . .*

3. When **quod** means *in regard to the fact that, as for the fact that,* it introduces a substantive clause that has also an adverbial force with reference to the whole sentence.

quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcō, id meī mūniendī causā faciō, I. **44,** 6, IN REGARD TO THE FACT THAT I AM BRINGING *a host of Germans into Gaul, I am doing it for the purpose of protecting myself.*

4. Similar to the above is **quod,** *so far as.*

quod commodō reī pūblicae facere poterit, Aeduōs dēfendet, I. **35,** 4, SO FAR AS HE SHALL BE ABLE *to do* (*so*) *with advantage to the public interests, he shall defend the Aeduans.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum.

216 CLAUSES OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. The accusative and infinitive of indirect discourse (§ 228) and indirect questions (§ 245) are also substantive clauses.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN ENGLISH.

217 DEFINITION OF DIRECT DISCOURSE. Direct discourse (Latin, **ōrātiō rēcta**) is the quotation of words in the exact form in which they were spoken. E.g. *He said,* "I AM GOING."

218 DEFINITION OF INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Indirect discourse (Latin, **ōrātiō oblīqua**) is the quotation of words *with adaptations in grammatical construction, in person, or in tense* to the standpoint of the person who quotes. E.g. *He said* THAT HE WAS GOING.

219 INTRODUCTORY VERB. Indirect discourse occurs after verbs of

saying, hearing, believing, thinking and the like. Such a verb is said to introduce or govern the indirect discourse and is called the introductory verb.

220 Introductory Particle. Indirect discourse is further introduced by the subordinate conjunction *that*, expressed or understood, which is called the introductory particle.

221 Change of Tense. When indirect discourse occurs after an introductory verb that is in any *past* tense, all the verb forms that were in the present tense in the direct discourse, both main verbs and auxiliaries, change to the corresponding past tense.

Direct Discourse.		*Indirect Discourse.*
My son WRITES daily.	He said that	his son WROTE daily.
My son IS writing.		his son WAS writing.
My son MAY write.		his son MIGHT write.
My son CAN write.		his son COULD write.
My son HAS written.		his son HAD written.
My son WILL write.		his son WOULD write.
My son SHALL write.		his son SHOULD write.

Observe that number and voice do not change; a change in the former would alter the *sense* of the original statement, a change in the latter would alter its *form*.

Note.—An exception to this change of tense occurs when the verb of the direct discourse is a universal present (§ 146).

Direct: *All men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.* Indirect: *he knew that all men naturally* DESIRE *liberty.* Compare B. G., III. 10, 3.

222 Change of Pronouns. In passing from direct to indirect discourse changes of pronouns often occur. These changes depend entirely upon the relation of the person quoting to the one who is addressed. Thus, A says to B, "I will help you."

If A	quotes this to	B,	it becomes,—	I	said that	I	would help	you.
" A	"	C,	"	I	"	I	"	him.
" B	"	A,	"	You	"	you	"	me.
" B	"	C,	"	He	"	he	"	me.
" C	"	D,	"	He	"	he	"	him.

223 Indirect Questions. When an interrogative sentence is quoted, it often has an introductory verb different from those that introduce declarative sentences; especially verbs and phrases signifying *to ask, to*

doubt, to be a question, etc., though such a verb as *to know* may introduce either a declarative or interrogative clause.

The rule for changing a question to the indirect form divides into two parts.

224 1. If an interrogative sentence contains an interrogative word (a pronoun, an adjective or an adverb), it is put into the indirect form in the same manner as a declarative sentence. E.g. "Who is going?" I know who is going. He ASKED who WAS going.

225 2. If an interrogative sentence is one that can be answered by "Yes" or "No" and has the inverted order (i.e. verb or auxiliary before the subject), the declarative is restored in the indirect form, and *whether* or *if* is added after the introductory verb as an introductory particle. E.g. "Are you ready?" I doubt if you are ready. I do not know whether he is ready. I could not see whether he was ready.

226 INDIRECT FORM OF IMPERATIVES. An imperative is changed to indirect discourse by the use of (1) the auxiliary *should*, or (2) the infinitive. E.g. "Shut the door." (1) He said you should shut the door. (2) (He said to shut the door.) He told you to shut the door.

Other English colloquial forms, such as the auxiliary *might*, or *for* with the infinitive, should be avoided.

INDIRECT DISCOURSE IN LATIN.

Indirect Discourse (Ōrātiō Oblīqua). G. 648–663; A. 573–592; B. 313–323; H. 641–653; W. 597–619.

227 The definition of indirect discourse is the same for Latin as for English. The construction, however, is far more widely extended and *the introductory verb is very often merely implied.* E.g. He persuaded the citizens to emigrate; [saying] that it was very easy.

228 RULE: Declarative principal clauses of direct discourse, on becoming indirect, change the indicative (or subjunctive) with subject nominative to infinitive with subject accusative. Interrogative and imperative principal clauses and all subordinate clauses become subjunctive.

229 SUBJUNCTIVE IN IMPLIED INDIRECT DISCOURSE. Under the construction of subordinate clauses of indirect discourse are included many

subjunctives which depend on an infinitive or another subjunctive, where the idea of indirect discourse is merely implied.

230 TENSE OF THE INFINITIVE. A present indicative of direct discourse becomes present infinitive in indirect; an imperfect, perfect or pluperfect indicative becomes perfect infinitive; and a future or future perfect indicative becomes future infinitive.

The tense of the introductory verb has nothing to do with the tense of the infinitive.

231 TENSE OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. The tense of the subjunctive is determined by the general law of the sequence of tenses (§ 151). If either the introductory verb or the infinitive is a past tense, the subjunctives are regularly imperfect or pluperfect. But the law of sequence is frequently suspended for vividness.

NOTE.—An imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive of the direct discourse, as in unreal (contrary to fact) conditions, is always retained in the indirect.

232 CHANGES IN PERSON depend upon the same principles as in English (§ 222).

233 As in English (§ 221) VOICE *and* NUMBER *do not change.*

234 TRANSLATION OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE. The subjunctive is usually translated by the indicative (the tense being according to the English rules), unless in the direct discourse it would be a use of the subjunctive that requires some special auxiliary in translation (e.g. a purpose clause, see § 156).

235 TRANSLATION OF THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE. English sometimes employs the accusative and infinitive like the Latin, in such expressions as, "I thought the man to be honest," "I understood him to say it"; but the use of this construction is limited. It is *not* English to say, "He declares himself to be about to win"; and such expressions should be changed to the regular construction of English indirect discourse, viz. a subordinate clause introduced by *that*, with subject nominative and a finite mood.

236 CHANGE FROM INDIRECT TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. For a complete understanding of a sentence of indirect discourse it must be changed to the direct form in Latin, this translated to the direct in English, and the last changed to the English indirect, when it becomes a translation of the given Latin. See next page.

Latin Indirect; **dīxit perfacile esse,** I. 2, 2, cf. I. 3, 6, 7, etc.
Latin Direct: **dīxit "perfacile est."**
English Direct: *He said, "It is very easy."*
English Indirect: *He said that it was very easy.* This is the translation of the first.

237 Rules for Changing Principal Clauses. 1. *Subject accusative changes to nominative of the same number.* If it is a pronoun, there may be a change of person. For this no rule can be given because it depends upon circumstances (see § 222); but forms of the reflexive pronouns and adjectives usually become first person.

2. Present infinitive changes to	present	indicative of same voice.
Perfect " " "	imperfect, perfect, or pluperfect	" " " "
Future " " "	future or future perfect	" " " "

The person and number is determined by the subject, already found by Rule 1.

3. Pronouns (other than the subject) require change *in person only.*

(Orgetorīx) cōnfīrmat sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum (esse), I. 3, 7.

1. The subject accusative is **sē,** which refers to the subject of **cōnfīrmat,** namely, **Orgetorīx.** Since Orgetorix is speaking of himself, in his own words he must have used the first person. For the same reason the number of **sē** is singular. Hence according to the rule, the direct discourse of **sē** is first person, singular, nominative, **ego.**

2. **conciliātūrum (esse)** is future, active. It therefore changes to future, indicative, active, and agrees with **ego;** hence **conciliābō.**

Since the person and number are shown by the personal ending, **ego** may be omitted (§ 122).

3. Like **sē,** the possessive adjectives **suīs** and **suō** refer to the subject, and for the same reason would become first person; their construction is in no way affected and they change to the corresponding forms of **meus,** namely, **meīs** and **meō.**

illīs refers to Dumnorix and Casticus, to whom this promise was made. Hence this changes to the corresponding form of the second personal pronoun, namely **vōbīs.**

The sentence in direct discourse thus reads, **meīs cōpiīs meōque exercitū vōbīs rēgna conciliābō.**

English Direct: I WILL *win the power* (*in your states*) *for* YOU *with* MY *forces and* MY *army.*

English Indirect: *Orgetorix* { *declares* / *declared* } *that* HE { WILL / WOULD } *win the power* (*in their states*) *for* THEM *with* HIS *forces and* HIS *army.*

Notice that it is not necessary to translate a Latin sentence before finding the Latin direct discourse, but only that the relations of any persons mentioned shall be understood.

Notice also that after changing the English direct to indirect, the pronouns are a translation of those in the Latin indirect; so that, as far as concerns getting a translation of Latin indirect discourse, there is nothing that requires attention except the accusative and infinitive.

238 The following type sentences should be kept thoroughly in mind. They cover all cases that occur in the Bellum Gallicum (if the historical present is translated by the past), except such as are mentioned especially in the notes. If these are used, it will not be necessary to go through the process of changing to direct discourse in order to get the translation.

Dīxit sē	**appellāre,**	*he said that he*	*called* (*was calling*).
	appellārī,		*was called.*
	appellāvisse,		*had called.*
	appellātum esse,		*had been called.*
	appellātūrum esse,		*would call.*
	appellātum īrī,		*would be called.*

239 CHANGE OF SUBORDINATE CLAUSES TO DIRECT DISCOURSE. The mood of a subordinate clause of direct discourse depends upon its construction under the various rules that have been given (§§ 156–215). Therefore in changing from indirect to direct discourse, the mood of a subordinate clause may or may not change.

If the indicative is to be used in the direct discourse, the tense may be prescribed (e.g. in clauses with **dum**) or may depend upon the sense (e.g. in clauses with **quod**).

If the subjunctive is to be retained (e.g. in a purpose clause), the tense may or may not change, under the rule for the sequence of tenses (§ 151).

perfacile esse probat propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset, I. **3,** 6.

Here **quod** introduces a reason which was certainly assigned by

Orgetorix as a fact. Hence the indicative in direct discourse; tense, present periphrastic or future (§ 153).

perfacile est, propterea quod ipse meae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus sum (obtinēbō), *it* IS *very easy, because* I AM GOING TO HAVE (*shall have*) *control of* MY *state* MYSELF. Indirect: *He proved that it* WAS *very easy, because* HE WAS GOING TO HAVE (WOULD HAVE) *control of* HIS *state* HIMSELF.

(dīcit) nōn esse dubium quīn plūrimum Helvētiī possent, I. **3,** 7.

Clauses introduced by **quīn** always take the subjunctive (§ 214), hence the mood of the direct discourse is the same. As it stands, **possent** is imperfect because it depends upon an historical present (**probat,** I. **3,** 6), which may take the sequence of an historical tense (§ 152). In the direct discourse the subjunctive will depend upon **est,** and hence will change to the present.

nōn est dubium, quīn plūrimum Helvētiī possint, *there* IS *no doubt that the Helvetians* ARE *the most powerful.* Indirect: [*He said*] *that there* WAS *no doubt that the Helvetians* WERE *the most powerful.*

240 INDICATIVE IN SUBORDINATE CLAUSES. The indicative is sometimes used in subordinate clauses of indirect discourse, (1) when the clause is inserted by the writer by way of explanation and does not form a part of the quotation (e.g. II. **4,** 10), (2) to show that the writer himself considers the matter as a fact (e.g. I. **40,** 5).

241 CONDITIONAL SENTENCES IN INDIRECT DISCOURSE, while following the same general rules as other complex sentences, present peculiarities of sequence, periphrastic forms, etc., so that all the regular forms of condition are presented for reference.

242 When reference is made to this article, see what tense, mood and auxiliary is used in translating the type sentence, and use the same in translating the desired passage.

1. PRESENT LOGICAL (SIMPLE OR ASSUMED). See § 189.

Sī iter facit, bene est.
If he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*
Dīcit sī iter faciat, bene esse.
He says that if he marches (or *is marching*), *it is well.*
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene esse.
He said that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*

2. Present Unreal (Contrary to Fact). See § 190.

Sī iter faceret, bene esset.

If he were marching, it would be well.

Dīcit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.

He says that if he were marching, it would be well.

Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.

He said that if he were marching, it would be well.

3. Past Logical (Simple or Assumed). See § 191.

Sī iter faciēbat, bene erat.

If he was marching, it was well.

Sī iter fēcit, bene fuit.

If he marched, it was well.

(For either) **Dīcit sī iter faceret, bene fuisse.**

He says that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*

Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene fuisse.

He said that if he marched (or *was marching*), *it was well.*

4. Past Unreal (Contrary to Fact). See § 192.

Sī iter fēcisset, bene fuisset.

If he had marched, it would have been well.

Dīcit sī iter fēcisset, bene futūrum fuisse.

He says that if he had marched, it would have been well.

Dīxit sī iter fēcisset, bene futūrum fuisse.

He said that if he had marched, it would have been well.

Note.—A sentence of this type, the conclusion of which is passive, requires a periphrastic form in indirect discourse.

Sī iter fēcisset, victus esset.

If he had marched, he would have been conquered.

Dīcit / Dīxit } **sī iter fēcisset, futūrum fuisse ut vincerētur.**

He says / He said } *that if he had marched,* (it would have been that he would be conquered), *he would have been conquered.*

5. Future Logical (Probable or More Vivid). See § 193.

Sī iter faciet (fēcerit), bene erit.

If he marches [for *shall march* (*shall have marched*)], *it will be well.*

Dīcit sī iter faciat (fēcerit, subjunctive), **bene futūrum esse.**

He says that if he marches, it will be well.

Dīxit sī iter faceret (fēcisset), bene futūrum esse.

He said that if he marched, it would be well.

6. Future Ideal (Possible or Less Vivid). See § 194.

Sī iter faciat (fēcerit), bene sit.
If he should march, it would be well.
Dīcit sī iter faciat, bene futūrum esse.
He says that if he should march, it would be well.
Dīxit sī iter faceret, bene futūrum esse.
He said that if he should march, it would be well.

243 Indirect Questions. It has been said (§ 228) that interrogative principal clauses of direct discourse on becoming indirect discourse (indirect questions) take the subjunctive.

Such clauses present no difficulties in translation since the English has the same construction, including the rules for the sequence of tenses. See §§ 152 and 223. This use of the subjunctive in Latin is easily recognized from the fact that there is always an interrogative word in the clause.

To change to the direct form follow the principles of the changes for declarative sentences. Thus:

oculīs in utram partem [Arar] fluat iūdicārī nōn potest, I. 12, 1. Direct: **in utram partem Arar fluit?** *In what direction* DOES *the Saône* FLOW? Indirect: *It cannot be judged by the eye* (s) *in what direction it* FLOWS.

Note.—Sī is sometimes used in the sense of *to see if,* introducing an indirect question after verbs of trial. E.g. **sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, I. 8,** 4; see note. So II. **9,** 1.

244 Indirect questions usually have different introductory verbs in Latin as in English (§ 223). But when a long speech in Latin is quoted in indirect form, neither Latin nor English takes the pains to insert a different introductory verb before an interrogative clause.

[dīxit] Ariovistum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr quisquam iūdicāret ...? I. **40,** 2, *he said that Ariovistus had sought the friendship of the Roman people; why should any one judge ...?* [*he asked why any one should judge* ...]. So I. **40,** 4, **43,** 8, **44,** 8, etc.

245 Imperatives in Indirect Discourse. It has been said (§ 228) that imperatives of direct discourse on becoming indirect become subjunctive. The tense is according to the rules of sequence. For the different methods of translation see § 226.

respondit ... sī quid vellent, reverterentur, I. **7,** 6. Direct: **sī quid vultis, revertiminī,** *if you want an answer,* RETURN. Indirect: *He answered ... that if they wanted an answer,* THEY SHOULD (MIGHT)

RETURN; or, *he answered . . . if they wanted answer,* (FOR THEM) TO RETURN. So I. 13, 4.

nē . . . suae virtūtī tribueret, I. 13, 5. DIRECT: **nōlī . . . tuae virtūtī tribuere,** (BE UNWILLING TO ATTRIBUTE), DO NOT ATTRIBUTE (*it*) *to* YOUR OWN *valor.* INDIRECT: HE SHOULD NOT ATTRIBUTE *it to* HIS OWN *valor;* or, (FOR HIM) NOT TO ATTRIBUTE *it to* HIS OWN *valor.*

246 RHETORICAL QUESTIONS. When a question is asked merely for effect, it is usually equivalent to a strong declarative statement. Such questions, like a declarative sentence, take the accusative and infinitive in indirect discourse.

num memoriam dēpōnere posse, I. 14, 3, COULD *he* (lay aside the memory) *forget?* So V. 28, 6.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

First or Present Imperative. G. 268, 270, and Remark 2; A. 448, 450; B. 281; H. 560; W. 473, 474, 495, 496.

247 The use of the present imperative in Latin is the same as in English. The imperative occurs seven times in the Bellum Gallicum, IV. 25, 3 (see § 6), V. 30, 1, VII. 38, 3, 50, 4, 6, 77, 9 (see note), 16. The other imperative does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

248 A negative imperative sentence or prohibition is most frequently expressed by **nōlī** (sometimes **cavē**) with the infinitive, sometimes by **nē** with the imperative, or perfect subjunctive.

nōlīte hōs vestrō auxiliō exspoliāre, VII. 77, 9, (BE UNWILLING TO DEPRIVE), DO NOT DEPRIVE *them of your aid.* Only instance in the Bellum Gallicum of a prohibition in direct discourse.

INFINITIVE.

249 The Latin infinitive has two uses, (1) as a substantive, (2) as a representative of the indicative.

The Infinitive as a Substantive. G. 280; A. 451–458; B. 326–328; H. 606–612; W. 622–626.

250 As a substantive the infinitive has two tenses, present and perfect.

251 The present is the common form of the infinitive used as a substantive; it has to do with continued action. The perfect infinitive used as a sub-

stantive, having to do with completed action, does not occur in the Bellum Gallicum.

252 The infinitive as a substantive is used only as the subject and object of verbs. For the oblique cases and for the objective after a preposition, the gerund is used (§ 267).

253 As subject the infinitive is used chiefly with forms of **sum** and impersonal verbs.

praestat perferre, I. 17, 3, *it is better* TO ENDURE.

254 As an object (complementary infinitive) it is used to complete the meaning of verbs meaning to *wish, decide, fear,* etc., which take the same construction in English.

cōnstituērunt comparāre, I. 3, 1, *they determined* TO PREPARE.

255 An accusative and a complementary infinitive may both be used as the objects of verbs meaning to *bid* and *forbid, to permit,* etc.

eōs īre patī, I. 6, 3, *to allow* THEM TO GO. So II. **5,** 1.

The Infinitive as the Representative of the Indicative. G. 281; A. 459; B. 329–331; H. 613–619; W. 628–635.

256 As the representative of the indicative, the infinitive has three tenses, —present, perfect and future.

257 The infinitive with subject accusative may be used as a substantive clause (i.e. as subject or object) like the infinitive alone. See §§ 253 and 254.

poenam sequī oportēbat, I. 4, 1, (PUNISHMENT-TO-FOLLOW was fitting), *it was the law for the punishment to follow;* or, *that the penalty . . . be inflicted.* **quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, I. 1,** 5, (GAULS-TO-CONSTITUTE-which, has been said), *which it has been said that the Gauls constitute.* **optimum est quemque revertī, II. 10,** 4, *it is best (for)* EACH ONE TO RETURN, or, THAT EACH ONE RETURN.

This construction is essentially that of indirect discourse. The first and third examples show instances which are *informal* indirect discourse, and show the development of the construction from that of § 255.

Historical Infinitive. G. 647; A. 463; B. 335; H. 610; W. 631.

258 The infinitive with subject nominative is sometimes used instead of the imperfect indicative for vividness in historical narration.

Caesar flāgitāre, I. 16, 1, *Caesar* WAS DEMANDING. So I. **16,** 4, **32,** 3; II. **30,** 3; III. **4,** 1, 2, 3; V. **33,** 1.

Participles.

259 A participle is a verbal adjective. All Latin participles are declined like adjectives and agree with some substantive expressed or understood in gender, number and case, while at the same time they have tense and voice.

260 Tense of Participles. The participle, both in Latin and in English, denotes time *relative* to that of the principal verb. Thus:

The present participle denotes action that is continuing at the time of the principal verb. E.g. *he comes running, he came running, he will come running.*

The perfect participle denotes action prior to that of the principal verb. E.g. *he is coming* (*came*, or *will come*), *having run all the way.*

261 Comparative Table of Participles.

	Active	Passive
Present	**dūcēns,** *leading*	————, *being led*
Past Perfect	————, *having led*	**ductus,** { *led* / *having been led* }
Future	**ductūrus,** (*going to lead*)	**dūcendus,** (*to be led*)

A deponent verb has the three active participles and the gerundive. E.g. **cōnāns,** *trying,* **cōnātus,** *having tried,* **cōnātūrus,** *going to try,* and **cōnandus,** gerundive. See however § 262.

Note.—Latin is more exact than English in the use of participles, especially the perfect. E.g. *Seizing the bone, the dog ran away.* Strictly, this would mean that the dog was seizing the bone all the time that he was running. Therefore the perfect participle should be used,—*Having seized the bone, the dog ran away.* But the former has come to be an English idiom and should be used in translation.

262 Perfect participles of deponent verbs are sometimes passive in meaning. So **dēpopulātus,** I. 11, 4, **dīmēnsus,** II. 19, 5; IV. 17, 3, **partītus,** VII. 24, 5.

263 Participles often imply some especial relation to the thought of the sentence aside from merely limiting a substantive. E.g. "*Running as fast as he could, he caught the train.*" Here the participle implies *cause;* the thought is that he caught the train *because* he ran.

Again, "*Running as fast as he could, he was unable to catch the train.*" Here the participle implies *concession;* the thought is that he could not catch the train *although* he ran.

Participles may also denote merely an attendant circumstance. E.g. "*Entering the water, he waded out.*" This merely notes two acts,—he entered the water, he waded out. Latin often employs a participle in this way where English requires two coördinate verbs.

Uses of Latin Participles. G. 664–668; A. 488–499; B. 336–337; H. 636–640; W. 645–652.

264 Latin participles or participial phrases may express,—1, *time*, 2, *cause*, 3, *condition*, 4, *concession*, 5, *attendant circumstance*, 6, *means*, 7, the thought of a *relative clause*.

1. **patrum nostrōrum memoriā, omnī Galliā vexātā, II. 4,** 2, (in the memory of our fathers, ALL GAUL HAVING BEEN OVERRUN), *within the memory of the last generation*, WHEN ALL GAUL WAS IN CONFUSION. 2. **timōre perterritī Rōmānī discēdunt, I. 23,** 3, *the Romans are withdrawing* (HAVING BEEN TERRIFIED by fear), BECAUSE THEY ARE AFRAID. 3. **datā facultāte nōn temperābunt, I. 7,** 5, (AN OPPORTUNITY HAVING BEEN GIVEN), IF OPPORTUNITY IS GIVEN, *they will not refrain*. 4. **hāc rē cōgnitā exercitum castrīs continuit, II. 11,** 2, (THIS THING HAVING BEEN ASCERTAINED), THOUGH HE FOUND THIS OUT, *he kept the army in camp*. In the same sentence the participle **veritus** denotes cause. 5. **persuādent fīnitimīs, uti . . ūsī . . . oppidīs . . . exūstīs . . . proficīscantur, I. 5,** 4; see note, Book I., l. 88. 6. **ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs phalangem perfrēgērunt, I. 25,** 2, (SPEARS HAVING BEEN THROWN), BY THROWING THEIR SPEARS *from the higher position, they broke the line*. 7. **frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferēbat, IV. 12,** 5, (he was bearing aid to his brother, CUT OFF by the enemy), *he was trying to help his brother* WHO HAD BEEN CUT OFF (*from retreat*) *by the enemy*.

265 The perfect passive participle modifying a substantive is sometimes translated by a verbal noun with an object.

iniūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, III. 10, 2, (the wrong of RETAINED Roman knights), *the crime of retaining Roman knights*.

266 **Habeō** with a direct object modified by a perfect passive participle is often used in a sense that is practically equivalent to the pluperfect tense of the latter verb. Strictly, however, it denotes more than the pluperfect, laying emphasis on the *maintenance of the result*.

portōria . . . redēmpta habet, I. 18, 3, (HE HAS the import duties BOUGHT UP), *he has bought up the import duties*, (*and still holds them*). **omnia explōrāta habēmus, II. 4,** 4, (WE HAVE all things FOUND OUT), *we have found out everything*.

Besides the above examples this construction occurs as follows,— I. **9,** 3 (see note), **15,** 1, **44,** 12; III. **2,** 5; VI. **13,** 6, **20,** 1; VII. **29,** 6, **54,** 2.

For uses of the future passive participle (the gerundive) see §§ 269, 270, and 278.

The Gerund.

The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used in the nominative and as the object of verbs (not of prepositions).

Uses of the Gerund. G. 426–433; A. 502–507; B. 338; H. 625–631; W. 637–639.

267 The gerund is the verbal noun in the oblique cases. The infinitive is used as the nominative and the accusative after verbs (the gerund after prepositions).

The uses of the gerund in the Bellum Gallicum are as follows:

Genitive: Objective, explanatory, with adjectives (I. **2,** 4; V. **6,** 3), with **causā** and **grātiā.** See examples under §§ 56 and 58.

Dative: Of purpose or end (III. **4,** 1; V. **27,** 5).

Accusative: Only after **ad.** E.g. **ad proficīscendum,** I. **3,** 1, (to setting out), *for leaving home.*

Ablative: Of means (IV. **13,** 5; V. **54,** 1; VII. **71,** 4), and after **dē** and **in.**

268 The gerund *may* take an object in the case which the verb regularly governs, accusative, dative (with special verbs), genitive (with verbs of *remembering,* etc.), but for this use the gerundive construction is generally substituted, regularly so after prepositions.

The Gerundive.

269 The gerundive has two uses,—(*a*) as the future passive participle, (*b*) as a substitute for the gerund.

Gerundive as a Participle. G. 251, 2, note; A. 500; B. 337, 7; H. 621–622; W. 638, 643, 644.

270 As the future passive participle the gerundive implies *necessity, obligation,* or the idea of *deserving.* In these senses it is used in the Bellum Gallicum as follows:

1. As a predicate adjective.

nōn ferendus, I. **33,** 5, (not to be borne), *unendurable.* Similarly

cōnferendum, comparandam, I. 31, 11, (to be compared,) *comparable;* **laudanda, V. 8,** 4, (to be praised), *praiseworthy.* **māximē admīrandum, VI. 42,** 3 (most to be wondered at), *most remarkable.*

2. As a predicate accusative after **cūrō,** *provide for, cause,* **dō,** *give,* **trādō,** *hand over,* and similar verbs.

pontem faciendum cūrāvit, I. 13, 1, *he caused a bridge* TO BE BUILT. **Sabīnum mittit, quī eam manum distinendam curet, III. 11,** 4, *he sent Sabinus* (who was to cause this force TO BE KEPT SEPARATE), *to see that that force was kept separate.* **exercitum Sabīnō in Menapiōs dūcendum dedit, IV. 22,** 5, *he gave the army to Sabinus* TO BE LED *among the Menapii.*

See also § 278.

Gerundive for Gerund. G. 427; A. 503; B. 339; H. 623; W. 640.

271 When the gerund might be used but would have an object, the gerundive construction is often substituted, regularly so after a preposition. Also **III. 25,** 1, in the ablative of means; see example below.

272 The gerundive construction consists in putting the substantive in the case which the gerund would have had, and making the gerundive agree with it, as a verbal *adjective,* in gender, number, and case.

GERUND: **ad effēminandum animōs, I. 1,** 3, *to* WEAKENING *the minds.* Here the construction is identical in both languages: **effēminandum** is the object of **ad,** and **animōs** is the object of **effēminandum,** just as *weakening* is the object of *to,* and *minds* is the object of weakening.

GERUNDIVE: **ad animōs effēminandōs.** Here **animōs** is the object of **ad,** and **effēminandōs** agrees with it in gender, number, and case. English has no such verb form as the gerundive, and cannot translate any differently from above,—(to weakening the minds), *to weaken the character.*

GERUNDIVE: **lapidibus tēlīsque subministrandīs, III. 25,** 1. GERUND: **lapidēs tēlaque subministrandō,** BY FURNISHING STONES AND SPEARS. So **caespitibus comportandīs** following. What would be the form of these two words if the gerund were used?

273 1. With **meī, tuī, suī, nostrī,** and **vestrī,** the gerundive is employed with the same ending, regardless of gender or number, since these forms were originally neuter singular.

suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt, III. 6, 1, *they leave the enemy a chance* (OF COLLECTING THEMSELVES), OF COLLECTING

THEIR WITS. Here **suī**, referring to **hostibus**, is plural, and strict agreement would require **colligendōrum.**

2. The gerundive construction would naturally be confined to transitive verbs, but the deponent verbs which govern the ablative (§ 73) regularly admit it.

spēs potiundī oppidī, II. 7, 2, *hope of capturing the town.* So III. 7, 6.

SUPINES.

274 The supines are the accusative and ablative of a fourth declension verbal noun.

Accusative Supine (Supine in *-um,* Former Supine). G. 435; A. 509; B. 340, 1; H. 632–634; W. 654.

275 RULE: The accusative supine is used chiefly after verbs of motion to express purpose (design). It may take an object.

It is translated by the infinitive.

lēgātōs mittunt rogātūm auxilium, I. 11, 2, *they send envoys* TO ASK *help.*

This construction occurs 14 times in the Bellum Gallicum.

Ablative Supine (Supine in *-ū*, Latter Supine). G. 436; A. 510; B. 240, 2; H. 635; W. 655.

276 RULE: The ablative supine is used with adjectives as an ablative of specification. It never takes an object.

It is translated by the infinitive, if retained in English at all.

perfacile factū, I. 3, 6, *very easy* (TO DO). So IV. 30, 2, VII. 64, 2. **horribiliōrēs āspectū**, V. 14, 2, *more terrible* IN APPEARANCE. Only instances in the Bellum Gallicum.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

Active (First) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 247; A. 194, *a;* B. 115; H. 236; W. 188.

277 The active periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future active participle with forms of **sum**.

The participle is translated separately in its usual way (§ 261), and the form of **sum** according to its tense, mood, use, etc.

quod portātūrī || erant, I. **5,** 3, *what* THEY WERE || GOING TO CARRY. **ubi bellum gestūrī || essent,** III. **9,** 6, *where* THEY WERE || GOING TO WAGE *war.* See also example under § 239.

Passive (Second) Periphrastic Conjugation. G. 251; A. 194, *b;* B. 115; H. 237; W. 188.

278 The passive periphrastic conjugation is the combination of the future passive participle (the gerundive) with forms of **sum.**

From the adjective use of the future passive participle (§ 270) there is developed the idea of *obligation* or *necessity,* which is expressed in various ways in English.

agendum est, *it has to be done, it must be done, it ought to be done.*

agendum erat, *it had to be done.*

agendum erit, *it will have to be done.*

For examples in the Bellum Gallicum see §§ 31 and 215.

Note that this construction does not correspond to that of § 277 in the ordinary relations of active and passive. Obligation in the active voice is expressed with **dēbeō** or **oportet.** But intransitive verbs may be used impersonally in this construction.

The agent under this construction is expressed by the dative (§ 31).

Uses of Cum.

279 1. Preposition with ablative, *with.*

2. Subordinate conjunction, *when, since, although.*

If it introduces an indicative, it certainly means *when.* If the clause is followed by **tamen,** *nevertheless,* it certainly means *although.* In other cases the meaning can only be determined by the connection, and there is often a combination of the ideas of time and cause, or of time and concession.

3. Practically a correlative conjunction, **cum . . . tum,** *not only . . . but also, both . . . and,* II. **4,** 7, V. **4,** 3, etc. Note **cum . . . etiam . . . tum,** *not only . . . and . . . but also,* III. **16,** 2.

Hendiadys.

280 Hendiadys (*ἓν διὰ δυοῖν*) is a figure of syntax whereby two nouns connected by a conjunction are used for one with an adjective or a genitive.

exempla cruciātūsque, I. **31,** 12, (examples and cruelties), *sorts of cruelty.*

PARADIGMS.

NOUNS.

First Declension.

lingua, -ae, -ae, -am, -a, -ā; -ae, -ārum, -īs, -ās, -ae, -īs.
For locative, see § 93; for **fīlia,** see vocabulary; **dea,** *goddess,* like **fīlia.**

Second Declension.

M. **animus, -ī, -ō, -um, -e, -ō; -ī, -ōrum, -īs, -ōs, -ī, -īs.**
ager, agrī, agrō, agrum, ager, agrō; agrī, agrōrum, etc.
puer, puerī, puerō, puerum, puer, puerō; puerī, puerōrum, etc.
vir, virī, virō, virum, vir, virō; virī, virōrum, etc.
N. **bellum, -ī, -ō, -um, -um, -ō; -a, -ōrum, -īs, -a, -a, -īs.**

For locative, see § 93. Nouns of this declension ending in **-ius** or **-ium** often have a single **ī** for the ending of the genitive singular, without change of accent; so also the vocative singular of **fīlius** and of proper names. For **deus** and **vulgus,** see vocabulary.

Third Declension.*

I. Consonant Stems.

M. †**cōnsul, cōnsulis, -ī, -em, -e; -ēs, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.**
N. **flūmen, flūminis, flūminī, flūmen, flūmine; flūmina, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.**
F. **lēx, lēgis, lēgī, lēgem, lēge; lēgēs, -um, -ibus, -ēs, -ibus.**
N. **caput, capitis, capitī, caput, capite; capita, -um, -ibus, -a, -ibus.**

* The vocative is hereafter omitted in these paradigms.
† A feminine noun does not differ in endings from a masculine noun.

II. I and Mixed Stems.

M. or F. **hostis, hostis, hostī, hostem, hoste; hostēs, -ium, -ibus, -ēs (or -īs), -ibus.**

N. **vectīgal, vectīgālis, vectīgālī, vectīgal, vectīgālī; vectīgālia, -ium, -ibus, -ia, -ibus.** See also in vocabulary **mīlle.**

F. **pars, partis, partī, partem, parte; partēs, -ium, -ibus, -ēs (or -īs), -ibus.**

Note.—Declined like (1) **hostis,** (2) **vectīgal,** or (3) **pars** are the following: (1) Nouns ending in **is** or **ēs,** having the same number of syllables in the genitive as in the nominative; (2) neuters ending in **e, al, ar;** (3) nouns ending in **ns** or **rs,** and monosyllables ending in **s** or **x,** if these letters are preceded by a consonant.

The accusative singular of **nāvis, puppis, sēmentis,** and **turris** may end in **im;** the ablative singular of **avis, cīvis, clāssis, collis, fīnis, īgnis, nāvis, orbis, puppis, sēmentis, turris,** and **imber** may end in **ī** or **e.** In the plural **imber, linter,** and **nox** are declined like nouns having **i** stems; while **iuvenis** is not so declined.

Many names of tribes have (Greek) accusative plural in **-as;** *e.g.*, **Allobrogēs,** I. 14, 3.

For the locative see § 93. For **senex, vīs, bōs** and **Iuppiter,** see vocabulary.

Fourth Declension.

M. **passus, -ūs, -uī (or -ū), -um, -ū; -ūs, -uum, -ibus, -ūs, -ibus.**
N. **cornū, -ūs, -ū, -ū, -ū; -ua, -uum, -ibus, -ua, -ibus.**
For **domus, lacus,** and **portus,** see vocabulary.

Fifth Declension.

diēs, diēī, diēī, diem, diē; diēs, diērum, diēbus, diēs, diēbus.
rēs, reī, reī, rem, rē; rēs, rērum, rēbus, rēs, rēbus.
For all other nouns of this declension, see vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

First-and-Second Declension.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	māgnus	māgna	māgnum
Gen.	māgnī	māgnae	māgnī
	etc.	etc.	etc.
Voc.	māgne	māgna	māgnum
Nom. and Voc.	noster	nostra	nostrum
Gen.	nostrī	nostrae	nostrī
	etc.	etc.	etc.
Nom. and Voc.	līber	lībera	līberum
Gen.	līberī	līberae	līberī
	etc.	etc.	etc.

For alius, alter, ūllus, nūllus, uter, neuter, sōlus, tōtus, ūnus, see vocabulary.

Third Declension.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	celer	celeris	celere	celerēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	celeris	celeris	celeris	celerium	-ium	-ium
Dat.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	-ibus	-ibus
Acc.	celerem	celerem	celere	celerēs(-īs)	-ēs(-īs)	-ia
Abl.	celerī	celerī	celerī	celeribus	-ibus	-ibus
Nom.	equester	equestris	equestre	equestrēs	-ēs	-ia
Gen.	equestris	equestris	equestris	equestrium	-ium	-ium
	etc.			etc.		

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	fortis	forte	fortēs	fortia
Gen	fortis	fortis	fortium	fortium
Dat.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus
Acc.	fortem	forte	fortēs(-īs)	fortia
Abl.	fortī	fortī	fortibus	fortibus

	M. F.	N.	M. F.	N.
Nom.	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
Gen.	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
Dat.	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Acc.	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs(-īs)	fortiōra
Abl.	fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōre(-ī)	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
Nom.	oriēns	oriēns	orientēs	orientia
Gen.	orientis	orientis	orientium	orientium
Dat.	orientī	orientī	orientibus	orientibus
Acc.	orientem	oriēns	orientēs(-īs)	orientia
Abl.	orientī(-e)	orientī(-e)	orientibus	orientibus

The ablative singular in **ī** is more common in the case of adjectives, and that in **e** in the case of participles.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS.

Adjective	longus, -a, -um	longior, -ius	longissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	longē	longius	longissimē
Adjective	fortis, -e	fortior, -ius	fortissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	fortiter	fortius	fortissimē
Adjective	potēns, potentis	potentior, -ius	potentissimus, -a, -um
Adverb	potenter	potentius	potentissimē

For irregular comparisons see page 227 and vocabulary.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Cardinals.—**ūnus, duo, trēs, quattuor, quīnque, sex, septem, octo, novem, decem, ūndecim, duodecim, trēdecim, quattuordecim, quīndecim, sēdecim (sexdecim), septendecim, duodēvigintī, ūndēvīgintī, vīgintī**; 30, **trigintā**; 40, **quadrāgintā**; 50, **quīnquāgintā**; 60, **sexāgintā**; 70, **septuāgintā**; 80, **octōgintā**; 90, **nōnāginta**; 100, **centum**; 200, **ducentī (ae, a)**; 300, **trēcentī**; 400, **quadringentī**; 500, **quīngentī**; 600, **sexcentī**; 700, **septingentī**; 800, **octingentī**; 900, **nōngentī**; 1000, **mīlle**.

Ordinals.—**prīmus, secundus, tertius, quārtus, quīntus, sextus, septimus, octāvus, nōnus, decimus, ūndecimus, duodecimus, tertius decimus, quārtus decimus, quīntus decimus, sextus decimus, septimus decimus, duodēvīcēsimus, ūndēvicēsimus, vīcēsimus.**

PRONOUNS.

	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.	3rd Pers. (Reflex.)
Nom.	ego	tū	——
Gen.	meī	tuī	suī
Dat.	mihi (mī)	tibi	sibi
Acc.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Voc.	——	tū	——
Abl.	mē	tē	sē, sēsē
Nom.	nōs	vōs	——
Gen.	nostrum / nostrī	vestrum / vestrī	suī
Dat.	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi
Acc.	nōs	vōs	sē, sēsē
Voc.	——	vōs	——
Abl.	nobis	vōbīs	sē, sēsē

Nom.	is	ea	id	eī, iī	eae	ea
Gen.	eius	eius	eius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	eī	eī	eī	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs
Acc.	eum	eām	id	eōs	eās	ea
Abl.	eō	eā	eō	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs	eīs, iīs

Nom.	īdem	eadem	idem	eīdem / iīdem, īdem	eaedem	eadem
Gen.	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem
Acc.	eundem	eandem	idem	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
Abl.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem	eīsdem / iīsdem

For all other pronouns, see vocabulary.

VERBS.

First

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	*Act.*	laudō, -ās, -at; laudāmus, -ātis, -ant.	laudem, -ēs, -et; laudēmus, -ētis, -ent.
	Pass.	laudor, -āris *or* -re, -ātur; laudāmur, -āminī, -antur.	lauder, -ēris *or* -re, -ētur; laudēmur, -ēminī, -entur.
Imp.	*Act.*	laudābam, -ābās, *etc.*	laudārem, -ārēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	laudābar, -ābāris *or* -re, *etc.*	laudārer, -ārēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	laudābō, -ābis, -ābit; laudābimus, -ābitis, -ābunt.	
	Pass.	laudābor, -āberis *or* -re, -ābitur; laudābimur, -ābiminī, -ābuntur.	

Gerund. laudandī, -ō, -um, -ō.

Second

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	*Act.*	moneō, -ēs, -et; monēmus, -ētis, -ent.	moneam, -eās, -eat; moneāmus, -eātis, -eant.
	Pass.	moneor, -ēris *or* -re, -ētur; monēmur, -ēminī, -entur.	monear, -eāris *or* -re, -eātur; moneāmur, -eāminī, -eantur.
Imp.	*Act.*	monēbam, -ēbās, *etc.*	monērem, -ērēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	monēbar, -ēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	monērer, -ērēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	monēbō, -ēbis, -ēbit; monēbimus, -ēbitis, -ēbunt.	
	Pass.	monēbor, -ēberis *or* -re, -ēbitur; monēbimur, -ēbiminī, -ēbuntur.	

Gerund. monendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

Third

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	*Act.*	regō, -is, -it; regimus, -itis, -unt.	regam, -ās, -at; regāmus, -ātis, -ant.
	Pass.	regor, eris *or* -re, -itur; regimur, -iminī, -untur.	regar, -āris *or* -re, -ātur; regāmur, -āminī, -antur.
Imp.	*Act.*	regēbam, -ēbās, *etc.*	regerem, -erēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	regēbar, -ēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	regerer, -erēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	regam, -ēs, -et; regēmus, -ētis, -ent.	
	Pass.	regār, -ēris *or* -re, -ētur; regēmur, -ēminī, -entur.	

Gerund. regendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

VERBS.

CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
laudā;	laudāre.	laudāns, -antis.
laudāte.		
laudāre;	laudārī.	
laudāminī.		
laudātō, -ātō;	laudātūrum esse.	laudātūrus, -a, -um.
laudātōte, -antō.		
laudātor, -ātor;	laudātum (*sup.*) īrī.	laudandus, -a, -um.
——, -antor.		

Supines. laudātum, laudātū.

CONJUGATION.

monē;	monēre.	monēns, -entis.
monēte.		
monēre;	monērī.	
monēminī.		
monētō, -ētō;	monitūrum esse.	monitūrus, -a, -um.
monētōte, -ento.		
monētor, -ētor;	monitum (*sup.*) īrī.	monendus, -a, -um.
——, -entor.		

Supines. monitum, monitū.

CONJUGATION.

rege;	regere.	regēns, -entis.
regite.		
regere;	regī.	
regiminī.		
regitō, -itō;	rēctūrum esse.	rectūrus, -a, -um.
regitōte, -untō.		
regitor, -itor;	rēctum (*sup.*) īrī.	regendus, -a, -um.
——, -untor.		

Supines. rēctum, rēctū.

VERBS.

FOURTH

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Pres.	*Act.*	audiō, -īs, -it; audīmus, -ītis, -iunt.	audiam, -iās, -iat; audiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
	Pass.	audior, -īris *or* -re, -ītur; audīmur, -īminī, -iuntur.	audiar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur; audiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
Imp.	*Act.*	audiēbam, -iēbās, *etc.*	audīrem, -īrēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	audiēbar, -iēbāris *or* -re, *etc*	audīrer, -īrēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	audiam, -iēs, -iet; audiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
	Pass.	audiar, -iēris *or* -re, -iētur; audiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.	

Gerund. audiendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

THIRD CONJUGATION

Pres.	*Act.*	capiō, -is, -it; capimus, -itis, -iunt.	capiam, -iās, -iat; capiāmus, -iātis, -iant.
	Pass.	capior, -eris *or* -re, -itur, capimur, -iminī, -iuntur.	capiar, -iāris *or* -re, -iātur; capiāmur, -iāminī, -iantur.
Imp.	*Act.*	capiēbam, -iēbās, *etc.*	caperem, -erēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	capiēbar, -iēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	caperer, -erēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	capiam, -iēs, -iet; capiēmus, -iētis, -ient.	
	Pass.	capiar, -iēris *or* -re, -iētur; capiēmur, -iēminī, -ientur.	

Gerund. capiendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

PERFECT SYSTEM

NOTE.—The perfect, pluperfect and future perfect tenses are conjugated

		Indicative.	Subjunctive.
Perf.	*Act.*	laudāvī, -istī, -it; laudāvimus, -istis, -ērunt *or* -ēre.	laudāverim, -eris, -erit; laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.
	Pass.	laudātus sum, es, est; laudātī sumus, estis, sunt.	laudātus sim, sīs, sit; laudātī sīmus, sītis, sint.
Plup.	*Act.*	laudāveram, -erās, *etc.*	laudāvissem, -issēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	laudātus eram, erās, *etc.*	laudātus essem, essēs, *etc.*
F. P.	*Act.*	laudāverō, -eris, -erit; laudāverimus, -eritis, -erint.	
	Pass.	laudātus erō, eris, erit; laudātī erimus, eritis, erunt.	

VERBS.

CONJUGATION.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
audī;	**audīre.**	**audiēns, -ientis.**
audīte.		
audīre;	**audīrī.**	
audīminī.		
audītō, -ītō;	**audītūrum esse.**	**audītūrus, -a, -um.**
audītōte, -iuntō.		
audītor, ītor;	**audītum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**audiendus, -a, -um.**
——, -iuntor.		

Supines. **audītum, audītū.**

IN **-iō.**

cape;	**capere.**	**capiēns, -ientis.**
capite.		
capere;	**capī.**	
capiminī.		
capitō, -itō;	**captūrum esse.**	**captūrus, -a, -um.**
capitōte, -iuntō.		
capitor, -itor;	**captum** (*sup.*) **īrī.**	**capiendus, -a, -um.**
——, -iuntor.		

Supines. **captum, captū.**

OF ALL VERBS.

with the same endings for all verbs, regular and irregular.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participle.*
	laudāvisse.	
	laudātum (*partic.*) **esse.**	**laudātus, -a, -um.**

IRREGULAR

(For the perfect, pluperfect and future

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.

Sum, esse, fuī,

Pres.	sum, es, est;	sim, sīs, sit;
	sumus, estis, sunt.	sīmus, sītis, sint.
Imp.	eram, erās, *etc.*	essem, essēs, *etc.*
Fut.	erō, eris, erit;	
	erimus, eritis, erunt.	

Possum, posse, potuī,

Pres.	possum, potes, potest;	possim, possīs, possit;
	possumus, potestis, possunt.	possīmus, possītis, possint.
Imp.	poteram, poterās, *etc.*	possem, possēs, *etc.*
Fut.	poterō, poteris, poterit;	
	poterimus, poteritis, poterunt.	

Fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be made,*

Pres.	fīō, fīs, fit;	fīam, fīās, fīat;
	fīmus, fītis, fīunt.	fīāmus, fīātis, fīant.
Imp.	fīēbam, fīēbās, *etc.*	fierem, fierēs, *etc.*
Fut.	fīam, fīēs, fīet;	
	fīēmus, fīētis, fīent.	

Eō, īre, īvī

Pres.	eō, īs, it;	eam, eās, eat;
	īmus, ītis, eunt.	eāmus, eātis, eant.
Imp.	ībam, ībās, *etc.*	īrem, īrēs, *etc.*
Fut.	ībō, ībis, ībit;	
	ībimus, ībitis, ībunt.	

Gerund. eundī, -ō, -um, -ō.

Ferō, ferre, tulī,

Pres.	*Act.*	ferō, fers, fert;	feram, ferās, *etc.*
		ferimus, fertis, ferunt.	
	Pass.	feror, ferris, fertur;	ferar, ferāris *or* -re, *etc.*
		ferimur, feriminī, feruntur.	
Imp.	*Act.*	ferēbam, ferēbās, *etc.*	ferrem, ferrēs, *etc.*
	Pass.	ferēbar, ferēbāris *or* -re, *etc.*	ferrer, ferrēris *or* -re, *etc.*
Fut.	*Act.*	feram, ferēs, feret;	
		ferēmus, ferētis, ferent.	
	Pass.	ferar, ferēris *or* -re, ferētur;	
		ferēmur, ferēminī, ferentur.	

Gerund. ferendī, -ō, -um, -ō.

VERBS.

perfect tenses, see pages 210 and 211.)

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
futūrus, *be,*		
es; este.	esse.	——
estō, estō; estōte, suntō.	futūrum esse (*or* fore)	futūrus, -a, -um.
——, *be able, can.*		
	posse.	potēns, -entis.
be done; happen, become.		
fī; fīte.	fierī.	——
	factum (*sup.*) īrī.	faciendus, -a, -um.
(iī), itum, *go.*		
ī; īte.	īre.	iēns, euntis.
ītō, ītō; ītōte, euntō.	itūrum esse.	itūrus.

Supines. itum, itū.

lātum, *bear.*		
fer; ferte.	ferre.	ferēns, -entis.
ferre. feriminī.	ferrī.	
ferto, fertō; fertōte, feruntō.	latūrum esse.	latūrus, -a, -um.
fertor, fertor; ——, feruntor.	lātum (*sup.*) īrī.	ferendus, -a, -um

Supines. lātum, lātū.

Volō, velle, voluī, ——,

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*
Pres.	volō, vīs, vult; volumus, vultis, volunt.	velim, velīs, velit; velīmus, velītis, velint.
Imp.	volēbam, volēbās, *etc.*	vellem, vellēs, *etc.*
Fut.	volam, volēs, *etc.*	

Nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——,

Pres.	nōlō, nōn vīs, nōn vult; nōlumus, nōn vultis, nōlunt.	nōlim, nōlīs, nōlit; nōlīmus, nōlītis, nōlint.
Imp.	nōlēbam, nōlēbās, *etc.*	nōllem, nōllēs, *etc.*
Fut.	nōlam, nōlēs, *etc.*	

Mālō, mālle, māluī, ——,

Pres.	mālō, māvīs, māvult; mālumus, māvultis, mālunt.	mālim, mālīs, mālit; mālīmus, mālītis, mālint.
Imp.	mālēbam, mālēbās, *etc.*	māllem, māllēs, *etc.*
Fut.	mālam, mālēs, *etc.*	

DEFECTIVE

Meminī, meminisse,

Perf.	meminī, -istī, *etc.*	meminerim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	memineram, -erās, *etc.*	meminissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	meminerō, -eris, *etc.*	

Ōdī, ōdisse,

Perf.	ōdī, -istī, *etc.*	ōderim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	ōderam, -erās, *etc.*	ōdissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	ōderō, -eris, *etc.*	
Fut.		

Coepī, coepisse, coeptus,

Perf.	coepī, -istī, *etc.*	coeperim, -eris, *etc.*
Plup.	coeperam, -erās, *etc.*	coepissem, -issēs, *etc.*
F. P.	coeperō, -eris, *etc.*	
Fut.		

For the present system and the passive of this verb, see vocabulary.

Imperative.	*Infinitive.*	*Participles.*
wish, be willing.		
	velle.	volēns, -entis.
not wish, be unwilling.		
nōlī; nōlīte.	nōlle.	nōlēns, -entis.
nōlītō, nōlītō; nōlītōte, nōluntō.		
wish more, prefer.		
	mālle.	

VERBS.

——, *remember.*		
mementō; mementōte.	meminisse	
ōsus, *hate.*		
	odisse.	ōsus, -a, -um.
	ōsūrum esse	ōsūrus, -a, -um.
began, have begun.		
	coepisse	coeptus, -a. -um.
	coeptūrum esse.	coeptūrus, -a, -um.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Oportet, oportēre, oportuit, *it behooves, it is proper.*

	Indicative.	*Subjunctive.*	*Infinitive.*
Pres.	oportet.	oporteat.	oportēre.
Imp.	oportēbat.	oportēret.	
Fut.	oportēbit.		
Perf.	oportuit.	oportuerit.	oportuisse.
Plup.	oportuerat.	oportuisset.	
F. P.	oportuerit.		

INFINITIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF DEPONENT VERBS.

Pres.	arbitrārī.		arbitrāns, -antis.
Perf.	arbitrātum (*partic.*) esse.		arbitrātus, -a, -um.
Fut.	arbitrātūrum esse.		arbitrātūrus, -a, -um.
		Gerundive.	arbitrandus, -a, -um.

PERIPHRASTIC CONJUGATIONS.

For the periphrastic conjugations see §§ 277 and 278. They are conjugated in all tenses of the indicative and subjunctive, and have the present and perfect infinitives.

PRINCIPAL PARTS OF VERBS.

The following list contains the principal parts of all the different simple verbs in the Bellum Gallicum except those in **-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** and **-or, -ārī, -ātus sum,** in the order of their first occurrence in simple or compound form.

If any compound that occurs in this work varies in *form* from the simple verb, an example is given; if any compound that occurs in this work differs from the simple verb in the *accent of some one of its principal parts*, it is marked with an asterisk (*); if it does *not* differ in accent in the *principal parts*, but *does* in *other forms*, it is marked with a dagger (†).

BOOK I.

Ch. 1. * **sum, esse, fuī, (futūrus),** *be.*
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *divide.*
* **colō, colere, coluī, cultum,** *cultivate.*
* **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** *bear.*
† **teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum,** *hold.*
  per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī tentum, *extend; pertain.*
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry.*
cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go (from); yield.*
tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum or **tentum,** *stretch.*
  con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, *hasten; fight.*
  os-tendō, tendere, tendī, tēnsum (tentum), *show.*
  in-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum (tēnsum), *direct upon.*
† **habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum,** *have.*
  pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum, *keep out; prevent.*
  dēbeō (for **de-hibeō**), **dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum,** *owe, ought.*
   So **praebeō** (for **prae-hibeō**), *furnish.*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say.*
† **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum,** *take.*
  in-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum, *begin.*
tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctum, *touch.*
  at(ad)-tingō, tingere, tigī, tāctum, *touch upon.*
vergō, vergere, ——, ——, *incline, lie.*
orior, orīri (orī), ortus sum (oritūrus), *rise.*

CH. 2. **dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum,** *lead.*

† **faciō, facere, fēcī, factum,** *do, make.* PASSIVE: **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *be done, be made, happen, become.* So compounds with words other than prepositions; others like

dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, *fail;* passive regular.

suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, *advise.*

* **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum,** *go.*

* **stō, stāre, stetī, stātum,** *stand* (intransitive).

prae-stō, stāre, stitī, ——, *stand before;* but **dīstō** and **exstō** have no perfect.

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, *become master (of).*

possum, posse, potuī, ——, *be able; can.*

CH. 3. **pateō, patēre, patuī, ——,** *lie open, extend.*

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *stand* (transitive).

cōn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum, *determine; station.*

† **moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum,** *move.*

proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out.*

* **emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum,** *take, buy.* So **co-emō**; other compounds like

ad-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum, *take away;* except **dēmō** [for **de-emō**], **prōmō** [for **pro-emō**], **sūmō** [for **sub-emō**], like

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *(under)take.*

* **petō, petere, petīvī (iī), petītum,** *seek.*

* **legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum,** *pick; read.*

dē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum, *choose.* So all compounds, except

dī-ligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctum, *love;*

intel-legō (ligō), legere (ligere), lēxī, lēctum, *understand;*

neg-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum, *neglect.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give.* So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; others like

ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum, *hide.*

CH. 4. * **agō, agere, ēgī, āctum,** *drive, put through.*

ad-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum, *drive to.* **cōgō** contracts in present system.

* **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum,** *follow.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, ——, *it is proper.*

* **rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum,** *seize.*

ē-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, *snatch away.*

morior, morī (morīrī), mortuus sum (moritūrus), *die.*
scīscō, scīscere, scīvī (iī), scītum, *resolve.*

CH. 5. **in-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum,** *set fire to.*
ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, *burn.* So **com-(b)ūrō.**
tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum, *raise; take away.*
molō, molere, moluī, molitum, *grind.*
iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, (*serve one's self*), *use.*

CH. 6. **pendeō, pendēre, pependī,** ——, *hang* (intransitive).
im-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī (iī), pedītum, (*get one's foot in*), *impede.*
* **fluō, fluere, fluxī, (fluxus),** *flow.*
† **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum,** *see.*
* **patior, patī, passus sum,** *suffer, allow.*
  per-petior, petī, pessus sum, *endure.*
† **veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum,** *come.*

CH. 7. * **scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum,** *cut.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send, let go.*
licet, licēre, licuit (licitum est), *it is permitted; may.*
caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, *cause to fall, cut, kill.*
  oc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum, *kill.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive.*
  ex-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out.* But **re-pellō** has perfect **re-ppulī,** for **re-pepulī.**
spondeō, spondēre, spopondī, spōnsum, *promise.*
  re-spondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsum, *answer.*
volō, velle, voluī, ——, *wish, be willing.*
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn.* So the compounds, except
  re-vertor, vertī, vertī, versum, *turn back* (deponent in present system).

CH. 8. **pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum,** *place.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī (iī), mūnītum, *fortify.*
† **iacio, iacere, iēcī, iactum,** *throw.*
  dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **dē-jiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum,** *throw down.*
iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join.*
rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break.*
* **sistō, sistere, (stitī), stātum,** *cause to stand;* in comp., *stand.*
  dē-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, *leave off.* So all compounds, except **ad-, in-, circum-,** which have no supine; the last has perfect **circum-stetī.**

CH. 9. **linquō, linquere, līquī, lictum,** *leave.*
studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, *be eager.*
stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, *draw tight.*
CH. 10. **scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum,** *write.*
CH. 11. **dē-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum,** *defend.*
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, or deponent, *deserve.*
CH 12. * **gradior, gradī, gressus sum,** *step.*
ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum, *approach.*
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *loose.*
ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge.*
CH. 13. **re-minīscor, minīscī, ——,** *call to mind.*
tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *allot.*
dē-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look.*
dīscō, dīscere, didicī, (dīscitūrus), *learn.*
nītor, nītī, nīsus (nīxus) sum, *rest, rely.*
CH. 14. * **cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum,** *fall.*
in-cidō, cidere, cidī, cāsum, *happen.* So most compounds; but **ac-, con-,** and **dē-cidō** omit the supine; and **re-cidō** sometimes has perfect **reccidī.**
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard* (for).
timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, *be afraid.*
ob-līvīscor, līvīscī, lītus sum, *forget.*
suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed.*
doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *feel fain.*
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*
CH. 15. **lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum,** *provoke.*
coepī, coepisse, coeptus, *began, have begun.*
CH. 16. * **vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum,** *convey.*
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, *be unwilling.*
mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure.*
queror, querī, questus sum, *complain.*
CH. 17. **taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum,** *be silent.*
valeō, valēre, valuī, ——, *be strong.*
terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *frighten.*
arceō, arcēre, arcuī, (arctus, artus), *shut up.*
co-erceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitum, *restrain.*
CH. 18. **sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum,** *perceive.*
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī (iī), quaesītum, *ask.*
con-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī (iī), quīsītum, *seek for.*
re-periō, perīre, pperī, pertum, *find.*
liceor, licērī, licitus sum, *bid.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.*
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase.*
largior, largīrī, largītus sum, *give generously.*
alō, alere, aluī, alitum, (**altum**), *nourish.*
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, *veil one's self, marry* (of the bride).
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *favor.*
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī (**iī**), **cupītum,** *desire.*
ōdī, ōdisse, ōsus, *hate.*
minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum, *lessen.*

Ch. 19. **(g)nōscō, (g)nōscere, (g)nōvī, (g)nōtum,** *know.* So **ī-gnōscō,** *pardon;* other compounds like
cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, *ascertain.*
vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear.*

Ch. 20. **plectō, plectere,** (**plexī**), **plexum,** *plait.*
com-plector, plectī, plexus sum, *embrace.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī (**iī**), **scītum,** *know.*
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, *increase.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep.*
prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, sometimes shortened to
prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum, *grasp.*
† **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum,** *warn.*
* **loquor, loquī, locūtus sum,** *speak.*

Ch. 21. **sīdō, sīdere, sīdī, ——,** *sit down.*
cōn-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, *settle.*
scandō, scandere, scandī, scānsum, *climb.*
ā(ad)-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum, *climb to.*

Ch. 22. **com-periō, perīre, perī, pertum,** *find out.*
currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, *run.*
ac-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run toward.* So all compounds, except **suc-currō,** which always drops the reduplication.
* **struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum,** *build.*

Ch. 23. **claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum,** *close.*
inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum, *shut off.*
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *trust.*

Ch. 24. * **pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum,** *fill.*
farciō, farcīre, farsī, fartum, *stuff.* So **ef-farciō,** or **ef-ferciō,** like
cōn-ferciō, fercīre, fersī, fertum, *crowd together.*

Ch. 25. frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, *break.*
per-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum, *break through.*
fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, *pierce.*
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *bend.*
vellō, vellere, vellī, vulsum, *wrench.*
fatīscō, fatīscere, ——, ——, *crack open.*
dē-fetīscor, fetīscī, fessus sum, *become tired.*
ā-periō, perīre, peruī, pertum, *open.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer.*
Ch. 26. * iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help.*
Ch. 27. pareō, parēre, paruī, ——, *obey.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee.*
pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, *demand.*
Ch. 30. sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *ordain.*
Ch. 31. arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī (iī), arcessītum, *summon.*
ex-perior, perīrī, pertus sum, *try.*
Ch. 32. tueor, tuērī, tuitus (tūtus) sum, *look at.*
† maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain.*
Ch. 33. * premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press.*
ex-primō, primere, pressī, pressum, *press out.*
horreō, horrēre, horruī, ——, *shudder at.*
Ch. 34. placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, *please.*
sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit.* So compounds with dissyllabic prepositions; but
pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum, *sit as master of, possess.*
* trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *draw.*
Ch. 35. cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum (cēnsitus), *think, decree.*
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, *hang* (transitive).
Ch. 38. cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, *encircle.*
Ch. 39. fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, *shape.*
audiō, audīre, audīvī (iī), audītum, *hear.*
Ch. 40. spargō, spargere, sparsī, sparsum, *scatter.*
dī-spergō, spergere, spersī, spersum, *scatter abroad.*
in-dulgeō, dulgēre, dulsī, dultum, *indulge.*
Ch. 41. nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (nāscitūrus), *be born.*
* spuō, spuere, spuī, spūtum, *spew.*
Ch. 43. † doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, *teach.*
Ch. 45. * serō, serere, seruī, sertum, *join.*
Ch. 47. ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvī, ultum, *grow up.*
Ch. 51. pandō, pandere, pandī, passum (pānsum), *spread.*

CH. 52. saliō, salīre, saluī (saliī), saltum, *jump.*
īn-siliō, silīre, siluī, ——, *leap upon.*

CH. 53. nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus (nanctus) sum, *get.*
vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*
cōn-sulō, sulere, suluī, sultum, *consult.*

BOOK II.

CH. 1. veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvī, ——, *become established.*
CH. 5. flīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flīctum, *strike.*
CH. 6. * ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum (ruitūrus), *rush down.*
CH. 10. fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive.*
CH. 15. languēscō, languescere, languī, ——, *grow weak.*
CH. 19. regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *rule.*
por-rigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctum, *extend.*
pergō (for per-rigō), pergere, per-rēxī, per-rēctum, *go on.* So
surgō (for sub-rigō), *rise.*
lateō, latēre, latuī, ——, *lie hidden.*
CH. 20 vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*
CH. 21. in-duō, duere, duī, dūtum, *put on, don.* So ex-uō, III. 6.
trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum, *thrust.*
CH. 25. urgeō (urgueō), urgēre, ursī, ——, *press.*
CH. 27. -cumbō, -cumbere, cubuī, cubitum, *topple.*
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *blot out, destroy.*
iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, ——, *lie prostrate.*
CH. 29. acuō, acuere, acuī, acūtum, *sharpen.*
CH. 30. † rideō, ridēre, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh.*
CH. 33. crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, *believe, trust.* Compare dō.
texō, texere, texuī, textum, *weave.*
CH. 35. cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *separate.*

BOOK III.

CH. 6. fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour.*
ex-uō, uere, uī, ūtum, *put off, doff.* Compare in-duō, II. 21.
meminī, meminisse, ——, *remember.*
CH. 8. mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, *prefer.*
CH. 10. partior, partīrī, partītus sum, *divide.*

Ch. 13. noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, *injure.*
saeviō, saevīre, saevīvī (iī), saevītum, *rage.*
timēscō, timēscere, timuī, ——, *begin to fear.*
Ch. 17. carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum, *pluck.*
Ch. 19. vādō, vādere, vāsī, vāsum, *go.*
Ch. 22. voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy.*

BOOK IV.

Ch. 1. vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *live.*
lavō, lavāre (lavere), lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, *wash.*
Ch. 2. sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm, *let.*
mollēscō, mollēscere, ——, ——, *become soft.*
Ch. 5. paeniteō, paenitēre, paenituī, ——, *repent;* usually impers.
serviō, servīre, servīvī (iī), servītum, *be a slave.*
Ch. 6. mulceō, mulcēre, mulsī, mulsum, *soothe.*
Ch. 12. fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *dig.*
Ch. 13. gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice.*
Ch. 16. fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī (iī), fīnītum, *limit.*
Ch. 17. sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum, *strew.*
Ch. 25. inquam, 3d pers. inquit, irreg., *I say.*
Ch. 32. * metō, metere, messuī, messum, *mow.*
latēscō, latēscere, latuī, ——, *hide.*
dē-litēscō, litēscere, lituī, ——, *hide away.*

BOOK V.

Ch. 3. * labor, labī, lapsus sum, *slip.*
Ch. 4. ārdēscō, ārdēscere, ārsī, ārsum, *begin to burn.*
Ch. 14. * serō, serere, sēvī, satum, *sew.*
vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī (iī), vestītum, *clothe.*
rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, *scrape.*
Ch. 18. * tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover.*
Ch. 24. medeor, medērī, ——, *heal.*
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum, *rest.*
Ch. 27. fateor, fatērī, fassus sum, *confess.*
con-fiteor, fitērī, fessus sum, *confess.*
Ch. 29. ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsum, *be on fire.*
stinguō, stinguere, stinxī, stinctum, *quench, put out.*
Ch. 30. sapiō, sapere, sapīvī (-sapuī), ——, *have a flavor; perceive.*
Ch. 36. parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus, *spare.*

Ch. 39. apīscor, apīscī, aptus sum, *reach after.*
ad-ipīscor, ipīscī, eptus sum, *get.*
Ch. 42. hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustum (hausūrus), *drain.*
Ch. 43. ferveō, fervēre, fervī, ——, or
fervō, fervere, ferbuī, ——, *seethe.*
pariō, parere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), *bring forth, get.*
torreō, torrēre, torruī, tōstum, *parch.*
Ch. 44. quatiō, quatere, quassī, quassum, *shake.*
per-cutiō, cutere, cussī, cussum, *thrust through.*
Ch. 48. haerēscō, haerēscere, haesī, haesum, *cling.*
Ch. 50. laciō, lacere, ——, ——, *entice.*
ē-liciō, licere, licuī, licitum, *lure out;* but
al-liciō, licere, lexī, lectum, *allure.*
Ch. 51. temnō, temnere, ——, ——, *despise.*
con-temnō, temnere, tem(p)sī, tem(p)tum, *despise.*

BOOK VI.

Ch. 1. sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum, *patch.*
Ch. 4. cūstōdiō, cūstōdīre, cūstōdīvī (iī), cūstōdītum, *guard.*
Ch. 9. laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, *harm.*
Ch. 11. egeō, egēre, eguī, ——, *lack.*
Ch. 13. ex-cellō, cellere, -celluī, (celsus), *surpass.*
Ch. 15. soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed.*
Ch. 21. * luō, luere, luī, lūtum (luitūrus), *wash.*
Ch. 27. plicō, plicāre, plicāvī or plicuī, plicātum or plicitum, *fold.*
Ch. 29. mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, ——, *begin to ripen.*
Ch. 36. valēscō, valēscere, valuī, valitum, *get well.*
Ch. 38. careō, carēre, caruī, ——, *be without.*
im-mineō, minēre, ——, ——, *overhang.*

BOOK VII.

Ch. 4. * secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *cut.*
Ch. 11. * cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum, *sleep out.*
Ch. 21. * crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitum, *rattle.*
Ch. 25. fungor, fungī, functus sum, *discharge.*
Ch. 42. pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, *it shames.*
Ch. 46. molliō, mollīre, mollīvī (iī), mollītum, *soften.*

Ch. 47. **canō, canere, cecinī, (cantum),** *sing.*
Ch. 49. **metuō, metuere, metuī,** ——, *fear.*
Ch. 50. **(pangō, pangere), pepigī** or **panxī, pāctum,** *agree.*
Ch. 54. **torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortum,** *twist.*
Ch. 62. **mīsceō, mīscēre, mīscuī, mīxtum** or **mīstum,** *mix.*
Ch. 73. **stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilīvī (iī), stabilītum,** *make steady.*
Ch. 77. **saepiō, saepīre, saepsī, saeptum,** *hedge.*

IRREGULAR SUBSTANTIVES.

The following substantives require notice as having irregular, extra, or lacking forms. See vocabulary or grammars.

Book I. 1. **bellum, sōl.** 2. **lacus, locus, mīlia.** 3. **fidēs, fīlia.** 4. **arma.** 5. **domus, nihil, spēs.** 6. **vīs.** 9. **angustiae.** 10. **hīberna.** 11. **līberī.** 12. **deus.** 18. **nēmō.** 20. **ops, vulgus.** 22. **aciēs.** 24. **phalanx.** 26. **vesper.** 29. **senex.** 34. **opus.** 43. **planitiēs.** 50. **fās, merīdiēs.**

Book II. 17. **īnstar.**

Book III. 8. **portus.**

Book IV. 12. **indūtiae.** 32. **esseda(um).**

Book V. 35. **femur.**

Book VI. 13. **druides.** 14. **mīlitia.** 26. **bōs.** 28. **epulum(a).**

Book VII. 8. **nix.**

GENDER OF SUBSTANTIVES.

General Rules.

Masculine. Names of male beings, rivers, winds, months and mountains.

Feminine. Names of female beings, countries, towns, plants and trees.

Neuter. Indeclinable Nouns.

Special Rules—Subordinate to the Above.

Declensions I. and V., *feminine.*

Declensions II. and IV., *masculine* or *neuter,* according to ending.

Declension III. *Masculine:* those ending in **ō** (except **dō, gō,** and **iō**), **or, ōs, er, es.** *Feminine:* those ending in **dō, gō** and **iō, ās, ēs, is, ūs, x,** and **s** following a consonant. *Neuter:* all others.

Exceptions.

Book I. 1. **Garumna** (*m.* or *f.*), **Mātrona** (*f.*), **fīnis** (*m.*), **mōns** (*m.*), **sōl** (*m.*). 2. **locus** (*m.* and *n.* plural). 3. **iter** (*n.*). 4. **diēs** (*m.*, sometimes *f.*, see vocabulary), **īgnis** (*m.*), **iūs** (*n.*). 5. **domus** (*f.*), **mēnsis** (*m.*). 6. **pōns** (*m.*). 7. **Īdūs** (*f.*). 8. **pēs** (*m.*). 10. **Alpēs** (*f.*). 12. **linter** (*f.*). 20. **vulgus** (*n.*, accusative rarely *m.*). 22. **collis** (*m.*). 25. **manus** (*f.*). 38. **Vesontiō** (*m.*). 40. **ōrdō** (*m.*). 46. **lapis** (*m.*). 50. **merīdiēs** (*m.*).

Book II. 17. **arbor** (*f.*), **sentis** (*m.*). 27. **cadaver** (*n.*). 33. **cortex** (*m.* and *f.*).

Book III. 13. **fūnis** (*m.*), **pollex** (*m.*). 20. **Narbō** (*m.*).

Book IV. 9. **Mosa** (*f.*). 10. **piscis** (*m.*). 15. **cōnfluēns** (*m.*). 31. **aes** (*n.*). 32. **pulvis** (*m.*). 37. **orbis** (*m.*).

Book V. 12. **lepus** (*m.*). 14. **carō** (*f.*). 35. **ōs** (*n.*).

Book VI. 19. **dōs** (*f.*), **cor** (*n.*). 27. **crūs** (*n.*). 34. **stirps** (*f.*, sometimes *m.* in poetry). 36. **seges** (*f.*).

Book VII. 20. **sanguis** (*m.*). 25. **scorpiō** (*m.*). 73. **scrobis** (*m.* and *f.*). 81. **harpagō** (*m.*).

IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following adjectives require notice on account of irregular comparison.

Book I. 1. **extrēmus, īnferior, minor, proximus.** 2. **dīves, māgnus.** 3. **multus.** 6. **bonus, difficilis, facilis.** 7. **ulterior.** 9. **novus.** 10. **citerior, prīmus, superior.** 13. **vetus.** 15. **posterus.** 18. **celer.** 29. **senex.** 31. **pēior.** 32. **miser.** 36. **dēterior.** 44. **līber.**

Book II. 1. **creber.** 2. **interior.** 8. **idōneus.** 17. **tener.**

Book III. 19. **alacer.**

Book IV. 3. **humilis.**

Book V. 40. **aeger.** 45. **asper.**

Book VI. 19. **māgnificus.**

Book VII. 1. **iunior.** 15. **pulcher.**

ADVERBS.

The following list of adverbs of the Bellum Gallicum is intended to contain all that are capable of comparison.

Book I. 1. **longissimē, minimē, saepe.** 2. **facile, latius.** 6. **nūper.** 13. **aegrē, magis.** 14. **graviter, insolenter.** 15. **cupidius, audācter.** 16.

diū. 18. celeriter, līberius, largiter. 19. pius. 22. prope. 23. amplius. 25. commodē. 26. ācriter. 27. suppliciter. 31. superbē, crūdēliter, mātūrrimē. 37. vehementer. 40. arroganter, male, temerē. 44. libenter. 45. potius. 49. setius.

Book II. 1. molestē. 2. cōnstanter. 5. dīligenter, līberāliter. 11. fortiter. 29. lēniter. 33. indīligentius.

Book III. 10. mōbiliter. 13. tenuiter. 18. bene.

Book IV. 25. fēlīciter. 26. fīrmiter.

Book V. 6. obstinātē. 29. serō. 33. incommodē. 49. cautē.

Book VI. 8. placidē. 21. prōmiscuē. 22. accūrātius. 28. studiōsē.

Book VII. 6. rēctē. 22. scienter. 43. mitissimē. 45. tumultuōsius. 51. intolerantius. 60. industriē. 70. parcē. 77. patienter.

VOCABULARY

ABBREVIATIONS

abl.	ablative	infin.	infinitive
abs.	absolute	insep.	inseparable
acc.	accusative	interrog.	interrogative
adj.	adjective	intrans.	intransitive
adv.	adverb	lit.	literally
Bel. Gal.	Bellum Gallicum	loc.	locative
card.	cardinal	m., masc.	masculine
cf.	compare	n., neut.	neuter
comp.	composition	nom.	nominative
compar.	comparative	num.	numeral
conj.	conjunction	obj.	object, objective
coörd.	coördinate	opp.	opposite
dat.	dative	ord.	ordinal
decl.	declension	orig.	originally
dem.	demonstrative	p.	page
dep.	deponent	partic.	participle
dim.	diminutive	pass.	passive
dir.	direct	perf.	perfect
dis.	discourse	pl.	plural
e.g.	for example	plup.	pluperfect
Eng.	English	prep.	preposition
espec.	especially	pres.	present
etc.	and so forth	pron.	pronoun
f., fem.	feminine	reflex.	reflexive
ff.	and following	rel.	relative
fig.	figurative	sc.	supply
1st conj.	first conjugation	sing.	singular
fut.	future	spec.	specification
gen.	genitive	subord.	subordinate
i.e.	that is	subj.	subject, subjective
imperf.	imperfect	subjunct.	subjunctive
imper.	imperative	subst.	substantive
impers.	impersonal	super.	superlative
indic.	indicative	trans.	transitive
indecl.	indeclinable	voc.	vocative
indef.	indefinite	w.	with

VOCABULARY

NOTE.—The literal meaning of a word is given first in each case, but if not used in Caesar it is placed in Roman type in parentheses; other meanings are given approximately in the order of their development. Where chapter references are given for any meaning, it is to be understood that these references cover all instances of its use.

A

A., abbreviation for **Aulus**, a Roman *praenomen*.

a. d., abbreviation for **ante diem**.

ā, ab, abs [**ab** (most primitive form) before vowels and some consonants, especially **l, n, r, s**; **ā** before consonants; **abs** mostly before **t** and **q**, especially with **tē**], prep. w. abl., *away from*, *from*; in expressions of distance, e.g. **ā mīlibus passuum, ab spatiō**, *away*, *off*, *distant*; w. verbs of seeking, requesting, *of*; expressing agency w. passives, *by*; w. verbs of happening, suffering, *at the hands of*. With different point of view in English, w. **cornū, latere, āgmine, parte**, etc., *on*, *in*, *at*; with names of tribes, *on the side of*, e.g. I. **1**, 3.

In composition its forces are the same, but have different effects, depending upon the meaning of the word with which it is joined.

ā-, form of **ad** in comp. before **s**, the quantity being lengthened to compensate for loss of consonant.

ab-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put away); *conceal;* w. reflex. pron. or in pass., *hide* (**in** w. acc., *in*, *among*). Perf. part. as adj., *secluded*, VI. **34**, 2.

ab-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead away*, *carry off*.

ab-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, *go away;* *disappear*, VI. **43**, 4.

ab-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **abjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw away*, *throw down;* *throw*, *hurl*, V. **48**, 5.

abiēs, abietis, f., *fir-tree*.

ab-iungō, ere, iūnxī, iūnctum, (disjoin); *detach*.

abs-, form of **ā, ab,** before **t, q,** and occasionally some other consonants.

abs-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], *cut away*, *cut off*, III. **14**, 7; *cut down*, VII. **73**, 2.

absēns, pres. part. of **absum.**

ab-similis, e, *unlike*.

ab-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, (stand away from); *advance from*.

abs-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold away from); intrans.,

refrain, I. **22,** 3; trans., *restrain*, VII. **47,** 2.

abs-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag away, carry off.*

ab-sum, esse, ā-fuī (ā-futūrus), *be away from, absent, distant; be lacking*, I. **4,** 4; fig., *be far from aiding*, I. **36,** 5. Pres. part., **absēns, absentis,** *absent;* **sē** (etc.) **absente,** *in his absence.*

ab-undō, 1st conj. [**unda,** *a wave*], (overflow, abound); *be strong, well supplied.*

āc, form of **atque** before some consonants.

ac-, form of **ad** in comp. before **c.**

ac-cēdō, cēdere, cēssi, cēssum, *go to* or *toward, approach; be added*, I. **19,** 1, IV. **22,** 4, VII. **46,** 2; *come*, II. **7,** 2; impers. **accēdēbat quod,** *an additional fact* (*reason*) *was that.*

ac-celerō, 1st conj. [**celer,** *swift*], *hasten toward* (anyone).

acceptus, a, um, part. of **accipiō.**

ac-cidō, cidere, cidī, —— [**cadō**], (fall to); *fall*, III. **14,** 4, **25,** 1; 3d pers., (befall), *happen* (in good, bad, or neutral sense).

ac-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], *cut into.*

ac-cipiō, cipere, cēpi, ceptum [**capiō**], (take to one's self); *take command of*, VII. **38,** 1; *accept, receive;* of anything unpleasant, *suffer;* of a fact or person, *hear, hear of; find*, VII. **54,** 3.

ac-clīvis, e [**clīvus,** *slope*], *sloping upward, rising.*

acclīvitās, tātis, f. [**acclīvis**], *upward slope, ascent, rise.*

Accō, ōnis, m., a leader of the Senones, hostile to Caesar, put to death by him: VI. **4,** 1, etc.

accommodātus, a, um, part. of **accommodō.**

ac-commodō, 1st conj. [**commodus,** *convenient*], *fit, adapt; adjust, put on*, II. **21,** 5.

accūrātē, adv. [**accūrātus,** part. of **ac-cūrō,** *care for*], *carefully;* compar., *too elaborately*, VI. **22,** 3.

ac-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run to* or *toward; ride up*, I. **22,** 1.

ac-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (call to account); *blame, reproach, accuse.*

acerbē, adv. [**acerbus**], *bitterly.* **acerbius ferre,** *find too hard to endure.*

acerbitās, tātis, f. [**acerbus**], (bitterness); *privations, suffering.*

acerbus, a, um [**ācer,** *sharp, sour*], (bitter—primarily to the taste; hence, fig., to the mind), *painful, hard.*

acervus, ī, m. [**ācer,** *sharp*], *pile, heap.*

aciēs, ēī, f., plu. only nom. and acc. [**ācer,** *sharp*], (point, edge); *piercing glance*, I. **39,** 1; *line of battle; pitched battle*, VII. **1,** 8, **29,** 2, **64,** 2.

ac-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī or **quīsiī, quīsītum** [**quaerō**], (seek in addition); **aliquid acquīrere,** *gain any further success.*

ācriter, adv., compar. **ācrius,** super. **ācerrimē** [**ācer,** *sharp*], *sharply; fiercely, vigorously, hotly.*

āctuārius, a, um [**agō**], (capable of being driven); *swift-sailing*, driven by both sails and oars.

acuō, acuere, acuī, acūtum [**ācer,**

sharp], *sharpen.* Perf. part. as adj., *sharpened*, *pointed*, *sharp.*

acūtus, a, um, part. of **acuō.**

ad, prep. w. acc.; of motion or direction, *to*, *toward*, (in hostile sense) *against;* of situation, *in the vicinity of*, *near*, *at;* with numerals, *to the number of*, *nearly*, *about;* of limit, *up to*, *until*, *till;* of design, *for the purpose of*, *for*, I. **51,** 1, chiefly w. gerundive; of scope, *for.* Similarly in comp., but cf. remark on **ab.**

adāctus, a, um, part. of **adigō.**

ad-aequō, 1st conj., *make equal to*, III. **12,** 3; (become equal to), *equal;* w. **cursum,** *keep up with*, *keep abreast.*

ad-amō, 1st conj. [**amō,** *love*], *conceive a desire for*, *covet.*

ad-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (give to); *add*, *add to; put on*, VII. **41,** 4.

ad-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead to); *bring* (to, on, up, along); *prevail upon*, *induce*, I. **31,** 8; in pass., w. abl. of cause, *influence*, *induce*, I. **9,** 3; **11,** 1, etc.; *pull taut*, III. **14,** 6.

adēmptus, a, um, part. of **adimō.**

ad-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, *go to*, *approach*, *visit; attack; get at*, II. **7,** 3; intrans., *advance.*

ad-eō, adv. [**eō,** adv., *thither*], (to this point, to such a degree); when followed by result clause, *so; so much*, *so very much.*

adeptus, a, um, part. of **adipīscor.**

ad-equitō, 1st conj. [**equus,** *horse*], *ride up to.*

ad-haereō, haerēre, haesī, haesum, or, better—

ad-haerēscō, haerēscere, haesī, haesum, *cling to*, *stick in.*

ad-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum [**habeō**], (have at hand); *have present*, I. **20,** 6; *call in*, *summon*, *admit; employ*, *use*, III. **20,** 1; *consult*, VII. **83,** 1; *include*, IV. **13,** 4.

ad-hortor, 1st conj., *urge* (to), *exhort*, *encourage.* (**sē ipsī,** *each other*, VI. **37,** 10.)

ad-hūc, adv., *hitherto*, *as yet.*

ad-iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, ——, *lie near*, *border upon*, *be adjacent.*

Adiatunnus, ī, m., a chief of the Sotiates, III. **22.**

ad-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **adjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw to); *hurl; add to*, VII. **72,** 4; *throw up*, *construct*, V. **9,** 7; *be near*, III. **1,** 5.

ad-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**], (drive to anything); *drive up*, VII. **17,** 3; *move up*, V. **43,** 6; *drive down*, IV. **17,** 4; w. **tēlum,** *hurl*, *cast; force* (**ad,** *to take*), VII. **67,** 1.

ad-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum [**emō**], (take to one's self); hence, from another, *take away.*

ad-ipīscor, ipīscī, eptus sum [**apīscor,** *reach after*, *attain*], *achieve*, *gain*, *secure.*

aditus, ūs, m. [**adeō**], *approach*, *access;* w. **sermōnis,** *occasion* (for), V. **41,** 1; *intercourse* (**ad,** *with*), VII. **66,** 7.

ad-iūdicō, 1st conj. [**iūdex, iūdicis,** *judge*], *adjudge*, *award.*

ad-iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum (join to); *attach* (to), *ally* (with); *annex*, III. **2,** 5.

adiūtor, ōris, m. [**adiuvō**], *helper*, *assistant*, *supporter.*

ad-iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help*, *aid*, *be of assistance* or *advantage.*

ad-mātūrō, āre, ——, ——, (ripen); *hasten, precipitate.*

ad-minister, trī, m., *servant, assistant, agent, minister.*

ad-ministrō, 1st conj. [**minister,** *servant*], *execute, carry out; manage, conduct; control* (one's own ship), IV. **29,** 2.

ad-mīror, 1st conj., *be astonished at, wonder at,* V. **52,** 2; *wonder; admire,* VII. **52,** 3; gerundive, (to be wondered at), *surprising.*

ad-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go toward); of a crime, *commit; permit,* IV. **25,** 5; **equō admissō,** *on the gallop, at full speed.*

ad-modum, adv. [prep. phrase, condensed], (to a degree); *exceedingly, very, very much.*

ad-moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *advise, warn, admonish.*

ad-olēscō, olēscere, olēvī, ultum, *grow up, attain manhood.* Pres. part. as noun, written **adulēscēns.**

ad-orior, orīrī, ortus sum, (rise against); *attack, assault.*

ad-sum, esse, af-fuī, ——, *be near, be present, be at hand.*

Aduatuca, ae, f., a stronghold of the Eburones, probably between the Meuse and the Rhine, exact location uncertain, VI. **32,** 3, etc.

Aduatucī, ōrum, m. plu., a Belgic tribe south of the Eburones, about the upper part of the Meuse, II. **4,** 9, etc.

adulēscēns, entis, c. [pres. part. of **adolēscō,** with weakened vowel], (one growing up); *young man* or *woman;* w. **Crassus, Brūtus,** *the younger, junior.*

adulēscentia, ae, f. [**adulēscēns**], *youth, youthfulness.*

adulēscentulus, ī, m. [dim. of **adulēscēns**], *very young man, mere boy.*

adventus, ūs, m. [**ad-veniō,** *come to*], *coming, approach, arrival.*

adversārius, a, um [**adversus**], *standing opposite.* Masc. as subst., *opponent.*

adversus, a, um, part. of **advertō.**

ad-versus, prep. w. acc., (opposite to); *against,* IV. **14,** 2.

ad-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn to;* **animum advertere** (turn the attention to), *notice,* I. **24,** 1; cf. **animadvertō,** which probably represents the actual pronunciation, however written. **adversus, a, um,** (turned to); *facing, opposite,* II. **8,** 3, **18,** 2, III. **14,** 2; *adverse, unsuccessful,* I. **18,** 10, **40,** 8; **adv. rēs,** *reverses, disasters,* VII. **30,** 3; **in adv. ōs,** *squarely in the face,* V. **35,** 8; w. **hostibus,** *face to face,* II. **24,** 1; w. **colle, flūmine,** *up;* **adv. nocte,** *the darkness being against them,* IV. **28,** 3.

ad-vocō, 1st conj., *call to, summon.*

ad-volō, 1st conj., (fly to); *hasten to, against, rush upon.*

aedificium, ī, n. [**aedificō**], *building, dwelling.*

aedificō, 1st conj. [**aedis,** *dwelling,* **faciō,** *make*], (erect a dwelling); *build,* trans., III. **9,** 1, V. **1,** 1; intrans., VI. **22,** 3.

Aeduus, a, um, *Aeduan, of the Aedui.* Masc. as subst., *an* (*the*) *Aeduan,* plu. *the Aedui,* one of the most powerful Gallic tribes, friendly to Caesar until the seventh year of the war, I. **3,** 5, etc.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, compar. **aegrior,** super. **aegerrimus,** *ill, sick;* masc. plu. as subst., *the ill, the sick.*

aegrē, compar. **aegrius,** super. **aegerrimē [aeger],** (illy); *barely, hardly, with difficulty.*

Aemilius, ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius,* a decurion of the Gallic cavalry, I. **23,** 2.

aequāliter [aequālis, *equal*], (equally), *evenly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, ī, n. [**aequus,** *equal;* **nox,** *night*], *equinox.*

aequitās, tātis, f. [**aequus**], (evenness); *fairness;* **animī aequitās,** *contentment,* VI. **22,** 4.

aequō, 1st conj. [**aequus**], *make equal, equalize.*

aequus, a, um, (even); *level,* VII. **44,** 3; *fair,* IV. **16,** 4, VI. **12,** 6, VII. **29,** 7; *equal,* I. **43,** 1, VII. **48,** 4; *favorable, advantageous;* **aequō animō,** *with equanimity, resolutely,* V. **52,** 6, VII. **64,** 3; *without anxiety,* V. **49,** 6; **aequō Mārte,** *on even terms.*

aerārius, a, um [aes], (relating to copper), *copper;* fem. as subst. (sc. **sectūra**), *copper mine.*

aes, aeris, n. *copper; bronze,* an alloy of copper and tin; because used for coins, *money;* **aes aliēnum,** (money belonging to another), *debt.*

aestās, tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, ōnis, f. [**aestimō**], *estimate, valuation, appraisal.*

aestimō, 1st conj. [**aes**], (put a money value on), *estimate, esteem, value; consider, regard,* VII. **14,** 10.

aestīvus, a, um [aestus, but connected in meaning w. **aestās**], (of summer); *summer.*

aestuārius, a, um [aestus], *relating to the tide.* Neut. as subst. (a place reached by the tide); (*salt*) *marsh, creek, inlet,* near the ocean.

aestus, ūs, m., (a seething); *heat,* VI. **22,** 3, **30,** 3; *tide;* **māximus aestus,** *spring tide.*

aetās, tātis, f. [for **aevitās,** from **aevum,** (*life-*)*time*], *age,* time of life; *old age;* **aetāte cōnfectus,** *burdened with years;* **puerīlis aetās,** *boyhood.* (**gravior,** *advanced,* III. **12,** 1.)

aeternus, a, um [for **aeviternus,** from **aevum,** (*life-*)*time*], *everlasting, perpetual, eternal.*

af-, form of **ad** in comp. before **f.**

af-ferō, ferre, at-tulī, al-lātum, *bring* (to), *bring forward, cite; cause, produce; contribute,* I. **43,** 8.

af-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [faciō], (do to); *affect; fill,* I. **2,** 4, VII. **40,** 1; *visit,* I. **27,** 4; *treat,* I. **35,** 2; *subject,* V. **56,** 2; *afflict,* VI. **16,** 2; *confront,* VII. **17,** 3; *cause* (to), V. **48,** 9, *inflict* (upon), VII. **16,** 3; pass. w. abl., *experience,* VII. **6,** 2, *receive,* VII. **37,** 4.

af-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, *attach to, fasten to.*

af-fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, (shape to); *add to falsely;* w. **rūmōribus,** *invent additions,* VII. **1,** 2.

af-fīnitās, tātis, f. [**af-fīnis,** *neighboring*], *relationship by marriage; intermarriage,* II. **4,** 4.

af-fīrmātiō, ōnis, f. [**fīrmātus,** part. of **fīrmō,** *make firm*], *assurance.*

af-fīxus, a, um, part. of **affīgō.**

af-flīctō, 1st conj. [intensive of

afflīgō], *dash repeatedly*, *toss*, IV. **29**, 2; pass. *be pounded*, III. **12**, 1.

af-flīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flīctum (dash against); *throw down*, VI. **27**, 2; *bear down*, VI. **27**, 5; pass., of ships, *suffer*, *be shattered*, *be damaged*.

af-fore, fut. infin. of **adsum** (= **affutūrus esse**).

Āfricus, a, um, *African*, *of Africa*. Masc. as subst. (sc. **ventus**), *south-west wind*, i.e. from Africa to Italy.

Agēdincum, ī, n., the chief town of the Senones, now *Sens*, on the Yonne river, tributary of the Seine on the south, VI. **44**, 3.

ager, agrī, m. *cultivated land*, IV. **4**, 2; *soil*, *field* (opposed to woods), *country* (opposed to city), *territory*; **agrī cultūra**, (cultivation of the soil), *agriculture*, *farming*.

ag-, form of **ad** in comp. before **g**.

ag-ger, aggeris, m. [**gerō**, *bring*], (what is brought to a place); *embankment*, *mound*; *dike*, III. **12**, 2; or any structure of earth used in the field operations of an army; especially the Roman *agger* (see Introduction); *material* for such mounds, including timber, II. **20**, 1; **cotīdiānus agger**, *the daily addition to the agger*.

ag-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior**, *step*], (go toward, approach; cf. Eng. "go for"), *attack*.

ag-gregō, 1st conj. [**grex**, *flock*], (flock to); w. reflex., *join*, *attach*.

agitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], *agitate*, *discuss earnestly*.

āgmen, minis, n. [**agō**], *army on the march*, *marching column*; **novissimum** or **extrēmum āgmen**, *rear*, *rear guard*; **prīmum āgmen**, *van*, *vanguard*; **cōnfertō āgmine**, *in close order*. (**cōnsistō**, *halt*.)

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, (put in motion); w. **praedam**, *drive*, *lead*, VI. **43**, 2; w. **turrēs**, **vineās**, **tēstūdinēs**, *bring up*; w. **impedīmenta**, *take along*, II. **29**, 4; w. **cunīculum**, *construct*, *sink*, III. **21**, 3; *drive*, *pursue closely*, IV. **12**, 2, V. **17**, 3; w. **sublicās**, *drive in*, *down*, IV. **17**, 9; *treat*, *discuss*, *confer*; *carry on*, *do*; *work*, VII. **17**, 2; impers. pass. infin., *the work to be done*, V. **50**, 5; **grātiās agere** (give thanks), *thank*; w. **conventūs**, *hold*; *arranged*, I. **41**, 3.

al-, form of **ad** in comp. before **l**.

alacer, cris, cre, *lively*, *brisk*; *eager*.

alacritās, tātis, f. [**alacer**], *liveliness*, *briskness*; *eagerness*.

ālārius, a, um [**āla**, *wing*], *relating* or *belonging to the wing* (of a bird or an army); hence of allies, stationed on the wings of the Roman armies, *allied*, *of the allies*; masc. plu. as subst. (sc. **mīlitēs**), *allies*.

albus, a, um, *white*; **plumbum album**, (white lead), *tin*.

alcēs, is, f., *elk*.

Alesia, ae, f., chief city of the Mandubii, north of the territory of the Aedui, now Alise-Sainte-Reine, VII. **68**, 1, etc.

aliās, adv. [orig. acc. plu. of **alius**], *at another time*; **aliās—aliās**, *at one time—at another*.

aliēnō, 1st conj. [**aliēnus**], (make another's); *estrange*, *alienate*, VII. **10**, 2; **aliēnātā mente**, *as if they had lost their reason*, VI. **41**, 3.

aliēnus, a, um [**alius**], (belonging to another, another's); **aes** (another's

money), *debt;* w. **locus, tempus,** *unfavorable, unsuitable; out of place,* VI. **11,** 1. Masc. as subst., *stranger,* super. *utter stranger,* VI. **31,** 4.

aliō, adv. [old dat. of **alius**], *to another place, elsewhere.*

aliquam-diū, adv. [acc. sing. fem. of **aliquī,** sc. **partem**], (somewhat long), *for some time, some time.*

aliquandō, adv. [**alius; quandō,** *at some time*], (at some time or other, some time); *at length.*

aliquantus, a, um [**alius; quantus,** *how great*], (of some size); *some, considerable;* neut. w. partitive gen. **itineris,** *some distance,* V. **10,** 2; abl. of degree of difference, *somewhat,* III. **13,** 1.

aliquī, qua, quod, indef. adj. pron., *some, any.*

aliquis, qua, quid, indef. pron., *some one, something; any one, anything;* neut. w. partitive gen. translated as adj., e.g. w. **cōnsiliī,** *any discretion,* III. **16,** 2, and so IV. **32,** 2, VII. **12,** 6; adv. acc., *somewhat,* I. **40,** 5.

aliquot, indeclinable adj. [**alius, quot**], *some, several.*

aliter, adv. [**alius**], *otherwise, differently, else;* **aliter āc,** *otherwise than.* **aliter sē habēbat āc** (had itself otherwise than), *was different from what,* II. **19,** 1.

alius, a, ud, gen. **alīus,** dat. **aliī,** *other, another, different.* **alius—alius,** *one—another,* plu. *some—others;* **alia rēs,** *anything else,* I. **26,** 6; **alia ratiō,** *any other way,* I. **42,** 4; **longē alius,** *very different;* **alius āc, atque,** *different from, from what, than.* In condensed expression (brachylogy), **alius aliā causā illātā,** *one assigning one reason and another another,* I. **39,** 3; similarly, II. **22,** 1, **24,** 3, III. **6,** 4, etc.; *each other,* II. **26,** 2, V. **16,** 4.

allātus, a, um, part. of **afferō.**

al-liciō, licere, lexī or **licuī, lectum** [**laciō,** *entice*], *entice, allure, induce.*

Allobrogēs, um, m. plu., Greek acc. **as,** I. **14,** 3, VII. **64,** 7, a Gallic tribe in the northeastern part of the Province between the Rhone and the Alps, I. **6,** 2, etc.

alō, alere, aluī, alitum or **altum,** *nourish, strengthen, increase; support; keep,* V. **12,** 6; w. **contrōversiam,** *continue.*

Alpēs, ium, f., *the Alps,* applied to all the mountains between Italy, Gaul and Germany.

alter, altera, alterum, gen. **alterius** or **alterīus,** dat. **alterī** [same stem as **alius**], *the other* (of two); *the second; a second person, another,* I. **36,** 1; **alter—alter** (*the*) *one—the other,* plu. (*the*) *one party—the other party, the others.*

alternus, a, um [**alter**], *alternate, in turn.*

altitūdō, inis, f. [**altus**], *height, elevation; depth; thickness,* III. **13,** 4.

altus, a, um [part. of **alō,** *nourish*], (nourished, grown great); *high, deep.* Neut. as subst., sc. **mare,** and cf. Eng., *the deep, the open sea;* **in altō,** *in deep water.*

alūta, ae, f. [**alūmen,** *alum,* used in tanning (?)], (fine, soft) *leather.*

ambactus, ī, m. [Celtic], *vassal.*

Ambarrī, ōrum, m. plu. [**ambī,** *around*], a tribe connected with the Aedui, living southeast of them, on both sides of the Saône (Arar), I. **11,** 4.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, south of the Morini, on the coast, II. **4,** 9.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribes on the south bank of the Liger (Loire), VII. **75,** 4.

Ambiliatī, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribes, upon the coast of northwestern Gaul, III. **9,** 10.

Ambiorīx, īgis, m., a leader of the Eburones, responsible for the Roman disaster at Aduatuca, V. **26,** 1, etc.

Ambivaretī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of whose location nothing is known beyond the fact that they were clients of the Aedui; VII. **75,** 2, **90,** 6.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe somewhere upon the left bank of the Meuse, toward the lower part of its course, IV. **9,** 3.

ambo, ae, o, adj. in dual no. (declined like **duo**), *both.*

āmentia, ae, f. [adj. **āmēns,** *out of one's senses*, from **ā,** *away from*, **mēns,** *mind*], *folly*, *senselessness.*

āmentum, ī, n., *thong*, *strap*, attached to a javelin.

am-frāctūs, ūs, m. [**am** (for **ambi**), *around*, **frangō,** *break*], *bend* (in a road).

amīcitia, ae, f. [**amīcus**], *friendship*, personal or political ; *alliance.*

amīcus, a, um, [**amō,** love], *friendly.* Masc. as subst., *friend.*

ā-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go away), *lose.* Neut. plu. of perf. part. as subst., (things lost), *lost property*, *losses*, VII. **15,** 2.

amor, ōris, m. [**amō,** *love*], *love*, *affection.*

amplē, adv. [**amplus**], *widely*, *largely*, *generously.* Compar. *more*, not necessarily followed by the abl., though **quam** is regularly omitted ; *further; any more*, I. **35,** 3, **43,** 9, V. **27,** 9, **55,** 2, VI. **42,** 2.

amplificō, 1st conj. [**amplus, faciō**], (make large), *enlarge*, *increase*, *extend.*

amplitūdō, inis, f. [**amplus**], (size, breadth) ; **cornuum,** *spread*, VI. **28,** 5 ; *importance*, *weight*, *influence.*

amplus, a, um, *large*, *great*, III. **8,** 1, IV. **3,** 3, V. **19,** 1, **50,** 2 ; *splendid*, VI. **28,** 6 ; of social position, *noble*, *distinguished ;* **amplius,** neut. of compar. as subst., *more*, not necessarily followed by the abl., though **quam** is regularly omitted.

an, conj. introducing an alternative, in the second part of a disjunctive question, the first part being sometimes omitted, *or ;* **utrum — an, -ne—an,** *whether—or.* When the first part is omitted **an** is not translatable, except as the sentence is made interrogative, I. **47,** 6, VII. **38,** 8, **77,** 10.

Anartēs, ium, m. plu., a people in Transylvania, on the Tibiscus (Theiss) river, marking the eastern terminus of the Hercynian forest, VI. **25,** 2.

Ancalitēs, um, m. plu., a British tribe, V. **21,** 1.

anceps, cipitis, adj. [**ambi,** *about*, *on either side*, **caput,** *head*] (two-headed), *double*, I. **26,** 1 ; VII. **76,** 6 ; *doubtful.*

ancora, ae, f. [ἄγκυρα], *anchor.* (**in,** *at ;* **tollere,** *weigh.*)

Andebrogius, ī, m., a man of high rank among the Remi, II. **3,** 1.

Andēs, ium, or **Andī, ōrum,** m. plu.,

a tribe in western Gaul on the north bank of the Loire, about Angers, II. **35,** 3. etc.

angulus, ī, m., *angle, corner.*

angustē [**angustus**], (narrowly), *closely ; scantily,* V. **24,** 1.

angustiae, ārum, f. plu. [**angustus**], (narrowness), *defile, narrow pass ;* **angustiae viārum,** *narrowing the streets,* V. **49,** 7 ; *difficulty, difficulties,* I. **39,** 6, **40,** 10, III. **18,** 4, VII. **11,** 8.

angustus, a, um, [**angō,** *squeeze*], (narrow) ; *small, contracted,* I. **2,** 5, IV. **30,** 1, VII. **70,** 3 ; **in angustō,** *in a tight place, in a critical condition ; difficult ;* **angustiōre fāstīgiō,** *with slightly converging sides,* VII. **73,** 5.

anima, ae, f., *breath* (of life) ; *soul.*

anim-ad-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum [**animum**], *turn the mind to ; notice, observe ; identify,* VII. **50,** 2 ; **in eum animadvertere,** *attend to him, punish him.*

animal, ālis, n. [**anima**], (living creature), *animal.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, mind, spirit, feelings ; courage ; character ; sympathy,* I. **20,** 4 ; *cousciousness,* VI. **38,** 4 ; *amusement, entertainment,* V. **12,** 6, VII. **77,** 10.

annōtinus, a, um [**annus**], *of last year, last year's, built the year before.*

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um [**annus**], *of a year, yearly, annual ;* translated by adv., *annually,* I. **16,** 1.

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*

ante, (1) adv., *before,* of space or time, *formerly, previously ;* of quotations, *above.* (2) prep. w. acc., *before,* of time or place ; **ante diem, a. d.,** in dates, *on* such a *day before,* the adverbial and prepositional uses being confounded.

anteā, adv. [**ante, eā,** old acc. of **is**], *hitherto ; before, some time ago, formerly.*

ante-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go before, go ahead of, precede ; surpass, exceed, excel ; anticipate, get the start of,* VII. **35,** 6 ; **54,** 1.

ante-cursor, ōris, m. [**curro,** *run*], (one who runs before, fore-runner) ; *courier,* V. **47,** 1.

ante-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bear before), *prefer.*

antemna, ae, f., *sail-yard.*

ante-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place before, allow to take precedence over.*

ante-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, (turn in front), *take precedence* (over).

antīquitus, adv. [**antīquus**], *in former times, long ago, anciently.*

antīquus, a, um [**ante**], *ancient, old ; former,* I. **18,** 8.

Antistius, ī, m., *Caius Antistius Reginus,* a *legatus* of Caesar, VI. **1,** 1.

Antōnius, ī, m., in Bel. Gal., *Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony,* a *legatus* under Caesar in seventh and eighth years of the war. Afterward famous as a member of the second triumvirate, rival of Augustus and paramour of Cleopatra, VII. **81,** 6.

Ap., abbreviation for **Appius.**

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *open,* VII. **22,** 5. Perf. part. as adj., (opened), *open, exposed, unprotected.*

apertē, adv. [**apertus**], *openly.*

apertus, a, um, part. of **aperiō.**

Apollō, inis, m., the Greek and

Roman god, identified by Caesar with one of the Gallic divinities, VI. **17**, 2.

ap-, form of **ad** in comp. before **p.**

ap-parō, 1st conj., *prepare*, *get ready*, *construct.*

ap-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drive to); of ships, *bring up*, III. **12**, 3; pass., *land*, V. **13**, 1, VII. **60**, 4.

ap-pellō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *address*, *call upon*, II. **25**, 2, V. **33**, 2, **36**, 2, **52**, 4, etc.; *call.*

ap-petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** *seek after*, *seek; approach*, VII. **4**, 1, **82**, 2.

Appius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

ap-plicō, plicāre, plicāvī or **plicuī, plicātum** or **plicitum** [**plicō**, *fold*], *apply;* w. reflex., *lean against*, VI. **27**, 3.

ap-portō, 1st conj., *carry to*, *convey.*

ap-probō, 1st conj., *approve.*

ap-propinquō, 1st conj., *draw near to*, *approach; be close at hand*, VII. **77**, 11.

appulsus, a, um, part. of **appellō, ere.**

Apr., abbreviation for **Aprīlis.**

Aprīlis, e [**aperiō**, *open*], *of April*, *April.* Masc. as subst. (sc. **mēnsis**), the month *April.*

aptus, a, um [**apīscor**, *reach*], *fitted*, *adapted.*

apud, prep. w. acc., of places, *near*, *at;* of persons, *at the house* or *camp of*, *with*, *among*, *in the judgment of.*

aqua, ae, f., *water;* **vīs aquae**, *current;* **mēnsūra ex aquā** (measure by water) *water-clock*, *clepsydra*, an instrument for measuring time, somewhat like an hour glass.

aquātiō, ōnis, f. [**aquor**, *bring water*, from **aqua**], *bringing* or *getting water.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle*, the emblem upon standards of the Roman legions.

Aquilēia, ae, f., a Roman city at the head of the Adriatic, I. **10**, 3.

aquilifer, ferī, m. [**aquila, ferō**], (one who bears the eagle), *standard-bearer* of a legion.

Aquītānia, ae, f. [**Aquītānus**], one of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, see I. **1**, 7.

Aquītānus, a, um, *of Aquitania*, *Aquitanian.* Masc. as subst., *an Aquitanian*, *one of the Aquitani*, plu. *the Aquitani.*

ar-, form of **ad** in comp. before **r.**

Arar, Araris, m., acc. **im,** the river *Arar*, now the *Saône*, tributary of the Rhone, I. **12**, 1.

arbiter, trī, m., (witness); *judge*, *referee*, *arbitrator.*

arbitrium, ī, n. [**arbiter**], *discretion*, *judgment.*

arbitror, 1st conj. [**arbiter**], (judge); *think*, *consider.*

arbor (poetic **arbōs**), **oris,** f., *tree.*

arcessō, arcessere, arcessīvī, arcessītum [causative of **accēdō**, *approach* (?)] (cause to come), *summon*, *invite;* **mercēde arcessere,** (invite by pay), *hire*, I. **31**, 4.

ārdeō, ārdēre, ārsī, ārsum, *burn*, lit. or fig.

Arduenna, ae, f., the *Ardennes*, the great forest of Gaul, extending from the Rhine through the country of the Treveri to the frontiers of the Remi, V. **3**, 4.

arduus, a, um, *steep ;* fig , *difficult,* VII. **47,** 3.

Arecomicī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Volcae in the Roman province, south of the Helvii and the Cevennes mountains, about Nîmes, VII. **7,** 4, **64,** 6.

Aremoricus, a, um [Celtic, *by the sea*], *Aremoric, Aremorican,* name applied by the Gauls to some tribes on or near the northwestern coast between the Loire and Seine, V. **53,** 6, VII. **75,** 4.

argentum, ī, n., *silver ;* in the sense also of *silverware,* VII. **47,** 5.

argilla, ae, f. [ἄργιλλος], *clay.*

āridus, a, um [**āreō,** *be dry*], *dry.* Neut. as subst., *dry land, beach.*

ariēs, etis, m., (ram) ; fig., in Bel. Gal., *battering ram ; buttress,* IV. **17,** 9.

Ariovistus, ī, m., a German king, a Suebian, who had subjected a great part of Gaul when Caesar began his operations, I. **31,** 11, etc.

Aristius, ī, m., a military tribune, VII. **42,** 5, **43,** 1.

arma, ōrum, n. plu., *implements,* III. **14,** 2 ; especially, implements of war, *arms ;* **ab armīs discēdere** (depart from arms), *lay down arms ;* **in armīs,** often *under arms ;* **in armīs esse,** *take the field,* IV. **1,** 5.

armāmenta, ōrum, n. plu. [**armō**], (means of equipping) ; *equipment, tackle.*

armātūra, ae [**armō**], *armor;* in Bel. Gal. only in phrase **levis armātūrae,** (of light armor), *light-armed.*

armō, 1st conj. [**arma**], *equip, arm ;* **armātī, ōrum,** masc. plu. of perf. part. as subst., *armed men.*

Arpinēius, ī, m., a Roman knight, V. **27,** 1, **28,** 1.

ar-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum [**rapiō**], *snatch for, seize.*

arroganter, adv. [**arrogāns,** part. of **ar-rogō,** *assume*], *haughtily, arrogantly.*

arrogantia, ae, f. [**arrogāns,** part. of **ar-rogō,** *assume*], *haughtiness, arrogance.*

ars, artis, f., *skill; art ;* plu. *the arts.*

artē, adv. [**artus**], *closely, tightly.*

articulus, ī, m. [diminutive of **artus, ūs,** *joint*] (a little joint), *joint.*

artificium, ī, n. [**artifex,** *skilled workman,* from **ars, faciō**], *skilful contrivance ; accomplishment,* VI. **17,** 2.

artus, a, um [part. of **arceō,** *confine*], (close), *dense, thick.*

Avernus, a, um, *of the Averni, Avernian.* Masc. as subst., *one of the Averni, an Avernian,* plu. *the Averni, the Avernians,* a tribe of south-central Gaul about the head waters of the Allier (Elaver) river, I. **45,** 2.

arx, arcis, f. [**arceō,** *confine*], *stronghold ; fortress, citadel.*

as-, form of **ad** in comp. before **s.**

ā(ad)-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum [**scandō**], (climb to), *ascend, climb, scale.*

ā(ad)-scēnsus, ūs, m. [**āscendō**], *ascent, approach.*

ā(ad)-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītum [**sciō,** *know*], (ordain to) ; *accept, admit.*

ā(ad)-spectus, ūs, m. [**-spiciō,** *look*], (a looking at) ; *appearance, sight.*

asper, aspera, asperum, compar.

asperior, super. **asperrimus,** *rough, fierce, desperate.*

as-siduus [**sedeō,** *sit*], *continuous, incessant; long-continued,* VI. **22,** 3.

as-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, *take position near;* **assistere in cōnspectū,** *appear* (with), VI. **18,** 3.

as-suē-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum [**suē,** stem of **suēscō,** *become accustomed,* **faciō,** *make*], (make to become accustomed to); *train.*

as-suēscō, suēscere, suēvi, suētum, *become accustomed to;* **assuēscere ad hominēs,** *be tamed.*

at-, form of **ad** in comp. before **t.**

at, adversative conj., *but;* after a conditional clause, *at least.*

atque, āc [**ad, que**], conj., usually emphasizing what follows, *and, and even, and especially;* after terms implying comparison, as **pār, īdem,** *equal to, the same as;* **similis ratiō atque ipse fēcerit,** *a method like that which he had used;* **simul atque,** *as soon as;* **aliter āc,** *otherwise than;* **alius—atque, āc,** *other than, different from what.*

Atrebās, ātis, m., *one of the Atrebates, an Atrebatian,* plu. *the Atrebates,* a tribe toward the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. **4,** 9.

Ātrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius,* an officer in Caesar's army, mentioned in second expedition to Britain, V. **9,** 1.

at-texō, texere, texuī, textum (weave on); *construct upon, attach.*

at-tingō, tingere, tigī, tactum [**tangō**], *touch upon, touch; border upon.*

at-tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *assign.*

at-tulī, perf. of **afferō.**

auctor, ōris, m. [**augeō**], (promoter); *leader, originator;* **aliquō auctōre,** *at the suggestion of any one,* V. **25,** 3, **28,** 6; *as authority,* V. **29,** 3.

auctōritās, tātis, f. [**auctor**], *influence, standing, prestige.*

auctus, a, um, part. of **augeō.**

audācia, ae, f. [**audāx,** *daring,* from **audeō**], *daring; effrontery, insolence.*

audācter, adv. [**audāx,** *daring,* from **audeō**], *boldly, daringly.*

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, *dare, venture; dare to do, attempt,* VI. **13,** 1.

audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear, hear of, listen to; give audience to,* IV. **13,** 1; **dictō audiēns** (hearing to the word of command), *obedient;* **dictō audiēns esse** (be obedient), *obey.*

audītiō, ōnis, f. [**audiō**], (a hearing); *rumor, report.*

augeō, ēre, auxī, auctum, *increase, raise, strengthen.*

Aulercus, ī, m., *one of the Aulerci, an Aulercian,* VII. **57,** 2; plu. *the Aulerci,* a people of central Gaul, divided into four tribes: Aulerci Brannovices, VII. **75,** 2; Aulerci Cenomani, VII. **75,** 3; Aulerci Eburovices, II. **34,** III. **17,** 3, **29,** 3, VII. **4,** 6; Diablintes, III. **9,** 10.

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

aureus, a, um [**aurum,** *gold*], (golden), *gold.*

aurīga, ae, m., *charioteer, driver.*

auris, is, f. [connected w. **audiō** (?)] *ear.*

Aurunculēius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a *legatus* of Caesar, killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, II. **11,** 3, IV. **38,** 3, V. **24,** 5 ff.

Auscī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the eastern part of Aquitania, III. **27,** 1.

ausus, a, um, part of **audeō.**

aut, conj., *or ;* **aut—aut,** *either—or.*

autem, conj., adversative, *however ;* copulative, *moreover ; now.*

autumnus, ī, m. [**augeō**], (the season of increase), *autumn, fall.*

auxiliāris, e [**auxilium**], *auxiliary, belonging to the auxiliaries ;* masc. as subst. (sc. **mīlitēs**), *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

auxilior, 1st conj. [**auxilium**], *render aid, support.*

auxilium, ī, n. [**augeō**], *aid, assistance, support, relief ;* dat. of obj. for which, *as a reënforcement ;* **alicuī aux. ferre,** *to aid anyone ;* **extrēmum aux.,** *last resource,* III. **5,** 2. Plu. *auxiliary forces, auxiliaries,* as opposed to the regular legionary forces.

Avaricēnsis, e [**Avaricum**], *of* or *relating to Avaricum ;* w. **praemia,** *bestowed at Avaricum.*

Avaricum, ī, n., a town of the Bituriges, now Bourges, on the Avera (Yèvre), a tributary of the Loire ; besieged by Caesar in the seventh year of the war, and the inhabitants slain, VII. **13,** 3.

avāritia, ae, f. [**avārus**], *grasping, avarice, greed.*

ā-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *carry away, off.*

ā-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn away, aside ; alienate,* I. **20,** 4. **āversum hostem,** *one of the enemy in retreat,* I. **26,** 2 ; **āversī,** *being turned away* (from some of the enemy), i.e. since there were some of the enemy whom they were not facing, II. **26,** 2.

avis, is, f., *bird.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, m., a river in the country of the Belgae, now the *Aisne.*

B

Bācēnis, is, f., a forest of Germany between the Suebi and the Cherusci, VI. **10,** 5.

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus,* an especially brave centurion, II. **25,** 1, III. **5,** 2, VI. **38,** 1.

Baleāris, e, *Balearic,* pertaining to the Balearic islands, off the eastern coast of Spain, now *Majorca* and *Minorca,* II. **7,** 1.

balteus, ī, m., *belt,* from which the sword was suspended.

Balventius, ī, m., *Titus Balventius,* a first centurion, V. **35,** 6.

barbarus, a, um [*βάρβαρος*], *rude, uncivilized, uncultured,* i.e. not Greek or Roman ; masc. as subst., contemptuously applied to various tribes, *native, barbarian.*

Basilus, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus,* one of Caesar's officers, afterward a conspirator against him, VI. **29,** 4, **30,** 1, VII. **90,** 5.

Batāvī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe dwelling between the lower Rhine and the Meuse, IV. **10,** 1.

Belgae, ārum, m. plu., collective name for the inhabitants of the northern of Caesar's three divisions of Gaul, between the Marne and Seine and the Rhine.

Belgium, ī, n., the country of the Belgae, Belgic Gaul, V. **12,** 2, **25,** 4.

bellicōsus, a, um [**bellum**], *warlike.*

bellicus, a, um [**bellum**], *relating to war;* **bellica laus,** *glory in war.*

bellō, 1st conj. [**bellum**], (make war), *fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the northwestern part of Belgic Gaul, II. **4,** 5.

bellum, ī, n. loc., **bellī** [old form **duellum,** from **duo**], *war.*

bene, adv., compar. **melius,** super. **optimē** [**bonus, melior, optimus**], (well, better, best), *successfully.*

beneficium, ī, n. [**bene, faciō**], *kindness, service;* **beneficiō obstringere,** (bind by service), *put under obligations,* I. **9,** 3; **tantō beneficiō afficere,** *treat* (with so great kindness), *so kindly,* I. **35,** 2; **beneficiō sortium,** (by the kindness of the lots), *thanks to fortune.*

benevolentia, ae, f. [**bene; volēns,** part. of **volō**], (well-wishing); *loyalty,* V. **25,** 2; *favor,* VII. **43,** 4.

Bibracte, is, n., loc. abl. **e** or **ī,** capital of the Aedui, situated upon Mont Beuvray, in the central part of their territory, I. **23,** 1.

Bibrax, bractis, f., a town of the Remi, near a hill now called *Vieux Laon,* II. **6,** 1.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe, V. **21,** 1.

biduus, a, um [**bis, diēs**], (of the space of two days), *two days'.* Neut. as subst., sc. **tempus,** (two days' time), *two days.*

biennium, ī, n. [**bis, annus**], (the space of two years), *two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, ōnum, m. plu., a tribe in southern Aquitania, III. **27,** 1.

bīnī, ae, a, distrib. adj., plu. [**bis**], (two by two); *two each, two at a time, in pairs.*

bipedālis, e [**bis, pēs**], *of two feet, two foot; two feet thick,* IV. **17,** 6.

bipertītō, adv. [adj. **bipartītus,** from **bis, pars**], *in two parts, in two divisions.*

bis, adv. [old form **duis,** from **duo**], *twice.*

Biturīgēs, um, m. plu., a tribe of central Gaul, I. **18,** 6.

Boduognātus, ī, m. a leader of the Nervii, II. **23,** 4.

Bōiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe associated in the migration of the Helvetii, afterward received by the Aedui and located in the western part of their territory, probably between the Loire and Elaver rivers, I. **5,** 4.

bonitās, tātis, f. [**bonus**], *goodness; fertility,* I. **28,** 4. (**agrōrum,** *of the soil.*)

bonus, a, um, compar. **melior,** super. **optimus,** *good, better, best;* **bonō animō,** descriptive abl., (of good mind), *well disposed.* Neut. as subst., *good; advantage,* I. **40,** 6; plu., *goods, property.*

bōs, bovis, c., gen. plu. **boum,** dat. **būbus, bōbus,** [βοῦς], *ox,* as generic name, VI. **26,** 1; esp., *bull, ox, cow,* the domestic animals; plu. *cattle,* VI. **28,** 5.

brācchium, ī, n. [βραχίων], *forearm, arm.*

Brannovīcēs, um, m. plu. a division of the Aulerci, probably south of the Aedui, toward the sources of the Loire, VII. **75,** 2.

Brātuspantium, ī, n., a stronghold of the Bellovaci, possibly near Breteuil, II. **13,** 2.

brevis, e, *short*, of space or time; abl. **brevī,** sc. **tempore,** *in a short space, sharply*, IV. **33,** 3.

brevitās, tātis, f. [**brevis**], *shortness, brevity; small stature*, II. **30,** 4.

breviter, adv. [**brevis**], *briefly, in few words.*

Britannī, ōrum, m. plu., *Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f. [**Britannī**], *Britain.*

Britannicus, a, um [**Britannī**], *British;* w. **bellum,** *with the Britons*, V. **4,** 1.

brūma, ae, f. [for **brevima,** old super. of **brevis,** sc. **diēs**], (the shortest day), *the winter solstice.* (**sub,** *toward, at the time of.*)

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus*, a *legatus* of Caesar in both the Gallic and the Civil War, afterward a conspirator against him, III. **11,** 5.

C

C, as numeral = 100; but not originally because it was the first letter of **centum.**

C., abbreviation for **Gāius,** a Roman *praenomen.*

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a city of the Aedui on the Saône, now Chalon, VII. **42,** 5, **90,** 7.

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a distinguished Gaul, a stanch friend of the Romans, I. **47,** 4, VII. **65,** 2.

cacūmen, minis, n., *top, summit; small end*, VII. **73,** 2.

cadāver, veris, n. [**cadō**], *corpse*, (dead) *body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, *fall* (in Bel. Gal. in sense of *be killed*).

Cadūrcī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul, south of the Averni, of whom they were dependents, VII. **5,** 1, etc.

caedēs, is, f. [**caedō**], *slaughter.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum [causative of **cadō**], (cause to fall, in any way), *strike down, cut down, kill;* of trees, *fell*, III. **29,** 1.

caelestis, e [**caelum,** *sky, heavens*], *heavenly, of the heavens.*

Caemanī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae (often called *Paemanī*), probably between the Meuse and Ourthe rivers, II. **4,** 10.

caerimōnia, ae, f., *religious ceremony.* (**gravis,** *solemn.*)

Caerōsī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, northwest of the Moselle in its lower course, II. **4,** 10.

caeruleus, a, um [for **caeluleus,** from **caelum,** *sky, heavens*], *deep blue, dark blue.*

Caesar, aris, m., (1) *Gaius Julius Caesar*, the great statesman and general, author of the Commentaries. (2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a distant relative of Gaius, consul B.C. 64, VII. **65,** 1.

caespes, itis, m. [**caedō**], *sod, turf.*

calamitās, tātis, f., *disaster, defeat.*

Caletī, ōrum, and **Caletēs, um,** m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribes, on the northwest coast, north of the Seine, II. **4,** 9, VII. **75,** 4.

callidus, a, um [**callum,** *thick skin, callous*], *experienced, shrewd.*

calō, ōnis, m., *camp follower;* any non-combatant moving with an army, including personal servants, drivers, sutlers, etc.

campester, tris, tre [**campus**], *relating to a level field;* w. **mūnī-**

tiōnēs, *in the plain;* **loca camp.**, *level places, plains.*

campus, ī, m., *level field, plain.*

Camulogenus, ī, m., a chief of the Aulerci, commander-in-chief against Labienus in the seventh year of the war, VII. **57**, 3, etc.

Canīnius, ī, m., a *legatus* of Caesar, in latter part of the Gallic and in the Civil War, VII. **83**, 3, **90**, 6.

canō, canere, cecinī, ——, (make a melodious sound); *sing, play* on a musical instrument; **receptuī canere**, *give the signal for retreat, sound the retreat*, VII. **47**, 1.

Cantabrī, ōrum, m. plu., a warlike tribe in the north of Spain, III. **26**, 6.

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent*, the southeastern part of Britain, V. **13**, 1, etc.

capillus, ī, m. [caput], *hair of the head.* (**prōmissus**, *long;* **passus**, *dishevelled.*)

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take; occupy, seize;* of ships, *make, reach;* **cōnsilium capere**, *take counsel* or *decide upon a plan;* w. **nōmen**, *derive; take in, deceive*, I. **40**, 9, VII. **31**, 2; *charm*, VI. **22**, 3; *convict*, VII. **43**, 3. **Capiō** and its object may often be translated by a single word, suggested by the latter; e.g. **initium capere** (take a beginning), *begin;* so with **quiētem, coniectūram, fugam.**

capra, ae, f. [caper, *he-goat*], (she-goat); *goat.*

captīvus, a, um [capiō], *captive;* masc. also as subst., *prisoner.*

captus, ūs, m. [capiō], (a seizing, grasp, mental capacity), *standard.*

caput, capitis, n., *head; life;* **capitis poena**, *capital punishment;* of a river, *mouth; person, individual* (cf. Eng. "head" of cattle), I. **29**, 2, II. **33**, 7, IV, **15**, 3.

Carcasō, ōnis, f., a town of the Volcae Tectosages, III. **20**, 2.

careō, carēre, caruī, caritum, *be without, go without.*

carīna, ae, f., keel.

Carnutēs, um, m. plu., a tribe of central Gaul between the Seine and the Loire, II. **35**, 3, etc.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*

carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum (pluck; pick a flaw), *criticise.*

carrus, ī, m., *cart;* mentioned only as used by the Gauls.

cārus, a, um, *dear.*

Carvilius, ī, m., one of the chieftains of Kent, V. **22**, 1.

casa, ae, f., *hut.*

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassī, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe.

Cassiānus, a, um [**Cassius**], *relating to Cassius;* w. **bellum**, *with Cassius.*

cassis, idis, f., metal *helmet.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, consul 107 B.C.; defeated and killed by the Helvetians near Lake Geneva, I. **7**, 4, **12**, 5, **12**, 7.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m., the most resolute and able of the British chiefs, V. **11**, 8, etc.

castellum, ī, n. [diminutive of **castrum**], *fort, redoubt.*

Casticus, ī, m., a powerful chief of the Sequani, I. **3**, 4.

castrum, ī, n., *fortress.* Plu., *a camp*, always fortified; with distrib. adj., *day's march* or *camps;* **in castrīs**, *in camp life, in war*, I. **39**, 5. (**pōnō**, *pitch;* **moveō**, *break.*)

cāsus, ūs, m. [**cadō**], (a falling, happening); *chance, fortune,* good or bad; *accident, disaster; emergency;* **cāsū,** often *accidentally;* **cāsū dēvenīre,** *happen to come,* II. **21,** 6; cf. V. **48,** 8, VI. **37,** 1.

Catamantāloedis, is, m., the most powerful Sequanian of the generation before Caesar's arrival, I. **3,** 4.

catēna, ae, f., *chain.*

Caturīgēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in the Graian Alps in the valley of the upper Durance, I. **10,** 4.

Catuvolcus, ī, m., a chief of the Eburones, confederate of Ambiorix, V. **24,** 4.

causa, ae, f., *cause, reason; case* at law, I. **4,** 1, 2; *condition, situation,* IV. **4,** 1, VI. **32,** 1. Abl. after a gen., *for the sake, for the purpose, on account;* w. verbal it denotes purpose, e.g. **suī mūniendī causā,** *to defend himself,* I. **44,** 6.

cautē, adv. [**cautus,** part. of **caveō**], *cautiously.*

cautēs, is, f., *sharp ledge, reef.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., an Aeduan prominent in the seventh year of the war, VII. **67,** 7.

Cavarinus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones, V. **54,** 2, VI. **5,** 2.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, *be on one's guard,* I. **14,** 2: *give security* (**dē,** *for*).

Cebenna, ae, f., *the Cevennes,* a range of mountains in south central Gaul, boundary of the Roman province, VII. **8,** 2, etc.

cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go, go from); *retreat, retire;* **locō cēdere,** *leave one's post; yield,* w. dat., VII. **89,** 2. Pres. part., as subst., *those retreating, the retreating* (soldiers, enemy).

celer, celeris, celere, compar. **celerior,** super. **celerrimus,** *swift, quick, sudden.*

celeritās, tātis, f. [**celer**], *swiftness, rapidity, speed.* (**ad,** *in the way of,* II. **26,** 5.)

celeriter, adv. [**celer**], *speedily, rapidly, promptly, quickly.*

cēlō, 1st conj., *hide, conceal.*

Celtae, ārum, m. plu., *Celts;* in Bel. Gal., the native name for the people living in central Gaul, as distinguished from the Belgae and the Aquitani, I. **1,** 1.

Celtillus, ī, m., a powerful chief of the Averni, father of Vercingetorix, VII. **4,** 1.

Cēnabēnsis, e [**Cēnabum**], *relating to Cenabum.* Masc. plu. as subst., *inhabitants of Cenabum.*

Cēnabum, ī, n., chief city of the Carnutes, upon the site of Orléans, VII. **3,** 1 ff.

Cēnimagnī, ōrum, m. plu., a British tribe, V. **21,** 1.

Cēnomanī, ōrum, m. plu., a division of the Aulerci, in western Gaul, west of the Carnutes, VII. **75,** 3.

cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, cēnsum, (estimate); *judge, hold, be of opinion;* of the Roman senate, *decree; favor,* VII. **77,** 2.

cēnsus, ūs, m. [**cēnseō**], *estimate, enumeration, census.*

centum, indeclin. card. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, m. [**centum**], *centurion,* orig. the commander of a hundred men; a subordinate officer in the Roman legion. See Introduction.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, (separate); *distinguish, make out clearly, perceive.*

certāmen, minis, n. [**certō,** *contend*], *contest, fight, battle.*

certē, adv. [**certus**], *certainly, surely; at least, at all events.*

certus, a, um [form of part. of **cernō**], *certain, sure, undoubted;* w. **diēs, locus,** *appointed, fixed;* w. **subsidia,** *regular;* **aliquem certiōrem facere,** *inform anyone; direct,* III. **5,** 3.

cervus, ī, m., *deer, stag;* in military language, "*antlers,*" trunks of trees with branches lopped off and pointed, embedded in the ground and turned toward the enemy: *chevaux-de-frise.*

cēterus, a, um (sing. rare), *the other, the rest of;* **cēterae rēs,** *the other things* that he might need, II. **3,** 3. Elsewhere, masc. plu. as subst., *the others.*

Ceutronēs, um, m. plu., (1) a tribe in the Graian Alps, about the headwaters of the Isère, I. **10,** 4. (2) a tribe of the Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. **39,** 1.

Chēruscī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe, north of the Hercynian forest, VI. **10,** 5.

chōrus, ī, m., *the northwest* (wind).

cibārius, a, um [**cibus**], *relating to food.* Neut. plu. as subst., *provisions;* **molita cibāria,** (ground foodstuff), *flour.*

cibus, ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* younger brother of the orator, a *legatus* of Caesar, V. **24,** 2, etc.

Cimberius, ī, m., a leader of the Suebi, I. **37,** 3.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m. plu., a Germanic people that overran Gaul in the second century B.C., and gave Rome great uneasiness until defeated by Marius in the north of Italy, 103 B.C.; I. **33,** 4, **40,** 5, VII. **77,** 12, **77,** 14.

Cingetorīx, īgis, m., (1) a chief of the Treveri, rival and brother-in-law of Indutiomarus, V. **3,** 2, etc.; (2) A British chief in Kent, V. **22,** 1.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, *surround;* in hostile sense, *invest;* w. **mūrum,** *man,* VI. **35,** 9; VII. **72,** 2.

cippus, ī, m., *stake.* Retain the Latin word in VII. **73,** 4, as a technical term.

circinus, ī, m. [κίρκινος], *pair of compasses.*

circiter, adv. and prep. w. acc. [**circus,** *circle*], *about.*

circuitus, ūs, m. [**circumeō**], (a going around); *circumference; detour, circuit;* **in circuitū,** *by a circuitous route,* I. **21,** 1.

circum, prep. w. acc. [acc. of **circus,** *circle*], *around, about; in the neighborhood of.*

circum-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], (cut around), *cut out.* Perf. part. w. **collis,** *steep, inaccessible.*

circum-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], *encircle.*

circum-dō, dare, dedī, datum, *put around,* I. **38,** 6, VII. **72,** 4; *surround.*

circum-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead around, draw around.*

circum-eō, īre, (**īvī**) **iī, itum,** *pass*

around; make the rounds of, inspect, V. **2,** 2; *outflank*, VII. **67,** 6.

circum-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour around*, pass., VI. **34,** 8; trans. *surround*, VII. **74,** 1; impers. pass., VII. **28,** 2; pass. as reflexive (Greek middle), *pour themselves around, pour around*, VI. **37,** 4.

circum-iciō [pronounced as if spelled **circumjiciō**], **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw around*, as military term, II. **6,** 2.

circum-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send around.*

circum-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or **mūniī, mūnītum,** (fortify around), *completely invest.*

circum-plector, plectī, plexus sum [**plectō**], (weave around) *embrace, include.*

circum-sisto, sistere, stetī, ——, *take a stand around; surround, crowd about, rally around.*

circum-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look around at;* **animō circumspicere,** *consider carefully*, VI. **5,** 3; *look around for.*

circum-vāllō, 1st conj. [**vāllum**], *build a wall around, invest, blockade.*

circum-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *carry around;* pass. as dep., (be carried around), *ride around*, VII. **45,** 2.

circum-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come around, surround; outflank;* like Eng. "*get around,*" *outwit*, I. **46,** 3.

cis, prep. w. acc., *on this side of, this side.*

Cis-alpīnus, a, um [**Alpēs**], *Cisalpine, on this side the Alps*, i.e. toward Rome, *south* of the Alps.

Cis-rhēnānus, a, um [**Rhēnus**], (*living*) *on this side the Rhine*, i.e. toward Rome, *south of the Rhine.*

Cita, ae, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight, VII. **3,** 1.

citātus, a, um, part. of **citō.**

citerior, us, compar. adj., super. **citimus** [pos. **citer** (rare), from **cis, citrā**], *nearer, hither;* w. **prōvincia, Gallia,** *Cisalpine.*

cito, adv., compar. **citius,** super. **citissimē** [old form **citō,** abl. of **citus,** part. of **cieō,** *cause to move*], *quickly.*

citō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cieō,** *cause to move*], *urge on, hurry.* Perf. part., *headlong, swiftly.*

citrā, prep. w. acc. [case form of **citer,** see **citerior**], *on this side of, this side.*

citrō, adv. [dat. of **citer,** see **citerior**], *to this side, hither;* **ūltrō citrōque,** *back and forth*, I. **42,** 4.

cīvis, is, c., citizen.

cīvitās, tātis, f. [**cīvis**], denoting condition, *citizenship*, I. **47,** 4; collective, all *the citizens* of a state, *state.*

clam, adv. [**cēlō,** *conceal*], *secretly.*

clāmitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **clāmō,** *cry out*], *shout, keep shouting.*

clāmor, ōris, m. [**clāmō,** *cry out*], *outcry, shout, shouting.*

clandestīnus, a, um [**clam**], *secret, clandestine.*

clārus, a, um, (clear), *loud, distinct.*

clāssis, is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, m., *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul 54 B.C., V. **1,** 1.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *close, shut;* **āgmen claudere,** *close*

the line of march, bring up the rear.

clāvus, ī, m., *nail, spike.*

clēmentia, ae, f. [**clēmēns,** *mild*], *mildness, mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, entis, c. [pres. part. of **clueō,** *hear*, with changed spelling], *dependent, retainer, client* (as used of a class in Rome); of tribes, *vassals.*

clientēla, ae, f. [**cliēns**], denoting condition, *dependency;* collective, *dependents, clients,* VII. **32,** 5.

clīvus, ī, m., *slope.*

Clōdius, ī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher,* a turbulent demagogue at Rome, enemy of Cicero, killed in a political brawl in January, 52 B.C., VII. **1,** 1.

Cn., abbreviation for **Gnaeus,** a Roman *praenōmen.*

co-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before vowels and **h.**

cō-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before **gn.**

co-acervō, 1st conj. [**acervus,** *pile*], *pile together, heap up.*

coāctus, a, um, part. of **cōgō.**

coāctus, ūs, m. [**cōgō**], *compulsion.*

co-āgmentō, 1st conj. [**co-āgmentum,** *joint,* from **cōgō**], *fasten together.*

co-artō, 1st conj. [**artus,** *narrow*], *crowd together.*

Cocosātēs, um, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe, upon the Atlantic coast, probably dependents of the Tarbelli, III. **27,** 1.

co-emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, *buy up, purchase.*

co-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, *come together, meet.*

coepī, coepisse, (coeptūrus), defective verb, lacking present system (which is supplied by **incipiō),** *have begun* or *began;* w. complementary infin. in pass. voice, **coeptus sum, esse,** is used as deponent, I. **47,** 1, II. **6,** 2, etc.

co-erceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitum [**arceō,** *enclose*], (confine) *restrain.*

cōgitō, 1st conj. [for **co-agitō**], (revolve, discuss), *consider.*

cō-gnātiō, ōnis, f. [**(g)nāscor**], abstract, *relationship by birth* (**māgna,** *wide*) VII. **32,** 4; collective, *clan,* VI. **22,** 2.

cō-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnitum, (become acquainted with), *learn, find out, ascertain; examine, reconnoitre;* **cōgnōvī,** as pres. perf., *I have become acquainted with;* hence, *I know,* pluperf. *knew.* Part., **cōgnitus, a, um,** as adj., *known, noted,* I. **28,** 5.

cōgō, cōgere, co-ēgī, co-āctum [for **co-agō**], (drive together), *bring together, gather;* w. infin. or direct obj., *force, compel;* perf. part. **coāctus,** *under compulsion,* I. **17,** 6.

cohors, hortis, f., *cohort,* a tenth of a legion.

cohortātiō, ōnis, f. [**cohortor**], (exhortation), *address* before a battle, *appeal* (to).

co-hortor, 1st conj., *exhort, encourage, address* before a battle.

col-, form of **cum** [**com**] in comp. before **l.**

collātus, a, um, part. of **cōnferō.**

col-laudō, 1st conj. [**laus,** *praise*], *praise highly.*

col-ligō, 1st conj., *fasten together,* I. **25,** 3.

col-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum [**legō,**

gather], *gather*, *collect; acquire;* **sē colligere**, *recover one's self*, *collect one's wits.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

col-locō, 1st conj. [**locus**], *place; settle; give in marriage*, I. **18,** 6, 7.

colloquium, ī, n. [**colloquor**], *conversation, conference, interview.*

col-loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *talk with, hold a conference;* **inter sē colloquī,** *confer together*, IV. **30,** 1.

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, *cultivate; worship.*

colōnia, ae, f. [**colōnus,** *colonist*, from **colō**], *colony.*

color, ōris, m., *color.*

com-, regular form of **cum** in comp.

com-būrō, būrere, būssī, būstum [related to **ūrō,** *burn*], *burn up.*

comes, itis, c. [**com, eō**], *companion.*

comitium, ī, n. [**com, eō**], *place of assembly;* plu., *the Roman people in assembly for election;* hence, any *election*, VII. **67,** 7.

comitor, 1st conj. [**comes**], *accompany.*

commeātus, ūs, m. [**commeō**], *a going back and forth, voyage*, V. **23,** 2, 4; *provisions, supplies.*

com-memorō, 1st conj. [**memor,** *mindful*], *mention, relate.*

com-mendō, 1st conj. [**mandō**], *commit, intrust.*

(**commentārius, ī,** m. [**com-mentor,** *think over*], orig., *note-book, memorandum; sketch.* Not in text of Bel. Gal., but applied to its single books by the grammarians.)

com-meō, 1st conj., *go back and forth, resort;* **commeāre ad,** *visit.*

com-minus, adv. [**manus**], *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commissūra, ae, f. [**committō**], *joint, junction, angle, corner.*

com-mīlitō, ōnis, m., [**mīles**], *fellow-soldier.*

com-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send together), *join,* **mālōs,** VII. **22,** 5; *join, engage in,* **proelium;** *intrust; do,* I. **14,** 2, V. **35,** 5; *commit,* VII. **4,** 10; *permit,* I. **13,** 7, **46,** 3, VII. **47,** 7.

Commius, ī, m., a chief of the Atrebates, IV. **21,** 6, VII. **75,** 5, etc.

commodē, adv. [**commodus**], *conveniently, easily, effectively.*

com-modus, a, um [**modus**], (having measure with what is desired), *convenient, advantageous.* Neut. as subst., *advantage, interest; comfort.*

com-mōne-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum [**moneō,** *warn*], (give a warning about), *impress upon.*

com-moror, 1st conj., *delay.*

com-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly), *influence*, I. **20,** 3; *alarm, startle.*

commūnicō, 1st conj. [**commūnis**], (make common), *share; propose*, (**cum,** *to*); *unite*, VI. **19,** 1.

com-mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or **mūniī, mūnītum,** (fortify completely), *fortify strongly, construct.*

com-mūnis, e [related to **mūnus,** *task*], (having tasks together), *common, general;* w. **lēgātiō,** *joint.*

commūtātiō, ōnis, f. [**commūtō**], *change.*

com-mūtō, 1st conj., *change;* w. abl., *exchange for*, VI. **22,** 3.

comparō, 1st conj. [**com-par,** *like*], (liken), *compare*, I. **31,** 11, VI. **24,** 6. For all other passages see **comparō**, p. 22.

com-parō, 1st conj., *provide, procure, prepare.* For I. **31,** 11, VI. **24,** 6, see **comparō,** p. 21.

com-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drive together), *gather,* V. **19,** 1, VII. **71,** 7; *drive* in confusion.

com-pendium, ī, n. [**pendō,** *pay*], *gain, profit.*

com-periō, perīre, perī, pertum [cf. **ex-perior**], *find out, ascertain, learn.*

com-plector, plectī, plexus sum [**plectō,** *plait*], *embrace.*

com-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, *fill completely; cover.*

com-plūrēs, a or **ia,** gen. **plūrium** [**plūs**], *several, quite a number of.* Often as subst.

com-portō, 1st conj., *bring together, gather, convey.*

com-prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum [**prehendō,** *lay hold of*], *grasp* with the hand, *take* hurriedly; w. **fūnēs, īgnem,** *catch; catch, arrest, take.*

com-probō, 1st conj., *approve of,* "*smile upon.*"

con-, form of **cum (com)** in comp. before most of the consonants.

cōnātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **cōnor,** in pass. sense], (a thing attempted), *attempt.*

cōnātus, ūs, m. [**cōnor**], (an attempting), *attempt.*

con-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *yield,* IV. **7,** 5, VII. **15,** 6; *grant, permit.*

concēssus, ūs, m. [**concēdō**], *permission.*

con-cidō, cidere, cidī,—— [cado], *fall* (in a heap).

con-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], *cut down, kill; cut off,* III. **9,** 4.

con-ciliō, 1st conj. [**concilium**], *win over; gain,* I. **3,** 7, VII. **55,** 4.

con-cilium, ī, n., *assembly, council.*

concitō, 1st conj., *arouse, stir up.*

con-clāmō, 1st conj., *cry out, shout.*

con-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], *shut up, enclose;* **mare conclūsum,** *landlocked sea.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes, VII. **3,** 1.

con-crepō, crepāre, crepuī, crepitum, *rattle, clash;* **armīs** (abl. of means), translated as if obj.

con-currō, currere, currī or **cucurrī, cursum,** *run together, hurry, rally; gather.*

con-cursō, cursāre, ——, —— [intensive of **concurrō**], *run to and fro, run about.*

concursus, ūs, m. [**concurrō**], *a running together, rushing about, confusion; charge, onset,* I. **8,** 4, VI. **8,** 6, VII. **62,** 3; w. **nāvium,** *collision.*

con-demnō, 1st conj. [**damnō,** *condemn*], *condemn.*

con-diciō, ōnis, f. [**dīcō**], (a saying together), *agreement, terms, condition, state.*

con-dōnō, 1st conj. [**dōnum,** *gift*], *forgive, pardon;* dat., *out of regard for,* I. **20,** 5, 6.

Condrūsī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae upon the eastern bank of the Meuse, II. **4,** 10, etc.

con-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *bring together, gather* (of persons); *hire,* II. **1,** 4, V. **27,** 8.

cōnfectus, a, um, part. of **cōnficiō.**

cōn-ferciō, fercīre, fersī, fertum

[**farciō**, *stuff*], *crowd together*. Perf. part. as adj., *crowded*, *compact*, *in close array*.

cōn-ferō, ferre, con-tulī, col-lātum, *bring together*, *collect* (of things), *convey ; compare*, I. **31,** 11; *attribute*, I. **40,** 10; *postpone*, I. **40,** 14; **sē cōnferre,** *betake one's self*, *retire*, I. **26,** 1.

cōnfertus, a, um, part. of **cōnferciō.**

cōn-fēstim [cf. **fēstīnus**, *hasty*], *promptly*, *immediately*.

cōn-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (do completely), *complete*, *accomplish*, *finish; exhaust*, *wear out*, *overcome; complete the number of*, *furnish*, II. **4,** 5; *make out*, *execute*, I. **29,** 1.

cōn-fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum (trust firmly), w. ind. dis. or dat., *trust ;* w. abl. *rely* (on).

cōn-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, *fasten* (together).

cōn-fīnis, e, adj. [**fīnis**], *adjoining*, *adjacent*.

cōnfīnium, ī, n. [**cōnfīnis**], *territory*, *neighborhood*.

cōnfīrmātiō, ōnis, f. [**cōnfīrmō**], *assurance*.

cōn-fīrmō, 1st conj., *strengthen*, *establish ; assure*, *reassure ;* w. acc. and infin., *declare*, *pledge one's self;* espec. w. **iūre iūrandō.**

cōnfīsus, a, um, part. of **cōnfīdō.**

cōn-fiteor, fitērī, fessus sum [**fateor**, *acknowledge*], *confess*, *admit*.

cōnfīxus, a, um, part. of **cōnfīgō.**

cōn-flagrō, 1st conj., (blaze together), *be in flames*.

cōn-flīctō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōn-flīgō**], (strike against), *assail*, *harass*.

cōn-flīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flīctum, (strike together), *fight*, *contend*.

cōn-fluō, fluere, fluxī, (**fluxus**), *flow together ; flock together*, *assemble*. Pres. part. as subst., (place where two rivers unite), *confluence*.

cōn-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, (**fugitūrus**), *seek refuge* (by flight).

cōn-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *assemble*, *unite*.

con-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior**, *step*], *meet*, IV. **11,** 1; *unite with*, VI. **5,** 5; *meet in battle*, *contend with*, *fight with*.

congressus, a, um, part. of **congredior.**

congressus, ūs, m. [**congredior**], *meeting*, *engagement*.

cōn-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **cōnjiciō**), **icere, con-iēcī, coniectum** [**iaciō**], *throw*, *hurl ;* w. **in fugam,** *put* (to); *place* or *put* hurriedly; w. **aggerem,** *raise*.

coniectūra, ae, f. [**cōniciō**], (a putting "two and two" together), *conjecture ;* **coniectūram capere,** *to conjecture*, *infer*, *judge*.

coniūnctim, adv. [**coniungō**], *jointly*, *in common*.

con-iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*, *unite*, trans.; w. reflex., *join*, *unite*, intrans.

coniūnx, coniugis, c. [**coniungō**], *spouse ;* (husband), *wife*.

coniūrātiō, ōnis, f. [**coniūrō**], (a swearing together), *conspiracy*. (**faciō**, *form*.)

con-iūrō, 1st conj., (swear together), *conspire ; band together*, *unite*, II. **1,** 1, 2, **3,** 2; *take the military oath*, VII. **1,** 1.

cōnor, 1st conj., *try*, *attempt ;* **idem**

cōnārī, *make the same attempt;* **quicquam cōnārī,** *try to do anything.* Neut. of perf. part. in pass. sense, (a thing attempted), *attempt.*

con-quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum [**quiēs**], *rest; take a nap.*

con-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī or **quīsiī, quīsītum** [**quaerō**], *seek for, look up, collect.*

cōn-sanguineus, a, um [**sanguis**], (of the same blood), *kindred.* Masc. as subst., *kindred, kinsman.*

cōn-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum [**scandō,** *climb*], *climb, mount;* (**in**) **nāvēs cōnscendere,** *go on board, board, embark.*

cōn-scientia, ae, f. [**sciēns,** part. of **sciō,** *know*], *consciousness.*

cōn-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītum [**scīscō,** *approve,* inceptive (inchoative) of **sciō,** *know*], *adjudge, admit;* **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** *commit suicide.*

cōn-scius, a, um [**sciō,** *know*], (knowing in common with some one), *conscious, aware.* An accompanying dat. of reflex. pron., dependent upon **con-**, is not translated.

cōn-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write* (out), V. **48,** 4; *enlist, enroll.*

cōn-secrō, 1st conj. [**sacer,** *sacred*], *consecrate.*

cōn-sector, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōnsequor**], *overtake.*

cōnsecūtus, a, um, part. of **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, ōnis, f. [**cōnsentio,** *agree*], *agreement, unanimous resolve.*

cōnsēnsus, ūs, m. [**cōnsentiō,** *agree*], *agreement, consent.*

cōn-sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, (feel the same), *agree; be in agreement, join, unite.*

cōn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow and come up with), *overtake;* less exactly, *follow;* w. impers. obj., *gain, attain.*

cōn-servō, 1st conj. [*not* connected with **servus**], *preserve* (carefully), *save, spare;* **iūs,** *observe.*

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *Publius Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army, I. **21,** 4, **22,** 1, 4.

cōn-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī (sīdī), sessum [**sīdō,** from **sedeō,** *sit*], (sit down), *settle; take position, halt, encamp; sit, hold a session,* VI. **13,** 10.

cōn-silium, ī, n. [cf. **cōnsulō,** *deliberate*], *deliberation,* VII. **38,** 7; deliberative *assembly, council;* regularly, *counsel, plan of action, design; advice; discretion, prudence,* III. **5,** 2, **16,** 2, IV. **21,** 7; *strategy,* I. **40,** 8.

cōn-similis, e, *quite like, very similar.*

cōn-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, *take one's stand, take position; make a stand; come to a halt, stop; settle, take up residence,* VII. **3,** 1. **42,** 5; **in,** *depend upon,* II. **33,** 4, III. **14,** 7, VII. **86,** 3; *consist of,* VI. **22,** 1; *be spent in,* VI. **21,** 3.

cōn-sōbrīnus, ī, m. [cf. **soror,** *sister*], (son of a mother's sister), *cousin.*

cōn-sōlor, 1st conj., *speak kindly to, comfort, console.*

cōnspectus, ūs, m. [**cōnspiciō**], *view, sight.*

cōn-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, (look at attentively), *observe catch sight of, see.*

cōn-spicor, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], *catch sight of, see.*

cōn-spīrō, 1st conj., (breathe together), *combine;* against an enemy, *conspire.*

cōnstanter, adv. [**cōnstāns,** part. of **cōnstō,** *stand together*], *consistently,* II. **2,** 4; *steadily,* III. **25,** 1.

cōnstantia, ae, f. [**cōnstāns,** part. of **cōnstō,** *stand together*], *steadfastness, firmness.*

cōn-sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum, *strew over, cover.*

cōn-sternō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], (bewilder), *dismay, alarm.*

cōn-stīpō, 1st conj., *pack together;* w. reflex., *be packed.*

cōn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō,** *cause to stand,* causative of **stō,** *stand*], w. obj., *place, station, halt;* of ships, *moor, anchor; establish, appoint, fix;* w. infin. or **ut,** *determine, decide.* **dē controversiīs cōnstituere,** *settle disputes,* VI. **13,** 5.

cōn-stō, stāre, stitī, (stātūrus), *stand the same, remain the same,* VII. **35,** 3; w. abl. of price, *cost,* VII. **19,** 4; *depend* (on), VII. **21,** 3, **84,** 4; elsewhere impers., *it is admitted, it is evident.*

cōn-suēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētum, *become accustomed;* hence perf., *have become accustomed = be accustomed,* plup. *was accustomed,* etc. Often best translated adverbially, e.g. **concēdere cōnsuēsse,** *usually grant,* I. **14,** 5, etc.

cōnsuētūdō, inis, f. [**cōnsuēscō**], *custom, habit; mode of life.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. [cf. **cōnsulō**], *consul,* one of the two chief executive officers at Rome, elected yearly.

cōnsulātus, ūs, m. [**cōnsul**], *consulship, consulate.*

cōn-sulō, sulere, suluī, sultum, *consult, deliberate;* w. dat., *look out* (for), *consult the interests* (of).

cōn-sultō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōnsulō**], *deliberate repeatedly* or *with unusual gravity.*

cōnsultō, adv. [perf. part. of **cōnsulō,** in impers. abl. abs.], (it having been deliberated upon), *deliberately, by agreement, purposely.*

cōnsultum, ī, n. [perf. part. of **cōnsulō,** used as subst.], (a thing deliberated upon), *decree.*

cōn-sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, (take together), *use up, consume, spend.*

cōn-surgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctum, *rise together;* **cōnsurgitur ex cōnsiliō,** *the council rises, is adjourned.*

con-tabulō, 1st conj. [**tabula,** *board*], *build of boards, erect,* V. **40,** 6; **mūrum turribus contabulāre,** *strengthen the wall with towers* made of boards, VII. **22,** 3.

con-tāgiō, ōnis, f. [**tangō,** *touch*], *contact, association.*

con-tāminō, 1st conj. [for **tāgminō,** from **tag,** stem of **tangō**], (touch with bad effect, cf. Eng. *contagion*), *defile, pollute, contaminate.*

con-tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover up, cover.*

con-temnō, temnere, tempsī, temptum, *despise;* **sīc contemnere,** *hold in such contempt,* V. **51,** 4.

contemptiō, ōnis, f. [**contemnō**], *contempt.*

contemptus, ūs, m. [**contemnō**], *contempt;* **contemptuī esse,** *be an object of contempt, be held in contempt.*

con-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, (strain hard), *hasten; struggle, strive, strive for;* w. acc. and infin., *insist.*

contentiō, ōnis, f. [**contendō**], (effort), *struggle, contest.*

contentus, a, um, part. of **contineō** (VII. **64,** 2) or of **contendō.**

con-texō, texere, texuī, textum, (weave together), *plait,* VI. **16,** 4; *join,* IV. **17,** 8; *bind together,* VII. **23,** 4.

continenter, adv. [**continēns,** part. of **contineō**], *continuously, without interruption.*

continentia, ae, f. [**continēns,** part. of **contineō,** w. **sē** understood], *self-control.*

con-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], *hold together,* VII. **23,** 3; *contain,* V. **24,** 7; *occupy,* I. **38,** 5; pass., *consist,* VII. **2,** 2; *surround, bound; restrain; keep, keep hold of.* Pres. part. as adj., *incessant, continuous, unbroken;* as subst., sc. **terra,** *continent, mainland.*

con-tingō, tingere, tigī, tactum [**tangō**], *touch, extend to;* impers., *happen, fall to the lot* (of), I. **43,** 4.

continuātiō, ōnis, f. [verb **continuō,** *continue,* from **continuus**], *succession, continuation.*

continuō, adv. [abl. of **continuus,** sc. **tempore**], *immediately, at once.*

continuus, a, um [**contineō**], *continuous, successive, in succession.*

cōntiō, ōnis, f. [for **conventiō,** from **conveniō,** *come together*], *general meeting, assembly; speech* at such an assembly, *harangue,* VII. **53,** 1.

contrā, (1) adv., *opposite, against* one; **contrā atque,** *contrary to what, otherwise than,* IV. **13,** 5. (2) prep. w. acc., *over against, opposite; against.*

con-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw together), *contract, reduce* (a camp); *concentrate* (an army or fleet).

contrārius, a, um [**contrā**], *opposite, facing;* **ex contrāriō,** *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, ae, f. [**contrōversus,** *opposite,* from **contrō** (like **contrā**) and **vertō,** *turn*], *controversy, dispute, quarrel.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *disgrace, insult; buffeting, violence,* III. **13,** 3.

con-valēscō, valēscere, valuī, —— [inceptive (inchoative) of **convaleō,** from **valeō,** *be strong*], (begin to be strong), *get well, regain health.*

con-vallis, is, f. [**vallis,** *valley*], *valley* enclosed on all sides; *ravine, defile.*

con-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *draw together, gather, collect.*

con-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come together, assemble;* of individuals, *come; meet,* I. **27,** 2; *be agreed upon,* I. **36,** 5, II. **19,** 6; impers., *be fitting, be necessary,* VII. **85,** 2.

conventus, ūs, m. [**conveniō**], *meeting, assembly,* I. **18,** 2, V. **48,** 9; *court.*

conversus, a, um, part. of **convertō.**

con-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn around* (trans.); pass. or w.

reflex., *turn* (intrans.); *change*, I. **41,** 1; **conversa sīgna īnferre,** (bear on the turned standards), *change front and advance.*

Convictolitavis, is, acc. **im,** a prominent Aeduan, VII. **32,** 4, ff.

convictus, a, um, part. of **convincō.**

con-vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, (conquer completely), *prove clearly;* **avāritiam convictam,** *be convicted of avarice*, I. **40,** 12.

con-vocō, 1st conj., *call together, summon, call out* (of troops).

co-orior, orīrī, ortus sum, *arise, rise, spring up, break out*, often used metaphorically.

cōpia, ae, f. [for **co-opia,** from **ops,** *help*], *plenty, supply, abundance;* plu. *forces, troops; wealth, supplies*, I. **31,** 5, II. **10,** 4, IV. **4,** 7, VI. **15,** 2.

cōpiōsus, a, um [**cōpia**], (full of supplies), *wealthy, prosperous.*

cōpula, ae, f. [for **co-apula,** from stem of **apīscor,** *reach*, cf. **aptus**], (anything that joins two objects), *grappling iron*, III. **13,** 8.

cor-, form of **cum** (**com**) in comp. before **r.**

cor, cordis, n., *heart;* **cordī esse,** *be dear.*

cōram, adv. [**con; ōs,** *face*], (face to face), *in person;* **cōram cernere, perspicere,** *see with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolitēs, um, m. plu., acc. **as,** a tribe on the northwest coast of Gaul, II. **34.**

corium, ī, n., *hide, skin.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing* of an army.

corōna, ae, f. [κορώνη], (wreath), *crown; circle, unbroken line, cordon*, VII. **72,** 2; **sub corōnā vēndere,** *sell into slavery*, because prisoners of war exposed for sale were crowned like sacrificial victims.

corpus, corporis, n., *body, person;* dead *body, corpse.*

cor-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, (break up), *destroy, ruin.*

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* of trees.

cotīdiānus, a, um [**cotīdiē**], *daily; regular, usual*, I. **19,** 3.

cotīdiē, adv. [**quot,** *each;* **diē,** abl. of **diēs**], *daily.*

Cotta, ae, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta*, a *legatus* of Caesar, first mentioned II. **11,** 3; killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, V. **24-37.**

Cotuātus, ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes, VII. **3,** 1.

Cotus, ī, m., an Aeduan of high rank, VII. **32,** 4 ff.

crassitūdō, inis, f. [**crassus,** *thick*], *thickness.*

Crassus, ī, m., (1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, who with Caesar and Pompey formed the first triumvirate; killed by the Parthians B.C. 53: I. **21,** 4, IV. **1,** 1. (2) *Publius Licinius Crassus* (often called *adulēscēns*, junior), younger son of above, *legatus* of Caesar, I. **52,** 7, etc. (3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus*, elder son, *quaestor* in Caesar's army, V. **46,** 1, etc.

crātēs, is, f., sing. rare, *wicker-work; fascine.*

crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, compar. **crēbrior,** super. **crēberrimus,** *frequent, numerous, thick.*

crēbrō, adv. [abl. of **crēber**], *frequently, at short intervals.*

crē-dō, dere, didī, ditum [old stem meaning *faith*, and **dō, dare**], (give credit), *trust, intrust*, VI. **31,** 3; *believe*.

cremō, 1st conj., *burn* (of persons); **īgnī cremāre,** (burn with fire), *burn to death, burn at the stake*.

creō, 1st conj., (produce), *elect, choose*.

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum, (grow); *become powerful*, I. **20,** 2; *become swollen, rise*, VII. **55,** 10.

Crēs, Crētis, m., acc. plu. **as,** *a Cretan*.

Critognātus, ī, m., an Arvernian of high rank, VII. **77,** 2, **78,** 1.

cruciātus, ūs, m. [**cruciō,** *torture*, from **crux,** *cross*], *torture*.

crūdēlitās, tātis, f. [**crūdēlis,** *cruel*], *cruelty, barbarity*.

crūdēliter, adv. [**crūdēlis,** *cruel*], *cruelly, with cruelty*.

crūs, crūris, m., *leg* (strictly, below the knee).

cubīle, is, n. [**cubō,** *lie down*], *resting place, bed*.

culmen, minis, n., *summit, top*.

culpa, ae, f., *fault; blame*, IV. **27,** 4.

cultūra, ae, f. [**colō,** *cultivate*], *cultivation*. **agrī cultūra,** *agriculture*.

cultus, ūs, m. [**colō,** *cultivate*], *manner, habit of life*, VI. **24,** 4; *civilization*.

cum, prep. w. abl., *with*, in the sense of *in company* or *association with;* used with abl. of accompaniment (attendance) and manner; see grammatical appendix. Enclitic with the personal pronouns, and often with **quis** and **quī.**

In comp. its regular form is **com-,** which appears as **co-** before vowels and **h, col-** or **con-** before **l, cor-** or **con-** before **r,** and **con-** before other consonants. It has the force of *with* or *together*, or in very many cases is simply intensive, like Eng. "burn *up*," "burn *down*," "join *together*," etc.

cum, subord. conj., *when* (w. indic., or, in imperf. and pluperf., either indic. or subjunct.); *since* (w. subjunct.); *although* (w. subjunct.); often with a combination of these meanings. **cum—tum,** (while—especially), *not only—but also, both—and*, II. **4,** 7, III. **16,** 2, etc. **cum prīmum,** (when first), *as soon as*, III. **9,** 2, **11,** 5, etc.

cunctātiō, ōnis, f. [**cunctor**], *delay, hesitation*.

cunctor, 1st conj., *delay, hesitate*.

cūnctus, a, um [for **con-iūnctus,** from **coniungō,** *join*], sing., *entire, all together;* plu. *all*.

cuneātim, adv. [**cuneātus,** part. of **cuneō,** *wedge*, from **cuneus**], *in wedge-shaped formation*.

cuneus, ī, m., wedge; *a wedge-shaped formation*, or *column of troops*, VI. **40,** 2.

cunīculus, ī, m. [Spanish], *rabbit;* hence, *underground passage, mine*. (**agō,** *open*, III. **21,** 3.)

cupidē, adv. [**cupidus**], *eagerly, earnestly*.

cupiditās, tātis, f. [**cupidus**], *desire, eagerness*.

cupidus, a, um [**cupiō**], *desirous, eager* (for), *fond*, w. gen.

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī or **cupiī, cupītum,** *desire, be eager* (for); *be zealous, wish well*, I. **18,** 8; w. dat.

cūr, adv. [old form **quōr = quoi reī,** *for what reason*], *why, wherefore*, interrog. and rel.

cūra, ae, f. [cf. **caveō,** *be on one's guard*], *care, concern.* **mihi ea rēs est cūrae,** (this thing is for a care to me), *I am attending to this;* cf. I. **33,** 1, I. **40,** 11.

cūrō, 1st conj. [**cūra**], *take care;* w. gerundive, *cause* (something to be done), *have* (something done); e.g. **pontem faciendum cūrāre,** *cause a bridge to be built, have a bridge built*, I. **13,** 1; so I. **19,** 1, III. **11,** 4, etc.

currus, ūs, m. [**currō,** *run*], *chariot, car.*

cursus, ūs, m. [**currō,** *run*], *running; speed;* of ships, *course.*

cūstōdia, ae, f. [**cūstōs**], (a guarding), *guard, watch, sentinel.*

cūstōdiō, cūstōdīre, cūstōdīvī or **cūstōdiī, cūstōdītum** [**cūstōs**], *guard.*

cūstōs, cūstōdis, c., *guard, watch, sentinel, picket, observer.*

D

D, as numeral = 500.

D., abbreviation for *Decimus*, a Roman *praenomen.*

d., abbreviation for **diem,** in **ante diem.**

Dācī, ōrum, m. plu., *the Dacians*, a people of Thrace, north of the Carpathian mountains, VI. **25,** 2.

damnō, 1st conj. [**damnum**], *find guilty, condemn.* Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one condemned), *convict, criminal.*

damnum, ī, n., (harm), *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube*, VI. **25,** 2.

dē, prep. w. abl., (down) *from; concerning, on account of;* in expressions of place from which and separation, *down from, from, out of;* instead of partitive gen. and abl. of material, *of;* w. **causā, causīs,** *on account of, for;* **dē cōnsiliō,** *by* or *upon the advice*, VII. **5,** 3; of other relations, *concerning, about, for.* **dē tertiā vigiliā,** *during the third watch*, I. **12,** 2; **dē imprōvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

In comp. the forces are the same, but sometimes, from the meaning of the word with which it is joined, it becomes either intensive or negative.

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum [for **de-hibeō,** from **habeō**], (have off from one's possessions), *owe*, VI. **33,** 4; *ought* (originally the past of *owe*); **sūspicārī dēbēre,** *cannot help suspecting, have good reason to suspect*, I. **44,** 10, cf. V. **27,** 2.

dē-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go down from), *withdraw;* sc. **vītā,** (depart from life), *die*, VI. **19,** 3.

decem, abbreviation **X,** indeclin. card. adj., *ten.*

dēceptus, a, um, part. of **decipiō.**

dē-cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, (separate, distinguish from), *decide; decide upon, decree.*

dē-certō, 1st conj., *fight* a decisive battle, "*fight it out.*"

dēcēssus, ūs, m. [**dēcēdō**], *departure, withdrawal;* w. **aestūs,** *ebb*, III. **13,** 1.

Decētia, ae, f., a town of the Aedui, VII. **33,** 2.

dē-cidō, cidere, cidī, —— [**cadō**], *fall* (from).

decimus, a, um [**decem**], ord. adj., *tenth*, **quisque decimus**, (each tenth man), *one in ten*, V. **52,** 2.

Decimus, ī, m. a Roman *praenomen*.

dē-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take down from one's security), *deceive*.

dē-clārō, 1st conj. [**clārus,** *clear*], (set down clearly), *declare*.

dē-clīvis, e [**clīvus,** *slope*], *sloping* (downward).

dēclīvitās, tātis, f. [**dēclīvis**], *downward slope*, *declivity*. **ad dēclīvitātem,** *downward*.

dēcrētum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **dēcernō**], (a thing decreed), *decree*, *decision*, *command*, *order*. (**stāre,** *abide*.)

decumānus, a, um [**decimus,** *tenth*], *of a tenth;* **dec. porta,** *the rear gate* of a camp, near which the tenth cohort of a single legion would be stationed.

decuriō, ōnis, m. [**decem,** *ten*], *decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of a small squad (originally ten men).

dē-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run down*, *hasten*.

dē-decus, decoris, n. [**decus,** *honor*, from **decet,** *it becomes*], *disgrace*, *dishonor*.

dēditīcius, a, um [**dēditus,** part. of **dēdō**], *having surrendered*. Masc. as subst., (one who has surrendered), *captive*, *prisoner*.

dēditiō, ōnis, f. [**dēdō**], *surrender*. **in dēditiōne accipere, recipere,** *accept the surrender* of anyone; **in dēditiōnem venīre,** *surrender*.

dēditus, a, um, part. of **dēdō.**

dē-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], *give up*, *hand over*, *surrender*, trans.; w. reflex., *give up*, *surrender*, intrans.; *devote*, III. **22,** 2, VI. **16,** 1.

dē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead down; lead away*, *lead off*, *withdraw;* of ships, *launch;* when used figuratively, *bring;* (lead home), *marry*, V. **14,** 5; *lead astray*, VII. **37,** 6.

dēfatīgātiō, ōnis, f. [**dēfatīgō**], *weariness*, *fatigue*.

dē-fatīgō, 1st conj., *tire out*, *exhaust*, *fatigue*.

dēfectiō, ōnis, f. [**dēficiō,** *fail*], (a failing), *revolt*, *defection*.

dē-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum, (strike down), *ward off*, *repel*, I. **44,** 6, II. **29,** 5, VI. **23,** 4; *defend*, *protect*.

dēfēnsiō, onis, f. [**dēfendō**], *defence*, *protection*.

dēfēnsor, ōris, m. [**dēfendō**], (defender), *protection*, IV. **17,** 10; **speciēs dēfēnsōrum praebēre,** *make a show of defence*, VI. **38,** 5.

dē-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bring down to a destination), *carry; report* a matter; pass., of ships, *drift*, *come to land;* of troops, *wander*, *come; give*, *bestow* (upon), II. **4,** 7, V. **6,** 2, VI. **2,** 1, VII. **4,** 7.

dēfessus, a, um, part. of **dēfetīscor.**

dē-fetīscor, fetīscī, fessus sum [**fatīscō (or),** *gape*, *faint*], *become exhausted*. Perf. part. as adj., *worn out*, *exhausted*.

dē-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make down from anything), trans.,

fail; intrans., *fail, give out; revolt,* II. **14,** 3, III. **17,** 2, VII. **10,** 1; **dēficere ab,** *forsake, desert,* V. **3,** 3, VII. **39,** 3; **animō** (abl. of spec.) **dēficere,** *lose heart, be down-hearted,* VII. **30,** 1.

dē-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, *fix* or *plant firmly; drive down.*

dē-fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītum [**fīnis,** *limit*], *define, fix.*

dē-fore, fut. infin. of **dēsum,** = **dēfutūrus esse.**

dē-fōrmis, e [**fōrma**], *ill-formed; misshapen, scrawny,* IV. **2,** 2; *unsightly,* VII. **23,** 5.

dē-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, ——, *flee from, avoid, shun.*

dē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **dējiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], *throw down; overthrow, destroy,* IV. **17,** 10; *drive* from a position; fig., w. abl. of separation, (throw down from), *disappoint* (in), I. **8,** 4, V. **48,** 1, VII. **63,** 8; **in īnferiōrem locum dēiectus,** *slipping in a hollow,* V. **44,** 12.

dēiectus, a, um, part. of **dēiciō.**

dē-iectus, ūs, m. [**dēiciō**], (a throwing down); *slope.*

deinceps, adv. [cf. **deinde, capiō**], (taking next), *one after the other, in succession.*

de-inde, adv. [**inde,** *thence, then*], *thereupon, then; in the next place, secondly, further, next.*

dēlātus, a, um, part. of **dēferō.**

dē-lectō, 1st conj. [intensive of **dē-liciō,** *entice from* one's way], *delight;* pass., w. abl. of cause, *be delighted* (with), *take pleasure* (in), IV. **2,** 2.

dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy; wipe out, blot out,* II. **27,** 2.

dē-līberō, 1st conj. [cf. **lībra,** *balance*], (weigh mentally); *consider, deliberate.*

dē-librō, 1st conj. [**liber,** *bark*], *strip the bark from, peel.*

dēlictum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part of **dēlinquō,** *leave undone, do wrong*], (a thing left undone or wrongly done), *offence, fault.*

dē-ligō, 1st conj., (bind down), *tie;* **ad ancorās dēligātae,** (*lying*) *at anchor.*

dē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum [**legō**], *pick out, choose, select.*

dē-litēscō, litēscere, lituī, —— [**latēscō,** inceptive (inchoative) of **lateō,** *lie hidden*], *hide away, conceal one's self.*

dēmentia, ae, f. [**dēmēns,** *foolish,* from **dē, mēns**], *foolishness, folly.*

dēmessus, a, um, part. of **dēmetō.**

dē-metō, metere, messuī, messum, *mow down, reap, cut.*

dē-migrō, 1st conj., *move away, move one's goods, move.*

dē-minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus,** *less*], *lessen, take away from, diminish;* **quicquam dē voluptāte dēminuere,** *diminish one's delight at all,* I. **53,** 6; cf. VII. **33,** 2, **43,** 4.

dē-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *let down,* VII. **47,** 6; *put down, plant,* VII. **73,** 3, 6; w. reflex., *get into;* **sē animō dēmittere,** *be disheartened,* VII. **29,** 1; **capite dēmissō,** *with bowed head,* I. **32,** 2; **loca dēmissa,** *depressed regions, lowlands.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum [**dē, emō**], *take down.*

dē-mōnstrō, 1st conj., *point out, mention, show; explain*, V. **1**, 2, **38**, 2.

dē-moror, 1st. conj., *delay* (from anything), *retard*.

dēmptus, a, um, part. of **dēmō**.

dēmum, adv., *at length*.

dē-negō, 1st conj., (utterly deny), *absolutely refuse*.

dēnī, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**decem**], (ten by ten), *ten each*, I. **43**, 3; *ten together*, V. **14**, 3.

dēnique, adv., *finally; at least*, II. **33**, 2.

dēnsus, a, um, *dense, thick; crowded*.

dē-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**, *message, messenger*], *announce openly, declare plainly, threaten; order*, VI. **10**, 1.

dē-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive away, drive off; avert*, VI. **17**, 2.

dē-perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum [**per-dō**, *destroy*], *lose; forfeit*, V. **54**, 5.

dē-pereō, perīre, (perīvī) periī, peritum [**per-eō**, *perish*], *perish; be lost*.

dē-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (put down), *lay down, lay aside;* **memoriam dēpōnere**, *forget; place* for safety, IV. **19**, 2, VII. **63**, 3; *leave*, II. **29**, 4, VI. **41**, 1.

dē-populor, 1st conj. [*not* connected w. **populus**], *ravage, lay waste*.

dē-portō, 1st. conj., *carry off*.

dē-pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, (ask for earnestly); *demand, call for urgently*.

dēprecātor, ōris, m. [**dēprecor**], *advocate, intercessor, mediator*.

dē-precor, 1st conj. [**prex, precis**, *prayer, entreaty*], (pray to have averted), *pray to be delivered* from, *ask pardon*, VI. **4**, 2; *ask quarter of*, IV. **7**, 3.

dē-prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, *seize; surprise*.

dē-prehēnsus, a, um, part. of **dēprehendō**.

dē-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna**, *fight*], *fight decisively, fight it out*.

dēpulsus, a, um, part. of **dēpellō**.

dērēctē, adv. [**dērēctus**, perf. part. of **dērigō**, *lay straight*], *in a straight line;* **dērēctē ad perpendiculam**, *exactly vertically, perpendicularly*.

dērēctus, a, um, part. of **dērigō**.

dē-rigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctum [**regō**], *lay straight; arrange*, VII. **27**, 1; *form*, VI. **8**, 5. Perf. part. as adj., *straight; perpendicular*, VII. **72**, 1. (**magis**, *more nearly*, VI. **26**, 1.)

dē-rīvō, 1st. conj. [**rīvus**, *brook*], of water, *draw down, divert*.

dē-rogō, 1st conj. [**rogō**, in legal signification, *propose a law*], (repeal part of a law or restrict a bill), *withdraw, diminish*.

dē-scendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum [**scandō**], (climb down), *descend, come down*, VII. **53**, 2; *resort to*.

dē-secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *cut off*.

dē-serō, serere, seruī, sertum, (disjoin), *abandon, desert*. Perf. part. as adj., *deserted, solitary*, V. **53**, 4.

dēsertor, ōris, m. [**dēserō**], *deserter, coward*.

dēsertus, a, um, part. of **dēserō**.

dē-sīderō, 1st conj. [cf. **cōn-sīderō**], *desire, want;* hence, *miss, lose.*

dēsidia, ae, f. [**dēses,** *idle,* from **dē** and **sideō,** *sit*], *idleness, laziness.*

dē-sīgnō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum,** *mark*], (mark down), *designate, mean.*

dē-siliō, silīre, siluī, sultum [**saliō**], *jump down, leap down; dismount.*

dē-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, (stop from doing something), *stop,* VII. **4,** 3; w. infin., *stop* (doing something), *cease* (to do something); w. abl., *desist* (from), *give up, cease.*

dēspectus, a, um, part. of **dēspiciō.**

dēspectus, ūs, m. [**dēspiciō,** *look down upon*], *view* from a higher position; **in mare,** *of the sea,* III. **14,** 9.

dēspērātiō, ōnis, f. [**dēspērō**], *despair, desperation, hopelessness.*

dē-spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs,** *hope*], intrans., *give up hope, despair* (**dē,** or abl. of cause, *of*); trans., *despair of;* so in abl. abs., e.g. **salūte dēspērātā,** *despairing of safety,* etc. Perf. part. as adj., *desperate,* VII. **3,** 1.

dē-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look down upon, despise.*

dē-spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolia,** *spoils*], *despoil, deprive.*

dēstinō, 1st conj., *attach, hold; detail,* VII. **72,** 2.

dē-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō**], (set apart from one's self), *abandon, desert, leave in the lurch.*

dēstrictus, a, um, part. of **dēstringō.**

dē-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, *draw from, draw.*

dē-sum, de-esse, dē-fuī, (**dē-futūrus**), (be away from), *be lacking, be wanting.*

dē-super, adv., *from above.*

dēterior, us, compar. adj., super. **dēterrimus, a, um** [**dē**], *lower, poorer;* **vectīgālia dēteriōra facere,** *make the revenues lower, lessen the revenues,* I. **36,** 4.

dē-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, (frighten from), *deter, prevent; repress,* V. **7,** 1.

dē-tēstor, 1st conj. [**tēstis,** *witness*], (call the gods to witness down upon, against one), *curse.*

dē-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold from), *hold back, detain.*

dētrāctus, a, um, part. of **dētrahō.**

dē-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw from), *withdraw, remove, take.* (**dē,** or dat. of separation, *from.*)

dē-trectō, 1st conj. [for **dē-trāctō,** intensive of **dētrahō**], *withdraw from* constantly, *avoid.*

dētrīmentōsus, a, um [**dētrīmentum**], *detrimental, dangerous, bad policy.*

dētrīmentum, ī, n. [**dē-terō,** *rub off, wear away, lose*], *loss, injury, defeat; disadvantage, source of injury,* I. **44,** 5.

dētulī, perf. of **dēferō.**

dē-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba,** *crowa*], (crowd off), *drive off, dislodge.*

de-ūro, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, *burn down.*

deus, ī, voc. **deus;** plu., nom. voc. **deī, diī, dī,** gen. **deōrum, deum,** dat. abl. **deīs, diīs, dīs,** acc. **deōs,** m., *god.*

dē-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *convey* to a destination, *transport; bring* (**equīs,** *on horseback*), I. **43,** 2.

dē-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come* (down); w. **ad,** *come to, reach.*

dēvexus, a, um [dēvehō], *sloping;* neut. plu. as subst., sc. **loca,** (sloping places), *slopes.*

dē-vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer* thoroughly; *subdue* completely.

dē-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx, vōcis,** *voice*], (call down), *bring.*

dēvōtus, a, um, part. of **dēvoveō.**

dē-voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow; devote,* III. **22,** 3; *consecrate* VI. **17,** 3. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one who has devoted himself to another), *devoted follower.*

dexter, dextera, dexterum, or in Bel. Gal. always **dexter, dextra, dextrum,** compar. **dexterior,** super. **dextimus,** *right,* opp. of left. Fem. as subst., sc. **manus,** *right hand.*

Diāblintēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Aulerci, in western Gaul, near, but not on, the coast, III. **9,** 10.

diciō, ōnis, f., no plu. in use [cf. **dīcō**], *sway, control* (cf. Eng. "say").

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say, state, mention; speak;* w. **diem,** *appoint;* w. **iūs,** *administer,* VI. **23,** 5; **causam dīcere,** *plead one's case,* I. **4,** 1, 2.

dicō, 1st conj. [secondary form of above], (dedicate), *devote;* w. reflex., *attach,* VI. **12,** 7; **in servitūtem sē dicāre,** *surrender,* VI. **13,** 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., *word, order.*

dictiō, ōnis, f. [**dīcō**], *speaking;* **causae dictiō,** *pleading a case.*

dictum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **dīcō,** used as subst.], (thing said), *word, order.*

dī-, form of **dis-,** in comp. before some consonants.

dī-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead apart), *divide, distribute.*

diēs, diēī, m., but sometimes fem. in sing., when referring to a definite date, *day; time,* I. **7,** 6; **in diēs,** *day by day, daily;* **ad diem,** *on* (a certain) *day, promptly,* cf. Eng. "on time"; **multō diē,** *late in the day,* and so **multā nocte; diem ex diē,** *from day to day,* I. **16,** 4.

dif-, form of **dis-** in comp. before **f.**

dif-ferō, ferre, dis-tulī, dī-lātum, (bear apart), *differ, be different; defer, postpone,* VII. **11,** 5; *spread,* V. **43,** 2.

dif-ficilis, e, compar. **difficilior,** super. **difficillimus** [**facilis,** *easy*], *difficult, hard;* w. **iter,** *hard* to pass over.

difficultās, tātis, f. [**difficilis**], *difficulty, trouble.*

difficulter, adv., compar. **difficilius,** super. **difficillimē** [**difficilis**], *with difficulty,* compar. *with greater difficulty.*

dif-fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, *distrust, doubt,* w. dat., or ind. dis.

diffīsus, a, um, part. of **diffīdō.**

dif-fluō, fluere, fluxī, (**fluxus**), (flow apart), *divide.*

dif-fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, (pour apart), *spread out;* pass. like Eng. intrans. use.

digitus, ī, m., *finger;* as sometimes in Eng., *a finger's breadth, finger,* VII. **73,** 6; **digitus pollex,** *thumb,* III. **13,** 4.

dīgnitās, tātis, f. [**dīgnus**], *worth,*

rank, *position*, *reputation*; *self-respect*, VI. **8**, 1.

dīgnus, a, um, *worthy*; w. abl., translated *of*.

dī-iūdicō, 1st conj. [**iūdex,** *judge*], *judge between*, *decide*.

dīlēctus, a, um, part. of **dīligō.**

dīlēctus, ūs, m. [dīligō], (a choosing), *levy*.

dīligenter, adv. [**dīligēns,** pres. part. of **dīligō**], *carefully*, *with care*; **parum dīl.,** *with too little care*, *rather carelessly*, III. **18**, 6.

dīligentia, ae, f. [**dīligēns,** pres. part. of **dīligō**], *care*, *accuracy*; *activity*, *diligence*.

dī-ligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctum [**legō**], *choose out*, *love*, *cherish*.

dīmēnsus, a, um, part. of **dīmētior.**

dī-mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure off*, *stake off*; *cut* or *select* (**ad,** *according to*), *adapt*, IV. **17**, 3.

dīmicātiō, ōnis, f. [**dīmicō**], *contest*, *struggle*.

dī-micō, 1st conj., (flash apart, of swords), *fight*, *struggle*, *contend*.

dī-midius, a, um [**medius,** *middle*], (divided in the middle), *half*; so **dīm. pars,** *half*; neut. as subst., *half*; **dīmidiō minor,** (smaller by half), *half as large*, V. **13**, 2.

dī-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send in all directions*, *send out*; *send away*; w. **concilium,** *adjourn*; *lose*; *abandon*.

dir-, form of **dis-** in comp. before a vowel.

dir-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum [**emō**], (take apart), *break up*.

dī-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum, (seize and tear apart), *plunder*, *sack*, *pillage*.

dis-, inseparable prep., *apart*, *asunder*; hence sometimes having negative or intensive force, according to signification of word with which it is joined. It becomes **dir-** before vowels, **dif-** before **f,** and **dī-** before most other consonants.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Dis*, god of the lower world; *Pluto*.

dis-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go apart), *go away*, *depart*; **discēdere ab,** *leave*; **ab armis discēdere,** *abandon hostilities*, V. **41**, 8; **hostibus** (dat. of reference) **spēs discēssit,** *hope left the enemy*, II. **7**, 2.

disceptātor, ōris, m. [**disceptō,** *decide*, from **dis, capiō**], *arbitrator*, *judge*, *umpire*.

dis-cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, *separate* from one another, *distinguish*.

discēssus, ūs, m. [**discēdō**], *departure*, *withdrawal*; *desertion*, VII. **54**, 2.

dīsciplīna, ae, f. [for **dīscipulīna,** from **dīscipulus,** *pupil*, from **dīsco**], (instruction), *training*, *discipline*; *system* of doctrine.

dis-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], (shut apart), *hold apart*, *separate*.

dīscō, dīscere, didicī, ——, *learn*; *be taught*, I. **13**, 6.

discrīmen, minis, n. [**discernō,** *separate*], *crisis*, *critical point*, *danger*.

dis-cutiō, cutere, cussī, cussum [**quatiō**], (shake apart), *remove*, *clear away*, of snow.

dis-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **disjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw in all directions), *break*, *rout*,

I. **25,** 2; *throw into disorder,* III. **20,** 4.

dis-pār, gen. **dispāris,** adj. [**pār**], *unequal,* V. **16,** 2; *inferior,* VII. **39,** 1.

dis-parō, 1st conj., (prepare apart), *separate, divide.*

dī-spergō, spergere, spersī, spersum [**spargō**], *scatter* in all directions, *disperse.*

dīspersus, a, um, part. of **dīspergō.**

dis-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place apart), *place at intervals;* occasionally in V.–VII., *place in position, dispose.*

disputātiō, ōnis, f. [**disputō**], *discussion, dispute.*

dis-putō, 1st conj., (think differently), *discuss, argue.*

dissēnsiō, ōnis, f. [**dissentiō**], *disagreement, dissension.*

dis-sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *think* or *feel differently, disagree* (with), *dissent* (from).

dis-serō, serere, sēvī, situm, (sow broadcast), *plant, put down* at intervals.

dis-simulō, 1st conj. [**similis,** *like*], (make unlike), *disguise, conceal.*

dis-sipō, 1st conj., (throw in all directions), *scatter, disperse.*

dis-suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, (persuade differently), *dissuade, advise against, oppose.*

dis-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], *keep apart, separate; delay, prevent,* VII. **37,** 3.

dī-stō, stāre, ——, ——, (stand apart), *be apart, be separated.*

dis-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw apart), *pry apart.*

dis-tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum, *distribute* among, to; *divide, assign,* IV. **22,** 3, 4, V. **24,** 6.

dītissimus, a, um, super. of **dīves.**

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē, adv., *long, for a long time;* **quam diū,** *as long as,* I. **17,** 6.

diurnus, a, um [**diēs**], *during the day, by day.*

diūtinus, a, um [**diū**], *long, long-continued.*

diūturnitās, tātis, f. [**diūturnus**], *length, long duration.*

diūturnus, a, um [**diū**], *long, long-continued.*

dīversus, a, um part. of **dīvertō.**

dī-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn aside* or *apart, separate.* Perf. part. as adj., *different; stretching away, remote,* VI. **25,** 3; *facing in the opposite direction,* VII. **74,** 1.

dīves, gen. **dīvitis;** or **dīs,** gen. **dītis;** compar. **dīvitior** or **dītior,** super. **dīvitissimus** or **dītissimus,** *rich.*

Dīviciācus, ī, m., (1) the most influential of the Aedui during Caesar's campaign in Gaul, I. **3,** 5, etc. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, II. **4,** 7.

Dīvicō, ōnis, m., leader of the Helvetii in their campaign against Cassius, B.C. 107, and chief of their embassy to Caesar after the destruction of the Tigurini, I. **13,** 2, **14,** 7.

dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum [**dis, videō**], *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, *divine;* **rēs dīvīnae,** *religious matters, public worship.*

dō, dare, dedī, datum, *give, grant, present; afford, allow,* I. **14,** 1, **38,** 4, VII. **85,** 6; **inter sē dare,** *ex-*

change ; **in fugam dare,** *put to flight ;* **operam dare,** *take pains ;* **sē ventō dare,** *square away before the wind,* III. **13,** 9. In comp. **dō** often = *put.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, (teach), *explain, show, inform, point out.*

documentum, ī, n. [**doceō**], (means of showing), *proof, evidence.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, ——, *suffer,* I. **14,** 5 ; *grieve, be pained.*

dolor, ōris, m. [**doleō**], *grief, pain, distress ;* **dolōre afficī,** (be affected with grief), *be distressed,* I. **2,** 4. (**capiō,** *feel,* I. **20,** 2.)

dolus, ī, m. *device ; cunning, deceit.*

domesticus, a, um [**domus,** *house*], (of the house), *native, domestic ; local,* II. **10,** 4 ; w. **bellum,** *civil.*

domicilium, ī, n. [**domus,** *house*], *dwelling-place, dwelling, residence, house.*

dominor, 1st conj. [**dominus**], *be master, rule.*

dominus, ī, m. [**domus,** *house*], *master,* VI. **13,** 3 ; *lord.*

Domitius, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul 54 B.C., V. **1,** 1.

domus, gen. **domūs,** dat. **domuī,** acc. **domum,** abl. **domō,** loc. **domī** (**domuī**) ; plu. nom. **domūs,** gen. **domōrum,** dat. abl. **domibus,** acc. **domōs, domūs,** f., *house, home ;* **domō exīre,** (go out from home), *emigrate.*

Domnotaurus, ī, m., a leader of the Helvii, VII. **65,** 2.

dōnō, 1st conj. [**dōnum**], *present.*

dōnum, ī, n. [**dō**], *gift, present.*

dorsum, ī, n. (sometimes **dorsus, ī,** m.), *back ; ridge* (of a hill).

dōs, dōtis, f. [**dō**], *dowry, marriage gift* from the bride's family.

druides, um, m. plu., *druids,* the priests of the Gauls and Britons.

Dūbis, is, m., a river of Gaul, tributary to the Arar (Saône), now the *Doubs,* I. **38,** 4.

dubitātiō, ōnis, f. [**dubitō**], *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, 1st. conj. [**dubius**], *hesitate;* when followed by **quīn,** *doubt,* except II. **2,** 5 ; when followed by **dē,** *doubt, entertain doubts,* and so I. **41,** 3.

dubius, a, um [**duo,** *two*], *doubtful, uncertain* ; **nōn est dubium quīn,** (it is not doubtful but that), *there is no doubt* (*but*) *that,* I. **3,** 7 ; neut. as subst., *doubt;* **in dubium dēvocāre,** (bring into doubt), *risk,* VI. **7,** 6.

ducentī, ae, a, card. adj. [**duo, centum**], *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead ;* of carts, *move, take,* I. **6,** 1 ; of earthworks, *construct ; put off, delay,* I. **16,** 4, 5, VII. **11,** 4 ; *prolong,* I. **38,** 4 ; *consider,* I. **3,** 2, IV. **30,** 2, etc. ; **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *marry.*

ductus, ūs, m. [**dūcō**], *lead, leadership.*

dum, subord. conj., *while, as long as ; until.* See Appendix.

Dumnorīx, īgis, m., a turbulent Aeduan, I. **3,** 5, etc.; close of his career described, V. **6, 7.**

duo, ae, o, gen. **ōrum, ārum, ōrum,** dat. and abl. **ōbus, ābus, ōbus,** acc. **ōs** or **o, ās, o,** card. adj., *two.*

duo-decim, indeclin. card. adj. [**decem**], *twelve.*

duo-decimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**duodecim**], *twelfth.*

duo-dēnī, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**duodecim**], (twelve by twelve), *twelve each ; twelve together*, V. **14,** 4.

duo-dē-septuāgintā, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from seventy), *sixty-eight ;* for *LXVIII.*, I. **29,** 3.

duo-dē-trīgintā, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from thirty), *twenty-eight ;* for *XXVIII.*, V. **2,** 2.

duo-dē-vīgintī, indeclin. card. adj., (two down from twenty), *eighteen.*

duplex, plicis, adj. [**duo ; plicō,** *fold*], (two-fold), *double.*

duplicō, 1st conj. [**duplex**], *double.*

dūritia, ae, f. [**dūrus**], (hardness), *hardship.*

dūrō, 1st conj. [**dūrus**], *harden, toughen, make hardy.*

Dūrocortorum, ī, n., a town of the Remi, now Reims, VI. **44,** 1.

dūrus, a, um, *hard ; difficult ;* **tempus annī,** *inclement season*, VII. **8,** 2.

Dūrus, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune of the soldiers, V. **15,** 5.

dux, ducis, c. [**dūcō,** *lead*], *leader, commander ; guide*, I. **21,** 2, II. **7,** 1.

E

ē, form of **ex,** before the consonants **b, d, g, i** consonant, **f, l, m, n, r, v,** but not in all cases.

eā, adv. [abl. of **is,** sc. **parte** or **viā**], *on that side, there.*

Eburōnēs, um, m. plu., tribe of Belgae, dwelling chiefly between the Rhine and the Meuse, II. **4,** 10, etc.

Eburovīcēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Aulerci, in the northwestern part of Gaul, south of the Seine near its mouth, III. **17,** 3, VII. **75,** 3.

ē-dīscō, dīscere, didicī, ——, *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, a, um, part. of **ēdō.**

ē-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put forth), *inflict, indulge in*, I. **31,** 12. Perf. part. as adj., *elevated, rising, high.*

ē-doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, (explain out), *explain, show exactly.*

ē-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead out ;* without obj., *move*, VII. **10,** 1 ; w. **gladium,** *draw.*

ef-, form of **ex** in comp. before **f.**

ef-fēminō, 1st conj. [**fēmina,** *woman*], (make womanish), *weaken, enervate, enfeeble.*

ef-ferciō, fercīre, ——, fertum [**farciō**], (stuff out), *fill compactly.*

ef-ferō, ferre, ex-tulī, ē-lātum, *bear out, carry away, take ; disclose, relate, spread abroad ; lift up*, lit. VII. **47,** 7 ; fig. *elate* (cf. Eng. "carried away"), V. **47,** 4, VII. **47,** 3.

ef-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make out, complete), *effect ; cover*, IV. **35,** 3 ; *render*, I. **38,** 6, III. **24,** 5, V. **33,** 5 ; *produce ; construct, complete ; furnish*, VII. **4,** 8 ; followed by **ut,** *bring about, effect*, a construction usually to be condensed in translation with the following verb.

ef-fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *dig out, gouge out.*

effossus, a, um, part. of **effodiō.**

ef-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, *flee from, escape.*

egeō, egēre, eguī, ——, *need, be in want ;* w. gen., *lack*, VI. **11,** 4 ; Pres. part. as subst. in plu., *the destitute, the needy.*

egestās, tātis, f. [**egeō**], *poverty, destitution.*

ego, meī, mihi (mī), mē, mē; nōs, nostrī (objective) or **nostrum** (partitive), **nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs,** pers. pron., first person, *I*, etc.

ego-met, nōs-met, etc., emphatic forms of **ego, nōs,** etc., VII. **38,** 7.

ē-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], *go out;* w. **ex** or abl. alone, *leave;* of ships, *land, disembark.*

ēgregiē, adv. [**ēgregius**], *excellently, remarkably well.*

ē-gregius, a, um [**grex,** *flock*], (out of the common), *conspicuous, marked.*

ēgressus, a, um, part. of **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, ūs, m. [**ēgredior,** *land*], *landing.*

ē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **ējiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum,** *throw out, cast, fling;* often w. reflexive, *rush; banish, expel,* IV. **7,** 3, VII. **4,** 4; *drive,* V. **10,** 2.

ē-lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, (slip out), *escape.*

ēlātus, a, um, part. of **efferō.**

Elaver, veris, n., a tributary of the Liger (Loire), now the *Allier,* VII. **34,** 2, etc.

ēlēctus, a, um, part. of **ēligō.**

elephantus, ī, m. [ἔλεφας], *elephant.*

Eleutetī, ōrum, m., a tribe whose name and location are both doubtful, clients of the Averni, so probably near them, VII. **75,** 2.

ē-liciō, licere, licuī, —— [**laciō**], *entice out, entice, draw out.*

ē-ligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctum [**legō**], *pick out, choose, select.*

Elusātēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of central Aquitania, III. **27,** 1.

ē-migrō, āre, āvī, ——, *move out, emigrate.*

ē-mineō, minēre, minuī, ——, (rise out of), *project.*

ē-minus, adv. [**manus,** *hand*], *at a distance, from some distance away.* Opposite of **com-minus.**

ē-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send out; throw, hurl; drop, cast away;* **manū ēmittere,** *let go of,* I. **25,** 4.

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, (take); *buy.*

ē-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, (be born from), *grow out.*

enim, coörd. conj., *for;* **neque enim,** implying an ellipsis, *and* (this is true) *for—not,* in which the *and* is best omitted in translation.

ē-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius,** *messenger, message*], (tell out), *disclose; reveal.*

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** *go; march; start,* V. **31,** 3.

eō, adv. [old dat. of **is**], (to that point), *thither; there* (in the inexact Eng. use); often better translated by a prepositional phrase, e.g. *on them,* I. **42,** 5.

eōdem, adv. [old dat. of **īdem**], *to the same point* or *place;* **eōdem illō** (adv.) **pertinēre,** (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line, be of that same nature,* I. **14,** 4; *be for that same end,* IV. **11,** 4.

ephippiātus, a, um [**ephippium**], *using saddle-cloths.*

ephippium, ī, n. [ἐπί, *upon,* ἵππος, *horse*], (something upon a horse), *saddle-cloth.*

epistula, ae, f. [ἐπιστολή], *letter, despatch.*

Eporēdorīx, īgis, m., (1) the leader of the Aedui in their war with the Sequani before Caesar came to Gaul, VII. **67**, 7; (2) a younger Aeduan chief, VII. **38**, 2, etc.

epulae, ārum, f. plu., *banquet*, *feast*.

eques, equitis, m. [**equus**], *horseman*, *rider*, *cavalryman;* plu., *horsemen*, *cavalry;* as member of a social class, *knight;* at Rome, one of the moneyed class, next to the aristocracy; among the Aedui, one of the class that corresponded to this.

equester, tris, tre [**eques**], (pertaining to a horseman), *of cavalry*, *cavalry*.

equitātus, ūs, m. [**eques**], *cavalry*.

equus, ī, m., *horse*.

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a well-known Greek writer of the third century B.C., librarian of the great library at Alexandria; he wrote upon geography, mathematics, history, grammar, poetry, and philosophy; VI. **24**, 2.

ērēctus, a, um, part. of **ērigō**.

ēreptus, a, um, part. of **ēripiō**.

ergā, prep. w. acc., *toward*.

ergō, adv., *therefore*, *then* (inferential).

ē-rigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctum [**regō**], *raise* out of; w. reflex., *rise*, VI. **27**, 2. Perf. part. as adj., *straight*, *high;* *straight and high*, III. **13**, 2.

ē-ripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptum [**rapiō**], (snatch out), *take away;* *save*, w. reflex., (free one's self), *escape*.

errō, 1st conj., *wander;* fig. *be mistaken*, *err*, V. **41**, 5, VII. **29**, 3.

ē-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break out*, *burst forth*, *make a sortie*.

ēruptiō, ōnis, f. [**ērumpō**], (a breaking out), *sortie*, *sally;* *invasion*, *raid*, VII. **7**, 2.

essedārius, ī, m. [**essedum**], (one who fights from a chariot), *man in a chariot*, *chariot-fighter*.

essedum, ī, n., *war-chariot* of the Britons.

Esuviī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, probably divided into cantons, two of which were on the coast, II. **34**.

et, coörd. conj., *and;* **et—et**, *both—and*.

etiam, adv. [**et, iam**, *already*], *also*, *even;* **nōn sōlum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also*. **quīn etiam**, *further also*, *in fact*.

etsī, subord. conj., (even if), *although*.

ē-vādō, vādere, vāsī, vāsum, (go out), *escape*.

ē-vellō, vellere, vellī, vulsum, *pull out*.

ē-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come out*, *turn out*, *result*.

ēventus, ūs, m. [**ēveniō**], *outcome*, *result;* *fate*, IV. **31**, 1; *vicissitude*, VI. **42**, 1.

ē-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx, vōcis**, *voice*], *call out*, *summon*, *invite;* *challenge*, V. **58**, 2. Masc. of perf. part. as subst., (one especially summoned or reënlisted), *veteran*, VII. **65**, 5, and see III. **20**, 2.

ē-volō, 1st conj., *fly out* (fig.), *rush out*.

ex, ē, prep. w. abl., *out from*, *out of*, less exactly, *from;* in partitive expressions, *of;* *in accordance with*, *as a result of*, *in consequence of*.

by reason of. In comp., *out, from,* sometimes intensive (cf. Eng. "out and out") or negative from the relation of its meaning to that of the word with which it is joined. It becomes **ef** before **f,** and **ē** before **b, d, g, i** consonant, **l, m, n,** and **v.**

exāctus, a, um, part. of **exigō.**

ex-agitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **agō**], (keep driving out of one place after another), *harass.*

exāminō, 1st conj. [**exāmen,** *tongue* of a balance], *weigh.*

ex-animō, 1st conj. [**animus** or **anima**], when from **animus,** *deprive of life, kill;* perf. part. *dead;* when from **anima,** *deprive of breath, render breathless;* perf. part. *breathless, out of breath,* II. **23,** 1, III. **19,** 1.

ex-ārdēscō, ārdēscere, ārsī, ārsum [**ārdeō**], *begin to blaze out;* fig. *become excited, enraged, be incensed.*

ex-audiō, audīre, audīvī or **audiī, audītum,** *hear* from a distance, *overhear.*

ex-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, *go out of, withdraw; advance from,* V. **35,** 1.

ex-cellō, cellere, celluī, celsum, (rise out of), *excel, surpass.* Perf. part. as adj., *high; long,* VI. **26,** 1.

ex-ceptō, 1st conj. [intensive of **excipiō**], *take, catch hold of.*

ex-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], (cut out), *cut down, break down.*

ex-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take one after another), *relieve; pick up,* III. **5,** 3; *receive,* VII. **28,** 6; *meet,* I. **52,** 4, III. **13,** 1, IV. **17,** 9; *catch,* VI. **28,** 4, **35,** 6, VII. **20,** 9.

ex-citō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cieō,** *cause to move*], *arouse* out of anything, *excite, stir up;* of fire, *feed;* of towers, *raise, erect.*

ex-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], (shut out), *cut off; prevent.*

ex-cōgitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cōgō**], *think out, think of.*

ex-cruciō, 1st conj. [**crux, crucis,** *cross*], *torture.*

excubitor, ōris, m. [**excubō**], *sentinel, picket,* doing duty at night.

ex-cubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitum, *lie out of doors, lie under arms;* of a commander, *watch.*

ex-culcō, culcāre, āvī, ——, [**calx, calcis,** *heel*], (tread out), *pack down.*

excursiō, ōnis, f. [**ex-currō,** *run out*], (a running out), *sortie, sally.*

excūsātiō, ōnis, f. [**excūsō**], *excuse, apology.*

ex-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (reason out), *excuse, apologize.*

exemplum, ī, n., [**ex-imō,** from **emō,** *take*], (something taken out, a sample); *example, precedent; sort, kind,* I. **31,** 12.

ex-eō, īre, (**īvī**) **iī, itum,** *go out, set out;* **exīre dē** or **ex,** *leave.*

ex-erceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitum [**arceō**], (keep out of anything, keep busy), *exercise, train.*

exercitātiō, ōnis, f. [**exercitō**], *training, practice, exercise.*

exercitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **exerceō**], *train thoroughly.*

exercitus, ūs, m. [**exerceō**], (a training), trained, disciplined, or regular *army.*

ex-hauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustum, (drain out), *remove*, *take out.*

ex-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**], (drive out), *end*, *finish.*

exiguē, adv. [**exiguus**], *barely*, *hardly.*

exiguitās, tātis, f. [**exiguus**], (smallness); w. **temporis,** *shortness*, *lack;* w. **castrōrum, pellium,** *small size;* w. **cōpiārum,** *small numbers.* (**tanta,** *such.*)

exiguus, a, um [**exigō,** *limit*], *limited*, *small*, *slender.*

eximius, a, um [**eximō,** *take out*], *exceptional*, *high.*

exīstimātiō, ōnis, f. [**exīstimō**], *opinion*, *judgment.*

ex-īstimō, 1st conj. [**aestimō,** *estimate*, *judge*], *think*, *consider*, *suppose.*

exitus, ūs, m. [**exeō,** *go out*], (a going out), *exit*, *escape*, VII. **44,** 4; *passage*, *outlet*, VII. **28,** 3; *outcome*, *result;* *close*, *conclusion*, IV. **8,** 1.

ex-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī or **pediī, pedītum** [**pēs, pedis,** *foot*], (get one's foot out, disentangle), *get ready*, *provide;* of troops, *station* in readiness for assault. Perf. part. as adj., *free*, *easy;* compar. *less occupied*, I. **52,** 7; *light-armed*, *without baggage;* as subst., *unencumbered traveller*, VI. **25,** 1.

expedītiō, ōnis, f. [**expediō**], *raid*, *rapid march*, *expedition.*

expedītus, a, um, part. of **expediō.**

ex-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, *drive out*, *expel*, *banish;* *remove*, V. **48,** 10.

ex-perior, perīrī, pertus sum, *try;* *wait for*, III. **3,** 4; **fortūnam,** *experience*, *endure.*

ex-piō, 1st conj. [**pius,** *dutiful*], (fill out one's duty), *atone for*, *wipe out.*

ex-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, *fill out*, *fill up*, *fill;* *make good*, VII. **31,** 4; *reach*, VII. **23,** 4.

explōrātor, ōris, m. [**explōrō**], *scout.*

ex-plōrō, 1st conj., (cause to flow out), *find out;* *explore*, *reconnoitre.* Perf. part. as adj., *assured*, *certain;* **prō explōrātō habēre,** *consider as certain*, VI. **5,** 3.

ex-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *set forth*, *tell;* *disembark;* *array*, *draw up*, IV. **23,** 2.

ex-portō, 1st conj., *carry away*, *remove.*

ex-pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, *demand* earnestly.

ex-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [**premō**], (press out), *force* from any one, *extort;* *erect.*

expūgnātiō, ōnis, f. [**expūgnō**], a *taking by storm.*

ex-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna,** *hand to hand fight*], (fight and drive out), *take by storm*, or, of ships, *by boarding;* *take*, *overcome*, VII. **10,** 1.

expulsus, a, um, part. of **expellō.**

ex-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī or **quīsiī, quīsītum** [**quaerō**], *seek out*, *find out;* *ask*, *inquire*, III. **3,** 1.

ex-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow up), *assert.*

ex-serō, serere, seruī, sertum, (disjoin), *thrust out.* Perf. part. as adj., *uncovered*, *exposed*, *bare.*

ex-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, *stand out*, *project*, VI. **26,** 1; *arise*, *ensue;* *come on*, *follow*, III. **15,** 3.

ex-spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of **-spiciō,** *look*], (look out for), *wait*,

wait to see; wait for, await; expect, VI. **1**, 1, **36**, 2, VII. **29**, 3, **43**, 5, **77**, 1, **85**, 3.

ex-spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolia,** *spoils*], (despoil), *rob, deprive.*

ex-stinguō, stinguere, stinxī, stinctum, (punch out), *destroy.*

ex-stō, stāre, ——, ——, *stand out, project.*

ex-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, (pile out), *pile up*, III. **29**, 1; *build, erect, construct.*

exsul, sulis, c. [cf. **saliō,** *leap*], *exile.*

exter or **exterus, a, um,** compar. **exterior,** super. **extrēmus** or **extimus,** *outside;* compar. *outer, exterior;* super. *farthest, most distant, last; the last part of, the extremity of, the close of, the end of*, etc. **ad extrēmum,** *finally*, IV. **4**, 2. Masc. plu. as subst., *the last*, i.e. *those at the rear, the rear*, V. **10**, 2.

ex-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, (frighten out of one's wits), *strike with terror, terrify.*

ex-timēscō, timēscere, timuī, —— [inceptive of **timeō**], (begin to) *fear greatly, dread.*

ex-torqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortum, (twist out), *force from anyone, extort.*

extrā, prep. w. acc. [**ex**], *outside, outside of, beyond.*

ex-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag out, consume by delay.*

extrēmus, a, um, super. of **exter** (**exterus**).

ex-trūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsum, *thrust out, shut out.*

ex-uō, uere, uī, ūtum, (put out), *strip, deprive* (of).

ex-ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, (burn out), *burn to the ground.*

F

faber, fabrī, m., *workman, artisan*, espec. a carpenter or a blacksmith.

Fabius, ī, m., (1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus Allobrogicus*, who defeated the Allobroges, Averni, and Ruteni in B.C. 121, I. **45**, 2. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, a *legatus* of Caesar in Gaul, V. **24**, 2, etc. (3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion, VII. **47**, 7; **50**, 3.

facile, adv., compar. **facilius,** super. **facillimē** [**facilis**], *easily, readily.*

facilis, e, compar. **facilior,** super. **facillimus** [**faciō**], *easy.*

facinus, facinoris, n. [**faciō**], *action, deed*, VI. **20**, 2; *misdeed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum (pass. **fīō, fierī, factus sum**; see **fīō**), *do, make; build, construct, furnish, cause, form;* **iter facere,** *march;* **aliquem certiōrem facere,** (make anyone more certain), *inform anyone;* w. **vim,** *use;* w. **imperāta,** *obey;* **fidem facere,** *give assurance*, IV. **11**, 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., *a thing done*, VII. **80**, 5; *deed, act; action*, I. **42**, 5.

factiō, ōnis, f. [**faciō**], (a taking sides); *party, faction.*

factum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **faciō**], *a thing done*, VII. **80**, 5; *deed, act, action*, I. **42**, 5.

facultās, tātis, f. [**facilis,** *easy;* coördinate form of **facilitās**], (ease, facility); *opportunity, chance, power;* (opportunity of procuring), *supply*, I. **38**, 3; plu., *resources.*

fāgus, ī, f., *beech tree, beech.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, *deceive.* Perf. part. as adj., *false, unfounded.*

falsus, a, um, part. of **fallō.**

falx, falcis, f. (sickle); *sickle-shaped hook*, for catching hold of anything, sometimes sharpened, as III. **14,** 5.

fāma, ae, f. [**for,** *speak*], (speech); *report, rumor; reputation*, VII. **77,** 15.

famēs, is, f. *hunger, famine, starvation.* **famem tolerāre,** (satisfy hunger), *live*, I. **28,** 3.

familia, ae, f. [**famulus,** *servant*], (body of servants), *retinue*, I. **4,** 2; *household, family;* **pater familiae,** (father of a family), *head of a household*, VI. **19,** 3; **māter familiae,** *matron.*

familiāris, e [**familia**], *belonging to the household;* **rēs familiāris,** *private property.* Masc. as subst., *intimate friend.*

fās, indeclinable noun, only nom. and acc. used [**for,** *speak;* cf. **fātum**], (what is ordained by divine destiny, opposite of **iūs,** what is right according to men), *right;* freely, as if adj., *permissible, allowable.*

fāstīgātē, adv. [**fāstīgātus,** part. of **fāstīgō**], *obliquely sloping.*

fāstīgium, ī, n., *top*, VII. **69,** 4; *slope.*

fāstīgō, 1st conj. [**fāstīgium**], *bring to a point.* Perf. part. as adj., *sloping.*

fātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **for,** *speak*, in pass. sense; cf. **fās**], (what is ordained by divine destiny), *fate.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, *be favorable;* w. dat., *favor.*

fax, facis, f. *torch.*

fefellī, perf. of **fallō.**

fēlīcitās, tātis, f. [**fēlīx, fēlīcis,** (fruitful), *lucky*], *good fortune, success.*

fēlīciter, adv. [**fēlīx, fēlīcis,** (fruitful), *lucky*], *fortunately, successfully.*

fēmina, ae, f., *woman; the female* of animals, VI. **26,** 3.

femur, feminis or **femoris,** n., *thigh.*

fera, ae, fem. of **ferus, a, um.**

ferāx, ferācis, adj. [**ferō**], *fertile, productive.*

ferē, adv., *almost; about, nearly; generally, usually.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry, bring; receive; take, endure,* as w. **graviter** or **dolōre,** *be annoyed, be grieved;* w. **cāsum, exitum, fortūnam,** *suffer, experience;* w. **opīniō, cōnsuētūdō,** *be; offer*, IV. **11,** 3; *call*, VI. **17,** 1; pass., *flow*, IV. **10,** 3; pass. as middle voice, *rush*, II. **24,** 3; **sīgna ferre,** *march, move, advance.*

ferrāmentum, ī, n. [**ferrum**], *iron tool.*

ferrārius, a, um [**ferrum**], *relating to iron.* Fem. as subst. (sc. **fodīna,** *a digging*), *iron mine.*

ferreus, a, um [**ferrum**], *of iron, iron.*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron; sword*, V. **30,** 3. (**nāscitur,** *is found*, V. **12,** 5.)

fertilis, e [**ferō**], *fertile, productive.*

fertilitās, tātis, f. [**fertilis**], *fertility, productiveness.*

ferus, a, um, *wild, fierce, ferocious.* Fem. as subst. (sc. **bestia,** *beast*), (*wild*) *beast.*

ferve-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, (make hot), *heat.* Perf. part. as adj., *red hot*, V. **43,** 1; *melted*, VII. **22,** 5.

ferveō, fervēre, fervī, ——, or **fervō, fervere, ferbuī, ——,** (seethe), *be glowing, be red hot.*

fībula, ae, f. [cf. **fīgō**], (clasp), *brace*.

fidēlis, e [**fidēs**], *faithful*, *loyal*.

fidēs, eī, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [cf. **fīdō**, *trust*], *confidence*, *trust*, I. **19**, 3, **41**, 4, V. **54**, 4, VI. **23**, 8; *faithfulness*, *loyalty; pledge;* w. **permittō, veniō, sequor** (*accept*), **implōrō, recipiō, sum**, *protection;* **fidem facere**, *give a pledge*, IV. **11**, 3; *make one believe* anything, V. **41**, 4; VI. **41**, 2; **per fidem**, *treacherously*, I. **46**, 3; **fidem interpōnere**, *pledge one's honor*, V. **6**, 6, **36**, 2.

fīdūcia, ae, f. [**fīdus**, *faithful*], *trust*, *reliance*, *confidence*.

figūra, ae, f. [stem of **fingō**], *form*, *shape*.

fīlia, ae, f., dat. and abl. plu. **fīliābus**, *daughter*.

fīlius, ī, m., *son*.

fingō, fingere, finxī, fictum, (form, shape), *invent*, VI. **37**, 8; *control*, I. **39**, 4; **ficta respondēre**, (answer things made up), *make up answers*, IV. **5**, 3.

fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī (fīniī), fīnītum [**fīnis**], *limit*, *bound; measure*, VI. **25**, 1.

fīnis, is, m., *limit*, II. **19**, 5; *end;* plu., (limits), *territory*, *boundaries*.

fīnitimus, a, um [**fīnis**], *neighboring*, often, *adjoining*. Masc. plu. as subst., *neighbors*.

fīō, fierī, factus sum [pass. of **faciō**, *make*, *do*], *be made*, *be done;* *happen*, *become*.

fīrmiter, adv. [**fīrmus**], *firmly*.

fīrmitūdō, dinis, f. [**fīrmus**], *strength*, *rigidity*.

fīrmō, 1st conj. [**fīrmus**], (make firm), *secure*, *strengthen*.

fīrmus, a, um, *strong*, *firm; effective*, VII. **60**, 2.

fistūca, ae, f., *rammer;* some kind of *pile-driver*.

Flaccus, ī, m., *Caius Valerius Flaccus*, propraetor of the province of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. **47**, 4.

flāgitō, 1st conj., *demand* urgently.

flamma, ae, f., *fire*, *flame*.

flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *bend*, *turn*, trans.; w. reflex., *bend*, *turn*, intrans.

flēns, flentis, part. of **fleō**.

fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum, *weep*, *cry;* pres. part., (weeping), *with tears*.

flētus, ūs, m. [**fleō**], *weeping*, *wailing;* **māgnō flētū**, *with many tears*.

flō, 1st conj., *blow*.

flōreō, flōrēre, flōruī, —— [**flōs**], (bloom), *flourish*, IV. **3**, 3; pres. part. as adj., *prosperous*, *in a prosperous condition*, I. **30**, 3; *influential*, VII. **32**, 4.

flōs, flōris, m., *flower*.

flūctus, ūs, m. [**fluō**], (a flowing), *wave; water*, *sea*, IV. **28**, 3.

flūmen, minis, n. [**fluō**], (that which flows), *river*.

fluō, fluere, fluxī, (fluxus), *flow*.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, *dig*.

foedus, eris, n., *treaty*, *league*.

fore, occasional form for **futūrus, a, um esse**, fut. infin. of **sum**.

forīs, adv., (out doors), *outside*, *without*.

fōrma, ae, f., *shape*, *form; construction*, *structure*, VII. **23**, 1.

fors, abl. **forte** (no plu.), f., *chance*, *accident*. Abl. often best rendered with force of governing verb in Eng., e.g. **forte statuere**, (to de-

cide by chance), *chance to decide*, II. **31**, 4; so III. **12**, 3.

forte, abl. of **fors,** as adv.

fortis, e, *brave.*

fortiter, adv. [**fortis**], *bravely.*

fortitūdō, inis, f. [**fortis**], *bravery.*

fortuītō, adv. [abl. of **fortuītus,** *happening by chance,* from **fors**], *accidentally.*

fortūna, ae, f. [**fors**], *fortune, luck, chance,* in general; *good fortune,* I. **40,** 12, IV. **26,** 5, VI. **37,** 10, VII. **54,** 4; *property, possessions,* I. **11,** 6, V. **43,** 4, VI. **35,** 8; *interest,* VII. **8,** 4.

fortūnātūs, a, um [**fortūna**], *fortunate, lucky.*

forum, ī, n., *market-place.*

fossa, ae, f. [fem. of perf. part. of **fodiō,** *dig,* sc. **terra**], *trench, ditch, fosse.*

fovea, ae, f. *pit, pitfall.*

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, (break), *crush,* I. **31,** 7; *wreck, shatter,* IV. **29,** 3.

frāter, tris, m., *brother;* often figuratively in plu. *brethren,* as term of honor, I. **33,** 2, **44,** 9, II. **3,** 5.

frāternus, a, um [**frāter**], *of a brother, brotherly;* w. **nōmen,** *of brothers,* I. **36,** 5.

fraus, fraudis, f., *deception.*

fremitus, ūs, m. [**fremō,** *roar*], *noise, din.*

frequēns, entis, adj., sing., *repeated;* plu., *in large numbers.*

frētus, a, um, *relying* (on), w. abl.

frīgidus, a, um [**frīgus**], *cold.*

frīgus, oris, n., *cold;* plu., (cold spells), in same sense.

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead,* VI. **26,** 1; *front.* (**ā,** *in,* II. **23,** 4.)

frūctuōsus, a, um [**frūctus**], (fruitful), *fertile, productive.*

frūctus, ūs, m. [**fruor**], (enjoyment, fruit); *result, fruit; profit, income,* VI. **19,** 2.

frūmentārius, a, um [**frūmentum**], *relating to grain; productive of grain,* I. **10,** 2; **rēs frūmentāria,** *supply of grain, supplies.*

frūmentātiō, ōnis, f. [**frūmentor**], *procuring grain, foraging.*

frūmentor, 1st conj. [**frūmentum**], *procure* or *cut grain, forage.*

frūmentum, ī, n. [**fruor**], *grain;* plu. usually *grain in the fields, standing grain.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, *enjoy,* w. abl.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, ineffectually, without effect.* (**sūmō,** *expend,* III. **14,** 1).

frūx, frūgis, f., mostly plu., *produce; grain, crops.*

Fūfius, ī, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight, VII. **3,** 1.

fuga, ae, f. [cf. **fugiō**], *flight.* **in fugam dare,** *put to flight.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum [cf. **fuga**], *flee; avoid,* VII. **30,** 1.

fugitīvus, a, um [**fugiō**], *fleeing, fugitive.* Masc. as subst., *deserter.*

fugō, 1st conj. [**fuga**], *put to flight, rout.*

fūmō, 1st conj. [**fūmus**], *smoke, send forth smoke.*

fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*

funda, ae, f., *sling.*

funditor, ōris, m. [**funda**], *slinger.*

fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, *pour,* VII. **24,** 4; *scatter, rout,* III. **6,** 3.

fūnebris, e [**funus**], *relating to a burial* or *funeral.* Neut. plu. as subst., *burial* or *funeral rites.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, *discharge, perform;* w. abl.

fūnis, is, m., *rope*, III. **14,** 6; *cable.*

fūnus, eris, n., (funeral procession), *burial, funeral.*

furor, ōris, m. [**furō,** *rage*], *frenzy, rage, fury, excitement.*

fūrtum, ī, n. [**fūr,** *thief*], *theft, stealing.*

fūsilis, e [**fundō,** *pour*], (melted), *fused, red-hot.*

futūrus, a, um, part. of **sum.**

G

Gabalī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of northeastern Gaul near the headwaters of the Allier, clients of the Arverni, VII. **7,** 2, etc.

Gabīnius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, consul 58 B.C., I. **6,** 4.

gaesum, ī, n., a heavy Gallic *javelin* or *spear.*

Gāius, i, m., abbreviation **C.,** a Roman *praenomen.*

Galba, ae, m., (1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a *legatus* of Caesar, III. **1–6.** (2) "king" of the Suessiones, II. **4,** 7, **13,** 1.

galea, ae, f., *helmet*, usually of leather.

Gallia, ae, f. [**Gallus**], *Gaul;* (1) in widest sense (not in Caesar), including *Gallia Cisalpina* and *Gallia Transalpina*, the latter applying to an indefinite region embracing modern France, part of Switzerland, and all the territory north of this to the Rhine; (2) in the sense merely of Gallia Transalpina, as above, e.g. I. **1,** 1; (3) the central division of the latter, described in I. **1,** 6.

Gallicus, a, um [**Gallus**], *Gallic.*

gallīna, ae, f. [**gallus,** *cock*], *hen.*

Gallus, a, um, *relating to Gaul, of Gaul, Gallic.* Masc. as subst., (1) *a Gaul, one of the Gauls;* (2) *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, a Roman officer, III. **7,** 4.

Garumna, ae, m. or f., *the Garonne* river, in southwestern Gaul.

Garumnī, ōrum, m. plu., a people of Aquitania, near the sources of the Garonne, III. **27,** 1.

Gatēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of central Aquitania, III. **27,** 1.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsus sum, *rejoice, be pleased*, governing ind. dis.

gavīsus, a, um, part. of **gaudeō.**

Geidumnī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. **39,** 1.

Genāva, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, now *Geneva;* on Lake Geneva at its outlet into the Rhone, I. **6,** 3.

gener, erī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, adv. [**genus**], *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f. *tribe; clan*, VI. **22,** 2.

genus, generis, n., *race; family*, IV. **12,** 4, VI. **15,** 2, VII. **39,** 1; *kind; class*, VI. **13,** 1, 3, **15,** 1; *species*, VI. **25,** 5, **28,** 1; *method*, IV. **33,** 1.

Gergovia, ae, f., the chief city of the Averni, near the river Elaver (Allier), VII. **4,** 2, etc.

Germānia, ae, f. [**Germānus**], *Germany*, the name applied by the Romans to all the country embraced between the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the sea.

Germānicus, a, um [**Germānus**], *relating to Germany.* **bellum Germānicum,** *war with the Germans.*

Germānus, a, um, *German.* Masc. plu. as subst., *the Germans.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *bear, carry on,* e.g. w. **bellum,** *wage;* w. **rem,** *conduct, manage* (an affair); pass., *be carried on, be going on, happen.*

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glāns, glandis, f., (acorn), *bullet, slug, ball,* of metal, VII. **81,** 4, of clay, V. **43,** 1.

glēba, ae, f., (clod of earth), *lump, mass.*

glōria, ae, f., *renown, fame, glory* (in), *reputation* (for); w. gen.

glōrior, 1st conj. [**glōria**], *boast* (of), w. abl. of cause.

Gnaeus, ī, m., abbreviation **Cn.,** a Roman *praenomen.*

Gobannitiō, ōnis, m. an uncle of Vercingetorix, VII. **4,** 2.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a city within the Aeduan territory, settled by the Boii after the Helvetian war, VII. **9,** 6.

Graecus, a, um, *Greek.* Masc. as subst., *a Greek.*

Graiocelī, ōrum, m. plu., a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Graian Alps, I. **10,** 4.

grandis, e, *large, great.*

grātia, ae, f. [**grātus**], *favor, good-will, influence;* **grātiam habēre,** *be thankful;* **grātiam referre,** *make return;* plu. *thanks, gratitude;* **grātiās agere,** *thank;* abl. sing. like **causā,** *for the purpose,* VII. **43,** 2.

grātulātiō, ōnis, f. [**grātulor**], *congratulation; joy, satisfaction.* **grātulātiō fit,** *congratulations are offered.*

grātulor, 1st conj. [**grātus**], *congratulate, offer congratulations.*

grātus, a, um, *acceptable, pleasing, pleasant.* Neut. as subst., *a favor,* I. **44,** 12.

gravis, e, *heavy,* IV. **24,** 2, V. **8,** 4; *severe, serious;* w. **aetās,** *more advanced,* III. **16,** 2; w. **caerimōnia,** *impressive,* VII. **2,** 2.

gravitās, tātis, f. [**gravis**], *weight,* V. **16,** 1; *importance,* IV. **3,** 4.

graviter, adv. [**gravis**], *heavily,* III. **14,** 4; *severely, bitterly;* **graviter ferre,** *be displeased.*

gravō, 1st conj. [**gravis**], (load); pass. as dep., *object, hesitate.*

Grudiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. **39,** 1.

gubernātor, ōris, m. [**gubernō,** *steer*], *pilot, helmsman, steersman.*

gustō, 1st conj. [**gustus,** *a tasting*], *taste.*

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have; hold, consider, regard; keep,* I. **44,** 10, VI. **19,** 2; **cēnsum habēre,** *take a census, make an enumeration,* I. **29,** 3; **ōrātiōnem habēre,** *make a speech, deliver an address,* **sē habēre,** (have itself), *be,* II. **19,** 1.

haesitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **haereō,** *cling*], (stick), *be embarrassed.*

hāmus, ī, m., *hook,* such as could be inserted in a small stake.

harpagō, ōnis, f. [ἁρπάγη], *hook* for demolishing walls, including a long, stout shaft.

Harūdēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe allied to those under Ariovistus, I. **31,** 10, etc.

haud, adv., *not, by no means;* usually w. adverbs, though not in Bel. Gal.

Helvēticus, a, um [Helvētius], *relating to the Helvetii, Helvetian;* w. **proelium,** *with the Helvetii.*

Helvētius, a, um, *of the Helvetii, Helvetian.* Masc. plu. as subst., *the Helvetii,* the inhabitants of part of modern Switzerland, I. **1,** 4, etc.

Helviī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Province, on the western bank of the Rhone, VII. **7,** 5, etc.

Hercynius, a, um, *Hercynian.* Fem. sing. as subst., sc. **silva,** *the Hercynian forest,* in southern Germany, of indefinite extent, VI. **24–28.**

hērēditās, tātis, f. [**hērēs,** *heir*], *inheritance.*

Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland,* V. **13,** 2.

hībernus, a, um [hiems, *winter*], *of winter, winter.* Neut. plu. as subst., sc. **castra,** *winter quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pro., *this,* plu. *these;* of that which is near in actual time or space, or in a narrative; thus used of anything either preceding or following immediately; often best translated by pers. pro. **hīc —ille,** regularly *the latter—the former.*

hīc, adv. [old form **heic,** loc. of pro. **hīc**], *here,* either (lit.) of place or (fig.) of time.

hiemō, 1st conj. [**hiems**], *pass the winter, winter.*

hiems (hiemps), hiemis, f., *winter; stormy* (wintry) *weather,* IV. **36,** 2.

hinc, adv. [old loc. of pro. **hīc**], *hence, from this point.*

Hispānia, ae, f. [**Hispānus**], *Spain.*

Hispānus, a, um, *Spanish.*

homō, hominis, c., (human being), *man,* in the generic sense; *person;* plu., *men, fighting men, persons, people;* **multitūdō hominum,** *population,* I. **2,** 5, VI. **24,** 1.

honestus, a, um [honōs], (regarded with honor), *honored, respected;* **locus honestus,** *illustrious family.*

honōrificus, a, um, compar. **honōrificentior,** super. **honōrificentissimus [honōs, faciō],** *honorable.*

honōs or **honor, honōris,** m., *honor, esteem, distinction; honorable position, high office,* VII. **57,** 3; **honōris causā,** *as a mark of honor* (to), II. **15,** 1.

hōra, ae, f. [ὥρα], *hour,* one of the twelve equal divisions of the day, opposed to the watches (**vigiliae**) of the night; the Roman hour thus varied in length with the season of the year, but the seventh always began at noon.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, ——, (bristle), *shudder at, tremble at.*

horribilis, e [horreō], (terrible), *formidable.*

horridus, a, um [horreō], (rough, bristling), *frightful.*

hortor, 1st conj., *urge, encourage; address,* III. **19,** 2.

hospes, pitis, c., (host), *guest,* I. **53,** 6, VI. **23,** 9; *friend,* through ties of hospitality.

hospitium, ī, n. [**hospes**], *hospitality, friendship.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy,* of the state; sing. of an individual, *an enemy, one of the enemy,* I. **26,** 2, **44,** 11, III. **6,** 5, V. **28,** 1, **28,** 6, **36,** 4;

elsewhere, sing. generically, plu. collectively, *the enemy*.

hūc, adv. [old loc. of pro. **hīc**], *hither, to this place;* often less accurately, *here, in this place;* w. **accēdō, addō,** *to this* or *these*.

hūmānitās, tātis, f. [**hūmānus**], (humanity), *refinement*.

hūmānus, a, um [**homō,** *man*], (human), *civilized*.

humilis, e, compar. **humilior,** super. **humillimus** [**humus,** *ground*], *low*, V. **1,** 2; *weak, inferior, humble*.

humilitās, tātis, f. [**humilis**], *lowness*, V. **1,** 3; *weakness, insignificance*.

I

I, as numeral = 1.

ī-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **g**.

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī, —— [intrans. of **iaciō**], (be thrown, lie prostrate), *have fallen, lie dead*. Pres. part. as subst., *one who has fallen, the fallen*, II. **27,** 3, VII. **25,** 3.

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw;* w. **ancorās,** *cast, drop; throw up, construct,* II. **12,** 5.

iactō, 1st conj. [intensive of **iaciō**], *cast, toss; discuss*, I. **18,** 1; *wrench, jerk back and forth*, I. **25,** 4.

iactūra, ae, f. [**iaciō**], (a throwing away), *loss; sacrifice, concession*, VI. **12,** 2.

iaculum, ī, n. [**iaciō**], *javelin*.

iam, adv., of present time *now*, of past time *already*, of future time *presently*, always denoting time relative to the verb with which it is connected; perhaps in the sense of *actually*, III. **17,** 6; w. negatives, *any longer*, e.g. **neque iam,** *and no longer*, IV. **13,** 1; similarly II. **20,** 4, **25,** 1.

ibi or **ibī,** adv., *there, in that place*.

Iccius, ī, m., a leader of the Remi, II. **3,** 1, etc.

īctus, ūs, m. [(**īcō**), *strike*], *blow, force;* w. **scorpiōnis,** *shot*.

Īd., abbreviation for **Īdūs.**

id-circō, adv. [**id,** neut. acc. of **is,** w. abl. of **circus,** cf. **circum**], (about this), *on this account, for this reason*.

īdem, eadem, idem, gen. **ēiusdem,** etc., dem. pro., *the same;* best translated *again*, I. **32,** 3; *likewise*, VI. **13,** 5. (**atque,** following **īdem,** *as*, II. **6,** 2.)

identidem, adv. [**idem et idem**], *again and again, repeatedly*.

idōneus, a, um, *suitable*.

Īdūs, Īduum, f. plu., *the Ides*, the fifteenth day of March, May, July, and October, the thirteenth of other months.

īgnis, is, m., *fire; camp-fire*, II. **7,** 4; *signal fire, beacon*, II. **33,** 3.

ī-gnōbilis, e [**in-;** (**g**)**nōbilis,** *known*], (unknown), *obscure*.

ī-gnōminia, ae, f. [**in-;** (**g**)**nōmen,** *name*], (loss of one's good name), *disgrace*.

ī-gnōrō, 1st conj. [**ī-gnārus,** *unacquainted;* cf. **īgnōscō, īgnōtus** for vowel change], *be unacquainted with, be ignorant of, not know;* pass., *be unknown, be overlooked*, I. **27,** 4.

ī-gnōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnōtum [**in-**], (not to know), *pardon;* w. dat.

ī-gnōtus, a, um [**in-;** (**g**)**nōtus,** part.

of **(g)nōscō**, *know*], (unknown), *unfamiliar*, *strange.*

il-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **l.**

illātus, a, um, part. of **īnferō.**

ille, illa, illud, gen. **illīus,** etc., demon. pro. *that*, plu. *those ;* used of that which is remote in space or time, usually referring to a preceding word ; **hīc—ille,** *the latter —the former ;* contrasted also with **ipse ;** when used substantively, often best translated by an emphatic *he*, *she it*, etc.

illīc, adv. [old loc. of **ille**], *there*, *in that place.*

il-ligō, 1st conj., (bind on to), *bind fast*, V. **45,** 4 ; *bind*, *fasten*, IV. **17,** 7.

illō, adv. [old dat. of **ille**], *thither*, *to that place*, **eōdem** (adv.) **illō pertinēre,** (hold along to that same place), *be along that same line*, *be of the same nature*, I. **14,** 4 ; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. **11,** 4.

il-lūstris, e [**lūx,** *light*], *conspicuous*, *distinguished.*

Īllyricum, ī, n., the country along the eastern coast of the Adriatic, a part of Caesar's province, now Istria and Dalmatia, II. **35,** 2, III. **7,** 1, V. **1,** 5.

im-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **b, m,** and **p.**

imbēcillitās, tātis, f. [**im-bēcillus,** *weak*, probably from **bacillus,** *staff*], *weakness*, *feebleness.*

imber, bris, m., *rain*, *shower*, *rainstorm.*

imitor, 1st conj., *copy*, *imitate.*

im-mānis, e, *huge*, *immense*, *enormous.*

im-mineō, minēre, ——, ——, (overhang), *be close at hand.*

im-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send or let go into) ; w. **equitātum,** *send against ;* w. **pīlum,** *hurl ; let down*, IV. **17,** 4 ; *set in between*, IV. **17,** 6 ; *send down*, IV. **17,** 10.

im-molō, 1st conj. [**mola,** *meal*], (sprinkle meal upon a victim for sacrifice) ; *sacrifice.*

im-mortālis, e [**in-** ; **mors,** *death*], (not liable to death), *immortal.*

im-mūnis, e [**in-** ; **mūnus,** *duty*], (without task) ; *exempt from tribute.*

im-mūnitās, tātis, f. [**immūnis**], (freedom from tasks) ; *exemption*, *immunity.*

im-parātus, a, um [**in-** ; **parō,** *prepare*], *unprepared.*

impedīmentum, ī, n. [**impediō**], *hindrance ;* plu., (the things that hinder an army), *baggage*, *baggage-train.*

im-pediō, pedīre, pedīvī (pediī), pedītum [**pēs,** *foot*], (cause some one's foot to be entangled) ; *hinder*, *encumber*, *embarrass*, *interfere with ; engage*, V. **7,** 5 ; pass., *be at a disadvantage*, II. **9,** 1. Perf. part., besides being used strictly as such, is also used as an adj. as follows : *impassable*, *inaccessible*, III. **28,** 4, V. **19,** 1, **21,** 3, VI. **8,** 3, **34,** 2, VII. **19,** 1 ; *difficult*, III. **9,** 4, V. **7,** 3 ; **nihil impedītum,** *no obstacle*, II. **28,** 1.

impedītus, a, um, part. of **impediō.**

im-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drive on), *incite*, *urge*, *influence.*

im-pendeō, pendēre, ——, ——, *overhang ;* meaning in the case of a mountain, *rise abruptly close by.*

im-pendō, pendere, pendī, pēn-

sum, (weigh out money for something, pay out). Perf. part. as adj. w. **pretium,** *heavy, high.*

impēnsus, a, um, part. of **impendō.**

imperātor, ōris, m. [**imperō,** *command*], *commander, comander-in-chief.*

imperātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. pass. part. of **imperō**], (a thing commanded), *order, command.* (**faciō,** *execute, obey.*)

im-perfectus, a, um [**in-; perficiō,** *complete*], *incomplete, unaccomplished.*

im-perītus, a, um [**in-**], (unskilled), *inexperienced, unacquainted* (with), w. gen.; **imperītus rērum,** *ignorant of events, unpractical.*

imperium, ī, n. [cf. **imperō**], *command, order; power, control; dominion,* IV. **16,** 4; plu., *authority,* V. **27,** 3; **nova imperia,** (new forms of government), *revolution,* II. **1,** 3.

im-perō, 1st conj. [**parō,** *prepare*], (prepare upon), *impose, levy; give orders to, command; rule, exercise authority over,* I. **31,** 12, **36,** 1.

im-petrō, 1st conj. [**patrō,** *execute*], *obtain one's request;* when obj. is expressed, *obtain* by request.

im-petus, ūs, m. [**petō,** *seek,* cf. Eng. "go for"], *charge, assault, attack, onset; impetuosity,* V. **18,** 5; *fury, force,* III. **8,** 1, **13,** 6, IV. **17,** 5; *rush,* VII. **28,** 2.

im-pius, a, um [**in-; pius,** *dutiful*], *wicked, impious.*

im-plicō, plicāre, plicāvī or **plicuī, plicātum** or **plicitum,** (fold in); *entwine, interweave.*

im-plōrō, 1st conj., (cry out for), *beseech, implore; beg, seek.*

im-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place upon,* I. **42,** 5, **51,** 3 (**eō,** adv., *upon these*); w. **stipendium,** *levy, impose; hurry on board,* VII. **58,** 4.

im-portō, 1st conj., *bring in, import.*

im-probus, a, um [**in-**], (not good); *wicked, malicious.*

imprōvīsō, adv. [abl. of **imprōvīsus,** sc. **tempore**], *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

im-prōvīsus, a, um [**in-; prōvideō,** *foresee*], *unforeseen.* **dē imprōvīsō,** adverbial phrase as adv., *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

im-prūdēns, entis, adj. [**in-; prūdēns = prōvidēns,** pres. part. of **prō-videō,** *foresee*], (not foreseeing); (*being*) *off one's guard,* (*when*) *off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, ae, f. [**imprūdēns**], (lack of foresight); *indiscretion.*

im-pūbēs, beris, adj. [**in-**], (not full grown); *chaste, unmarried.*

im-pūgnō, 1st conj., *attack, assail; press forward,* III. **26,** 4.

impulsus, a, um, part. of **impellō.**

impulsus, ūs, m. [**impellō**], (a driving on); *instigation.*

impūne, adv. [**im-pūnis,** *unpunished,* from **in-,** and **poena,** *punishment*], *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitas, tātis, f. [**im-pūnis,** *unpunished,* from **in-,** and **poena,** *punishment*], *exemption from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, a, um, super. of **īnferus.**

in, prep. w. acc. and abl. (1) With acc., *into,* less exactly *to, toward,* of motion toward: hence of hostile relations, *against;* w. terms of ex-

tent, **lātitūdinem, longitūdinem, altitūdinem, partem** (IV. **17,** 7), **quīncūncem,** *in;* of purpose, design, *for*, e.g. I. **3,** 2, **30,** 4, etc.; w. **iūs, potestātem,** *over*.—(2) With abl., *in;* less exactly, *at*, *on*, *upon over*, *among;* w. names of tribes, *among*, *in the country of; in the case of*, *about*, *in connection with; considering*, *in view of; within.* —(3) In comp., **in** generally becomes **il-** before **e, im-** before **b, m, p, ir-** before **r**; it may have the force of any of the meanings mentioned in (1) and (2).

in-, inseparable prefix, giving negative force—generally to nouns and adjectives. In assimilation it may have any of the forms of the preposition **in.**

inānis, e, *empty; hollow*, VII. **19,** 3.

incautē, adv. [**incautus**], *carelessly.*

in-cautus, a, um [**in-; caveō,** *be on one's guard*], *off one's guard*, *unsuspecting.*

incendium, ī, n. [**incendō**], *fire*, *burning*, *conflagration.*

in-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum, *set fire to; burn;* fig., *excite*, *rouse*, *fire*, VII. **4,** 1.

incēnsus, a, um, part. of **incendō.**

inceptus, a, um, part. of **incipiō.**

in-certus, a, um [**in-**], *uncertain;* w. **rūmor,** *untrustworthy;* w. **ōrdinēs,** *in confusion;* w. **iter,** *vague.*

in-cidō, cidere, cidī, cāsum [**cadō**], *fall upon*, VI. **30,** 2; *fall into the hands* (**in,** *of*), I. **53,** 5, *happen*, *occur.*

in-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], *cut into.*

in-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take into), *begin.*

incīsus, a, um, part. of **incīdō.**

in-citō, 1st conj. [intensive of **cieō,** *move*], (put in quick motion), *urge on*, *urge;* of ships, *drive*, *propel;* w. reflex., *come in*, III. **12,** 1; *come down*, IV. **17,** 7. Perf. part., *aroused*, *excited.*

in-cōgnitus, a, um [**in-; cōgnōscō,** *ascertain*], *unknown.*

in-colō, colere, coluī, ——, *live in*, *dwell in*, *inhabit;* intrans., *live*, *dwell.*

in-columis, e, *unharmed*, *safe; without loss.*

in-commodē, adv. [**incommodus**], (inconveniently), *unfortunately.*

in-commodus, a, um [**in-; cum,** *with*, **modus,** *measure*], (inconvenient). Neut. as subst., *disadvantage*, V. **35,** 5, VII. **16,** 3, **33,** 1, **45,** 9; *disaster*, *loss*, *reverse.*

in-crēdibilis, e [**in-; crēdō,** *believe*], *unbelievable*, *incredible*, *extraordinary.*

in-crepitō, āre, ——, —— [intensive of **in-crepō,** *rebuke*], *reproach*, *upbraid*; *taunt*, II. **30,** 3.

in-cumbō, cumbere, cubuī, cubitum [**cubō,** *lie*], (bend forward to); *apply* or *devote one's self.*

incursiō, ōnis, f. [**in-currō,** *run upon*, *invasion*, *inroad*, *raid.*

incursus, ūs, m. [**in-currō,** *run upon*], *charge*, *attack*, *onset; assault*, *rush*, VII. **36,** 7.

in-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (make charge against), *blame*, *reproach.*

inde, adv., *thence; from that place; from that point*, IV. **21,** 3, **25,** 1, **33,** 3; *then*, II. **19,** 3, VII. **48,** 1.

indicium, ī, n. [**indicō,** *point out*], *information, evidence;* by metonymy, *informers,* I. **4,** 1.

in-dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, (proclaim); *call, summon.*

indictus, a, um, part. of **indīcō.**

in-dictus, a, um [**in-; dīcō**] (unspoken); *unheard,* VII. **38,** 2.

indīgnē, adv. [**indīgnus**], *unworthily, shamefully.*

indīgnitās, tātis, f. [**indīgnus**], (unworthiness); *indignity, outrage; disgrace,* VII. **56,** 2.

indīgnor, 1st conj. [**indīgnus**], consider unworthy), *be angry.*

in-dīgnus, a, um [**in-**], *unworthy.*

in-dīligēns, entis [**in-; dīligēns,** pres. part. of **dīligō,** *choose*], (not choosing); *negligent, careless, heedless.*

indīligenter, adv. [**indīligēns**], *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, f. [**indīligēns**], (carelessness); *negligence.*

in-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead on); *influence, induce; cover,* II. **33,** 2.

inductus, a, um, part. of **indūcō.**

indulgentia, ae, f. [**indulgēns,** pres. part. of **indulgeō**], *indulgence, leniency.*

in-dulgeō, dulgēre, dulsī, dultum, (be kind to); *favor, indulge,* w. dat.

in-duō, duere, duī, dūtum, *put on,* II. **21,** 5; w. reflex., *impale one's self.*

industriē, adv. [**industrius,** *active*], *energetically.*

indūtiae, ārum, f. plu., *truce, armistice.*

Indutiomārus, ī, m., a chief of the Treveri, rival of Cingetorix, and opponent of Caesar, V. **3,** 2; death described, V. **58,** 6.

in-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** (go into, enter); *enter upon, form;* w. **grātiam,** *gain;* **initā aestāte,** (the summer having been gone into), *at the beginning of summer;* so w. **hieme, vigiliā;** w. **numerum,** *enter.*

in-ermis, e, or **in-ermus, a, um** [**in-; arma,** *arms*], *unarmed.*

in-ers, ertis, adj. [**in-; ars,** *skill*], (unskilful); *unmanly, shiftless.*

īn-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **f** and **s.**

īn-fāmia, ae, f. [**in-; fāma,** *reputation*], *disrepute,* VI. **23,** 6; *dishonor,* VII. **56,** 2.

in-fāns, antis, adj. [**in-; fāns,** pres. part. of **for,** *speak*], (not speaking). Masc. or fem. as subst., *child, infant.*

in-fectus, a, um [**in-; faciō,** *do, make*], *unfinished.* **rē īnfectā,** (the thing being unfinished), *without accomplishing one's purpose.*

īnferior, us, compar. of **īnferus.**

īn-ferō, ferre, in-tulī, il-lātum, *bring in, import,* II. **15,** 4; w. **bellum,** *wage* (offensive) *war;* w. **alacritātem, terrōrem, spem,** *inspire;* w. **iniūriam, calamitātem, vulnera,** *inflict;* w. **sīgna,** *advance;* w. **cōnversa sīgna,** (advance the standards turned), *change front and advance,* I. **25,** 7, II. **26,** 1; *cause,* V. **16,** 3; *put,* VI. **19,** 4; *set,* VII. **22,** 4; *lift,* VI. **30,** 4.

(**īnferus, a, um,**) compar. **īnferior,** super. **īnfimus** or **īmus,** (*below*), compar., *lower; inferior,* II. **8,** 3;

used of the more *westerly* cape of Britain, V. **13,** 1; super., (the lowest part of), *the base of, the bottom of;* **ab īnfimō,** *at the bottom,* **ad īnfimum,** *toward the bottom,* VII. **73,** 5; **ab īmō,** *from the bottom,* III. **19,** 1; *at the lower end,* IV. **17,** 3.

īn-fēstus, a, um, *hostile, threatening.* **sīgnīs īnfēstīs,** (with threatening standards), *ready to charge.*

īn-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [faciō *do, make*], (put on to), *stain.*

īn-fidēlis, e [in-; fidēs, *faith*], *unfaithful, unreliable.*

īn-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, *fix in, insert.*

īnfimus, a, um, super. of **īnferus.**

īn-fīnītus, a, um [in-; fīniō, *limit*], (unlimited); *immense, vast; countless.*

īnfīrmitās, tātis, f. **[īnfīrmus],** *weakness,* VII. **26,** 3; *fickleness.*

īn-fīrmus, a, um, [in-], (not strong), *weak; depressed,* III. **24,** 3.

īn-flectō, flectere, flexī, flexum, *bend over, bend.*

īnflexus, a, um, part. of **īnflectō.**

īn-fluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, *flow into, empty into.*

īn-fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, (dig and put a thing into the hole), *bury.*

īnfrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [for **īnferā,** sc. **parte],** *below;* either literally or in transferred sense, e.g. *smaller than,* VI. **28,** 1.

in-gēns, gentis, adj. **[in-; gen,** stem of **(g)nāscor, genus,** etc.], (not natural), *enormous, vast.*

in-grātus, a, um [in-], *unacceptable, displeasing.*

in-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [gradior, *step*], (go into), *enter.*

in-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **injiciō), icere, iēcī, iectum [iaciō],** (throw into), *inspire; place upon,* IV. **17,** 8.

iniectus, a, um, part. of **iniciō.**

inimīcitia, ae, f. **[inimīcus],** (unfriendliness), *hostility, feud.*

in-imīcus, a, um, [in-; amīcus, *friendly*], (unfriendly), personally *hostile.* Masc. as subst., *rival,* V. **44,** 9, 14; personal *enemy,* I. **10,** 2.

inīquitās, tātis, f. **[inīquus],** (unevenness, unfairness), *unfavorable character;* **tanta rērum inīquitās,** *such varied circumstances,* II. **22,** 2; **condiciōnis inīquitās,** *inequality* (of condition) *of the conditions,* VII. **19,** 3; *misconduct,* VII. **19,** 5.

in-īquus, a, um [in-; aequus, *even*], (uneven), *unfavorable; unfair, unjust,* I. **44,** 4, 8.

initium, ī, n. **[ineō,** *begin*], *beginning;* w. **silvārum,** *edge;* w. **Rēmōrum,** *frontier;* plu., *elements,* VI. **17,** 2.

initus, a, um, part. of **ineō.**

in-iungō, iungere, iūnxi, iūnctum, (join on), *impose.*

iniūria, ae, f. **[iniūrus,** *wrong,* from **in-,** and **iūs,** *right*], *wrong, injustice,* I. **12,** 7, **14,** 2, **20,** 5, **36,** 4, IV. **8,** 2; *damage, injury, outrage;* abl. of manner, *unjustly,* I. **35,** 3, **36,** 5.

in-iūssū, adv. **[in-; iūssū,** *by one's order*], *without an order;* modified by poss. pro. or gen., as though, like **iūssū,** still a noun, **suō et cīvitātis,** *without his order or (that) of the state.*

in-nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, (be born in), *be inborn, be ingrained.*

in-nītor, nītī, nīxus or **nīsus sum,** *rest upon, lean on,* w. abl. of means.

innīxus, a, um, part. of **innītor.**

in-nocēns, entis, adj. [**in-; noceō,** *harm*], (not harming, harmless). Masc. and fem. as subst., *an innocent person;* plu., the *innocent,* VI. **9,** 7, **16,** 5.

innocentia, ae, f. [**innocēns**], (blamelessness), *integrity.*

in-opia, ae, f. [**in-; ops,** *aid*], lack of resources), *lack, want, need, scarcity.*

in-opīnāns, antis, adj. [**in-; opīnor,** *be of opinion*], *not expecting, unaware;* when modifying an object, often rendered by adverb, *unexpectedly, unawares.*

inquam, inquis, inquit, defective verb, *say,* used only within direct quotation.

īn-sciēns, entis, adj. [**in-; sciō,** *know*], *not knowing;* w. **ipsīs,** in abl. abs., (themselves not knowing), *without their knowledge,* I. **19,** 1; so V. **7,** 5.

īnscientia, ae, f. [**īnsciēns**], (lack of knowledge), *ignorance, lack of acquaintance* (with); *foolishness, folly,* III. **19,** 3.

īn-scius, a, um [**in-; sciō,** *know*], *not knowing, ignorant; unaware,* or, translating by adv., *unawares,* IV. **4,** 5.

īnsecūtus, a, um, part. of **īnsequor.**

īn-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow upon), *follow up, pursue.*

īn-serō, serere, seruī, sertum, (bind into), *insert.*

īnsidiae, ārum, f. plu. [**īn-sideō,** *sit in wait for*], *ambuscade,* III. **20,** 4, V. **32,** 1; *stratagem;* **per īnsidiās,** *by stratagem.*

īnsidior, 1st. conj. [**īnsidiae**], *lie in ambush, lie in wait.*

īn-sīgnis, e [**sīgnum,** *sign, mark*], (having a sign or mark upon it); *marked, signal,* I. **12,** 6. Neut. as subst., *sign, signal,* II. **20,** 1, VII. **50,** 2, **88,** 1; plu. *ornaments, decorations, insignia.*

īn-siliō, silīre, siluī, ——, [**saliō**], *leap upon.*

īn-simulō, 1st conj. [**similis,** *like*], (make suspected), *charge* (with), *accuse* (of), w. gen.

īn-sinuō, 1st conj. [**sinus,** *fold*], *wind in, work in;* w. reflex. same meanings, intrans.

īn-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, (stand upon); *take one's stand, take a stand; follow, pursue,* III. **14,** 3; *devote one's self* (**tōtus,** *wholly*), VI. **5,** 1.

īnsolenter, adv. [**īnsolēns, entis,** adj., *unaccustomed, immoderate,* from **in-,** and **soleō,** *be accustomed*], (immoderately), *haughtily.*

īn-spectō, 1st. conj. [intensive of **īnspiciō,** *look at*], (gaze at), *watch, look on.*

īn-stabilis, e [**in-; stō,** *stand*], (not able to stand), *unstable, unsteady.*

īn-star, n., indeclin. [**stō,** *stand*], *image, likeness;* w. **mūrī,** (the likeness of a wall), *like a wall.*

īn-stīgō, 1st. conj., *goad on, stimulate.*

īn-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō,** *cause to stand*], (put in place), *establish; undertake, begin; prepare,* V. **11,** 4, **40,** 6; *prepare for,* IV. **18,** 4; *procure,* III. **9,** 1; w.

aciem, *draw up; train, teach,* I. **14,** 7; *plan,* VI. **3,** 4, **44,** 3. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan.*

īnstitūtum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **īnstituō**, as subst.], (a thing established), *institution, custom; plan.*

īnstitūtus, a, um, part. of **īnstituō.**

īn-stō, stāre, stitī, stātum, (stand upon); *press forward; be close at hand,* I. **16,** 5. Pres. part. as adj., *immediate,* VI. **4,** 3.

īnstrūmentum, ī, n. [**īnstruō**], (means of constructing, tool); w. **mīlitāre,** *weapon,* VI. **30,** 2; *furnishing,* V. **31,** 4.

īn-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, *build, construct,* II. **30,** 3; of ships, *equip; arrange, draw up.*

īnsuēfactus, a, um [**īnsuē,** stem of **īnsuēscō,** *become accustomed,* **faciō,** *make*], (made accustomed), *trained* (to enter the water, IV. **24,** 3).

īn-suētus, a, um [**in-; suēscō,** *become accustomed*], *unaccustomed* (to), w. gen.

īnsula, ae, f., *island.*

īn-super, adv., ("on top"), *above.*

in-teger, gra, grum [**in-; teg,** stem of **tangō,** *touch*], (untouched), *whole, complete, not damaged, unimpaired;* of men, often as subst., *fresh, with unimpaired strength;* **rē integrā,** (the thing being untouched), *before any action was taken.*

in-tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover over, cover.*

intel-, form of **inter** in comp. before **l.**

intel-legō, legere, lēxī, lēctum, (pick out between or among); *understand.*

in-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum (**tēnsum**), (stretch upon); *direct toward.* Perf. part. as adj., (intent), *occupied* (with), III. **22,** 1; translated as adv., *intently,* VII. **80,** 2.

intentus, a, um, part. of **intendō.**

inter, prep. w. acc., of two, *between,* of more than two, *among; within, for,* I. **36,** 7; less exactly, *in the midst of, in.* **inter sē: dare,** *exchange;* w. **contendere, colloquī, iungere, commūnēs,** *with each other;* w. **agere,** *between them;* w. **cohortārī,** *each other;* w. **differre,** *from each other;* w. **sancīre,** *mutually;* w. **cōniūrāre,** *together.*

In comp., *among, between, in the midst, asunder, at intervals.*

inter-cēdo, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go between); *be between; intervene,* I. **7,** 6; *exist between,* I. **43,** 6, *occur between,* w. dat. V. **11,** 9 (**cum,** *and*); *elapse,* V. **53,** 5.

inter-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take between); *intercept; cut off,* V. **39,** 2.

inter-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], (shut between); *cut off.*

inter-dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, (put a command between a person and his desire); w. obj. clause, *warn; forbid,* w. abl. translated as direct obj., I. **46,** 4; *exclude, cut off.*

inter-diū, adv. [connected w. **diēs,** *day*], *during the day, by day, in the daytime.*

inter-dum, adv., ("between whiles"), *for a while,* I. **14,** 5; *sometimes.*

inter-eā, adv. [old case form of **is**],

(in the midst of this), *meanwhile*, *meantime.*

inter-eō, īre, iī, itum, (go among other things, be lost); *perish.*

inter-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, [**faciō**], (put among other things, put out of the way), *kill.*

inter-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **interjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum,** [**iaciō**], (throw between); *place between;* pass., *intervene; occur at intervals,* III. **8,** 1.

interiectus, a, um, part. of **intericiō.**

interim, adv. [**inter**], *meanwhile, meantime.*

interior, us, compar. adj., super. **intimus** [**inter**], *inner, interior;* masc. and fem. plu., as subst., *those who live in the interior,* V. **14,** 2; *those in the town,* VII. **82,** 3; **86,** 4.

interitus, ūs, m. [**intereō**], *death, destruction.*

inter-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go between); *interrupt, discontinue; stop, cease,* II. **25,** 1, IV. **31,** 1; *let pass, permit to elapse;* pass., *intervene,* e.g. I. **27,** 4; *separate,* VII. **23,** 3.

interneciō, ōnis, f. [**inter-necō,** *destroy*], *utter destruction, annihilation.*

inter-pellō, 1st conj. [cf. **pellō, ere**], (drive into), *disturb.*

inter-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (put between), *interpose,* IV. **9,** 3, **11,** 4; **fidem interpōnere,** *pledge one's honor;* pass., *intervene,* VI. **38,** 5; *appear,* IV. **32,** 1. Perf. part. as adj., *alleged,* I. **42,** 5.

inter-pres, pretis, m., (one who explains between), *interpreter.*

interpretor, 1st conj. [**interpres**], *explain.*

inter-rogō, 1st conj., (ask into), *question.*

inter-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, (break asunder), *break down, destroy.*

inter-scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, (cut asunder), *break down, destroy.*

inter-sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be between,* I. **15,** 5, VI. **36,** 2; *be concerned with,* VI. **13,** 4; *take part,* IV. **16,** 2, VII. **87,** 5. Impersonal, *it concerns,* II. **5, 2**; w. **māgnī,** gen. of value, *it is of great importance; it makes a difference,* VII. **14,** 8.

inter-vāllum, ī, n. [**vāllum,** *rampart*], (space between two walls); *distance, interval.*

inter-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come into the midst), *arrive; appear upon the scene,* VI. **37,** 1.

interventus, ūs, m. [**interveniō**], *arrival, intervention.*

in-texō, texere, texuī, textum, (weave in), *interweave, plait.*

intoleranter, adv. [**intolerāns,** *impatient,* from **in-** and **tolerō,** *bear*], *recklessly.*

intrā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [for **interā,** old abl. of **interus,** pos. of **interior,** sc. **parte**], *within, inside;* of time, *before,* VI. **21,** 5.

in-trītus, a, um [**in-**; **terō,** *rub*], (unworn), *unfatigued, fresh.*

intrō-, adv., used in comp., *inside, within.*

intrō, 1st conj. [cf. **inter, intrā, intrō**], *enter.*

intrō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead into, introduce.*

intro-eō, īre, iī, ——, *go inside, come in.*

introitus, ūs, m. [**introeō**], (an entering); *entrance.*

intrō-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send inside; let in,* V. **58,** 1.

intrōrsus, adv. [contracted from **intrō-versus,** *turned toward the inside*], *inside, within.*

intrō-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break into, burst into.*

in-tueor, tuērī, tuitus sum, *look upon, gaze at.*

intulī, perf. of **īnferō.**

intus, adv. [**in**], *within, inside.*

in-ūsitātus, a, um [**in-; ūsitōr,** intensive of **ūtor,** *use*], (unusual), *strange, new, unfamiliar.*

in-ūtilis, e, [**in-**], *useless, of no use; unsuitable,* VII. **27,** 1.

in-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come upon); *find; find out, learn.*

inventor, ōris, m. [**inveniō**], (one who comes upon anything), *originator, discoverer, inventor.*

in-veterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvī, —— [**vetus,** *old*], (grow old in); *gain a permanent foothold,* II. **1,** 3; *become established.*

in-victus, a, um [**in-; vincō,** *conquer*], *unconquered;* hence, less exactly, *invincible.*

in-videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum (look askance at); *envy.*

invidia, ae, f. [**invideō**], *envy.*

in-violātus, a, um [**in-; violō,** *violate*], *inviolable, sacred.*

in-vītō, 1st conj. [for **vocitō,** intensive of **vocō,** *call*], (call into); *invite; attract,* V. **51,** 1; VI. **35,** 7.

in-vītus, a, um [**in-**], *unwilling;* best translated by adv., *unwillingly, reluctantly, against one's will.* **eō invītō,** abl. abs., (he unwilling), *without his consent, against his will;* so w. **sē** and **Sēquanīs.**

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive demonstrative pro., *himself, herself, itself,* plu. *themselves;* often translated by emphatic pers. pro., *he,* etc.; *very;* gen. *his own, their own,* etc., often in this sense merely more emphatic than **suus.**

ir-, form of **in** or **in-** in comp. before **r.**

īrācundia, ae, f. [**īrācundus**], *anger,* VI. **5,** 2; *passion.*

īrācundus, a, um [**īrā,** *wrath*], (liable to wrath); *passionate.*

ir-rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum, *laugh at* (anything).

irrīdiculē, adv. [adj. **irrīdiculus,** *not laughable,* from **in-** and **rīdeō,** *laugh*], *unwittily, without wit;* **nōn irrīdiculē,** *not without wit, quite wittily, humorously.*

ir-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break into, burst into; rush into,* V. **44,** 4.

irruptiō, ōnis, f. [**irrumpō**], (a rushing upon or into); *raid,* VII. **7,** 2; *attack.*

is, ea, id, demonstrative and pers. pro.; as weak demonstr. (generally when agreeing with a noun immediately following), *this, that,* plu. *these, those,* not very definite; as pers. pro. (generally when not agreeing with anything directly), *he, she, it, they,* etc.; when used merely as antecedent of relative, *that, those;* when relative is attracted into a

preceding clause, *this*, *these;* when followed by subjunct. of characteristic often translated *such*, like a weak **tālis**, e.g. III. **12**, 1.

iste, ista, istud, demonstr. pro. (of 2d pers.), (that of yours); *that*, used with sense of contempt, VII. **77**, 5.

ita, adv., *so*, *in such a manner*, referring to something either preceding or following; w. adj., *so very*, V. **47**, 3, *such a very*, IV. **37**, 1.

Ītalia, ae, f., *Italy.*

ita-que, adv., *and so*, *therefore*, *so.*

item, adv., *likewise*, *in the same way.*

iter, itineris, n. [eō, *go*], *journey*, I. **3**, 4, VI. **17**, 1; *march*, *line of march*, *movement;* **iter facere,** *march;* w. **dare,** *passage*, *permission to pass*, I. **8**, 3; w. **prohibēre,** *passing;* w. **tūtum,** *passage;* **ex itinere,** *while on the march.* (**māgnus,** *long*, *forced*).

iterum, adv., *again*, *a second time.*

Itius, ī, m., the harbor from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably modern Wissant, V. **2**, 3, **5**, 1.

iuba, ae, f., *mane.*

iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum, *order.*

iūdicium, ī, n. [**iūdicō**], *judgment*, I. **41**, 3, VI. **11**, 3, **13**, 10; *trial*, I. **4**, 2, VI. **44**, 3; abl. *deliberately*, V. **27**, 3, VI. **31**, 1; **optimum iūd. facere,** *express such an excellent opinion*, I. **41**, 2.

iūdicō, 1st conj. [**iūdex, iudicis,** *judge*, from **iūs,** *right*, **dicō,** *point out*], *judge; decide*, V. **44**, 3; *declare*, V. **56**, 3.

iugum, ī, n. [same stem as **iungō,** *join*], (that which joins); *yoke*, used in attaching horses to a chariot, IV. **33**, 3; *yoke*, formed of three spears, two planted in the ground, the third across the top of these; a symbol of surrender and slavery, I. **7**, 4, **12**, 5; *ridge*, connecting two or more summits or forming the summit; *chain of hills*, *range*, VI. **40**, 3, 6, VII. **36**, 2, **44**, 3.

Iūlius, ī, m., a Roman family name.

iūmentum, ī, n. [for **iūg-mentum,** from **iungō**], (yoke animal); *draught animal*, *beast of burden*, applied to horses, mules, oxen.

iūnctūra, ae, f. [**iungō**], *connection.*

iūnctus, a, um, part. of **iungō.**

iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum, *join*, *unite.*

iūnior, us, compar. of **iuvenis.**

Iūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard or a Roman from Spain, V. **27**, 1, **28**, 1.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter*, the great divinity of the Romans.

Iūra, ae, f., the Jura mountains, a range extending northeast from the Rhone west of Lake Geneva to the Rhine, I. **2**, 3.

iūrandum, ī, neut. of gerundive of **iūrō,** used only with **iūs,** which see.

iūrō, 1st conj. [**iūs**], *take oath*, *swear; take the oath*, I. **31**, 8.

iūs, iūris, n., *right*, *rights; law;* **iūs iūrandum,** (sworn duty), *oath.*

iūssus, ūs, m., found only in abl. sing. [**iubeō**], *order*, *command.*

iūstitia, ae, f. [**iūstus**], *justice; fairness*, I. **19**, 2, II. **4**, 7.

iūstus, a, um [**iūs**], *just*, *rightful; regular*, VI, **19**, 4, VII. **23**, 4.

iuvenis, e, compar. **iūnior** [for **iuvenior**] or **minor** (**nātū**), super.

minimus (**nātū**), *young*. Compar. masc. plu. as subst., *the men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years, VII. **1**, 1.

iuventūs, tūtis, f. [**iuvenis**], (youth, primarily abstract, then collective); *young men*, *men of military age*, i.e. between seventeen and forty-six years.

iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum, *help*, *assist*, *aid*.

iūxtā, adv., *near by*, *close by*.

K

Kal., abbreviation for **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, ārum, f. plu. [cf. *καλέω*, *call*], *the Kalends*, the first day of the Roman month, so called from the proclamation of the calendar for the following month made on that day.

L

L, as numeral = 50.

L., abbreviation for **Lucius.**

Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Liberius Durus*, a tribune of soldiers, V. **15**, 5.

Labiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus*, the foremost of Caesar's *legati*, his chief lieutenant throughout the Gallic war, where he "never made a mistake." In the civil war, thinking his services indispensable, he deserted Caesar, who ironically sent his baggage after him; his painstaking care was no match for Caesar's genius, and he fell at the battle of Munda; I. **10**, 3, etc.

labōr, ōris, m., *toil*, *exertion*, *labor*; *endurance*, IV. **2**, 2.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, (slip); *become disaffected*, *escape one's control*, V. **3**, 6. Perf. part., *disappointed*, V. **55**, 3.

labōrō, 1st. conj. [**labor**], (labor); *strive*, I. **31**, 2, VII. **31**, 1; *be hard pressed*, *be in danger*. Pres. part. often equvialent to rel. clause, e.g. I. **52**, 7, *who were hard pressed*.

labrum, ī, n., *lip*, V. **14**, 3; *rim*, VI. **28**, 6; *edge*, VII. **72**, 1.

lāc, lactis, n., *milk*.

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī (**lacessiī**), **lacessītum,** *provoke*, *harass*; *take the offensive against*, IV. **34**, 2.

lacrima, ae, f., *tear*.

lacrimō, 1st conj. [**lacrima**], *weep*.

lacus, ūs, m., dat. and abl. plu. **lacubus** or **lacibus,** *lake*.

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, (harm); **fidem laedere,** *break one's pledge*.

laetitia, ae, f. [**laetus**], *joy*; **laetitiā afficī,** *be rejoiced*.

laetus, a, um, *joyful*, *happy*.

languidē, adv. [**languidus**], (feebly); *with little energy*.

languidus, a, um, [**langueō,** *be faint*], *weary*, *exhausted*.

languor, ōris, m. [**langueō,** *be faint*], *weariness*, *exhaustion*.

lapis, idis, m., *stone*.

laqueus, i, m., *noose*.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum [**largus,** *abundant*], (give abundantly); *afford*, *present*; gerund, *bribery*, I. **18**, 4.

largiter, adv. [**largus,** *abundant*], (abundantly); **largiter posse,** *be very powerful*, *have great influence*.

largītiō, ōnis, f. [**largior**], *lavish giving*, *profuse generosity*.

lassitūdō, dinis, f. [**lassus,** *tirea*], *exhaustion, fatigue.*

lātē, adv. [**lātus**], *widely, extensively; far,* IV. **3,** 1, VI. **23,** 1 (**circum sē,** *on all sides*); **longē lātēque,** *far and wide.*

latebra, ae, f., usually plu. [**lateō**], *hiding place.*

lateō, latēre, latuī, ——, *lie hidden, be concealed; escape notice,* III. **14,** 8.

lātitūdō, dinis, f. [**lātus**], *width, breadth;* **regiōnum lātitūdō,** *area,* III. **20,** 1; **in lātitūdinem,** *in width; laterally* or *horizontally,* II. **17,** 4.

Latobrīgī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Gauls located probably upon the farther bank of the Rhine, north of the Helvetii, near the sources of the Danube, I. **5,** 4, **28,** 3, **29,** 2.

latrō, ōnis, m., *robber.*

latrōcinium, ī, n. [**latrō**], highway *robbery; raid* for the purpose of plundering, *predatory raid,* VI. **35,** 7.

lātus, a, um, *wide, broad; extensive,* II. **4,** 6, VI. **22,** 3.

latus, lateris, n., *side;* of an army, *flank.* (**ab,** *on;* **apertum,** *exposed, unprotected,* usually the *right,* since the shield was carried on the left arm.)

laudō, 1st conj. [**laus**], *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory; glory* (in), *renown* (for), VI. **24,** 3, **40,** 7, VII. **76,** 2.

lavō, lavāre (lavere), lāvī, lautum, lōtum, lavātum, (wash); pass. as middle, (wash one's self), *bathe.*

laxō, 1st conj. [**laxus,** *loose*], (loosen), **manipulōs laxāre,** *open* or *extend ranks.*

lēgātiō, ōnis, f. [**lēgō,** *send with a commission*], *mission,* I. **3,** 3; *embassy, deputation; envoys.*

lēgātus, ī, m. [masc. of perf. part. of **lēgō,** *send with a commission, appoint as deputy*], *envoy, ambassador; lieutenant* to a commander-in-chief, *lieutenant-general, legatus,* an officer under the control of the commander-in-chief alone, who might command any portion of the army, either in battle or on detached service.

legiō, ōnis, f. [**legō,** *collect*], (a collecting); *legion,* the unit of the Roman army. See Introduction.

legiōnārius, a, um [**legiō**], (belonging to a legion), *legionary;* **legiōnāriī mīlitēs,** corresponding to our "regular" troops.

Lemannus, ī, m., w. **lacus,** *Lake Leman, the lake of Geneva, Lake Geneva.*

Lemovīcēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in southwestern Gaul, between the Santones and the Averni, VII. **4,** 6, **75,** 3, **88,** 4.

lēnis, e, (smooth, soft); *mild, moderate, gentle.*

lēnitās, tātis, f. [**lēnis**], *smoothness.*

lēniter, adv. [**lēnis**], *gently, gradually.*

Lepontiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe living in the Alps, southeast of the Helvetii, north of Lake Maggiore, IV. **10,** 3.

lepus, leporis, m., *hare.*

Leucī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe between the Marne river and the Vosges mountains, about the source of the Moselle, I. **40,** 11.

Levacī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in Belgic Gaul, clients of the Nervii, V. **39,** 1.

levis, e, *light* (in weight), w. **armātūra;** *slight, unimportant; weak,* V. **28,** 6.

levitās, tātis, f. [**levis**], (lightness); *light weight,* V. **34,** 4; *fickleness, thoughtlessness.*

levō, 1st conj. [**levis**], (lighten); *relieve* (of), w. abl. of separation.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law,* as a formal resolution of the people; *decree,* I. **3,** 2.

Lexoviī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Normandy on the coast, just west of the mouth of the Seine, III. **9,** 10 ff., VII. **75,** 3.

(**lib.,** abbreviation for **liber.**)

libenter, adv. [**libens,** willing, connected w. **libet,** *it pleases*], *willingly, gladly.*

(**liber, librī,** m., *book.* Not in text of Bel. Gal.)

līber, lībera, līberum, compar. **līberior,** super. **līberrimus,** *free; unrestricted,* VII. **36,** 5.

līberālitās, tātis, f. [**līberālis,** *befitting a free man, open, generous*], *kindness; generosity, liberality.*

līberāliter, adv. [**līberālis,** *befitting a free man, open, generous*], *graciously;* **līberāliter pollicērī,** (promise graciously), *make gracious promises,* IV. **21,** 6.

līberē, adv., compar. **līberius,** super. **līberrimē** [**līber**], *freely; boldly,* V. **19,** 2, VII. **49,** 2; *openly,* VII. **1,** 3.

līberī, ōrum, m. plu. [strictly masc. plu. of **līber**], (those born free); *children* of free parents.

līberō, 1st conj. [**līber**], *free.*

lībertās, tātis, f. [**līber**], *freedom.*

lībrīlis, e [**lībra,** *pound*], (of a pound); **funda lībrīlis,** *a sling throwing stones that weigh a pound,* unusually heavy.

licentia, ae, f. [**licēns,** pres. part. of **licet** as adj., *unrestrained*], (lack of restraint); *insubordination.*

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, *bid* (at auction).

licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum est,** (it is lawful, it is permitted); w. complementary infin. it is translated by *may, might;* e.g. **ut id sibi facere licēret,** (that it might be permitted to them to do it), *that they might do it.*

Liger, Ligeris, m., acc. **-im,** abl. **-ī,** the *Loire,* the largest river of southern France, III. **9,** 1, etc.

līgnātiō, ōnis, f. [**līgnor,** *get wood,* from **līgnum,** *wood*], *getting wood.*

līgnātor, ōris, m. [**līgnor,** *get wood,* from **līgnum,** *wood*], (one who gets wood); *wood-cutter, wood-gatherer.*

līlium, ī, m., *lily;* applied ironically by the Romans to the pitfalls constructed at Alesia.

līneus, a, um [**līnum,** *flax*], (linen). Fem. as subst., sc. **rēs,** (a linen thread), *line.*

Lingonēs, um, m. plu., acc. plu. sometimes **-as** (Greek), a tribe in central Gaul, north of the Aedui, I. **26,** 5, etc.

lingua, ae, f., (tongue); by metonymy, *language.*

lingula, ae, f. [dimin. of **lingua**], (a little tongue); *tongue of land,* a narrow point projecting into the sea.

linter, tris, f., *canoe, boat, skiff.*

līnum, ī, n., *flax.*

līs, lītis, m., (strife, lawsuit) ; *damages.*

Liscus, ī, m., chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. **16,** 5, etc.

Littaviccus, ī, m., an Aeduan nobleman who took part in the conspiracy for the revolt of his tribe in the seventh year of the war, VII. **37,** 1 ff.

līttera, ae, f. [**linō,** *smear*, from the wax tablets early used in writing], *letter* of the alphabet, I. **29,** 1, V. **48,** 4 ; *writing*, VI. **14,** 3, 4 ; plu., (letters of the alphabet), a *letter* (epistle), *despatch ; documents*, V. **47,** 2 ; *letters*, V. **40,** 1.

lītus, lītoris, n., *shore*, *beach* of the ocean.

locus, ī, m., plu. regularly **loca, ōrum,** n. (masc. plu. only in sense *topics*, *passages* in a book), *place ; locality ; situation ; opportunity*, I. **40,** 9, V. **44,** 3 ; *space*, II. **8,** 3 ; abl. sing., w. gen., (in the place of) *as*, I. **42,** 6, etc. ; *light*, I. **26,** 6 ; *point*, VI. **11,** 1 ; *condition*, II. **26,** 5 ; plu., *space*, II. **19,** 5 ; *country*, *locality*, III. **9,** 4 ; *region*, e.g. **in hīs locīs,** *in this region.*

longē, adv. [**longus**], *far ;* of time, *long*, IV. **1,** 7, VII. **71,** 4.

longinquus, a, um [**longus**], *distant; long-continued*, I. **47,** 4 ; *protracted*, V. **29,** 7.

longitūdō, dinis, f. [**longus**], *length.*

longurius, ī, m. [**longus**], *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long ; distant*, I. **40,** 14 ; **nāvis longa,** *war-ship*, *galley.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, *speak ; talk*, I. **20,** 6.

lōrīca, ae, f. [**lōrum,** *strap*], (coat of mail) ; *breastwork, parapet.*

Lūcānius, ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a brave centurion, V. **35,** 7.

Lucius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

Lucterius, ī, m., a chief of the Cadurci, who supported the revolt of Vercingetorix, VII. **5,** 1 ff.

Lugotorīx, īgis, m., a British chief, V. **22,** 2.

lūna, ae, f., *moon ;* personified, *Luna*, VI. **21,** 2.

Lutetia, ae, f., the chief city of the Parisii, now *Paris*, VII. **57,** 1, etc.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight ;* **prīma lūx,** *daybreak.*

lūxuria, ae, f. [**lūxus,** *excess*], *extravagance*, *high living.*

M

M, as numeral = 1000 ; but not originally because it was the first letter of **mīlle.**

M., abbreviation for **Mārcus,** a Roman *praenomen.*

māceria, ae, f. [**mācerō,** *soften*, from **macer,** *lean*], (wall of soft clay) ; *wall*, *breastworks.*

māchinātiō, ōnis, f. [**māchinor,** *contrive*, from **māchina,** cf. *μηχανή*], *machine*, *engine;* in IV. **17,** 4, some sort of floating derrick.

maestus, a, um [**maereō,** *be sad*, cf. **miser,** *wretched*], *sad*, *despondent.*

Magetobriga, ae, f., the place where Ariovistus defeated the Aedui and their allies, possibly near the confluence of the Saône and the Oignon, I. **31,** 12.

magis, compar. adv., super. **māximē** (positive supplied by **māgnopere,**

much) [**māior, māximus**], *more; rather*, I. **13**, 6; super., *most*, *very*, *especially;* with verbs, always *especially*, but **quam māximē**, *as much as possible; implicitly*, I. **42**, 5.

magistrātus, ūs, m. [**magister,** *master*, from **magis**], (position of a master), *magistracy*, *office;* by metonymy, *magistrate*, *officer*.

māgnificus, a, um, compar. **māgnificentior,** super. **māgnificentissimus** [**māgnus, faciō**], *elaborate*, *magnificent*.

māgnitūdō, inis, f. [**māgnus**], (greatness); *extent*, *size;* also, *great size*, *great extent*, especially I. **39**, 6, II. **30**, 4; **māgnitūdō animī**, *great courage*, II. **27**, 5; **māgnitūdō ventī**, *high wind*, V. **43**, 2—and so perhaps some other phrases.

māgnopere, adv. [contracted from **māgnō opere** by elision of final **-ō**], (with great effort); *earnestly; greatly*, IV. **26**, 1, VII. **57**, 4; *especially*, I. **13**, 5.

māgnus, a, um, compar. **māior,** super. **māximus,** *great; loud*, IV. **25**, 4; gen. of price, *of great weight*, *great*, IV. **21**, 7; **māgnī interesse**, *be of great importance*, V. **4**, 3, VI. **1**, 3; **māior nātū**, (greater with respect to birth), *older;* masc. plu. as subst., *elders*, II. **13**, 2, **28**, 1, IV. **13**, 4; **māiōrēs** (with **nātū** understood), *ancestors*, I. **13**, 6, **14**, 7, III. **8**, 4, IV. **7**, 3, etc.; **māximum iter**, *forced march*.

māiestās, tātis, f. [**māior**], (superiority); *dignity*, *majesty*, *greatness*.

māior, us, compar. of **māgnus.**

malacia, ae, f. [μαλακία], *calm*.

male, adv., compar. **pēius,** super. **pessimē** [**malus**], *badly*, **male rē gestā**, abl. abs., (a thing having been badly carried on), *on account of bad management*.

maleficium, i, n. [**male, faciō**], (wrong-doing); *harm*, *outrage*, *mischief*.

mālō, mālle, māluī, —— [**magis,** *more*, **volō**, *wish*], (wish one thing more than another), *prefer*.

malus, a, um, compar. **pēior,** super. **pessimus,** *bad*, *worse*, *worst;* **pēius**, *a worse fate*, I. **31**, 10.

mālus, ī, m., (an upright pole); *mast*, III. **14**, 6; *corner timber*, VII. **22**, 5.

mandātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **mandō**, *order*], (a thing ordered); plu. *instructions; messages*, I. **37**, 1.

mandō, 1st conj. [**manus, dō**], (put into some one's hands), *intrust;* **fugae sē mandāre**, (intrust one's self to flight), *take to flight*, *take flight; charge*, *commission*, *direct*, I. **30**, 5, **47**, 5, III. **11**, 2, IV. **21**, 2, etc.

Mandubiī, ōrum, m. plu., a small tribe, probably dependents of the Aedui, north of their territory; chief city Alesia, where Vercingetorix made his last stand in the seventh year of the war; VII. **68**, 1, etc.

Mandubracius, ī, m., a chief of the Trinobantes, a British tribe, who was loyal to Caesar, V. **20**, 1, etc.

māne, adv., *in the morning*.

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain*, *stay;* **in eō manēre**, *abide by that*, I. **36**, 5.

manipulāris, e [**manipulus**], (belonging to a maniple); as subst. w. **suus**, *men of one's own maniple*.

manipulus, ī, m. [**manus,** *hand*, **pleō,**

fill], (a handful, i.e. of hay, because the standard of the maniple originally bore a handful of hay tied to a pole); *maniple*, one-third of a cohort, the smallest division of the Roman army; roughly, like our *platoon*.

Manlius, ī, m., *Lucius Manlius*, Roman proconsul, defeated in Aquitania, B.C. 78, by Hirtuleius, the quaestor of Sertorius, the exiled Roman general, who held his own in Spain for several years; III. **20,** 2.

mānsuē-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, pass. **mānsuē-fīō, fierī, factus sum** [**manus** and **suē**, stem of **suēscō**, *become accustomed*], (make accustomed to the hand), *tame*.

mānsuētūdō, dinis, f. [**manus**, *hand*, **suē**, stem of **suēscō**, *become accustomed*], (state of being accustomed to the hand; tameness, gentleness); *kindness*.

manus, ūs, f., *hand;* **nātūrā et manū,** *naturally and artificially;* **per manūs,** *from hand to hand;* **manū,** *vigorously*, V. **7,** 8; *band* of men, *force*, I. **37,** 4, II. **2,** 4, **5,** 2, III. **11,** 4, etc.

Marcomanī, ōrum, m. plu., a German people, of whose location nothing is certainly known, I. **51,** 2.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen*.

mare, is, n., *the sea;* **mare Ōceanus,** *the ocean*.

maritimus, a, um [**mare**], (pertaining to the sea); *maritime*, II. **34,** V. **11,** 8; w. **pars, regiō,** *the coast;* w. **ōra,** *shore;* w. **aestus,** *tide;* w. **rēs,** *navigation*.

Marius, ī, m., *Gaius Marius*, consul seven times, conqueror of the Cimbri and Teutones 106 B.C., opponent of the aristocratic party, died 80 B.C. I. **40,** 5.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*, the Roman god of war; by metonymy, **aequō Mārte,** *on even terms*, VII. **19,** 3.

mās, maris, adj., *male*. Masc. as subst., *the male*, VI. **26,** 3.

matara, ae, f. [Celtic], *pike*, Celtic *javelin*.

māter, tris, f. [cf. μήτηρ and *mother*], *mother;* **māter familiae** (old gen. **familiās**), *matron;* **soror ex mātre,** *half-sister*, having the same mother.

māteria, ae, f., *timber*, *lumber*.

māterior, 1st conj. [**māteria**], *get timber*, *get wood*.

Matiscō, ōnis, f., a town of the Aedui, VII. **90,** 7.

mātrimōnium, ī, n. [**māter**], (motherhood); *marriage;* **in mātrimōnium,** *in marriage;* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** (lead into marriage), *marry*, used always of the husband.

Matrona, ae, f., the *Marne*, tributary of the Seine on the left bank, dividing Belgic from Celtic Gaul, I. **1,** 2.

mātūrē, adv., compar. **mātūrius,** super. **mātūrrimē** [**mātūrus**], *early*.

mātūrēscō, mātūrēscere, mātūruī, —— [**mātūrus**], *begin to ripen*.

mātūrō, 1st conj. [**mātūrus**], (make ripe); *hasten*.

mātūrus, a, um, *ripe; early*, IV. **20,** 1.

māximē, super. of **magis.**

māximus, a, um, super. of **māgnus.**

Māximus, ī, m., a Roman *cognomen*, I. **45,** 2.

medeor, mederī, ——, (heal) ; *remedy*, w. dat.

mediocris, cre [medius], (medium); *moderate ; ordinary*, III. **20**, 1. (**nōn**, *no.*)

mediocriter, adv. [**mediocris**], (moderately), *to an ordinary degree.* (**nōn**, *no.*)

Mediomatricī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe north of the Vosges mountains, between the Sequani and Treveri, IV. **10**, 3, VII. **75**, 3.

mediterrāneus, a, um [**medius**, *middle*, **terra**, *land*], *inland ;* w. **regiōnēs**, *the interior.*

medius, a, um, adj. having partitive force, *the middle of*, *the midst of.* **in mediō colle**, *half way up the hill ;* **medius utrīusque**, *midway between the two.*

Meldī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in north central Gaul, exact location uncertain, V. **5**, 2.

melior, us, compar. of **bonus.**

melius, adv., compar. of **bene.**

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

meminī, meminisse, ——, defective, *remember.*

memoria, ae, f. [**memor**, *mindful*], *memory, recollection ; record*, VII. **25**, 1 ; **memoriam dēpōnere**, w. gen., (lay aside the memory), *forget ;* **memoriam retinēre** w. gen., (retain the memory of), *remember ;* **memoriā tenēre**, (hold in memory), *remember ;* **nostrā memoriā**, (within our memory), *in our day ;* **memoriā patrum (nostrōrum)**, (within the memory of our fathers), *a generation ago ;* **suprā hanc memoriam**, (above this memory), *before this generation.* (**prōdō**, *hand down.*)

Menapiī, ōrum, m. plu., the northernmost tribe of Belgae, mostly south of the Rhine at its mouth, and extending to the Scheldt, north of the Nervii and Eburones, II. **4**, 9, etc.

mendācium, ī, n. [**mendax**, *lying*, from **mentior**, *lie*], *lie.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind*, especially the intellect, as distinguished from the emotions and the will ; often in the sense of a *state of mind*, as in common Eng. phrase, "*change one's mind*," e.g. I. **41**, 1, VII. **64**, 7 ; *resolution*, III. **19**, 6.

mēnsis, is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, ae, f. [**metior**, *measure*], (a measuring), *measurement ; measure.* **ex aquā mēnsūra**, (measure from water), *clepsydra, water-clock*, an instrument for measuring time by means of water escaping from a graduated basin ; **mēnsūra itinerum**, (measurement of journeys), *how to measure distances*, i.e. in units of distance.

mentiō, ōnis, f. [cf. **meminī**, etc.], *mention.*

mercātor, ōris, m. [**mercor**, *trade*], *trader, peddler.*

mercātūra, ae, f. [**mercor**, *trade*], *trade, traffic, commerce.*

mercēs, ēdis, f. [**merx**, *merchandise*, from **mereō**, *deserve*], (what is deserved), *pay, wages ;* **mercēde arcessere**, (summon by promise of pay), *hire.*

Mercurius, ī, m. [**merx**, *merchandise*], *Mercury*, god of trade, patron of traders and thieves ; also of eloquence, hence messenger of the gods, etc., VI. **17**, 1.

mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, also dep., *deserve; serve*, VII. **17,** 5.

merīdiānus, a, um [**merīdiēs**], *of midday;* **merīdiānum tempus,** *noon.*

merīdiēs, diēī, m. [for **medi-diēs,** from **medius, diēs**], *midday, noon;* from the position of the sun at noon, *south*, V. **13,** 1.

meritum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **mereō,** as subst.], (a thing deserved), *merit* if good, *fault* if bad; *deserts;* plu. *services.*

meritus, a, um, part. of **mereō.**

Messāla, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C., I. **2,** 1, **35,** 4.

-met, enclitic syllable, adding emphasis to a pronoun.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, *measure* (*out*).

Metiosēdum, ī, n., a town of the Senones, upon an island in the Seine, twenty-eight miles above Paris, now *Melun*, VII. **58,** 2, etc.

Metius, ī, m., *Marcus Metius*, sent to Ariovistus by Caesar as an envoy, I. **47,** 4, **53,** 8.

metō, metere, messuī, messum, *reap, harvest, cut and bring in.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear, anxiety, apprehension.*

meus, a, um, voc. sing. masc. **mī,** gen. plu., masc. and neut., sometimes **meum,** poss. pron. of the first pers. sing. [**me,** stem of oblique cases of **ego,** *I*], *my* (mine).

mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*

mīlia, ium, see **mīlle.**

mīlitāris, e [**mīles**], (relating to a soldier], *military;* **rēs mīlitāris,** *military affairs, the art of war, warfare, military operations;* **sīgna mīlitāria,** *battle-standards.*

mīlitia, ae, f., w. loc. **mīlitiae** [**mīles**], *military service; warfare, war*, VI. **14,** 1.

mīlle, indeclin. card. adj., abbreviation **M,** *a thousand;* sometimes subst.; plu. always as subst., **mīlia, mīlium,** n., *thousands, thousand*, followed by gen. of the whole (partitive gen.); e.g. **duo mīlia passuum,** (two thousands of paces), *two thousand paces, two miles.*

Minerva, ae, f., goddess of wisdom and of the arts, VI. **17,** 2.

minimē, adv., super. of **parum.**

minimus, a, um, super. of **parvus.**

minor, us, compar. of **parvus.**

Minucius, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's prominent officers, but probably not a *legatus*, VI. **29,** 4, VII. **90,** 5.

minuō, minuere, minuī, minūtum [**minus,** *less*], *lessen;* of the tide, *ebb.*

minus, adv., compar. of **parum.**

mīror, 1st conj. [**mīrus**], *wonder*, I. **32,** 2; *wonder at*, V. **54,** 5.

mīrus, a, um, *wonderful; strange*, I. **34,** 4; **mīrum in modum,** (in a wonderful manner), *wonderfully.*

miser, misera, miserum, compar. **miserior,** super. **miserrimus,** *wretched.*

misericordia, ae, f. [**misericors,** *tender-hearted*, from **miser,** and **cor,** *heart*], *pity, compassion.* (**ūtor,** *take;* **recipiō,** *admit.*)

miseror, 1st conj. [**miser**], *bewail, lament, deplore.*

missus, a, um, part. of **mittō.**

missus, ūs, m., used in abl. sing.

only [**mittō**], (a sending); **missū Caesaris,** *upon a mission for Caesar.*

mītius, mītissimē, adv., in compar. and super. [**mītis,** *mild, mellow*], (more) *mildly.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send; throw, hurl,* I. **25,** 2, III. **4,** 2, **5,** 3, etc. (In comp. **mittō** often = *let go, allow to go.*)

mōbilis, e [for **movibilis,** from **moveō**], (capable of being moved), *fickle, changeable, easily influenced.*

mōbilitās, tātis, f. [**mōbilis**], (capability of being moved), *mobility, quickness, speed;* of mind, *fickleness, changeability.*

mōbiliter, adv. [**mōbilis**], *quickly, easily.*

moderor, 1st conj. [**modus**], *check,* IV. **33,** 3; *control.*

modestia, ae, f. [**modestus,** *keeping due measure*], *self-control, moderation.*

modo, adv. [shortened abl. of **modus**], (by a measure); *only; only recently,* VI. **39,** 2; *just, just now,* VI. **43,** 4.

modus, ī, m. (measure); *amount,* VI. **22,** 2; *size,* V. **1,** 2; *manner, way;* **ēius modī, hūius modī,** sometimes written as one word, (of this kind), *of such kind, such;* **sublicae modō,** (in the manner of a pile), *like a pile;* **ōrātōris modō,** *as an envoy;* **ad hunc modum,** *in this way;* **quem ad modum,** (in what way), *as,* I. **36,** 1, *how,* VII. **43,** 5.

moenia, ium, n. plu. [cf. **mūniō,** *fortify*], *walls* (for defence).

mōlēs, is, f., (a huge structure), *dike.*

molestē, adv. [**molestus,** *troublesome*], *with vexation;* **molestē ferre,** (bear with vexation), *be annoyed, be vexed.*

mōlīmentum, ī, n. [**mōlior,** *exert one's self,* from **mōlēs**], *exertion, trouble.*

molitus, a, um, part. of **molō.**

molliō, mollīre, mollīvī or **molliī, mollītum** [**mollis,** *soft*], (soften); *make easier.*

mollis, e, (soft); *smooth; weak,* III. **19,** 6.

mollitia, ae, f. [**mollis**], (softness); *weakness.*

mollitiēs, ēī, f. [**mollis**], (softness); *weakness.*

molō, molere, moluī, molitum [**mola,** *a grindstone*], *grind;* **molita cibāria,** (ground food-stuff), *flour, meal.*

mōmentum, ī, n. [for **movimentum,** from **moveō**], (movement; what causes movement), *weight, influence,* VII. **85,** 4; *importance, moment,* VII. **39,** 3.

Mona, ae, f., an island between Wales and Ireland, now *Anglesey,* V. **13,** 3.

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *advise.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mountain range.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morātus, a, um, part. of **moror.**

morbus, ī, m., *sickness, disease.*

Morinī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, between the Scheldt and the ocean, opposite Britain, II. **4,** 9, etc.

morior, morī (**morīrī**), **mortuus sum,** fut. part. **moritūrus** [cf. **mors**], *die.*

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chief of the Senones, V. **54,** 2.

moror, 1st conj. [**mora**], trans. *delay*, intrans. *wait*, *delay*.

mors, mortis, f. [cf. **morior**], *death*.

mortuus, a, um, part. of **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., *custom*.

Mosa, ae, f., French *Meuse*, German *Maas*, a river of northern Gaul rising in the Vosges mountains, flowing northward into the *Waal* (*Vaculus*), IV. **9,** 3, etc.

mōtus, ūs, m. [**moveō**], (a moving); of ships, etc., *motion;* of oars, *action; disturbance, uprising*.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move;* w. **castra,** *break;* fig. *influence*, VII. **76, 2.**

mulier, mulieris, f., *woman*.

mūliō, ōnis, m. [**mūlus**], *mule-driver*.

multitūdō, dinis, f. [**multus**], *number; large number; the common people*, *general body of soldiers*.

multō, 1st conj. [sometimes **mulctō; multa, mulcta,** *a fine*], (punish); *deprive*, VII. **54,** 4.

multō, multum, see **multus.**

multus, a, um, *much*, plu. *many;* **multō diē,** *in broad day*, or *late in the day*. **multum,** n., and **multō,** n., used respectively as adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference, to take the place of a corresponding adverb, which does not exist in separate form for this word, *much*.

Compar., in sing. as subst. only, **plūs, plūris,** n., no dat. or abl., plu. **plūrēs, plūra,** gen. **plūrium,** etc., sing. *more* (in amount), either substantively, often w. gen. of the whole, or adverbially (adverbial acc.); plu. (more in number, more than one), *several; many*, comparatively; *quite a number*.

Super., **plūrimus, a, um,** sing. neut. as subst., *very much*, *much*, *a great deal*, V. **27,** 2; usually plu., *very many*, *many;* perhaps *most*, VI. **17,** 1. **plūrimum,** n., used as adverbial acc., corresponding to **multum** and **plūs,** *very much;* **plūrimum posse, valēre,** *be very powerful* or *influential*

mūlus, ī, m., *mule*.

Mūnātius, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. **24,** 3.

mundus, ī, m., *the universe*.

mūnīmentum, ī, n. [**mūniō**], *fortification*.

mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī or **mūniī, mūnītum** [**moenia,** *walls for defence*], (build walls), *fortify; protect*, I. **44,** 6, II. **5,** 5, VI. **5,** 4; *construct*, VII. **58,** 1.

mūnītiō, ōnis, f. [**mūniō**], (a fortifying), *fortifying*, I. **49,** 3, V. **9,** 8; *constructing a fortification*, V. **39,** 2, **40,** 2, VII. **45,** 6, **48,** 2; *fortification; strength*, I. **8,** 4; *being fortified*, VII. **14,** 9, **20,** 3.

mūnus, mūneris, n., *task, service; gift*, I. **43,** 4. **mūnera amplissimē mittere,** (send gifts most generously), *send most generous gifts*.

mūrālis, e [**mūrus**], relating to a wall, mural); **mūrālis falx,** a strong hook on the end of a stout pole, for tearing down a wall, *wall-hook*, *hook for tearing down walls;* **mūrālia pīla,** spears for use when fighting from a wall, *heavy spears*.

mūrus, ī, m., *wall*, a general term.

mūsculus, ī, m. [dimin. of **mūs,**

mouse], (a little mouse); a small, strong *shed*, under which soldiers could work while conducting siege operations.

mutilus, a, um [μύτιλος, μίτυλος], (maimed, mutilated); **mutilus cornibus**, abl. of specification, (mutilated in respect to their horns), either *without horns* or *short-horned.*

N

nactus, a, um, part. of **nancīscor.**

nam, coörd. conj., *for*, introducing a reason considered to be more evident than **quod;** as enclitic, appended to interrogative word adding an idea of doubt as to a thing's possibility, scarcely translatable, II. **30,** 4.

Nammēius, ī, m., an envoy sent by the Helvetians to Caesar, I. **7,** 3.

Namnetēs, um, m. plu., a tribe upon the western coast of Gaul, north of the Loire, III. **9,** 10.

nam-que, conj., (and—for), *for;* an omission is always implied, as "and (this is so), for," "and (this occurred with good reason), for."

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus (nanctus) sum, (get), *come upon, find.*

Nantuātēs, um, m. plu., a tribe on both sides of the River Rhone above Lake Geneva, III. **1,** 1, etc.

Narbō, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Roman province (*Gallia transalpina*), on the Mediterranean, now *Narbonne*, III. **20,** 2, VII. **7,** 2, 4.

nāscor (for **gnāscor**), **nāsci, nātus sum,** *be born; be found*, of metals, V. **12,** 5, of wild animals, VI. **25,** 5; of domestic animals, *be bred, be raised*, IV. **2,** 2; of a hill, *rise*, II. **18,** 2; *arise*, VI. **22,** 3; *cause*, VII. **43,** 5; *originate*, V. **12,** 1.

Nasua, ae, m., one of two chiefs, brothers, leaders of the Suebi, I. **37,** 3.

nātālis, e [**nātus**], *relating to birth;* **diēs nātālis,** *birthday.*

nātiō, ōnis, f. [**nāscor**], (birth); *race, nation;* of divisions of Gaul, *state, tribe.*

nātīvus, a, um [**nātus**], (relating to birth), *natural.*

nātūra, ae, f. [**nāscor**], (birth); (natural constitution), *nature*, VI. **7,** 7, **26,** 3, **43,** 5; abl., (by nature), *naturally; character.*

nātūs, ūs, m. [**nāscor**], *birth;* **māior nātū,** used as compar. of **senex,** (greater by birth), *older*, plu. **māiōrēs nātū,** *elders, old men*, super. **māximus nātū.**

nauta, ae, m. [for **nāvita,** from **nāvis,** cf. ναύτης], *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um [**nauta;** cf. ναυτικός], (pertaining to ships or sailors), *nautical, naval;* **rēs nauticae,** *naval affairs, nautical matters, navigation, seamanship.*

nāvālis, e [**nāvis**], *naval, nautical;* **nāvālis pūgna,** *sea-fight;* **nāvālia castra,** *camp on the beach*, to protect the ships.

nāvicula, ae, f. [dim. of **nāvis**], *small boat, boat.*

nāvigātiō, ōnis, f. [**nāvigō**], *navigation, sailing; voyage*, V. **23,** 3.

nāvigium, ī, n. [**nāvigō**], (that which sails); *ship, vessel;* **speculātōrium nāvigium,** *picket-boat;* **vectōriīs gravibusque nāvigiīs,** *though their ships were transports and* (*therefore*) *heavy*, abl. abs.

nāvigō, 1st conj. [**nāvis; agō,** *drive*], (drive a ship), *sail.*

nāvis, is, f. [cf. *ναῦς*], *ship, boat.* **nāvis longa,** *war-ship;* **nāvis onerāria,** *transport.*

nāvō, 1st conj. [**(g)nāvus,** *busy*], (work busily), *accomplish;* **operam nāvāre,** (succeed in one's effort), *do one's best.*

-ne, interrogative enclitic particle used when there is no other interrogative word in the sentence, and implying nothing as to answer expected; in direct question translated merely by making sentence interrogative, VII. **77,** 10; in simple indirect question, *whether,* V. **54,** 5; in disjunctive question, **-ne —an,** *whether—or.* **velint-ne,** *whether they wished to do so (or not),* V. **27,** 9.

nē, adv., *not,* only in phrase **nē—quidem,** *not—even,* emphasizing the word between.

nē, subord. conj., in purpose clauses, *lest, that—not, in order that—not;* as negative of a subjunct. in ind. dis. representing an imper. of dir. dis., I. **13,** 5, 7, **26,** 6, II. **31,** 4, etc.; after verb of fearing, *that.*

nec, form of **neque.**

necessārius, a, um [necesse], *necessary; critical,* I. **16,** 6; *sufficient* I. **39,** 3; **rēs necessāria,** *urgent matter,* I. **17,** 6, plu. *necessaries, necessities,* VII. **66,** 5. Masc. as subst., *close friend, friend,* I. **11,** 4. Abl. sing. neut. as adv., *of necessity; necessarily,* III. **14,** 7, **29,** 2.

necesse, indeclin. adj., *necessary;* always **necesse est** (or similar form), w. acc. and infin. as subject; best translated adverbially, *necessarily;* e.g. **necesse est eōs paenitēre,** (it is necessary that they repent), *they necessarily repent,* IV. **5,** 3; **quod necesse erat accidere,** *which necessarily happened,* IV. **29,** 3.

necessitās, tātis, f. [**necesse**], *necessity;* w. **temporis,** *urgency; interest,* VII. **89,** 1.

necessitūdō, dinis, f. [**necesse**], *close relationship.*

nec-ne, conj. and adv., *or not;* see **-ne.**

necō, 1st conj., *put to death;* **īgnī necāre,** *burn at the stake.*

nēc-ubi, subord. conj. and adv. [**nē; (c)ubi,** *where*], *that nowhere.*

nefārius, a, um [nefās], *abominable, awful.*

nefās, indeclin. noun [**ne,** *not,* **fās,** *right, spoken by divine decree,* from **for, fārī,** *speak*], *crime.*

neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum [nec, legō], (not choose), *disregard, neglect.*

negō, 1st conj., *deny;* used to introduce a negative sentence of ind. dis., the negative being incorporated into the introductory verb, from which it should be separated in translation; e.g. **negat sē posse dare,** (he denies that he can give), *he says that he cannot give;* w. dir. obj. and dat., *deny, refuse.*

negōtior, 1st conj. [**negōtium**], *do, carry on,* or *transact business.*

negōtium, ī, n. [**nec; otium,** *leisure*], *business,* I. **34,** 4; *work,* V. **2,** 3; *movement,* VII. **61,** 2; *action,* V. **33,** 1, elsewhere *trouble, difficulty.* **negōtiō dēsistere,** (stand down from the matter), *retreat from*

the position he had taken, I. **45**, 1; **negōtium cōnficere**, (finish a matter), *end matters;* **negōtium dare** w. dat., (give a task), *charge.*

Nemetēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe that crossed the Rhine under the protection of Ariovistus and fought with him against Caesar; what became of the survivors after the defeat of the former is uncertain; I. **51**, 2, VI. **25**, 2.

nēmō, gen. supplied by **nūllīus,** dat. **nēminī,** acc. **nēminem,** abl. supplied by **nūllō, nūllā,** c. [**nē, homō**], *no one*, *nobody.*

nē-quāquam, adv. [**nē; quāquam,** abl. of **quisquam,** *any*, sc. **viā**], (not in any way), *by no means.*

ne-que, nec [**nē**], conj., *nor*, *and—not;* **neque—neque,** *neither—nor.*

nē-quīquam, adv. [**nē; quīquam,** old abl. of **quisquam**], (not to any purpose), *without hope of success.*

Nervicus, a, um [**Nervius**], *relating to the Nervii;* w. **proelium,** *with the Nervii.*

Nervius, ī, m., *one of the Nervii;* masc. plu., *the Nervii*, a particularly warlike tribe of Belgae, west of the Scheldt, II. **15**, 3, etc.

nervus, ī, m. [cf. νεῦρον], (any cord of the body); *nerve*, VI. **21**, 4; *strength*, I. **20**, 3.

neu, form of **nēve.**

neuter, tra, trum, gen. **neutrīus,** dat. **neutrī** [**nē; uter,** indef., *either*], *neither*; plu. used of two parties.

nē-ve, neu, coörd. and subord. conj. combined, (or that not) *and* (that) *not.* (**-que, et,** following, is best translated *but*, to avoid confusion).

nex, necis, f., (violent) *death.*

nihil, indeclin. noun [**nē; hīlum,** *trifle*], *nothing;* often w. gen. of the whole, e.g. **nihil reliquī,** (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. **11**, 5; **nihil vīnī,** *no wine*, II. **15**, 4; used adverbially (adverbial acc.), *not at all*, *not—at all*, or merely emphatic *not;* **nōn nihil,** (NOT not at all), *to some extent*, *somewhat.*

(**nihilum,**) **nihilī,** abl. **nihilō** [**nihil**], *nothing;* in Bel. Gal. only in abl. of degree of difference, (by nothing), *none;* **nihilō minus, nihilō setius,** (none the less), *nevertheless.*

nimius, a, um [**nimis,** adv., *too much*], (too great), *excessive.*

nisi, subord. conj. [**nē, sī**], *if not*, I. **44**, 11, V. **1**, 8, VI. **16**, 3, VII. **19**, 5, **85**, 3, **88**, 6; *unless;* it negatives the entire protasis of a conditional sentence, while **sī nōn** negatives a single word; also w. many other expressions than conditional clauses, *unless; except*, *unless*, IV. **24**, 2, VI. **18**, 3, **20**, 3, etc.; *except that*, V. **13**, 4.

Nitiobrogēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in the extreme southern part of Gaul, on both sides of the Garonne river. VII. **7**, 2.

nītor, nītī, nīxus sum (usually in lit. sense) or **nīsus sum** (usually in fig. sense), (rest, press upon): *strive; rely* (on), I. **13**, 6; w. abl. of means.

nix, nivis, f., gen. plu. **nivium,** *snow.*

nōbilis, e [cf. **nōscō,** *know*], (known, noted); *well-known*, *renowned*, VII. **77**, 15; *high-born*, *of noble birth*, *noble*, *aristocratic;* plu. as subst., *men of high rank*, *nobles.*

nōbilitās, tātis, f. [**nōbilis**], (nobility); abstract, **summa nōbilitās,** *the highest rank*, II. **6,** 4; elsewhere collective, (the nobility as a class), *the nobles.*

nocēns, nocentis, pres. part. of **noceō.**

noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, (do harm), *injure*, always w. dat., so impers. in pass. Plu. of pres. part. as subst., (those who do harm), *the guilty*, VI. **9,** 7.

noctū, adv. [old abl. of 4th decl. noun, from **nox**], *at night, by night, in the night.*

nocturnus, a, um [**nox**], *of the night, night, at night.*

nōdus, ī, m., (knot), *enlargement.*

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, —— [**nē** (**nōn,** in compound forms), **volō,** *wish, be willing*], *be unwilling, not wish.* **nōlīte exspoliāre,** (be unwilling to deprive), *do not deprive*, VII. **77,** 9.

nōmen, minis, n. [**nōscō**], (a means of knowing); *name; designation, name*, III. **2,** 5, VII. **77,** 3; **suō nōmine,** *on his (their) own account.*

nōminātim, adv. [**nōminō**], (name by name); *by name*, II. **25,** 2; *individually; in detail*, I. **29,** 1.

nōminō, 1st conj. [**nōmen**], (name), *call*, VII. **73,** 9; *mention.*

nōn, adv., *not.*

nōnāgintā, indeclin. card. adj., *ninety.*

nōn-dum, adv., *not yet.*

nōnus, a, um [for **novēnus,** from **novem**], ord. adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia, ae, f., the chief town of the Norici, I. **5,** 4.

Nōricus, a, um, *of the Norici*, a tribe between the Danube and the summits of the Alps, I. **5,** 4; fem. as subst., *one of the Norici*, I. **53,** 4.

nōs, plu. of **ego.**

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, (nōtum) [for **gnōscō**], (come to know); perf. *know*, pluperf. *knew*, etc.; perf. part. *known, familiar; being known, being familiar*, IV. **26,** 2; super. *perfectly familiar*, IV. **24,** 3.

nōs-met, emphatic form of **nōs, met** being a strengthening enclitic.

noster, tra, trum [**nōs**], *our;* masc. plu. as subst., *our men, our soldiers, our troops.*

nōtitia, ae, f. [**nōtus**], *knowledge.*

nōtus, a, um, part. of **nōscō.**

novem, indeclin. card. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., (1) a town of the Aedui upon the northern bank of the Loire, now *Nevers*, VII. **55,** 1, 5; (2) a town of the Bituriges, in the northern part of their territory, now possibly *Villate*, VII. **12,** 2, **14,** 1; (3) the chief town of the Suessiones, now probably *Soissons*, II. **12,** 1.

novitās, tātis, f. [**novus**], (newness], *novelty, strangeness.*

novus, a, um, no compar., *new;* w. **copiae,** *fresh;* super. **novissimus,** *last*, IV. **16,** 7; **novissimum āgmen,** (the newest part of a marching column), *the rear, rear-guard;* so masc. plu. of super. as subst., *those in the rear, the rear-guard;* **novae rēs,** *change of government, revolution;* **nova imperia,** (new forms of government), *revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., gen. plu. **noctium,** *night;* **prīmā nocte,** (in the first part of the night), *as soon as it was dark;* **multā nocte,** *late at night.*

noxia, ae, f. [**noceō,** *injure*], *crime.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, (veil one's self), *marry;* used of the woman.

nūdō, 1st conj. [**nūdus**], (make bare); *expose; leave vacant,* VII. **70,** 7; w. abl. of separation, *strip* (of).

nūdus, a, um, *naked, bare; unprotected,* I. **25,** 4.

nūllus, a, um, gen. **nūllīus,** dat. **nūllī** [**nē, ūllus**], (not any), *no,* adj.; as subst., sing. *no one,* plu. *none.* **nōn nūllus** [often written as one word], as adj. or as subst., *some.*

num, interrog. particle, placed at beginning of a question to show that the answer "No" is expected. In I. **14,** 3, it is untranslatable by any separate word, but contributes indignant emphasis to **posse,** "COULD *he?*"

nūmen, minis, n. [**nuō,** *nod*], (nod; divine will); *power, divinity.*

numerus, ī, m., *number; amount; account,* VI. **13,** 1; abl. **numerō,** or **in numerō,** w. gen., (in the number of), *as.*

Numidae, ārum, m. plu. [**νομάς, νομάδος,** *nomad, wanderer*], *Numidians,* inhabitants of northern Africa, used as light-armed auxiliaries by the Romans, since they were skilful archers; II. **7,** 1, etc.

nummus, ī, m., *a coin;* **prō nummō,** *as money.*

numquam, adv. [**nē; umquam,** *ever*], *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], *announce, report; direct,* IV. **11,** 6.

nūntius, a, um [for **noventius,** from **novus,** which accounts for the **ū** before **nt**], (bringing news); masc. as subst., *messenger; message; news, tidings.*

nuper, adv., super. **nuperrimē,** *recently.*

nūsquam, adv. [**nē; ūsquam,** *anywhere*], *nowhere.*

nūtus, ūs, m. [**nuō,** *nod*], *nod;* **ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem,** "*at his nod and beck*"; *bidding, command,* IV. **23,** 5; *gesture, sign,* V. **43,** 6.

O

ob, prep. w. acc., *on account of, for;* in Bel. Gal. always w. **rem, rēs, causam, causās,** and a rel. or demonstrative pro., *on this account, for this reason,* etc.; **quam ob rem,** (for what reason), *why,* I. **50,** 4, **quam** here being interrogative. In comp., *toward, against.*

ob-aerātus, a, um [**aes, aeris,** *copper money*], having money against one), *in debt.* Masc. as subst., (one in debt), *debtor.*

ob-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum (lead across a path), *construct at right angles.*

ob-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, (go against, meet), *attend to.*

ob-īciō (pronounced as if spelled **objiciō), icere, iēci, iectum,** (throw against); *throw up,* I. **26,** 3; *expose,* I. **47,** 3; perf. pass., *be in the way; be situated close by,* V. **13,** 3; perf. part., *opposite,* V. **13,** 6.

obitus, ūs, m. [**obeō,** *perish*], *destruction.*

oblātus, a, um, part. of **offerō.**

oblīquē, adv. [**oblīquus**], *obliquely, slanting.*

oblīquus, a, um, *oblique, slanting, cross.*

ob-līvīscor, līvīscī, lītus sum, *forget,* w. gen.

ob-secrō, 1st conj. [**sacer,** *sacred*], *entreat* (by what is sacred), *implore, beseech.*

obsequentia, ae, f. [**obsequēns,** part. of **ob-sequor,** *yield*], *compliance.*

ob-servō, 1st conj., (watch for), *watch,* VII. **16,** 3; *follow, heed,* I. **45,** 3, V. **35,** 1; *reckon,* VI. **18,** 2.

obses, sidis, c. [**obsideō**], (one who sits over against an agreement), *hostage.*

obsessiō, ōnis, f. [**obsideō**], *siege; state of siege,* VI. **36,** 2.

obsessus, a, um, part. of **obsideō.**

ob-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum, (sit over against), *besiege;* w. **viam,** *blockade, guard.*

obsidiō, ōnis, f. [**obsideō**], *siege; pressure,* IV. **19,** 4.

ob-sīgnō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum,** *seal*], (put a seal upon), *seal.*

ob-sistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, (stand against), *withstand.*

obstinātē, adv. [**obstinātus,** part. of **ob-stinō,** from **ob-stō,** *stand against*], *persistently, steadily.*

obstrictus, a, um, part. of **obstringō.**

ob-stringō, stringere, strinxī, strictum, (bind to anything), *bind; put under obligations,* I. **9,** 3.

ob-struō, struere, strūxī, strūctum, (build against), *barricade, block up.*

ob-temperō, 1st conj. [**tempus,** see **temperō**], (comply with), *obey, submit to,* w. dat.

ob-tēstor, 1st conj. [**tēstis,** *witness*], (call the gods to witness against), *entreat solemnly, implore.*

ob-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], *hold* (against); *constitute,* I. **1,** 5; of territory, *dwell in, inhabit.*

obtulī, perf. of **offerō.**

ob-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come against), *encounter, attack,* II. **23,** 1; *be assigned.*

ob-viam, adv. [acc. fem. sing. of **ob-vius,** adj., *opposite,* from **ob, via,** modifying an unexpressed **viam,** a cognate acc.], *to meet.*

oc-, form of **ob** in comp. before **c.**

occāsiō, ōnis, f. [**occidō**], (a falling upon), *opportunity.*

occāsus, ūs, m. [**occidō**], (a falling upon); *setting;* **occāsus sōlis,** (setting of the sun), *sunset; west,* I. **1,** 7, IV. **28,** 2.

oc-cidō, cidere, cidī, cāsum [**cadō**], (fall against), *fall, be killed.* Pres. part. as adj. w. **sōl,** (the setting sun), *the west.*

oc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], (cut down), *kill.*

oc-culō, culere, culuī, cultum, *cover;* perf. part. as adj., *hidden, blind,* VI. **34,** 4; as subst., **in occultō,** *in concealment; in secret,* I. **32,** 4; **in occultum abdere,** *go into hiding;* **ex occultō īnsidiārī,** *lie in wait* (*and rush forth*) *from one's hiding place.*

occultātiō, ōnis, f. [**occultō**], *hiding, concealment.*

occultē, adv. [**occultus**], *secretly.*

occultō, 1st conj. [intensive of **occulō,** *cover*], *hide, conceal.*

occultus, a, um, part. of **occulō.**

occupātiō, ōnis, f. [**occupō**], *occupation, employment;* **occupātiō reī**

pūblicae, *public duty.* (**tantulārum rērum,** *in such trifling matters.*)

oc-cupō, 1st conj. [cf. **capiō**], *take possession of, seize; cover, occupy,* II. **8,** 3; perf part., *occupied, busy,* II. **19,** 8, IV. **32,** 5, **34,** 3, V. **15,** 3, VII. **22,** 4.

oc-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** (run against); *meet,* II. **24,** 1, V. **47,** 3, VII. **88,** 3; *rush,* III. **4,** 2, VII. **24,** 4, **84,** 3; *encounter,* III. **6,** 4, IV. **6,** 1, VII. **22,** 1; *engage* (with), II. **27,** 1; *find,* II. **21,** 4, IV. **26,** 1; w. **rēbus** (*conditions*), *face,* I. **33,** 4; impers., *arrange,* VII. **16,** 3; w. ind. dis., *rush,* VII. **85,** 2.

Ōceanus, ī, m. ['Ωκεανός], the Atlantic *Ocean.*

Ocelum, ī, m., "the most western town of the nearer province," probably on the site of modern *Avigliana,* I. **10,** 5.

octāvus, a, um [**octō**], ord. adj., *eighth.*

octingentī, ae, a [**octō, centum**], card. adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, indeclin. card. adj., *eight.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri, near the confluence of the Rhone and the Dranse, upon the site of *Martigny,* III. **1,** 4.

octōgēnī, ae, a [**octō**], distrib. adj., *eighty* (each).

octōgintā [**octō**], indeclin. card. adj., *eighty.*

octōnī, ae, a [**octō**], distrib. adj., *eight each,* VII. **75,** 3; *eight.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, defective, lacking pres. system and pass., *hate.*

odium, ī, n. [**ōdī**], *hatred.*

of-, form of **ob** in comp. before **f.**

of-fendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsum, (strike against), *hurt, offend* (**animum,** *feelings*), I. **19,** 2; impers., **offendī potest,** (it can be harmed), *disaster can occur,* VI. **36,** 2.

offēnsiō, ōnis, f. [**offendō**], *hurting,* w. objective gen. translated as object.

of-ferō, ferre, ob-tulī, ob-lātum, (bear against); *offer; expose,* IV. **12,** 6, VII. **77,** 5; *do,* VI. **42,** 3; *take,* II. **21,** 1, VII. **87,** 5; pass. w. dat., *fall into one's hands,* IV. **13,** 6.

officium, ī, n. [for **opi-ficium,** from **opus,** *work,* **faciō,** *do*], *service, duty,* IV. **1,** 9; *doing one's duty,* I. **40,** 10; *sense of duty,* I. **40,** 14; **officium praestāre,** *do one's duty; allegiance;* plu. *services.*

Ollovicō, ōnis, m., king of the Nitiobroges, VII. **31,** 5.

o(ob)-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go by); *neglect,* II. **17,** 5; *put aside,* VII. **34,** 1; *drop,* VII. **88,** 2.

omnīnō, adv. [**omnis**], *in all, altogether;* w. negatives, *at all.*

omnis, e, sing. usually, *every,* plu. *all;* but sing. also *all,* in sense of *as a whole,* e.g. I. **1,** 1.

onerārius, a, um [**onus**], *of burden;* **nāvis onerāria,** *transport.*

onerō, 1st conj. [**onus**], *load.*

onus, oneris, n., *load,* III. **19,** 2; *weight;* **tanta onera navium,** (so great weights of ships), *such heavy ships; cargo,* V. **1,** 2.

op-, form of **ob** in comp. before **p.**

opera, ae, f. [**opus**], *exertion,* V. **11,** 5; *aid, assistance, services;* **operam navāre,** (succeed in one's

effort), *do one's best;* **operam dare,** *take pains.*

opīniō, ōnis, f. [**opīnor,** *think*], *belief, idea; appearance, impression,* III. **17,** 6, **18,** 1, **24,** 5, **25,** 1, V. **57,** 4; *reputation,* II. **8,** 1, **24,** 4, IV. **16,** 7 (twice), VI. **24,** 3, VII. **59,** 5, **83,** 4; *expectation,* III. **3,** 2, V. **48,** 1, VI. **30,** 1, VII. **9,** 1, **56,** 3; *reports,* II. **35,** 1; *opinion* (**ad,** *for influencing*), VI. **1,** 3; **omnium opīniōne,** (than the belief of all), *than any one expected,* II. **3,** 1.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., *it is necessary, it is proper, it must, it ought;* usually w. acc. and infin. or w. pass. infin. used impersonally, and to be translated by *must* or *ought* as auxiliaries; e.g. **illum venīre oportet,** (it is proper that he come), *he ought to come,* I. **34,** 2, etc.; **poenam sequī oportēbat,** (that the punishment should follow was proper), *the punishment would have to follow,* I. **4,** 1.

oppidānus, a, um [**oppidum**], *of a town;* masc. plu. as subst., *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., walled *town.*

op-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place against); *oppose;* perf. part. *be in the field,* VI. **36,** 2; *block the way,* VII. **56,** 2.

opportūnē, adv. [**opportūnus**], *advantageously, conveniently.*

opportūnitās, tātis, f. [**opportūnus**], *favorable character, advantage; opportunity,* III. **17,** 7.

op-portūnus, a, um [**portus**], (before the port), *suitable, favorable, advantageous.*

oppositus, a, um, part. of **oppōnō.**

op-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [**premō**], (press against); *overwhelm; crush;* w. **inopīnantēs** or **subitō,** *fall upon.*

oppūgnātiō, ōnis, f. [**oppūgnō**], *assault, attack; method of assault,* II. **6,** 2, VII. **29,** 2.

op-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna,** *fight*], (fight against), *attack;* of fortifications, *assault;* of extended operations, *besiege, lay siege to.*

ops, opis, f., nom. and dat. not used, *help, aid;* plu. *resources; strength.*

optimē, adv., super. of **bene.**

optimus, a, um, super. of **bonus.**

optō, 1st conj., *wish, desire;* perf. part. as adj., *welcome.*

opus, operis, n., *work; work of fortifying, fortifying, fortification.* **quantō opere** (often written **quantopere**), as adv., *how much, how greatly,* II. **5,** 2; followed by **tantō opere (tantopere),** *as much as—so much,* VII. **52,** 3. **tantō opere, tantopere,** *fiercely, desperately,* I. **31,** 4.

opus, n., indeclin., *need;* **opus est,** *there is need,* it is needful, often w. abl.; I. **34,** 2, **42,** 5, II. **8,** 5, **22,** 1, III. **1,** 3, V. **40,** 5, VII. **54,** 1. See Appendix.

ōra, ae, f., *coast, shore;* often like Eng., meaning *the inhabitants of the coast.*

ōrātiō, ōnis, f. [**ōrō**], *speech, address.*

ōrātor, ōris, m. [**ōrō**], *speaker;* **ōrātōris modō,** (in the manner of an envoy), *as an envoy.*

orbis, is, m., *circle;* **orbis terrārum,** (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean), *the world.*

Orcynia, ae, f., the way in which

Eratosthenes spelled the name of the great forest in Germany, VI. **24,** 2.

ōrdō, ōrdinis, m., *row,* VII. **23,** 5, **73,** 4, 5, 8; *rank; layer, course,* V. **51,** 4, VII. **23,** 3; *order,* II. **11,** 1, **19,** 1, **22,** 1; **prīmī ōrdinēs,** *centurions of the first rank,* V. **30,** 1, VI. **7,** 8.

Orgetorīx, īgis, m., a powerful Helvetian chief, I. **2,** 1 ff.

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, imperf. subjunct. sometimes **orerētur,** *rise, arise, begin; be descended,* II. **4,** 1, V. **12,** 2; *be born,* VII. **77,** 3; **oriēns sōl,** (rising sun), *east;* **ortā lūce,** (the light having risen), *at daybreak.*

ōrnāmentum, ī, n. [**ōrnō**], (means of equipping); *mark of honor, distinction.*

ōrnō, 1st conj., *equip; honor,* VII. **33,** 1; perf. part. as adj. in super., *thoroughly equipped.*

ōrō, 1st conj. [**ōs**], *beg, entreat.*

ortus, ūs, m. [**orior**], *rising;* **ortus sōlis,** (rising of the sun), *sunrise.*

ōs, ōris, n., (mouth); *face.*

os-, form of **ob** in **ostendō** and **ostentō.**

Osismī, ōrum, m. plu., one of the Aremorican tribe, in the extreme western part of Gaul, II. **34,** etc.,

os-tendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, (stretch toward); *show;* as military term, *display, unmask.*

ostentātiō, ōnis, f. [**ostentō**], *display; boastfulness,* VII. **53,** 3.

os-tentō, 1st conj. [intensive of **ostendō**], *display, show; produce,* V. **41,** 4.

ōtium, ī, n., *quiet.*

ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P

P., abbreviation of **Publius,** a Roman *praenomen.*

pābulātiō, ōnis, f. [**pābulor**], *foraging; foraging expedition,* VII. **16,** 3.

pābulātor, ōris, m. [**pābulor**], *forager.*

pābulor, 1st conj. [**pābulum**], *forage.*

pābulum, ī, n. [**pāscō,** *feed*], (food); *fodder,* the green or dry stalks of corn or grain, as food for animals.

pācō, 1st conj. [**pāx**], (pacify), *subdue.*

pāctus, a, um, part. of **pangō.**

Padus, ī, m., *the Po,* the great river of northern Italy, V. **24,** 4.

paene, adv., *almost.*

paeniteō, paenitēre, paenituī, ——, (make sorry, cause to repent); impers., **paenitet, paenitēre, paenituit,** *it repents,* w. acc. of person and gen. of thing, **eōs paenitet,** (it repents them), *they repent.*

pāgus, i, m., *district, canton,* a division of a Gallic or German tribe.

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, ae, f. [παλάμη], (palm of the hand; palm tree); **palmae ramīque,** hendiadys, *palm branches.*

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp.*

palūster, tris, tre [**palūs**], *marshy, swampy.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passum, *spread;* **passīs manibus,** *with outstretched hand;* **passīs capillīs,** *with streaming hair.*

(**pangō, pangere,**) **pepigī, pāctum,** *agree,* VII. **50,** 2. Neut. of perf. part. as subst., (a thing agreed upon, method), *manner,* VII. **83,** 5.

pār, paris, adj., *equal; same;* **parēs pūgnandī,** *equal in fighting ability*, V. **34,** 2; **par atque,** *the same as*, I. **28,** 5, V. **13,** 2.

parātus, a, um, part. of **parō.**

parcē, adv., no super. [**parcus,** *sparing*, cf. **parcō**], *sparingly.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī (parsī), parsūrus, *spare;* w. dat.

parēns, entis, c. [**pariō**], *parent; father*, V. **14,** 4.

parentō, 1st conj. (no perf.) [**parēns**], (make sacrifice in honor of dead parents); *take revenge* (for), *revenge;* w. dat.

pareō, parēre, paruī, ——, *obey;* w. dat.

pariō, parere, peperī, partum (paritūrus), (give birth to, bring forth); *gain, acquire.*

Parīsiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe upon the Seine, whose chief city was Lutetia, now Paris; VI. **3,** 4, etc.

parō, 1st conj., *prepare, get ready; purchase*, IV. **2,** 2; *procure*, V. **55,** 3; *acquire*, VI. **22,** 3. Perf. part. usually as adj., *prepared, ready;* compar. *better prepared, more ready*, I. **5,** 3; super. *perfectly ready, quite ready*, I. **41,** 2.

pars, partis, f., *part;* often when acc. after preps. **ad** and **in,** and not modified by a gen., *direction;* e.g. **in utram partem,** *in which direction*, I. **12,** 1; often w. **ab** and **ex,** *side*, e.g. **unā ex parte,** *on one side*, I. **2,** 3.

partim, adv. [old. acc. of **pars**], *partly.*

partior, partīrī, partītus sum [**pars**], *divide.*

partus, a, um, part. of **pariō.**

parum, adv. [cf. **parvus**], *too little, not enough;* compar. **minus,** *less;* super. **minimē,** *least*, II. **33,** 2; *very little*, VI. **29,** 1; *not at all*, III. **19,** 6; **minimē saepe,** (not at all often), *very seldom;* **minimē fīrmus,** (least firm), *weakest.*

parvulus, a, um [dimin. of **parvus**], (very little), *slight*, V. **52,** 1; **parvulum proelium,** *skirmish;* **ab parvulīs,** *from boyhood; very young*, VI. **28,** 4.

parvus, a, um, *little, small, slight;* w. **pretium,** *low;* compar. **minor, minus,** *less, smaller;* neut. as subst., w. part. gen., *less;* super. **minimus,** *least;* neut. acc. sing. as adv., **minimum posse,** *have very little power*, I. **20,** 2.

passim, adv. [**pandō**], *in all directions.*

passus, a, um, part. of **pandō,** I. **51,** 3, II. **13,** 3, VII. **47,** 5, **48,** 3; elsewhere part. of **patior.**

passus, ūs, m. [**pandō**], *pace*, with the Romans a double step, a little less than five English feet; **mīlle passūs** or **passuum,** (a thousand paces), a Roman *mile.*

pate-faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, pass. **pate-fīō, fierī, factus sum,** (make to be open), *open.*

patens, entis, part. of **pateō.**

pateō, patēre, patuī, ——, (lie open), *be open*, VI. **23,** 9, VII. **8,** 3; *extend.* Pres. part. as adj., *open.*

pater, patris, m. [πατήρ], *father.*

patienter, adv. [**patiēns,** pres. part. of **patior**], *patiently.*

patientia, ae, f. [**patiēns,** pres. part. of **patior**], *patient endurance*, VI.

24, 4; *patient waiting, forbearance*, VI. **36,** 2.

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer*, in any sense; *allow; endure*, II. **31,** 6, VII. **30,** 4; *stand*, V. **10,** 2.

patrius, a, um [**pater**], (of a father); *ancestral.*

patrōnus, ī, m. [**pater**], *protector, patron.*

patruus, ī, m. [**pater**], (father's brother), *uncle* on the father's side.

paucitās, tātis, f. [**paucus**], (smallness), *small numbers; small number*, III. **9,** 4, V. **45,** 1.

paucus, a, um, rare in sing., *little, small;* plu., *few;* neut. plu. w. **respondēre,** (a few things), *briefly.*

paulātim, adv. [**paulum**], little by little), *gradually; a few at a time*, IV. **30,** 2.

paulisper, adv. [**paulum, per**], (*for*) *a little while.*

paululum, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of **paululus,** dimin. of **paulus**], *very little, very slightly.*

paulus, a, um, *little*, neut. as subst., *a little;* especially **paulum** and **paulō,** adverbial acc. and abl. of degree of difference respectively, used as adverbs, *a little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, 1st conj., (do wrong), *injure;* **peccandī causa,** *motive for injury.*

pectus, pectoris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, ae, f. [**pecus**], *property*, originally reckoned in terms of cattle; *money.*

pecus, pecoris, n., *cattle; beef*, IV. **1,** 8.

pedālis, e [**pēs**], (of a foot); *a foot thick.*

pedes, peditis, m. [**pēs**], *foot soldier;* plu., *foot soldiers, infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre [**pedes**], (*on foot*); **pedestrēs cōpiae,** *infantry;* **pedestria itinera,** *approach by land;* **pedestre proelium,** *land battle.*

peditātus, ūs, m. [**pedes**], *infantry.*

Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, II. **2,** 1, **11,** 3.

pēior, us, compar. of **malus.**

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive*, I. **31,** 11; *rout;* when connected w. **superāre,** *drive back, put to flight.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, (hang, weigh out), *pay.*

penes, prep. w. acc., *in the hands of, in the power of.*

penitus, adv., (inwardly), *far into the interior.*

per, prep. w. acc., *through*, in various senses as in Eng.; of space, *through, across, over, among;* of time, *through, during;* of agency, *through, by means of, by;* of cause, *through, because of.* **per sē,** *so far as he was concerned*, I. **42,** 1, V. **41,** 6; *on one's own responsibility*, II. **20,** 4, VI. **13,** 1; *alone*, V. **33,** 3, VI. **12,** 2, **37,** 5; *in itself, of itself*, V. **49,** 7; *separately*, VII. **59,** 2.

In comp., *through; thoroughly* (*through* and *thorough* were formerly the same in Eng., and cf. Eng. "through and through"); hence often having intensive force, especially w. adj.

per-agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, (drive through, put through); *adjourn.*

per-angustus, a, um, *very narrow.*

per-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take through); *acquire*, VI. **40,** 6; *win*, VII. **27,** 2; *hear of*, VI. **8,** 7; *hear*, V. **1,** 8.

percontātiō, ōnis, f. [**per-contor,** *inquire*], *inquiry.*

per-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** (run through), *run along, run out on.*

percussus, a, um, part. of **percutiō.**

per-cutiō, cutere, cussī, cussum [**quatiō**], (shake through); *thrust through, run through.*

per-dīscō, dīscere, didicī, ——, (learn thoroughly), *learn by heart.*

perditus, a, um, part. of **perdō.**

per-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (put through life, destroy); *ruin.* Perf. part. as adj., *outlawed, desperate;* as subst., *outcast, outlaw.*

per-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead through); *lead safely*, III. **6,** 5; *bring*, VII. **13,** 2, **67,** 7; of ships, *bring into harbor; raise*, VII. **39,** 1; of earthworks, *construct*, I. **8,** 1, etc.; *bring over; prolong*, V. **31,** 3; **rēs ad extrēmum perdūcitur,** *things are reduced to extremities.*

perendinus, a, um [**perendiē,** adv., *day after to-morrow*, from πέραν, *across*, **diēs,** *day*], *of the day after to-morrow;* **perendinus diēs,** *day after to-morrow.*

per-eō, īre, (**īvī**) **iī, itum,** (go through life); *perish.*

per-equitō, 1st conj. [**eques**], *ride through;* of chariots, *drive through.*

per-exiguus, a, um, *very small.*

per-facilis, e, *very easy.*

perfectus, a, um, part. of **perficiō.**

per-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bear through); of tidings, *bear, carry, report*, and so V. **53,** 4; *endure, submit to.*

per-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make or do through), *finish*, I. **47,** 1; *carry out, accomplish*, I. **3,** 6, VII. **37,** 6; *construct; arrange*, I. **9,** 4.

perfidia, ae, f. [**per-fidus,** *faithless*, from **fides,** *faith*], *faithlessness, perfidy, treachery;* **eādem perfidiā ūsus,** (having used the same treachery), *with the same treachery;* cf. similar use of ἔχων.

per-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum [**frangō**], *break through.*

perfuga, ae, m. [**perfugiō**], (one who has fled through the lines), *deserter.* (**prō,** *as.*)

per-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, (flee through the lines of an army), *flee, take refuge* (with); *desert, escape*, I. **27,** 3.

perfugium, i, n. [**perfugiō**], *place of refuge, refuge.*

pergō, pergere, per-rēxī, per-rēctum [**per, regō**], (keep straight on through), *proceed directly.*

perīclitor, 1st conj. [**perīculum**], *make a trial, make a test*, (**quid,** *to see what*), II. **8,** 2; *be endangered*, VI. **34,** 8; *encounter danger*, VII. **56,** 1.

perīculōsus, a, um [**perīculum**], (full of danger), *dangerous.*

perīculum, i, n. *trial, test*, I. **40,** 5; *attempt*, IV. **21,** 1; *danger.*

perītus, a, um, *skilled, experienced* (in), *familiar* (with); w. gen.

perlātus, a, um, part. of **perferō.**

per-legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum, *read through.*

per-luō, luere, luī, lūtum, *wash ;* pass. as middle, (wash themselves), *bathe.*

per-māgnus, a, um, *very great, very large.*

per-maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, (remain through quite a time), *remain, continue.*

per-mīsceō, mīscēre, mīscuī, mīxtum or **mīstum,** *mix, mingle.*

per-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go through) ; when w. dir. obj., *yield, intrust,* and so V. **11,** 8, VII. **79,** 1 ; *submit,* VII. **63,** 6 ; *permit.*

permīxtus, a, um, part. of **permīsceō.**

permōtus, a, um, part. of **permoveō.**

per-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move strongly) ; *influence. induce ; alarm, disturb.*

per-mulceō, mulcēre, mulsī, mulsum, (smooth over), *calm.*

permulsus, a, um, part of **permulceō.**

perniciēs, ēī, f., no plu., *destruction, ruin.*

per-paucus, a, um, rare in sing., *very small ;* plu., *only a very few.*

perpendiculum, ī, n. [**per-pendō,** *hang*], *plumb-line ;* **dērēctum ad perpendiculum,** *exactly perpendicularly.*

per-petior, petī, pessus sum [**patior**], *suffer, endure.*

per-petuus, a, um [**petō**], (ever seeking) ; *unbroken, continuous, perpetual ;* w. **vīta,** *whole ;* w. **controversia,** *incessant ;* **in perpetuum** (sc. **tempus**), *forever ;* abl. sing. neut. as adv. (sc. **tempore**), *forever,* I. **31,** 7; *continually,* VII. **41,** 2.

per-quīrō, quīrere, (quīsīvī), quīsītum [**quaerō**], (inquire thoroughly about), *inquire about.*

per-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, *break through ; break into, break in ; force a passage,* I. **8,** 4.

perruptus, a, um, part. of **perrumpō.**

per-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, (write carefully), *write in detail ; report,* V. **49,** 3.

per-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow up, pursue ;* **bellō persequī,** (follow one up with war), *prosecute the war,* I. **13,** 4 ; **bellō cīvitātem persequī,** *make war upon the state ; avenge,* VII. **38,** 8, 10.

per-sevērō, 1st conj. [**per-sevērus,** *very strict*], (be very strict), *persist,* a following infin. being translated by *in* w. the Eng. verbal noun in *-ing.*

per-solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, (loose ; pay in full) ; *pay.* (**poenās,** *penalty.*)

perspectus, a, um, part. of **perspiciō.**

per-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, (see through, look through) ; *see, perceive, ascertain ; look, see,* II. **17,** 4 ; *see into,* II. **18,** 2 ; *inspect, examine,* IV. **21,** 9, VII. **36,** 1, **44,** 1, **68,** 3.

per-stō, stāre, stitī, stātum, (stand through), *persist.*

per-suādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, (advise successfully), *persuade;* the name of the person persuaded is in the dat., and the thing persuaded

is represented by a neut. acc. pronoun or an object clause of purpose; e.g. **id eīs persuādēre,** (persuade this to them), *persuade them to do this;* **hōc sibi (eīs) persuadēre,** *persuade him (them) of this*, V. **29,** 5, VI. **14,** 5 ; impers. in pass., e.g. **sibi persuādētur,** (it is persuaded to him), *he is persuaded*, I. **40,** 3.

per-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum,(frighten thoroughly), *frighten, greatly alarm, demoralize;* perf. part., *panic-stricken, demoralized.*

pertinācia, ae, f. [**pertināx,** *obstinate*, from **pertineō**], *obstinacy.*

per-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, —— [**teneō**], (hold through), of actual space, *extend;* w. **ad,** *pertain* (to), *concern;* w. adv., **eōdem (illō) pertinēre,** *be along the (that) same line, be of the same nature*, I. **14,** 4 ; *be for that same end*, explained by following clause, IV. **11,** 4.

perturbātiō, ōnis, f. [**perturbō**], *excitement, alarm.*

per-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba,** *confusion*], *confuse greatly, disturb, throw into confusion;* pass., *be troubled, be in grave doubt*, IV. **14,** 2.

per-vagor, 1st conj. [**vagus,** *wandering*], (wander extensively), *scour the country.*

per-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come through), *arrive* (at), *reach; revert*, VI. **19,** 2.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot;* as a measure of length, a very little less than the standard English foot ; **pedem referre,** *retreat;* **ad pedēs dēsilīre,** *leap to the ground;* **pedibus aditus,** *approach by land;* **pedibus proeliārī,** *fight on foot.*

petītus, a, um, part. of **petō.**

petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** *seek;* w. object clause of purpose, *seek, request.*

Petrocoriī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul, about the Dordogne river, VII. **75,** 3.

Petrōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Petronius*, a brave centurion, VII. **50,** 4.

Petrosidius, ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a brave standard bearer, V. **37,** 5.

phalanx, phalangis, f., sometimes w. Greek acc. sing. **phalanga** [φάλαγξ], *phalanx*, used by Caesar to describe any close, compact formation of troops.

Pictonēs, um, m. plu., a tribe on the west coast of Gaul, south of the Loire, III. **11,** 5, etc.

pietās, tātis, f. [**pius,** *dutiful*], *devotion, loyalty.*

pīlum, i, n., *spear, javelin;* especially those used by the Romans as their line of battle and the enemy's were nearing.

pīlus, ī, m., a division of the reserves in the Roman army ; **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** *first centurion* of a legion; **prīmum pīlum dūcere,** *be first centurion* of a legion ; cf. **prīmipīlus.**

pinna, ae, f., (feather) ; *battlement, parapet.*

Pīrūstae, ārum, m. plu., a tribe in Illyricum, V. **1,** 5, 7.

piscis, is, m., *fish*, either singular or collective in sense, like Eng.

Pīsō, ōnis, m., (1) *Marcus Pupius Piso*, consul 61 B. C., I. **2,** 1, **35,** 4. (2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesonius*, consul 58 B.C., father-in-law of Caesar, I. **6,** 4, **12,** 7. (3) *Lucius*

Calpurnius Piso Caesonius, consul 112 B.C., grandfather of the last named, I. **12**, 7. (4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian noble, IV. **12**, 4.

pix, picis, f., *pitch*.

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, *please*; in Bel. Gal. always impers., *it pleases*, w. dat.; **placuit eī** (it pleased him), *he decided*; **māiōrī placuit partī,** (it pleased the greater part), *the majority thought it best*.

placidē, adv. [**placidus,** *calm*], *calmly*.

plācō, 1st conj. [cf. **placeō**], *appease*.

Plancus, i, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, a *legatus* of Caesar in the fifth year of the war, V. **24,** 3, **25,** 4.

plānē, adv. [**plānus**], *plainly*, *clearly*; *altogether*, *quite*, VI. **43,** 4.

plānitiēs, ēī, f., no plu. [**plānus**], *plain*.

plānus, a, um, *level*; *flat and broad*, III. **13,** 1.

plēbs, plēbis, and **plēbēs, plēbēī,** f., *the common people*, *populace*.

plēnē, adv. [**plēnus**], *fully*, *completely*.

plēnus, a, um [**pleō,** *fill*], *full*; w. gen., VII. **76,** 6.

plērumque, adv. [acc. sing. neut. of **plērusque**], *generally*, *usually*.

plērusque, plēraque, plērumque, regularly only in plu., *most*, *most of*; often best rendered by adverb, *generally*. Masc. plu. as subst., *most people*, IV. **5,** 3; neut. plu. as subst., *most things*, VII. **12,** 3.

Pleumoxiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae, clients of the Nervii, V. **39,** 1.

plumbum, ī, n. *lead*; **album plumbum,** (white lead), *tin*.

plūrēs, plūrimus, compar. (plu.) and super. of **multus.**

plūs, compar. of **multus.**

pluteus, ī, m., *breastwork*, *screen*, placed upon a rampart as protection to a soldier fighting there.

pōculum, ī, n., *drinking cup*.

poena, ae, f. [cf. ποινή, and **pūniō,** *punish*], *penalty*, V. **1,** 9; *punishment*; **poenās pendere** or **persolvere,** *pay the penalty*; **poenās repetere,** *seek satisfaction*.

pollex, pollicis, m., *thumb*; **digitus pollex,** (thumb finger), *thumb*.

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise*; **līberāliter pollicērī,** (promise graciously), *make gracious promise*, IV. **21,** 6.

pollicitātiō, ōnis, f. [**polliceor**], *promise*.

pollicitus, a, um, part. of **polliceor.**

Pompeius, ī, m., (1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus*, Pompey the Great, Roman statesman and soldier, born 106 B.C., member with Caesar and Crassus of the first triumvirate, consul with the latter 55 B.C., Caesar's son-in-law and rival, later conquered in battle of Pharsalus, and finally murdered in Egypt; IV. **1,** 1, VI. **1,** 2, 4, VII. **6,** 1. (2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter with Sabinus, V. **36,** 1.

pondus, ponderis, n. [**pendō,** *hang*, *weigh*], *weight*.

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*, *put*; *lay down*, IV. **37,** 1; *set aside*, VI. **17,** 5; **castra pōnere,** (pitch camp), *encamp*; perf. pass., of locations, *be situated*; **sibi praesi-**

dium pōnere, (place a defence for one's self), *take refuge.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, ōnis, f. [**populor**], *laying waste* a country.

populor, 1st conj. [NOT connected w. **populus**], *lay waste, ravage.*

populus, ī, m., *people;* used of other than the Roman people, I. **3,** 8 (*peoples, nations*), VI. **13,** 6, VII. **32,** 5.

porrēctus, a, um, part. of **porrigō.**

por-rigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctum [**prō, regō**], *reach forward, stretch, extend.* **porrēctum pertinēre,** (extend, stretched out), *extend,* II. **19,** 5.

porrō, adv. [**prō**], *furthermore.*

porta, ae, f., *gate* of a town; of a camp, *gate, entrance.*

portō, 1st conj., *carry, take, convey.*

portōrium, ī, n. [**portō**], *customs duty; tax, toll,* III. **1,** 2.

portūs, ūs, m. [**portō**], dat. and abl. plu. **portubus** or **portibus,** *harbor, port.*

pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, *demand.*

positus, a, um, part. of **pōnō.**

possessiō, ōnis, f. [**possideō** or **possīdō**], (a possessing), *possession.*

pos-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessum [**prō; sedeō,** *sit*], (sit before, have possession of), *possess,* I. **34,** 3, II. **4,** 6, VI. **12,** 4.

pos-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum [**prō; sīdō,** *settle*], (settle in front of), *take possession of,* IV. **7,** 4.

possum, posse, potuī, —— [**potis,** *able,* **sum**], *be able;* w. complementary infin., *be able to, can;* without infin., *be able to do, can do, can effect;* **multum posse,** *be powerful;* **plūrimum** or **largiter posse,** *be very powerful, be very influential;* **minimum posse,** *have very little power.*

post, (1) adv., *afterwards;* (2) prep. w. acc., of time, *after;* of place, *behind.*

post-eā, adv. [old acc. plu. neut. of **is**], (after these things), *afterwards.* **posteā quam,** as subord. conj., often written as one word, (later than), *after.*

posterus, a, um, compar. **posterior,** super. **postrēmus** and **postumus** [**post**], *next, the following;* masc. plu. as subst., *descendants, later generations,* VII. **77,** 13.

post-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place after), *lay aside,* V. **7,** 6; *disregard,* VI. **3,** 4. (**omnia,** *everything else.*)

post-quam, subord. conj., (later than), *after.*

postrēmō, adv. [abl. of **postrēmus,** super. of **posterus,** sc. **tempore**], *at last, finally.*

postrī-diē, adv. [loc. of **posterus** and **diēs**], *on the following day, the next day;* followed by **ēius diēī,** (on the following day of this day), *the next day.*

pōstulātum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **pōstulō**], (a thing demanded), *demand.*

pōstulō, 1st conj. [**pōscō**], *demand; request,* I. **31,** 9.

potēns, potentis, adj. [pres. part. of **possum**], *powerful;* compar. as subst., sing. *a more powerful man,* plu. *the more powerful;* so super. plu. as subst., *the most powerful.* VI. **22,** 4.

potentātus, ūs, m. [**potēns**], (power), *supremacy, leadership.*

potentia, ae, f. [**potēns**], *power, influence.*

potestās, tātis, f. [**potis,** *able*], (ability), *power;* **potestātem facere,** *give opportunity* or *chance,* and so I. **48,** 3, II. **6,** 3, V. **51,** 3. (**suī,** *of getting at him,* I. **40,** 8.)

potior, potīrī, potītus sum [**potis,** *able*], (make one's self powerful), *gain control, obtain possession;* w. abl. translated by *of;* also w. gen., I. **3,** 8.

potius, compar. adv. [**potis,** *able*], super. **potissimum,** *rather* (which is strictly a compar. in Eng.).

prae, prep. w. abl., (in front of, before), *in comparison with,* II. **30,** 4; *on account* of, VII. **44,** 1. In comp., *in front, before.*

prae-acuō, acuere, acuī, acūtum [**acer,** *sharp*], *sharpen in front, sharpen at the end.*

praeacūtus, a, um, part. of **praeacuō.**

praebeō, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum [**prae, habeō**], (hold before, hold out), *furnish, give.*

prae-caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum, (be on one's guard in advance), *look out.*

prae-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go ahead of), *excel, surpass.*

prae-ceps, cipitis, adj. [cf. **caput,** *head*], (head first), *headlong, precipitously;* w. **locus,** *steep.*

praeceptum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **praecipiō**], (a thing commanded), *command, direction.*

prae-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take beforehand); *order, direct.* **opīniōne praecipere,** (take beforehand in thought), *anticipate.*

praecipitō, 1st conj. [**praeceps**], *fling headlong.*

praecipuē, adv. [**praecipuus**], *especially.*

prae-cipuus, a, um [**capiō**], (taking the first place), *especial.*

prae-clūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsum [**claudō**], (close in advance), *close.*

praecō, ōnis, m. [**prae; vocō,** *call*], (one who calls in front), *herald.*

Praecōnīnus, ī, m., *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* a Roman *legatus,* of whom nothing is known beyond Caesar's statement in III. **20,** 1.

prae-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** (run ahead), *hasten ahead; anticipate,* VII. **9,** 4.

praeda, ae, f., *booty, spoil, plunder.*

prae-dicō, 1st conj., *set forth,* IV. **34,** 5; *declare; boast* (**multa,** *a great deal*), I. **44,** 1.

praedor, 1st conj. [**praeda**], *obtain booty, plunder.*

prae-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead in front), *construct.*

praefectus, ī, m. [masc. of perf. part. of **praeficiō**], (one put in command), *commander,* especially a *prefect* of the cavalry, commanding a battalion.

prae-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, (bear in front), *consider to surpass;* w. reflex., *outdo, surpass,* II. **27,** 2.

prae-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (put in front), *put* (some one) *in command* (of); w. dat.

prae-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum, (fix in front), *drive in front.*

prae-metuō, metuere, ——, ——, (fear before), *be anxious.*

prae-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send ahead, forward,* or *in advance.*

praemium, ī, n. [for **prae-emium,** from **emō,** *take*], (something taken in advance, an advantage), *reward.*

prae-occupō, 1st conj., *seize in advance.*

prae-optō, 1st conj., *choose in preference, choose.*

prae-parō, 1st conj., *get ready beforehand, prepare in advance.*

prae-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, (place in front), *place* (some one) *in command* (of); w. dat.

prae-rumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum, (break in front), *break;* pass., *part.* Perf. part. as adj., w. **loca,** *steep;* w. **rīpa,** *abrupt, steep.*

prae-saepiō, saepīre, saepsī, saeptum [**saepēs,** *hedge*], (hedge in front), *cut off.*

prae-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, (write in advance), *dictate.*

praescrīptum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **praescrībō**], (a thing dictated), *dictation.*

praesēns, entis, pres. part. of **praesum.**

praesentia, ae, f. [**praesēns**], (a being at hand), *presence,* V. **43,** 4.

praesentia, neut. plu. of **praesēns.**

prae-sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive in advance.*

prae-sertim, adv. [**serō,** *join*], (joined in advance), *especially.*

praesidium, i, n. [**prae-sideō,** *sit in front of, guard*], *garrison* for a fortification; *guard;* **praesidiō esse,** (be for a guard), *guard,* w. another dat.; *assistance,* V. **41,** 5, VI. **14,** 4; *protection,* VI. **5,** 7, VII. **10,** 1, **38,** 9; **sibi praesidium pōnere,** (place a defence for one's self), *take refuge.*

prae-stō, stāre, stitī, stitum, (stand before); intrans., w. abl. of specification, *be superior, excel;* impers., *it is better;* trans., *show, exhibit, possess,* IV. **33,** 3; w. **officium,** *do.*

praestō, adv., *at hand;* **praestō esse,** *be waiting.*

prae-sum, esse, fuī, ——, (be in front), *be at the head* (of), *be in charge* (of), *be in command* (of), w. dat. Pres. part., **praesēns, entis,** *being present;* **plūribus praesentibus,** abl. abs., (more being present), *in the presence of others,* I. **18,** 1, and similarly in each abl. abs.; as adj., *present; immediate; in person,* VII. **62,** 2; neut. plu. as subst. in phrase **in praesentia** (sc. **tempora**), *for the present.*

praeter, prep. w. acc. (beyond); *past,* I. **48,** 2; *contrary to,* III. **3,** 2, VI. **8,** 6, **40,** 8, VII. **61,** 3; *except, besides.*

praeter-eā, adv. [old acc. neut. plu. of **is**], *besides this, besides, moreover.*

praeter-eō, īre, (**īvī**) **iī, itum,** (go past), *pass over.* Perf. part. as adj., (gone past), *past;* neut. plu. as subst., (the things gone past, "bygones"), *the past.*

praeteritus, a, um, part. of **praetereō.**

praeter-mitto, mittere, mīsī, missum, (let go past, let slip), *lose.*

praeter-quam, prep. w. acc., (other than), *besides, except.*

praetor, ōris, m. [for **prae-itor,** from **prae-eō**], (one who goes ahead,

commander); **lēgātus prō praetōre,** (lieutenant as commander), *lieutenant general.*

praetōrius, a, um [praetor], relating to a *praetor;* **praetōria cohors,** *praetorian cohort, general's guard, bodyguard.*

prae-ūrō, ūrere, ūssī, ūstum, (burn in front), *burn at the end, burned to a point.*

prae-vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, (turn in advance), *anticipate, forestall.*

prāvus, a, um, *bad, vicious.*

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press;* in military expressions, *press hard; weigh down, oppress;* **quibus angustiīs Caesar premitur,** (in what straits Caesar is pressed), *how hard pressed Caesar is,* III. **18,** 3; **ipsōs sē premere,** *embarrass each other,* VII. **28,** 3.

prēndō, prēndere, prēndī, prēnsum [contracted from **prehendō**], *grasp, seize.*

pretium, ī, n., *price.*

prex, precis, f., generally plu., *prayer, entreaty; curse, imprecation,* VI. **31,** 5.

prīdiē, adv. [a form of the stem of **prior,** and loc. abl. of **diēs,** cf. **postrīdiē**], *on the preceding day, the day before;* w. **ēius diēī,** (on the preceding day of this day), *the day before.*

prīmi-pīlus, ī, m. [compound noun formed from **prīmus pīlus,** see **pīlus**], *first centurion.*

prīmō, adv. [abl. of **prīmus,** sc. **tempore**], *at first.*

prīmum, adv. [acc. of **prīmus**], *first, in the first place.* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible;* **cum prīmum,** (when first), *as soon as.*

prīmus, a, um, super. of **prior.**

prīnceps, cipis, adj. [**prīmus, capiō**], (taking first place), *first,* I. **7,** 3, **12,** 6, **41,** 2, VII. **2,** 1; masc. as subst., *leader, chief.*

prīncipātus, ūs, m. [**prīnceps**], *leadership, supremacy;* of an individual in a state, *foremost position.*

prior, prius, compar. adj. [formed on a stem of **prae** and **prō**], *former; first,* VII. **82,** 3; **priōrēs īnferre,** *be the first to wage,* IV. **7,** 3; masc. plu. as subst., *those in front, the foremost,* II. **11,** 5; super. **prīmus, a, um,** *first;* having partitive force, w. **nox, impedīmenta, obsidiō, fīnēs,** *the first part of, the first of;* masc. plu. as subst., *leaders, chiefs;* **in prīmīs,** (among the first), *especially.*

prīstinus, a, um [for **prius-tinus,** cf. **prior** and **teneō**], *former, earlier;* w. **diēs,** *previous.*

prius, compar. adv. [**prior**], *earlier, sooner;* **prius quam, priusquam,** subord. conj., (earlier than, sooner than), *before.*

prīvātim, adv. [**prīvātus**], *privately, individually; as private citizens,* I. **17,** 1.

prīvātus, a, um [part. of **prīvō,** *deprive*], (apart from the state), *personal, private;* masc. as subst., *individual, person,* VI. **13,** 6.

prō, prep. w. abl., of place, *before, in front of;* of defence or protection, *in behalf of, for;* of substitution, *in place of, instead of, as, for;* of relation, *in proportion to, in accordance with.* In comp., *forth, before.*

probō, 1st conj. [**probus,** *estimable*], *prove*, I. **3,** 6, V. **44,** 3; *approve*, *approve of*.

prō-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go forward), *advance, proceed*.

prō-clīnō, 1st conj., (lean forward), *start*.

prō-cōnsul, ulis, m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul sent from Rome at the end of his term to govern a province.

procul, adv., *at a distance, far off; from a distance*, IV. **12,** 6, V. **34,** 3, VI. **39,** 4.

prō-cumbō, cumbere, cubuī, cubitum [cf. **cubō**], *lie down*, VI. **27,** 1; *fall, throw one's self*, VII. **15,** 4; *incline, bend forward*, IV. **17,** 4; *sink to the earth*, II. **27,** 1; *be beaten down*, VI. **43,** 3.

prō-cūrō, 1st conj., (care for in advance, look out for), *attend to*.

prō-currō, currere, cucurrī or **currī, cursum,** *run forward; rush out*.

prōd-, a form of **prō** in comp. before vowels.

prōd-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, (go forth), *come out; advance*, I. **48,** 7.

prōdesse, infin. of **prōsum.**

prōditiō, ōnis, f. [**prōdō**], (a betraying), *treason, treachery*.

prōditor, ōris, m. [**prōdō**], *traitor*.

prō-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (give forth); *give out*, VI. **20,** 3; *hand down; betray*, IV. **25,** 3.

prō-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead forth, bring out; prolong*, IV. **30,** 2.

proelior, 1st conj. [**proelium**], *fight*.

proelium, ī, n., *battle*.

profectiō, ōnis, f. [**proficīscor**], *departure*.

prōfectus, a, um, part. of **prōficiō,** IV. **19,** 4.

profectus, a, um, part. of **proficīscor.**

prō-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bring forth, bring out*.

prō-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make forth, make out), *accomplish, effect*.

pro-ficīscor, ficīscī, fectus sum [**prōficiō**], *set out, depart*.

pro-fiteor, fitērī, fessus sum [**fateor**], (confess openly), *declare; signify*, VI. **23,** 7.

prō-flīgo, 1st conj., (strike to the ground), *rout, put to flight*.

prō-fluō, fluere, fluxī, ——, (flow forth), *rise*.

pro-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, (flee forth), *flee, escape*.

prō-gnātus, a, um [part. of **(g)nāscor,** *be born*], (born from), *sprung, descended*.

prō-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior,** *step*], (go forth), *advance*.

prōgressus, a, um, part. of **prōgredior.**

pro-hibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitum [**habeō**], (hold forth from anything); w. acc. and infin., *prevent*, the infin. being translated by *from* with the verbal noun in *-ing*, e.g. **prohibēre Teutonōs ingredī,** *prevent the Teutons from entering*, II. **4,** 2; so also w. acc. and an abl. of separation of a verbal noun in which the acc. represents the subject of the verbal idea, *prevent*, e.g. **exercitum itinere prohibēre,** *prevent the army from marching;* w. acc. and abl. of any other nouns than the above, *keep*,

cut off; protect, V. **21**, 1, VI., **10**, 5. **23**, 9; when without an abl. or an infin., *check*, *stop*, I. **6**, 1, **8**, **2**, **47**, 6, V. **9**, 3.

prō-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **prōjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw forward), *throw*, *cast; betray*, II. **15**, 5.

pro-inde, adv., (thenceforward), *hence*, *therefore*.

prō-mineō, minēre, minuī, ——, *lean forward*.

prō-mīscuē, adv. [**prō-mīscuus,** from **mīsceō,** *mix*], *all together*, *promiscuously*.

prōmissus, a, um, part. of **prōmittō.**

prō-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *let go forth*. Perf. part. as adj. w. **capillus,** *long*, *flowing*.

prōmō, prōmere, prōmpsī, prōmptum [contracted from **pro-emō**], *take out*. Perf. part. as adj., *ready*, *quick*, *prompt*.

prō-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move forward*.

prōmptus, a, um, part. of **prōmō.**

prōmunturium, ī, n. [**prōmineō**], (projection), *headland*, *promontory*.

prōnē, adv. [**prōnus,** *inclined*, cf. πρανής], *inclined*.

prō-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius**], (announce forth), *announce*, *declare; give orders*, V. **33**, 3, **34**, 1, 3.

prope, adv. and prep., compar. **propius,** super. **proximē** [**propior**], *near;* of degree, *nearly*, *almost;* super., *last*.

prō-pellō, pellere, pulī, pulsum, (drive forth), *drive off*, *drive back*.

properō, 1st conj. [**properus,** *quick*], *hurry*, *hasten*.

propinquitās, tātis, f. [**propinquus**], (nearness), *proximity; relationship*, *kinship*, II. **4**, 4.

propinquus, a, um [**prope**], *near;* w. **dēspectus,** *close*. Masc. as subst., *relative*, *kinsman;* fem., *female relative*, I. **18**, 7.

propior, us, compar. adj. [cf. **prope**], *nearer;* super. **proximus,** *nearest;* of time, *next; last*, VII. **32**, 4, **67**, 7.

propius, adv., compar. of **prope.**

prō-pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *set forth*, *disclose*, *explain; raise*, *display*, II. **20**, 1; w. **praemia,** *promise; place before*, VII. **15**, 2; *propose*, VII. **47**, 1; *present*, IV. **17**, 2, VII. **14**, 9.

prōpositus, a, um, part. of **prōpōnō.**

proprius, a, um [**prope**], (one's own), *private*, VI. **22**, 2; *characteristic*, VI. **23**, 2.

propter, prep. w. acc. [**prope**], *on account of*.

propter-eā, adv. [old case form of **is**], (on account of this), *on this account;* **propterea quod,** (on this account, because), *because*.

prōpūgnātor, ōris, m. [**prōpūgnō**], *defender*.

prō-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna,** *fight*], (fight an enemy forth, make sallies in defence); *make sallies* or *sorties;* pres. part. as subst., *defender*, VII. **86**, 5.

prō-pulsō, 1st conj. [intensive of **prōpellō**], *drive off*, *drive back*, I. **49**, 4; *defend one's self against*, VI. **15**, 1.

prōra, ae, f. [**prō**; cf. πρῴρα, from πρό], *prow*, *bow*.

prō-ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, *throw down, demolish.*

prō-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, (follow forth), *follow up, pursue;* **līberāliter ōrātiōne prōsequī,** *dismiss with gracious words.*

prōspectus, ūs, m. [**prōspiciō**], *view, outlook; sight,* V. **10,** 2.

pro-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look out, provide* (for), w. dat. or purpose clause.

prō-sternō, sternere, strāvī, strātum, (strew forth), *overthrow.*

prō-sum, prōd-esse, prō-fuī, (prōfutūrus), (be for), *be advantageous, be of advantage.*

prō-tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, (cover in defence), *cover.*

prō-terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *frighten off; drive off.*

prō-tinus, adv. [**tenus,** *as far as*], (so far forth), *forthwith, immediately.*

prō-turbō, 1st conj. [**turba,** *crowd*], *throw into confusion,* II. **19,** 7; *frighten, drive,* VII. **81,** 2.

prōvectus, a, um, part. of **prōvehō.**

prō-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, *bear forth* on any vehicle; pass., (be borne forth), *drive,* V. **8,** 2; *put to sea,* IV. **28,** 3.

prō-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come forward.*

prōventus, ūs, m. [**prōveniō**], (a coming forth), *outcome, result.*

prō-videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *foresee,* II. **22,** 1; *provide, make provision;* pass. often impersonal, **prōvidētur,** *provision is made.*

prō-vincia, ae, f. [**vincō,** *conquer*], (a conquered region beyond the borders of a country), *province;* especially *the Province,* meaning *Transalpine Gaul,* the southeastern part of modern France.

prōvinciālis, e [**prōvincia**], *of the province.*

prōvīsus, a, um, part. of **prōvideō.**

prō-volō, 1st conj., (fly forth), *rush out.*

proximē, adv., super. of **prope.**

proximus, a, um, super. of **propior.**

prūdentia, ae, f. [**prūdens,** for **prōvidēns,** from **prōvideō**], *foresight, prudence.*

Ptiāniī, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe, of whose location nothing is known, III. **27,** 1.

pūbēs, pūberis, adj., *full grown.* Masc. as subst., *adult.*

pūblicē, adv. [**pūblicus**], *officially; as a state,* IV. **3,** 1.

pūblicō, 1st conj. [**pūblicus**], (make public), *confiscate.*

pūblicus, a, um [**populus**], (of the the people); *public;* **pūblicum cōnsilium,** *official action;* **in pūblicum,** *publicly,* VI. **28,** 3; *into the streets,* VII. **26,** 3; **in pūblicō,** *in public;* **rēs pūblica,** *the state,* especially Rome; *state affairs,* I. **34,** 1, VI. **20,** 1, 3.

Pūblius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

pudet, pudēre, puduit or **puditum est,** impers., *it shames* anyone, w. acc. of person expressed or understood; hence, *be ashamed.*

pudor, ōris, m. [**pudet**], (shame), *sense of shame.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy.*

puerīlis, e [**puer**], *of a boy;* **puerīlis aetās,** *boyhood.*

pūgna, ae, f., (hand to hand encounter), *fight, battle.*

pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna**], *fight.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, compar. **pulchrior,** super. **pulcherrimus,** *beautiful; glorious,* VII. **77,** 13.

Pullō, ōnis, m., a brave centurion, V. **44,** 1, 13.

pulsus, a, um, part. of **pellō.**

pulsus, ūs, m. [**pellō,** *drive*], (a driving); *working.*

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

pūrgō, 1st conj. [for **pūrigō,** from **pūrus,** *pure,* **agō,** *drive*], (cleanse); *excuse.* Perf. part. as adj., *blameless, clear.*

putō, 1st conj., (reckon); *think.*

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um [Πυρηναῖος], w. **montēs,** *the Pyrenees.*

Q

Q., abbreviation for **Quīntus,** a Roman *praenomen.*

qua, neut. plu. of **quī** (indef.), II. **14,** 6.

quā, rel. adv. [abl. of **quī,** sc. **viā** or **parte**], *where,* I. **6,** 1, **8,** 4, **10,** 3, **38,** 5, II. **33,** 2, etc.

quadrāgēnī, ae, a, gen. **um,** distrib. adj. [**quadrāgintā**], *forty* (each).

quadrāgintā, indeclin. card. adj. [**quattuor**], *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, gen. **um,** card. adj. [**quattuor, centum**], *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī or **quaesiī, quaesītum,** *inquire, ask; inquire for, ask for,* II. **21,** 6; *seek,* VII. **37,** 6.

quaestiō, ōnis, f. [for **quaesitiō,** from **quaerō**], (inquiry), *investigation, examination.*

quaestor, ōrīs, m. [for **quaesitor,** from **quaerō**], *quaestor,* the pay and quarter master of a Roman army.

quaestus, ūs, m. [for **quaesitus,** from **quaerō**], (a seeking); *acquisition, gain.*

quālis, e, interrog. adj., *of what sort? what?*

quam, adv. [case form of **quis, quī**], after any compar., *than;* after **praestat** and **mālō,** verbs implying comparison, *rather than, than;* before super., *as* (meaning of modified word in positive) *as possible,* or *the* (meaning of modified word in super.) *possible*—e.g. **quam māximus,** *as great as possible* or *the greatest possible,* I. **3,** 1; before positive of adj., *how,* I. **43,** 6, 7, VII. **54,** 3; **quam diū,** *as long as.*

quamquam, sub. conj., *although.*

quam-vīs, adv. [**quīvīs**], (however you wish), *however, no matter how,* IV. **2,** 5. See also **quīvīs.**

quandō, adv., (when?); indefinite after **sī** (like **quis**), *ever,* III. **12,** 3.

quantus, a, um, w. subj. in ind. question, *how great;* **tantus—quantus,** *as much—as;* without **tantus** expressed, *as much as, as far as;* neut. as subst. w. gen. of the whole, **quantum bonī,** *how much advantage,* I. **40,** 6, **quantum agrī,** *as much land as,* VI. **22,** 2; **quantō opere (quantopere),** *how much, how greatly,* II. **5,** 2; followed by **tantō opere (tantopere),** *as much as—so much,* VII. **52,** 3.

quantus-vīs, quanta-vīs, quantum-vīs [**vīs,** 2d pers. of **volō**], (as great as you wish), w. **cōpiās,** *any forces however great,* V. **28,** 4.

quārē, quā rē, see **rēs.**
quārtus, a, um [**quattuor**], ord. adj., *fourth.*
qua-si, subord. conj. [**quam, sī**], *as if.*
quattuor, indeclin. card. adj., *four.*
quattuor-decim [**decem**], indeclin. card. adj., *fourteen.*
-que, enclitic coörd. conj., *and;* appended to the word or to the first word (usually) of a phrase or clause which it connects.
quendam, acc. sing. masc. of **quīdam.**
queror, querī, questus sum, intrans., *complain;* trans., *complain of; lament,* I. **39,** 4, VII. **63,** 8.
questus, a, um, part. of **queror.**
quī, quae, quod, gen. **cūius,** etc., (1) rel. pro. as subst., nom. *who, which,* poss. *whose,* obj. *whom, which; that;* neut. w. antecedent omitted, *what;* as adj., *which.* (2) interrog. pro. as adj., *what.*
quī, quae or **qua, quod,** indef. pro., generally used as adj., *any, anyone,* usually after **sī, nisi, nē, num** or a rel. pro. **Sī quī,** etc., *whatever,* VI. **32,** 2, VII. **28,** 1, **67,** 4.
quicquam, neut. of **quisquam.**
quī-cunque, quae-cunque, quod-cunque, indef. rel. pro., *whoever, whichever, whatever;* obj. case in Eng., *whomsoever.*
quid, neut. of **quis.**
quī-dam, quae-dam, quid-dam (subst.) or **quod-dam** (adj.), indef. pro., as subst., *a certain one, a certain thing,* plu. *certain ones, certain things;* as adj., *a certain,* plu. *certain.*
quidem, adv., *indeed, at least,* emphasizing a preceding word; **nē — quidem,** *not even,* emphasizing the intervening word.
quiēs, ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum [**quiēs**], *rest.* Perf. part. as adj., *quiet, peaceful.*
quiētus, a, um, part. of **quiēscō.**
quīn [**quī,** old abl., **ne,** negative particle], (1) subord. conj. w. subjunct., (so that not), *but that;* preceded by expressed or implied negation, *that;* **temperāre quīn exeant,** *refrain from passing out,* I. **33,** 4; similarly, I. **47,** 2, II. **3,** 5; **recusāre quīn contendant,** *refuse to contend,* IV. **7,** 3; *than that,* VII. **44,** 4. (2) coörd. conj., **quīn etiam,** *moreover.*
quī-nam, quae-nam, quid-nam, gen. **cūius-nam,** etc., interrog. adj. pro., giving sarcastic force, *what, now? what, pray?*
quīncūnx, ūncis, f. [**quīnque; ūncis,** *twelfth*], (five twelfths); *the five-spot on dice;* **in quīncūncem,** *alternately,* so that if objects are arranged in three parallel rows those in the middle row will be opposite the spaces in the others.
quīn-decim [**decem**], indeclin. card. adj., *fifteen.*
quīn-gentī, ae, a [**centum**], card. adj., *five hundred.*
quīnī, ae, a [**quīnque**], distrib. adj., *five each; five each day,* I. **15,** 5.
quīnquāgintā [**quīnque**], indeclin. card. adj., *fifty.*
quīnque, indeclin. card. adj., *five.*
quīntus, a, um [**quīnque**], ord. adj., *fifth.*
Quīntus, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*
quī-piam, quae-piam, quod-piam,

gen. **cūius-piam,** etc., indef. adj. pro., *any*, V. **35,** 1.

quis, ——, **quid,** gen. **cūius,** etc. (1) interrog. pro., generally subst., *who? what? whose? whom?* Neut. acc. sing. used adverbially, *why?* I. **40,** 4, VI. **35,** 8. (2) indef. pro., generally subst., *anyone*, *anything*, usually after **sī, nisi, nē, num,** or a pro.; **sī quī,** *whoever*, VII. **29,** 3.

quis-piam, ——, **quid-piam,** gen. **cūius-piam,** etc., indef. subst. pro., *anyone*, *anything*, VI. **17,** 5.

quis-quam, ——, **quid-quam** (subst.) or **quod-quam** (adj.), gen. **cūius-quam,** etc., indef. pro., *anyone*, *anything; any* (at all).

quis-que, quae-que, quid-que (subst.) or **quod-que** (adj.), indef. pro., *each one*, *each*.

quis-quis, quae-quae, quid-quid, gen. **cūius-cūius,** etc., indef. pro., *whoever*, *whatever*.

quī-vīs, quae-vīs, quod-vīs, gen. **cūius-vīs,** etc., indef. adj. pro. [**vīs,** 2d pers. sing. of **volō**], (any you wish), *any—whatever*, II. **31,** 6, III. **13,** 3, IV. **2,** 5.

quō, abl. of **quis** and **quī.**

quō, adv. [old dat. of **quis, quī**], interrog. or rel., *whither;* less exactly in common English, *where;* indef. after **sī** (like **quis, quī**), *to any point*, *anywhere*, I. **48,** 7.

quō, subord. conj. [abl. of **quī,** (measure of difference), = **ut eō**], *that*, *in order that*, generally introducing purpose clauses in which there is a comparative. **quō minus,** *that not*, *in order that not; so that not*, IV. **22,** 4; **recusāre quō minus sint,** *refuse to be*, I. **31,** 7; **terrēre quō minus hostēs insequantur,** *prevent the enemy from pursuing*, VII. **49,** 2.

quo-ad, subord. conj., (up to the time that), *as long as*, IV. **12,** 5; *until.*

quod [acc. of **quī**], (in respect to which); (1) subord. conj., *because; the fact that*, *that; in regard to the fact that.* **propterea quod,** (on this account, because), *because.* (2) when followed by **sī,** coörd. conj., *but*, *and*, *moreover*, *however*, acording to the sense. See also **quī.**

quoniam, subord. conj. [**quom,** old form of **cum,** *when*, *since;* **iam,** *already*], *since.*

quoque, adv., *also*, following emphasized word.

quōque, abl. of **quisque,** V. **33,** 3, VII. **22,** 1, **36,** 4.

quō-que, i.e. **et quō,** VII. **83,** 5.

quōque, adv. [old dat. of **quisque,** cf. **quō** (adv.), from **quis, quī**], only in phrase **quōque versus,** (turned each way), *in every direction*, III. **23,** 2, VII. **4,** 5, **14,** 5.

quot, indeclin. interrog. adj., *how many.*

quot-annīs, adv. [**quot,** *each;* **annus,** *year*], *every year*, *annually.*

quotiēns, adv. [**quot**], *how many times*, *how often*, I. **43,** 7; *as often as*, V. **34,** 2.

R

rādīx, īcis, f., *root*, VI. **27,** 4; w **collis,** *foot-hill;* w. **mōns,** *spur.*

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, (scrape), *shave.*

raeda, ae, f. [Celtic], *wagon*, a travelling-carriage with four wheels.

rāmus, ī, m. *branch;* **palmae rāmīque,** hendiadys, *palm branches.*

rapiditās, tātis, f. [**rapidus,** *swift,* from **rapiō,** *snatch*], *swiftness.*

rapīna, ae, f. [**rapiō,** *snatch*], *plundering.*

rārus, a, um, (of loose texture); plu., *scattered, in small groups.*

rāsus, a, um, part. of **rādō.**

ratiō, ōnis, f. [**reor,** *reckon*], *a reckoning,* I. **29,** 1; *calculation,* I. **40,** 8, VII. **16,** 3, **71,** 4, **75,** 1; *account,* V. **30,** 2, VI. **14,** 3, **19,** 2; *method,* I. **40,** 9, III. **14,** 3, VII. **21,** 1, **37,** 6; *system,* in this sense only in nom.; *regard,* V. **27,** 7, VII. **71,** 3; *consideration,* II. **10,** 5; *reason,* I. **28,** 4; *manner,* in this sense only in abl. of manner; *plan,* VI. **33,** 5, VII. **63,** 4; *measure,* VII. **71,** 9.

ratis, is, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe north of the Helvetii, on both sides of the Rhine, I. **5,** 4, etc.

re-, red-, inseparable particle (i.e. used only in comp.), *back, again.*

rebelliō, ōnis, f. [cf. **rebellō**], *renewal of hostilities, rebellion.*

(**re-bellō,** 1st conj. [**bellum**], *make war again, renew a war.* Not in text of Bel. Gal.)

re-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go back), *withdraw.*

recēns, entis, adj., *recent;* of troops, *fresh, rested.*

re-cēnseō, cēnsēre, cēnsuī, ——, (reëstimate), *review.*

receptāculum, ī, n. [**receptō,** intensive of **recipiō**], *place of refuge, retreat.*

receptus, a, um, part. of **recipiō.**

receptus, ūs, m. [**recipio**], *retreat; refuge,* VI. **9,** 2 (**ad,** among).

recēssus, ūs, m. [**recēdō**], (withdrawal), *opportunity of retreat.*

re-cidō, cidere, cidī, cāsum [**cadō**], (fall back), *happen; be reduced,* V. **48,** 1.

re-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take back), *regain,* VII. **13,** 3; **sē recipere,** (recover one's self), *recover,* II. **12,** 1, IV. **27,** 1, **34,** 1, VII. **12,** 6; *receive;* **sē recipere,** except as above, (take one's self back), *retreat,* and so without **sē,** I. **48,** 7, VII. **52,** 1; *withdraw,* VII. **71,** 8.

re-citō, 1st conj., *read aloud.*

re-clīnō, 1st conj., (bend back), *lean.* (**ad eōs** or **hūc,** *against these.*)

rēctē, adv. [**rēctus**], (rightly), *safely,* VII. **6,** 4; *bravely,* VII. **80,** 5.

rēctus, a, um, part. of **regō.**

re-cuperō, 1st conj. [cf. **recipiō**], *regain, recover.*

re-cūsō, 1st conj. [**causa**], (give back a reason); *refuse* (**quīn contendant,** *to fight,* **quo minus essent,** *to be*); *object,* V. **6,** 2; *decline, spurn,* I. **44,** 5.

red- form of **re-** in comp.

redāctus, a, um, part. of **redigō.**

redditus, a, um, part. of **reddō.**

red-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], (give back), *return; grant,* VI. **13,** 7; *render,* II. **5,** 5, in different sense, VII. **90,** 8; *give,* VI. **16,** 3.

redēmptus, a, um, part. of **redimō.**

red-eō, īre, īvi or **iī, itum,** (go back), *return; be referred,* VI. **11,** 3; *slope back,* II. **8,** 3.

red-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**],

(drive back), *reduce; render*, VI. **27,** 5, IV. **3,** 4; *bring*, II. **34,** V. **29,** 4.

red-imō, imere, ēmī, ēmptum, [**emō**], (buy back), *purchase ; buy up*, *farm*, I. **18,** 3.

red-integrō, 1st conj. [**integer,** *untouched*], (render whole again) ; *renew*, *restore*, *revive.*

reditiō, ōnis, f. [**redeō**], *returning*, *return.*

reditus, ūs, m. [**redeō**], *return.*

Redonēs, um, m. plu., a tribe in western Gaul, near or on the coast, II. **34,** VII. **75,** 4.

re-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead back ; bring*, *draw*, *move back ; extend back*, VII. **72,** 2.

refectus, a, um, part. of **reficiō.**

re-ferō, ferre, ret-tulī, re-lātum, *bring back*, V. **58,** 6 ; *carry back*, IV. **28,** 2 ; *bring*, VI. **28,** 3 ; *report; turn over*, I. **29,** 1, VII. **88,** 4 ; **pedem referre,** (draw back the foot), *retreat ;* **grātiam referre,** *make return.*

reficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (make again), *repair*, *rebuild ;* w. **sē, exercitum,** *refresh.*

refrāctus, a, um, part. of **refringō.**

re-fringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctum, (break back), *break; break open*, II. **33,** 6.

re-fugiō, fugere, fūgī, ——, (flee back), *retreat in flight; escape*, VII. **31,** 3.

Rēgīnus, ī, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. **1,** 1, etc.

regiō, ōnis, f. [**regō**], (direction) ; *region*, *district ; tract*, VII. **13,** 3 ; **rēctā regiōne,** *in a straight line*, VII. **46,** 1 ; w. gen., *parallel* (to), VI. **25,** 2 ; **ē regiōne,** w. gen., *opposite.*

rēgius, a, um [**rēx**], *royal*, *kingly.*

rēgnō, 1st conj. [**rēgnum**], *rule*, intrans.

rēgnum, ī, n. [**regō**], *royal power ; control*, I. **3,** 4; *government*, II. **1,** 4 ; *kingdom*, V. **26,** 2, **38,** 1, **54,** 2.

regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, (rule), *control*, III. **13,** 6 ; *conduct*, VI. **17,** 2. Perf. part. as adj., (ruled), *straight ;* **rēctā regiōne,** *in a straight line*, VII. **46,** 1 ; w. gen., *parallel* (to), VI. **25,** 2.

rē-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **rējiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum,** *throw back*, I. **46,** 2 ; *drive back ; drop*, I. **52,** 4.

rēiectus, a, um, part. of **rēiciō.**

re-languēscō, languēscere, languī, ——, *become enfeebled*, *be weakened.*

relātus, a, um, part. of **referō.**

re-lēgō, 1st conj., (send back, out of the way), *banish.*

relictus, a, um, part. of **relinquō.**

religiō, ōnis, f. [**re-ligō,** *bind*], (the tie between God and man), *religious obligation*, VI. **17,** 5 ; *religious belief*, *vow*, V. **6,** 3 ; *superstition.*

re-linquō, linquere, līquī, lictum, (leave behind), *leave ; abandon*, *give up*, III. **3,** 3, V. **33,** 3, **49,** 1, VII. **17,** 6, **66,** 5 ; *retain*, V. **19,** 1 ; **relinquēbātur,** (was left), *there remained*, I. **9,** 1.

reliquus, a, um [cf. **relinquō**], (remaining), *rest of ;* plu. as subst., *the rest ; left*, I. **12,** 2 ; *further*, IV. **15,** 2 (w. **fugā**), V. **53,** 4 ; *else*, IV. **7,** 5 ; **nihil reliquī,** (nothing of left), *nothing left*, I. **11,** 5 ;

nihil reliquī facere, *leave nothing undone*, II. **26,** 5 (**ad,** *in the matter of*).

re-maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *remain behind, remain.*

rēmex, rēmigis, m. [**rēmus,** *oar*, **agō,** *drive*], (one who PUSHES an oar, as on the ancient galleys), *rower.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Belgae north of the Marne, about the headwaters of the Axona (Aisne), who allied themselves with Caesar, II. **3,** 1, etc.

rēmigō, 1st conj. [**rēmex**], *row.*

re-migrō, 1st conj., (remove back), *return.*

re-minīscor, minīscī, ——, *recall, remember*, w. gen.

remissus, a, um, part. of **remittō.**

re-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send back, return, restore; throw back*, II. **27,** 4; *impair, lose*, II. **15,** 4, VI. **14,** 4; w. **dē,** *relax*, V. **49,** 6; *diminish*, I. **44,** 5. Perf. part. as adj., (relaxed), *mild*, V. **12,** 6.

re-mollēscō, mollēscere, ——, —— [**mollis,** *soft*], (become soft again), *lose strength.*

re-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move back), *withdraw, draw away; dismiss*, I. **19,** 3. Perf. part. as adj., (removed), *remote.*

re-mūneror, 1st conj. [**mūnus,** *gift*], *repay, reward.*

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *one of the Remi.*

rēnō, ōnis, m. [Celtic], *reindeer skin, deer skin.*

re-novō, 1st conj. [**novus,** *new*], *renew.*

re-nūntiō, 1st conj. [**nūntius,** *messenger*], *bring back word, report; declare elected*, VII. **33,** 3.

re-pellō, pellere, ppulī, pulsum, *drive back.*

repente, adv. [abl. of **repēns,** *sudden*], *suddenly.*

re-pentīnus, a, um [**repēns,** *sudden*], *sudden, hasty.*

re-periō, perīre, pperī, pertum, (find by inquiry), *find out, find;* pass., *originate*, VI. **13,** 11.

re-petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** *seek again; try to get back*, I. **31,** 7; **poenās repetere,** *seek satisfaction.*

re-pleō, plēre, plēvī, plētum, (refill); *amply supply.*

re-portō, 1st conj., *carry back, transport.*

re-pōscō, pōscere, popōscī, ——, (ask back), *demand.*

re-praesentō, 1st conj. [**praesēns,** *present*], (make present again), *do at once.*

re-prehendō, prehendere, prehendī, prehēnsum, (hold back), *blame, find fault with.*

repressus, a, um, part. of **reprimō.**

re-primō, primere, pressī, pressum [**premō**], (press back), *check.*

re-pudiō, 1st conj. [**re-pudium,** *divorce*], *reject.*

re-pūgnō, 1st conj. [**pūgna,** *fight*], (fight back), *resist; stand in the way of*, w. dat.

repulsus, a, um, part. of **repellō.**

re-quīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī or **quīsiī, quīsītum** [**quaerō**], (seek back), *demand, require; miss*, VII. **63,** 8.

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, fact, circumstance*, etc.; cf. various words w. which it is joined in use. **quā rē**

(often written as one word), (on account of which thing, wherefore) *therefore; on account of which*, I. **14,** 2; **quā rē putāret,** (why he should think), *to think*, I. **33,** 2.

re-scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, (cut back), *destroy; tear down*, VII. **86,** 5.

re-scīscō, scīscere, scīvī or **sciī, scītum** [**sciō,** *know*], *ascertain*.

re-scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, (write again), *transfer*.

re-servō, 1st conj., (keep back), *reserve*.

re-sideō, sidēre, sēdī, ——, [**sedeō**], (sit back, remain behind), *be lost*.

re-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, ——, (settle back), *become calm*.

re-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, (stand back), *remain behind*, V. **11,** 1, VII. **35,** 2; *resist*.

re-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, *look back*, II. **24,** 2; *look behind one*, V. **43,** 4; (look back at), *have regard for*, VII. **77,** 7; *consider*, VII. **77,** 16.

re-spondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsum, (promise back), *answer, reply*.

respōnsum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **respondeō**], (a thing answered), *answer*.

re-spuō, spuere, spuī, ——, (spit back), *spurn, reject*.

re-stinguō, stinguere, stīnxī, stīnctum, (quench again); intrans., *put out a fire*; w. **aggerem,** *put out the fire in*.

re-stituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtum [**statuō**], (replace), *restore; rebuild*; w. **proelium,** *renew*.

retentus, a, um, part. of **retineō.**

re-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold back); *detain; maintain*, V. **48,** 6; *hold*, VII. **21,** 3; *keep back*, II. **32,** 2, **33,** 2; *restrain*, VII. **47,** 2, **52,** 1, I. **47,** 2 (**nē cōicerent,** *from throwing*); **memoriam retinēre,** w. gen., (retain the memory of), *remember*.

re-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (drag back), *bring back by force*.

re-vellō, vellere, vellī, vulsum, (wrench back), *pull back*, I. **52,** 5; *tear up*, VII. **73,** 3.

reversus, a, um, part. of **revertor.**

re-vertor, vertī, vertī, versum [**vertō**], dep. in present system and perf. part., (turn back), *return, come back*.

re-vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, (bind back), *fasten*.

revinctus, a, um, part. of **revinciō.**

re-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx,** *voice*], *call back, recall*.

rēx, rēgis, m. [**regō,** *rule*], *king*.

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine*, I. **1,** 6, etc.

Rhodanus, ī, m., the Rhone, I. **6,** 2, etc.

rīpa, ae, f., *bank* of a stream.

rīvus, ī, m., *brook, small stream*.

rōbur, rōboris, n., *oak*.

rogō, 1st conj., *ask, request*; **cōnsulis sacrāmentō rogāre,** (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist*.

Rōma, ae, f., loc. **Rōmae,** *Rome*.

Rōmānus, a, um [**Rōma**], *Roman*. Masc. as subst., *a Roman*, plu. *Romans*.

Rōscius, ī, m., *Lucius Roscius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, V. **24,** 2, etc.

rōstrum, ī, n. [**rōdō,** *gnaw*], *beak,* of a bird or ancient ship; the projecting end of the prow, corresponding to the modern ram.

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, ī, m., *bramble.*

Rūfus, ī, m. [**rūfus,** *reddish*], *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's *legati,* IV. **22,** 6.

rūmor, ōris, m., *report.*

rupēs, is, f., *cliff, steep rock.*

rūrsus, adv. [contracted from **revorsus,** for **reversus**], (turned back), *again, back again; in turn,* V. **44,** 13, VII. **47,** 7, **51,** 2.

Rutēnī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of southern Gaul and the province (hence **prōvinciālēs,** VII. **7,** 4), west of the Cevennes, between the rivers Lot and Tarn, I. **45,** 2, etc.

Rutilus, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's *legati,* VII. **90,** 5.

S

Sabīnus, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* one of Caesar's *legati,* II. **5,** 6, etc.; killed in the disaster at Aduatuca, V. **24** ff.

Sabis, is, m., the *Sambre,* a tributary of the Meuse (Mosa) in Belgic Gaul, II. **16,** 1, **18,** 1.

sacer-dōs, dōtis, c. [**sacer,** *sacred,* **dō,** *give, put*], *priest,* (priestess).

sacrāmentum, ī, n. [**sacrō,** *set apart as sacred,* from **sacer,** *sacred*], (means of sanctifying), *oath.* **cōnsulis sacrāmentō rogāre,** (require answer under the consul's oath), *enlist.*

sacrificium, ī, n. [**sacrificus,** *sacrificial,* from **sacer,** *sacred,* **faciō,** *make*], *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv., compar. **saepius,** super. **saepissimē,** *often;* compar. *repeatedly,* I. **32,** 3, *too often,* III. **6,** 4. **saepe numerō,** (often in number), *often.* **minimē saepe,** (by no means often), *very seldom.*

saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*

saeviō, saevīre, saevīvī, saevītum [**saevus,** *fierce*], *be fierce, blow hard.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, m. [**sagitta**], *archer, bowman.*

sagulum, ī, n. [dim. of **sagum,** *a short military cloak*], *small cloak.*

saltus, ūs, m., *forest, woods; defile,* VII. **19,** 2.

salūs, ūtis, f. [**salvus,** *safe*], *safety; welfare,* II. **5,** 2, VII. **2,** 1.

Samarobrīva, ae, f., loc. **ae,** a city of the Ambiani on the Somme (Samara), now *Amiens,* V. **24,** 1, etc.

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctum, *ordain, solemnly agree.* Perf. part. as adj., (ordained), *sacred; solemn,* VII. **66,** 7.

sānctus, a, um, part. of **sanciō.**

sanguis, guinis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, tātis, f. [**sānus**], (soundness of mind and body), *good sense.* **ad sānitātem revertī,** *come to one's self, come to one's senses.*

sānō, 1st conj. [**sānus**], (make sound), *remedy.*

Santonēs, um, or **Santonī, ōrum,** m. plu., a tribe of southwestern Gaul on the coast north of the Garonne, I. **10,** 1, etc.

sānus, a, um, *sound,* of mind and

body, *sane;* **prō sānō**, (as a sane man), *rational.*

sapiō, sapere, sapīvī (uī), ——, (have a flavor, have a taste, have discernment), *understand, not be fools.*

sarcinae, ārum, f. plu., *packs, luggage;* **sub sarcinīs**, *while carrying their packs.*

sarciō, sarcīre, sarsī, sartum, (patch), *repair, make good.*

sarmentum, ī, n. [**sarpō**, *prune*], (what is pruned off), *brushwood.*

satis, (1) adv., (sufficiently); *quite*, III. **14,** 3, IV. **22,** 2; *enough* (following the adj. it modifies), IV. **17,** 1; *quite*, I. **43,** 1; **satis prōvidēre,** *make sufficient provision*, III. **3,** 1; **satis commodē,** *very well*, I. **25,** 3, III. **13,** 6, **14,** 4, *fast enough*, I. **39,** 6; **satis māgnus,** *large enough*, I. **16,** 2, *quite a large*, V. **21,** 2, *quite a broad*, VII. **47,** 2. (2) indeclin. adj. used as subst., *enough; sufficient;* **satis habēre,** (consider sufficient), *be satisfied.* **satis praesidiī,** *a large enough garrison;* **satis causae,** *reason enough;* **satis facere,** *make restitution*, I. **14,** 6, V. **1,** 7, *appease*, VII. **89,** 2, *apologize*, I. **41,** 3, V. **54,** 3; *satisfy*, V. **27,** 7 (**prō pietāte,** *of his loyalty*).

satisfactiō, ōnis, f. [**satis, faciō,** see **satis**], *apology, excuse.*

saucius, a, um, *wounded;* masc. as subst., *a wounded soldier, one who is wounded.*

saxum, ī, n., *rock*, (large) *stone.*

scālae, ārum, f. plu. [**scandō,** *climb*], (steps), *scaling ladders.*

Scaldis, is, m., the *Scheldt*, a river of Belgic Gaul, which Caesar incorrectly says empties into the Meuse, VI. **33,** 3.

scapha, ae, f. [σκάφη], *boat*, carried on a galley, IV. **26,** 4.

scelerātus, a, um [perf. part. of **scelerō,** *pollute*, from **scelus**], *criminal.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime.*

scienter, adv. [**sciēns,** pres. part. of **sciō**], (knowingly), *skilfully.*

scientia, ae, f. [**sciēns,** pres. part. of **sciō**], *knowledge.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, (split); *tear down.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

scorpiō, ōnis, m. [σκορπίων], *scorpion;* in military language, an engine for throwing darts or other missiles, VII. **25,** 3; also a *missile* (*ball, shaft*) *from a scorpion*, VII. **25,** 2.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*

scrobis, is, m. or f., *pit.*

scūtum, ī, n., oblong *shield.*

sē, sēsē, acc. of **suī.**

sē-, sēd-, inseparable prep., *apart, aside.*

sēbum, ī, n., *suet, tallow.*

secō, secāre, secuī, sectum, *cut.*

sēcrētō, adv. [abl. of **sēcrētus,** part. of **sē-cernō,** *separate*], *secretly, privately.*

sectiō, ōnis, f. [**secō**], (share); *booty.*

sector, 1st conj. [intensive of **sequor**], (follow), *run after.*

sectūra, ae, f. [**secō**], (cutting), *quarry.*

secundum, prep. w. acc. [**secundus**], (following); *along*, II. **18,** 3, VII. **34,** 2; *besides*, I. **33,** 2; **secundum nātūram flūminis,** (following the nature of the river),

in the direction of the current, IV. **17**, 4.

secundus, a, um [sequor], (following), w. **aciēs, vigilia, locus,** *second; favorable, successful;* **secundiōrēs rēs,** *greater prosperity;* **secundō flūmine,** *down stream.*

secūris, is, f., acc., **im, em,** abl. **ī, e** [**secō,** *cut*], *axe;* espec., as the axes carried by the Roman lictors were symbols of authority, *power, authority*, VII. **77**, 16.

sed, coörd. conj., *but.*

sēd-, form of **sē-,** in comp. before some vowels.

sē-decim, sex-decim, indeclin. card. adj. [**sex, decem**], *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, f. [**sedeō,** *sit*], (seat), *settlement, habitation;* **locus āc sēdēs,** hendiadys, *dwelling place.*

sēditiō, ōnis, f. [**sēd-, eō**], (a going apart), *revolt.*

sēditiōsus, a, um [**sēditiō**], *seditious, treasonable.*

Sedulius, ī, m., leader of the Lemovices, VII. **88**, 4.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m. plu., an Alpine tribe, south of the upper Rhone, III. **1**, 1 ff.

Sedusiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of Germans, location uncertain, I. **51**, 2.

seges, segetis, f., *grainfield.*

Segnī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe between the Eburones and the Treveri, about the modern town Sinei or Signi, in the province of Namur, VI. **32**, 1.

Segontiācī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the southern part of Britain, V. **21**, 1.

Segovax, actis, m., a British chief in Kent, V. **22**, 1.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m. plu., a Gallic tribe south of the Aedui, west of the Rhone, I. **10**, 5, etc.

semel, adv., *once;* **semel atque iterum,** *time and again.*

sēmentis, is, f. [**sēmen,** *seed*], *sowing;* **sēmentēs quam māxīmās facere,** (make the greatest possible sowings), *sow as much land as possible, sow as much grain as possible.*

sēmita, ae, f., *path, trail.*

semper, adv., *always.*

Semprōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Sempronius Rutilus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VII. **90**, 4.

senātor, ōris, m. [**senex**], *senator*, name applied by Caesar to a member of the council among the Nervii, corresponding to the Roman senate.

senātus, ūs, m. [**senex**], (council of elders), the Roman *senate;* what corresponded to it among the Gallic tribes, *council.*

senex, senis, compar. **senior** or **māior (nātū),** super. **māximus (nātū),** *old;* as subst., *old man.*

sēnī, ae, a [**sex**], distrib. adj., *six each*, VII. **75**, 3, *six each day*, I. **15**, 5.

Senonēs, um, m. plu., a powerful Gallic tribe about the Yonne river, whose chief city was Agedincum, now *Sens*, II. **2**, 3, etc.

sententia, ae, f. [**sentiō**], *view, motion, idea, proposition; opinion*, III. **3**, 3, **8**, 5 (**dīcere,** *give, express*); *resolution*, II. **10**, 5; *effect*, I. **45**, 1; *purpose*, VI. **4**, 2; *sentence*, VI. **44**, 2; *determination*, IV. **21**, 6 (**manēre,** *continue*).

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, *perceive* through any of the senses; **w.**

neut. acc. pro., *entertain —— idea; know*, VII. **52**, 3.

sentis, is, m., *thorn, briar.*

sēparātim, adv. [**sēparātus**], *separately, by themselves.*

sēparātus, a, um, part. of **sēparō.**

sē-parō, 1st conj., (prepare apart), *separate;* perf. part. as adj., (separated), *separate.*

septem, indeclin. card. adj., *seven.*

septen-triō, ōnis, m., generally plu. [**septem; triō,** *plough-ox*], *the seven plough-oxen*, the seven stars that form the constellation of the Great Bear; hence, *the north.*

septimus, a, um [**septem**], ord. adj., *seventh.*

septingentī, ae, a [**septem, centum**], card. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, indeclin. card. adj. [**septem**], *seventy.*

sepultūra, ae, f. [**sepeliō,** *bury*], *burial.*

Sēquana, ae, m., *the Seine*, the most important river of northern France, I. **1**, 2, etc.

Sēquanī, ōrum, m. plu., one of the most powerful tribes of central Gaul before Caesar's arrival, the chief of the states that opposed the supremacy of the Aedui, I. **1**, 5, etc.

Sēquanus, a, um, *Sequanian, of the Sequani;* masc. sing. as subst., *a Sequanian, one of the Sequani.*

sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow; accompany, join*, II. **17**, 2; **fidem sequī,** *accept protection; take advantage of*, V. **8**, 3; *refuse to give up*, VII. **63**, 7

Ser., abbreviation for **Servius,** a Roman *praenomen.*

sermō, ōnis, m. [**serō,** *weave*], *conversation, speech;* **sermōnis aditum,** (access for conversation), *personal acquaintance.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, *sow, plant.*

sērō, adv., compar. **sērius,** super. **sērissimē,** (late), *too late.*

Sertōrius, ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius*, a Roman general of the party of Marius, who held Spain against the consular armies for many years, III. **23**, 5.

servīlis, e [**servus**], *of slaves*, equivalent to **servōrum,** I. **40**, 5; *the same as in the case of slaves*, VI. **19**, 3.

serviō, servīre, servīvī or **serviī, servītum** [**servus**], (serve); *be a slave*, IV. **5**, 3; *devote one's self*, VII. **34**, 1.

servitūs, tūtis, f. [**servus**], (the condition of a slave), *slavery; subjection, bondage.*

Servius, ī, m., a Roman *praenomen.*

servō, 1st conj., *keep; save; watch, observe*, V. **19**, 1.

servus, ī, m., *slave.*

sēs-centī, ae, a, or **sex-centī, ae, a,** card adj. [**sex, centum**], *six hundred.*

sēsqui-pedālis, e [**sēsquī,** *one half more;* **pēs,** *foot*], *a foot and a half (thick).*

sētius, compar. adv., *less;* **nihilō** (abl. of measure of diff.) **sētius,** (none the less), *nevertheless.*

seu, form of **sīve.**

sevēritās, tātis, f. [**sevērus,** *severe*], *severity.*

sē-vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx,** *voice*], *call aside.*

sex [ἕξ], indeclin. card. adj., *six.*

sex-āgintā, indeclin. card. adj. [**sex**], *sixty.*

sex-centī, ae, a, or **sēs-centī, ae, a,** card. adj. [**sex, centum**], *six hundred.*

Sextius, ī, m., (1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a very brave centurion, II. **25,** 1, III. **5,** 2, VI. **38,** 1, 4. (2) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. **1,** 1, VII. **49,** 1, **51,** 2, **90,** 6.

sī, subord. conj., *if*, **sī quidem,** (if indeed), *since*, VI. **36,** 2. **quod sī,** see **quod.**

Sibuzātēs, um, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe, probably in the southwestern part of the country, III. **27,** 1.

sīc, adv., *so, in such a manner.*

siccitās, tātis, f. [**siccus,** *dry*], *dryness;* plu. *drought.*

sic ut, sic utī, conj., often written as one word, (so as), *just as ; just like*, VI. **26,** 2.

sīdus, sīderis, n., *constellation;* plu., *heavenly bodies*, the stars, etc.

sīgni-fer, ferī, m. [**sīgnum, ferō**], *standard-bearer.*

sīgnificātiō, ōnis, f. [**sīgnificō**], *intimation, announcement ; signal*, II. **33,** 3 ; *demeanor, actions*, VII. **12,** 6.

sīgnificō, 1st conj. [**sīgnum, faciō**], (show by signs), *indicate* by signs, *announce* by word of mouth.

sīgnum, ī, n., *signal ;* military *standard.*

Silānus, ī, m., *Marcus Silanus*, one of Caesar's *legati*, VI. **1,** 1.

silentium, ī, n. [**silēns,** pres. part. of **sileō,** *be silent*], *silence ;* abl. of manner, often as adv., *silently.*

Sīlius, ī, m., *Titus Silius*, an officer with Crassus, 4, **8,** 2.

silva, ae, f., *forest, woods.*

silvestris, e [**silva**], *wooded.*

similis, e, compar. **similior,** super. **simillimus,** *like, similar.* **vērī** (gen. w. adj.) **simile,** (similar to the truth), *probable, likely.*

similitūdō, inis, f. [**similis**], *similarity, resemblance.*

simul, adv., *at the same time ;* **simul —simul,** *both—and, not only—but also ;* **simul atque,** and **simul** alone, IV. **26,** 5, *as soon as.*

simulācrum, ī, n. [**simulō**], (likeness), *figure, image.*

simulātiō, ōnis, f. [**simulō**], *pretence.*

simulō, 1st conj. [**similis**], (make like) ; *pretend.*

simultās, tātis, f. [**simul**], (a being together), *rivalry.*

sīn, subord. conj. [**sī, ne**], *but if.*

sincērē, adv. [**sincērus,** *pure*], *honestly.*

sine, prep. w. abl., *without.*

singillātim, adv. [**singulī**], *one at a time, singly, individually.*

singulāris, e [**singulī**], *single*, VII. **8,** 3 ; *singly*, IV. **26,** 2 ; *extraordinary, unequalled.*

singulī, ae, a, distrib. adj., *one by one, one each ; single, separate.*

sinister, tra, trum, *left ;* as subst., sc. **manus** or **cornū,** *the left; the left hand*, I. **25,** 3. (**sub,** *on.*)

sinistrōrsus, adv. [for **sinistrōversus**], (turned toward the left), *to the left.*

sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm, *let.* [*site.*

situs, ūs, m. [**sinō,** *lay*], *situation,*

sīve, or **seu,** conj. [**sī, -ve**], (or) *if,*

IV. **17**, 10; **sive—sive**, *whether—or*, *either—or.*

socer, socerī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, tātis, f. [**socius**], (companionship); *alliance.*

socius, ī, m., (companion); plu., *allies.*

sōl, sōlis, m., no gen. plu., *sun;* **oriēns sōl**, (the rising sun), *the east;* **occidēns sōl**, (the setting sun), **occāsus sōlis**, (the setting of the sun), *the west;* personified, *Sol*, *the Sun*, VI. **21**, 2.

sōlācium, ī, n. [**sōlor**, *console*], *consolation*, *comfort.*

soldurius, ī, m., the name applied by the Aquitanians to close personal followers or retainers of a chief, described III. **22**, 1; best left untranslated.

soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed.*

sōlitūdō, dinis, f. [**sōlus**], (loneliness); *wilderness*, *waste.*

sollertia, ae, f. [**sollers**, *skilful*], *skill*, *adroitness.*

sollicitō, 1st conj. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *stir up; tempt*, *tamper with*, VII. **37**, 1.

sollicitūdō, dinis, f. [**sollicitus**, *agitated*], *anxiety.*

solum, ī, n., *bottom*, VII. **72**, 1, **73**, 7; *soil*, I. **11**, 5; *ground*, VI. **23**, 1.

sōlum, adv. [acc. of **sōlus**], *only;* **nōn sōlum—sed etiam**, *not only—but also.*

sōlus, a, um, gen. **sōlīus**, dat. **sōlī**, *alone*, *only.*

solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *loose;* **nāvēs solvere**, (loose the ships), *set sail*, *weigh anchor;* so also w. **nāvēs** omitted.

sonitus, ūs, m. [**sonō**, *sound*, from **sonus**], (sound), *splash.*

sonus, ī, m., *sound.*

soror, sorōris, f., *sister;* **soror ex mātre**, (sister from one's mother), *half-sister* by the same mother.

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

Sotiātēs, um, gen. plu., a tribe in the northern part of Aquitania, near modern *Lot*, III. **20**, 2, etc.

spatium, ī, n., *space*, either properly, or in time; *distance; time*, *interval.*

speciēs, ēī, f., only nom. and acc. in plu. [**-speciō**, *look*], *appearance;* **ad** (**in**) **speciem**, *for show*, I. **51**, 1, V. **51**, 4.

spectō, 1st conj. [intensive of **-speciō**, *look*], (look), *extend*, *stretch;* trans., (look at), *consider.*

speculator, ōris, m. [**speculor**], *scout*, *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um [**speculātor**], (used for scouting, etc.); **spec. nāvigium**, *picket boat*, *small boat.*

speculor, 1st conj. [**specula**, *watch tower*, from **-speciō**, *look*], *spy*, *act as spies.*

spērō, 1st conj. [**spēs**], *hope.*

spēs, speī, f., only nom. and acc. in plu., *hope.*

spīritus, ūs, m. [**spīrō**, *breath*], (breath); plu. *pride*, cf. Eng. "airs."

spoliō, 1st conj. [**spolium**, *spoil*], *despoil*, *deprive*, *strip.*

sponte, spontis, f., abl. and gen. of noun (**spōns**), whose other cases are not found, *free will;* **suā sponte**, *by their own influence*, I. **9**, 2; *of their* (*his*) *own accord.*

stabiliō, stabilīre, stabilīvī, stabilītum [**stabilis**, *steady*], (make steady), *secure*, *fasten.*

stabilitās, tātis, f. [**stabilis,** *steady*], *steadiness.*

statim, adv. [**stō**], (on the spot), *immediately.*

statiō, ōnis, f. [**stō**], (a standing), *guard ; picket,* II. **18,** 3 ; *sentinel,* VII. **69,** 7 ; *reserve,* V. **16,** 4. (**in,** *on.*)

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum [**status**], (settle), *place,* IV. **17,** 5 ; *determine, decide ; take measures,* I. **19,** 5 ; **quid gravius statuere,** (decide anything quite severe), *take any very severe measures,* I. **20,** 1.

statūra, ae, f. [**stō**], (standing), *height, stature.*

status, ūs, m. [**stō**], (standing, status), *condition, situation.*

stimulus, ī, m. [cf. στίζω, *prick*], *goad, spur ; prick,* facetiously applied to sharp metal hooks set in the ground, VII. **73,** 9, **82,** 1.

stīpendiārius, a, um [**stīpendium**], *tributary.* Masc. plu. as subst., *dependents.*

stīpendium, ī, n. [**stips,** *gift;* **pendō,** *pay*], *tribute.*

stīpes, stīpitis, m., *stake, post.*

stirps, stirpis, f., (m. or f. in poetry), *stock* of a plant or tree ; *race,* VI. **34,** 8 ; *stock,* VI. **34,** 5.

stō, stāre, stetī, stātum, *stand ; abide* (by), VI. **13,** 6.

strāmentum, ī, n. [**釜sternō,** *strew*], *straw ; pack saddle,* VII. **45,** 2.

strepitus, ūs, m. [**strepō,** *make a noise*], *noise.*

studeō, studēre, studuī, ——, w. **novīs rēbus (imperiīs),** *be eager* (for), *desire, care* (about) ; *pay attention,* VII. **4,** 8 ; *be looking,* VI. **21,** 3 ; *strive,* VII. **14,** 2 ; *be bent* (upon), VII. **20,** 5 ; *look, pay any attention,* VII. **28,** 3.

studiōsē, adv. [**studiōsus,** *eager,* from **studium**], *eagerly.*

studium, ī, n. [**studeō**], *eagerness, enthusiasm ; devotion,* I. **19,** 2 ; *pursuit,* VI. **21,** 3.

stultitia, ae, f. [**stultus,** *foolish*], *folly.*

sub, prep., (1) w. acc. when implying motion, *under ; close up to,* I. **24,** 5 ; in expressions of time, *towards ;* (2) w. abl. when implying rest, *under, at the foot of, close by.* In comp. the same as above ; also, *from under,* i.e. *up ; slightly, somewhat.*

subāctus, a, um, part. of **subigō.**

sub-dolus, a, um [**dolus,** *device*], (somewhat deceitful), *crafty, cunning.*

sub-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, (lead from below), *lead up ;* of ships, *draw up.* (**in,** *on to.*)

subductiō, ōnis, f. [**subdūcō**], *drawing up* (on shore), *beaching.*

sub-eō, īre, (īvī) iī, itum, *go under, enter,* I. **36,** 7 ; w. **perīculum,** *undergo ;* w. **condiciōnem,** *submit to ; come up,* II. **25,** 1, VII. **85,** 5 ; *approach,* II. **27,** 5.

sub-fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, (dig underneath), *stab underneath.*

subfossus, a, um, part. of **subfodiō.**

sub-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **subjiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw under), *subject ; place below,* IV. **17,** 9 ; *expose,* IV. **36,** 2 ; (throw from under), *thrust* from below, I. **26,** 3.

subiectus, a, um, part. of **subiciō.**

sub-igō, igere, ēgī, āctum [**agō**], (drive under, subdue), *constrain, confront.*

subitō, adv. [abl. of **subitus**], *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um [part. of **subeō**], (having "come up"), *sudden.*

sublātus, a, um, part. of **tollō.**

sub-levō, 1st conj. [**levis,** *light*], (lighten from underneath); *help, aid, support; assist* (by), *hold on* (to), I. **48,** 7; *raise,* VI. **27,** 2; *lighten,* VI. **32,** 5; *lift up,* VII. **47,** 7.

sub-lica, ae, f., *pile.*

sub-luō, luere, ——, lūtum, (wash below), *wash.*

sub-ministrō, 1st conj. [**minister,** *servant*], *furnish, provide.*

sub-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send under, as for support), *send, submit.*

sub-moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, (move from under), *drive back.*

sub-ruō, ruere, ruī, rutum, *undermine,* II. **6,** 2; *dig under, loosen,* VI. **27,** 4.

sub-sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow closely, follow up.*

subsidium, ī, n. [**subsīdō**], *reserve, reënforcement; aid;* plu., *marches as reënforcements,* VII. **88,** 6.

sub-sīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, (sit at the bottom), *remain behind.*

sub-sistō, sistere, stitī, ——, (stand under), *halt, make a stand.*

sub-sum, esse, ——, *be close at hand, be close by.*

sub-trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, (draw from underneath), w. **cunīculīs,** *undermine,* VII. **22,** 2; *remove, set at liberty,* I. **44,** 5.

subvectiō, onis, f. [**subvehō**], *transportation.*

sub-vehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, (carry to a position under), *bring up.*

sub-veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, (come up under), *come to the aid* (of).

suc-, form of **sub-** in comp. before **c.**

suc-cēdō, cēdere, cēssī, cēssum, (go close up to, go under); *succeed,* in the sense either of *take one's place,* or *be successful,* VII. **26,** 1; *approach,* I. **24,** 5, **25,** 6; *be next* to anyone, IV. **3,** 3.

suc-cendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsum, (kindle beneath), *set on fire.*

suc-cīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsum [**caedō**], (cut under), *cut down.*

suc-cumbō, cumbere, cubuī, —— [cf. **cubō**], (lie down under), *yield, succumb.*

suc-currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, (run under), *run to the help* (of), *rush to aid;* as w. **auxiliō.**

sudis, is, f., *stake, pile.*

Suēba, ae, f., *a Swabian* (*woman*).

Suēbī, ōrum, m. plu., *the Suebi, Swabians,* the most powerful German tribe in Caesar's time, I. **37,** 3, etc.

Suessiōnēs, um, m. plu., a Belgic tribe about the Marne, II. **3,** 5 ff.

suf-, form of **sub-** in comp. before **f.**

suf-ficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum [**faciō**], (put under, be sufficient), *hold out.*

suffrāgium, ī, n., (voting tablet), *vote.*

Sugambrī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe north of Cologne, IV. **16,** 2, etc.

sug-, form of **sub-** in comp. before **g.**

suggestus, ūs, m. [**sug-gerō,** (bear

from under), *raise*], *platform.* (**prō**, *from.*)

suī, gen., dat. **sibi**, acc. and abl. **sē** or **sēsē**, sing. or plu., reflex. pro., 3d pers., *himself*, *herself*, *itself*, *themselves ; him*, *her*, when Eng. usage makes the reflexive meaning clear.

Sulla, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, consul B.C. 88, dictator, 81–79, I. **21**, 4.

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, an officer with Caesar, probably a *legatus*, VII. **90**, 7.

sum, esse, fuī (futūrus), *be ; exist.*

summa, ae, f. [fem. of **summus**, sc. **rēs**], (highest thing) ; *sum*, I. **29**, 2, 3; *whole*, VI. **34**, 3 ; *most*, *greatest part*, VI. **11**, 5 ; **summa imperiī**, *chief authority*, *general management ;* **summam imperiī tenēre**, *be commander-in-chief ;* w. **bellī**, *control*, *conduct ; test*, VII. **21**, 3.

summus, a, um, super. of **superus.**

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum [for **sub-imō**, from **emō**], (take away from anyone) ; *take ;* **sibi sūmere**, (take to one's self), *assume ; spend*, III. **14**, 1 ; **supplicium dē aliquō sūmere**, (take punishment from anyone, cf. Eng. "take it out of" anyone), *inflict punishment on anyone*, *punish anyone.*

sūmptuōsus, a, um [**sūmptus**], *costly.*

sūmptus, ūs, m. [**sūmō**], *expense.*

super-, prep. in comp., *over.*

superbē, adv. [**superbus**, *proud*, from **super**, cf. Eng. "uppish"], *haughtily.*

superō, 1st conj. [**superus**], (get above) ; *overcome ; prevail*, V. **31**, 3 ; *surpass*, III. **14**, 8, VI. **24**, 1 ; *exceed*, III. **14**, 4 ; *survive*, VI. **19**, 2 (sc. **vītā**).

super-sedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, (sit over, be superior to, "be above") ; *refrain.*

super-sum, esse, fuī, ——, (be over) ; *be left*, *remain.*

superus, a, um [**super**], *high ;* compar. **superior**, of place, *higher*, *upper ;* of time, *former ;* of a battle, *superior*, *more successful ;* super. **suprēmus, summus**, of place, *highest ;* w. most other nouns, *greatest ;* **summae rēs**, *most important matter ;* often w. partitive force, as w. **mōns, collis, iugum, fossa**, *the top of*, *the summit of ;* so neut. as subst., *the top*, *summit*, *end ;* **summa vīs**, *main strength ;* w. **speciēs**, *exact ; all*, *whole*, V. **17**, 5, VII. **39**, 2, **41**, 2. See also **summa.**

sup-, form of **sub** in comp. before **p.**

sup-petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum**, (come to the aid of), *be on hand*, *be available ; hold out*, VII. **77**, 2, **85**, 6.

sup-plēmentum, ī, n. [**sup-pleō**, *fill up*], *reënforcement.*

sup-plex, plicis, adj. [cf. **plicō**, *fold*], (bending under, kneeling) ; *submissive ;* as subst., *submissive men.*

supplicātiō, ōnis, f. [**sup-plicō**, *fold under*, from **supplex**], (a kneeling), *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, adv. [**supplex**], *humbly*, *submissively.*

supplicium, ī, n. [**supplex**, in sense of *bending to receive lashes*], *punish-*

ment; often in the sense of *capital punishment, execution.*

sup-portō, 1st conj., *bring up.*

suprā, adv. and prep. w. acc. [case form of **superus**], *above;* of time, *before*, VI. **19,** 4.

sus-, form of **sub** in comp. before **c, p,** and **t.**

sus-cipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptum [**capiō**], (take under), *undertake;* **sibi suscipere,** (take upon one's self), *assume.*

sū(sub)-spiciō, spicere, spexī, spectum, (look askance at), *suspect.*

sūspīciō, ōnis, f. [**sūspiciō**], *suspicion.*

sūspicor, 1st conj. [cf. **sūspiciō**], *suspect.*

sus-tentō, 1st conj. [intens. of **sustineō**], *sustain,* sc. **bella,** II. **14,** 6; impers., *the attack was sustained,* II. **6,** 1; *endure,* V. **39,** 4; *avoid,* VII. **17,** 3.

sus-tineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentum [**teneō**], (hold under), w. **impetum, vim, āspectum, haec,** *sustain; withstand;* intrans. *hold out; hold,* V. **10,** 2; *bear, endure,* I. **31,** 13, VI. **18,** 3; *check,* IV. **33,** 3; *carry,* VII. **56,** 4; **sē sustinēre,** *stand upright,* II. **25,** 1.

suus, a, um [cf. **suī**], reflex. poss. pro., 3d pers., *his, her, its, their,* the gender and number depending upon the antecedent; *his own,* etc.; w. **locus,** *favorable,* IV. **34,** 2; *one's usual, well known,* e.g. w. **clementia,** II. **14,** 5, **31,** 4; as subst., masc. plu., *one's own men, countrymen, friends,* etc.; neut. sing., *their standing,* I. **43,** 8; plu. *their* (*his*) *property, possessions.*

T

T., abbreviation for **Titus,** a Roman *praenomen.*

tabernāculum, ī, n. [dimin. of **taberna,** *hut*], *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., (board, writing tablet), *list.*

tabulātum, ī, n. [**tabula**], (system of boarding, flooring), *story.*

taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum, *be silent;* trans., *be silent about.* Perf. part. as adj., *silent.*

tacitus, a, um, part. of **taceō.**

tālea, ae, f., *rod* or *bar.*

tālis, e, *such.*

tam, adv., *so,* to such a degree.

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless; indeed; however.*

Tamesis, is, m., acc. **im,** the *Thames.*

tam-etsī, subord. conj. [**tamen, etsī**], (however, although), *although.*

tandem, adv. [for **tam-dem,** (cf. **īdem**)], *at length;* giving impatient force to questions, **quid tandem,** *what in the world,* I. **40,** 4.

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum, (touch), *border upon.*

tantopere, adv. [for **tantō opere;** see **opus**], *fiercely, desperately.*

tantulus, a, um [dimin. of **tantus**], *such little; such slight,* II. **30,** 4; **tantulae rēs,** *such trifles.*

tantum, adv. [**tantus;** adverbial acc.], *so much,* V. **54,** 4, VI. **12,** 3; w. restrictive force, (so much and no more), *enough,* VI. **27,** 4, **38,** 5; **tantum modo,** (so much only), *merely,* III. **5,** 3; **tantum—quantum,** *only as much as,* V. **19,** 3.

tantundem, adv. [neut. acc. of **tan-**

tusdem, from **tantus, īdem**], (so much the same), *just so much.*

tantus, a, um, *so great, so much;* **tantus—quantus**, *as much as;* **tantī**, gen. of value, *of so great account*, I. **20**, 5; neut. as subs., *so much.*

Tarbellī, ōrum, m. plu., an Aquitanian tribe upon the Atlantic coast, III. **27**, 1.

tardē, adv. [**tardus**], *slowly;* compar., *rather slowly.*

tardō, 1st conj. [**tardus**], (make slow), *retard, check.*

tardus, a, um, *slow;* compar., *rather slow.*

Tarusātēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of western Aquitania, III. **23**, 1, etc.

Tāsgetius, ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes, supported by Caesar, V. **25**, 1, **29**, 2.

taurus, ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., a British chief of Kent, V. **22**, 1.

taxus, ī, f., *yew-tree*, or its leaves or berries.

tē, acc. of **tū**.

Tectosagēs, um, m. plu., a division of the Volcae, in the Province; principal cities Toulouse (Tolosa) and Narbonne (Narbo), VI. **24**, 2.

tēctum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. pass. part. of **tegō**], (a thing covered), *shelter, house.*

tegimentum, ī, n. [**tegō**], (means of covering), *covering.*

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctum, *cover*, V. **43**, 1; *conceal.*

tēlum, ī, n., any weapon intended to be thrown, *spear, dart.*

temerārius, a, um [**temerē**], *rash, reckless.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, recklessly.*

temeritās, tātis, f. [**temerē**], *rashness, recklessness.*

tēmō, ōnis, m., *pole* of a chariot.

temperantia, ae, f. [**temperāns**, pres. part. of **temperō**], *moderation.*

temperō, 1st conj. [cf. **tempus**], (mingle properly, exercise moderation, practise self-control), *refrain.* Perf. part. as adj., *temperate, mild.*

tempestās, tātis, f. [**tempus**], *weather*, IV. **23**, 1, **36**, 3, V. **7**, 4; (stormy weather); *storm.*

temptō, 1st conj., intens. of [**tendō**], *try; approach* with treasonable intent, VI. **2**, 2; w. **fortūnam**, *tempt;* w. **iter**, *try to force; make an attempt upon*, VII. **73**, 1, **86**, 4.

tempus, temporis, n., *time;* **in reliquum tempus**, *in the future;* **omnī tempore**, *always;* **prō tempore et prō rē**, *according to the time and circumstance*, V. **8**, 1.

Tencterī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe, driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56–55 B.C., IV. **1**, 1, etc.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus and **tēnsus**, *stretch; pitch one's tent*, VI. **37**, 2.

tenebrae, ārum, f. plu., *darkness.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī [**tentum**], *hold, have; restrain*, I. **31**, 9, **39**, 4; *occupy*, VII. **48**, 1, **80**, 2; **circuitus tenet**, *the circumference is*, VII. **69**, 6; **sē tenēre**, (hold one's self), *remain.*

tener, tenera, tenerum, compar. **tenerior**, super. **tenerrimus**, *tender, young.*

tenuis, e, (thin); *delicate*, V. **40**, 7; *precarious, meagre*, VI. **35**, 8.

tenuitās, tātis, f. [tenuis], (thinness); *poverty.*

tenuiter, adv. **[tenuis],** *thinly.*

ter, num. adv. [cf. **tres**], *three times.*

teres, teritis, adj. [cf. **terō,** *rub*], *smooth, round.*

tergum, ī, *back;* **post tergum, ā tergō,** *behind one, in the rear.*

ternī, ae, a, distrib. adj. **[ter],** *three each, three at a time.*

terra, ae, f., (dry) *land,* I. **30,** 3, and when in connection w. the sea; *earth, ground;* plu. *world,* and so **orbis terrārum** (circle of the lands, i.e. about the Mediterranean); *lands,* VII. **77,** 14.

Terrasidius, ī, m., *Titus Terrasidius,* an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. **7,** 4 ff.

terrēnus, a, um [terra], *of earth.*

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *frighten;* before **quō minus,** *prevent.*

territō, territāre, ——, —— [intens. of **terreō**], *frighten* greatly, *terrify;* **metū territāre,** *fill with apprehension.*

terror, ōris, m. **[terreō],** *fear, dread, terror;* **terrōrī esse, terrōrem īnferre,** *strike terror.*

tertius, a, um, ordinal adj. **[ter],** *third.*

tēstāmentum, ī, n. [**tēstor,** *bear witness,* from **tēstis**], *will.*

tēstimōnium, ī, n. [**tēstor,** *bear witness,* from **tēstis**], *evidence, proof.*

tēstis, is, c., *witness.*

tēstūdō, dinis, f. [**tēsta,** *earthenware, shell*], *tortoise;* as military term, *testudo,* a close formation for assault, shields lapping, II. **6,** 2, V. **9,** 7, VII. **85,** 5; or movable *shed,* under which soldiers could work, V. **42,** 4, **43,** 3, **52,** 2.

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges, VII. **31,** 5, **46,** 5.

Teutonī, ōrum, or **Teutonēs, um,** m. plu., *the Teutons,* a Germanic tribe which, with the Cibri, roamed over Gaul in the second century B.C., then turned toward Italy and was finally defeated by Marius, 102 and 101 B.C.; I. **33,** 4, etc.

tīgnum, ī, n., *timber, log, pile.*

Tigurīnus, a, um, name of a canton of the Helvetii, I. **12,** 4; masc. plu. as subst., *the Tigurini,* I. **12,** 7.

timeō, timēre, timuī, ——, trans., *fear, be afraid of;* intrans., *fear, be afraid.* Pres. part. plu., as subst., *the timid.*

timidē, adv. **[timidus],** *timidly;* **nōn timidē,** *fearlessly.*

timidus, a, um [timeō], *timid, cowardly, afraid.*

timor, ōris, m. **[timeō],** *fear, cowardice.*

Titurius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus,* a *legatus* of Caesar, killed with his command by the Eburones in the autumn of the fifth year of the war, II. **5,** 6, etc.

tolerō, 1st conj., *endure;* w. **vītam,** *sustain;* impers. pass., *hold out,* VII. **71,** 4.

tollō, tollere, sus-tulī, sub-lātum [perf. and supine from **suf**(sub)-**ferō**], w. **clāmōrem, ancorās** (but see below), **ululātum,** *raise; take away, take on board,* IV. **28,** 1; *destroy, wipe out,* VI. **34,** 8; *prevent, cancel,* I. **42,** 5; technically w. **ancorās,** *weigh;* perf. part. **sublātus, a, um,** *elated,* I. **15,** 3, V. **38,** 1.

Tolōsa, ae, f., one of the chief cities of the Volcae Tectosages, in the Province, now *Toulouse*, III. **20,** 2.

Tolōsātēs, ium, m. plu. [**Tolōsa**], a tribe about Toulouse, I. **10,** 1, VII. **7,** 4.

tormentum, ī, n. [**torqueō,** *twist*], *windlass*, VII. **22,** 2; *tormentum*, plu. *tormenta*, military engine for throwing darts and other missiles; see Introduction; *torture*, VI. **19,** 3, VII. **4,** 10.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostum, (parch), *roast*, *singe*.

tot, indeclin. numeral adj., *so many*.

totidem, indeclin. numeral adj. [**tot, īdem**], (just so many), *as many*, *the same number of*.

tōtus, a, um, gen. **totīus,** dat. **tōtī,** *the whole*, *all*, *all the*, *entire;* translated adverbially, *wholly*, *entirely*, III. **13,** 3, VI. **5,** 1, VII. **73,** 9.

trabs (pronounced as if spelled **traps**), **trabis,** f., *beam*, *timber*.

trāctus, a, um, part. of **trahō.**

trā-, form of **trāns** in comp.

trā-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**dō, dare**], *hand over*, VI. **4,** 4; *hand down*, IV. **7,** 3; *pass on*, VII. **3,** 2; *pass*, VII. **25,** 2; *give up*, *surrender;* w. **imperium, summa imperiī,** *intrust; yield*, I. **44,** 13; *impart*, *teach*, VI. **14,** 6, **17,** 2, VII. **22,** 1; *introduce*, VII. **39,** 1.

trā-dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead across*, *lead over; promote*, VI. **40,** 7; *bring over*, VI. **12,** 3, VII. **37,** 3.

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin*, *lance*, with a thong or strap to assist in hurling.

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctum, *drag*, *draw; hurry along*, I. **53,** 5.

trā-iciō (pronounced as if spelled **trājiciō**), **icere, iēcī, iectum** [**iaciō**], (throw across), *pierce*.

trāiectus, a, um, part. of **trāiciō.**

trāiectus, ūs, m. [**trāiciō**], (crossing), *passage*.

trā-nō, 1st conj., *swim across*, *swim over*.

tranquillitās, tātis, f. [**tranquillus**], *still*, *calm*.

trāns, prep. w. acc., *across*, *over*, *on the farther side of*, *beyond*.

Trāns-alpīnus, a, um [**Alpēs**], (beyond the Alps), *Transalpine*.

trān-scendō, scendere, scendī, —— [**scandō**], (climb across); *climb over;* **trānscendere in,** *board*.

trāns-eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** (go across), *cross; pass through*, I. **8,** 2, **9,** 4; *go over*, III. **18,** 2, V. **51,** 3; *pass*, III. **2,** 1; *pass over*, VI. **14,** 5.

trāns-ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bring over; transfer*, *adjourn*, VI. **3,** 4; *direct* (against), VII. **8,** 4.

trāns-fīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxum (fasten across); *pierce*.

trāns-fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, (dig across); *pierce*.

trāns-gredior, gredī, gressus sum [**gradior**], *step across*, VII. **25,** 3; *cross*, II. **19,** 4; *climb over*, VII. **46,** 4.

trānsitus, ūs, m. [**trānseō**], (a going over), *passage*, *passing*.

trānslātus, a, um, part. of **trānsferō.**

trāns-marīnus, a, um [**mare**], *beyond the sea*, *across the sea*.

trānsmissus, ūs, m. [**trānsmittō**], *passage*, *crossing*.

trāns-mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, (send across), *transport*.

trāns-portō, 1st conj., *carry across, transport.*

Trāns-rhēnānus, a, um [Rhēnus], *across the Rhine, beyond the Rhine.* Masc. plu. as subst., *those living across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, ī, n. **[trāns],** *crossbeam.*

trāns-versus, a, um [vertō], (turned across); **trānsversa fossa,** *cross ditch.*

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, an officer w. Crassus in Aquitania, III. **7,** 4 ff.

Trebonius, ī, m., (1) *Gaius Trebonius*, a *legatus* of Caesar, V. **17,** 2, etc. (2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight, VI. **40,** 4.

trecentī, ae, a, card. adj. **[trēs, centum],** *three hundred.*

trepidō, 1st conj. **[trepidus,** *restless*], *hurry around anxiously;* impers., w. loc. abl., *be in confusion.*

trēs, tria, gen. **trium,** dat. **tribus,** card. adj. [cf. τρεῖς], *three.*

Trēverī, ōrum, m. plu., a strong Belgic tribe, about the Meuse (Moselle), I. **37,** 1, etc.

Tribocī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe about the Rhine, east of the Vosges mountains, I. **51,** 2, IV. **10,** 3.

tribūnus, ī, m. **[tribus,** *tribe*], (orig., head of a tribe), *tribune*, an officer of the legion in Caesar's army, attached to it rather than a part of it, who commanded detachments, secured supplies, etc.

tribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtum [tribus, *tribe*], *assign, attribute*, I. **13,** 5, VII. **53,** 1; *grant* (for the sake of), VI. **1,** 4; *bestow; pay attention*, VII. **37,** 4.

8

tribūtum, ī, n. [neut. of perf. part. of **tribuō**], (a thing assigned), *tribute, tax.*

trīduum, ī, n. **[trēs, diēs],** (space of three days), *three days.*

triennium, ī, n. **[trēs, annus],** (space of three years), *three years.*

trīgintā, indeclin. card. adj. **[trēs],** *thirty.*

trīnī, ae, a, distrib. adj. **[trēs],** (three each), w. **castra, hīberna,** *three*, used to show that these nouns are plu. in signification; *triple*, I. **53,** 5.

Trinovantēs, um, m. plu., a British tribe in what is now Essex and part of Suffolk, V. **20,** 1 ff.

tripertītō, adv. [abl. of **tripertītus,** from **trēs, pars**], *in three divisions.*

triplex, triplicis, adj. **[trēs, plicō],** (threefold), *triple.*

triquetrus, a, um [trēs, quattuor], ("three square"), *three-cornered, triangular.*

trīstis, e, *sad, dejected;* translated as if adv., *sadly.*

trīstitia, ae, f. **[trīstis],** sadness, dejection.

Troucillus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul of the Province, a personal friend of Caesar.

truncus, ī, m., *tree-trunk.*

tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē; vōs, vestrum or **vestrī, vōbīs,** 2d pers. pro., (thou), *you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, tuitus (tūtus) sum, (watch), *defend, protect.*

tulī, perf. of **ferō.**

Tulingī, ōrum, m. plu., a German tribe north of the Helvetii, allied w. the latter in their migration, I. **25,** 6, etc.

tum, adv., *then;* **cum—tum,** *both—and, not only—but also,* II. **4,** 7, III. **16,** 2, V. **4,** 3, **54,** 5, etc.

tumultuor, 1st conj. [**tumultus**], *be in confusion;* absolutely, *there is confusion.*

tumultuōsē, adv. [**tumultuōsus,** *tumultuous*], *tumultuously;* compar., *with more confusion than usual.*

tumultus, ūs, m. [cf. **tumeō,** *swell*], *noise, uproar; revolt, uprising,* I. **40,** 5, V. **26,** 1.

tumulus, ī, m. [cf. **tumeō,** *swell*], *mound, hillock.*

tunc, adv., *then.*

turma, ae, f., *troop, squadron,* a division of cavalry of about 30 men.

Turonī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of west central Gaul, on both banks of the Loire (Liger), about modern Tours, II. **35,** 3, etc.

turpis, e, (ugly), *disgraceful, shameful.*

turpiter, adv. [**turpis**], *disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, dinis, f. [**turpis**], *disgrace.*

turris, is, f., acc. **im, em,** abl. **ī, e,** *tower,* including the movable tower used by the Romans in their siege operations.

tūtē, adv. [**tūtus**], *safely.*

tūtō, adv., super. **tūtissimō** [abl. of **tūtus,** sc. **locō**], *in safety, safely.*

tūtus, a, um [perf. pass. part. of **tueor,** *defend*], (defended), *safe.*

tuus, a, um, poss. pro., 2d pers. sing. [**tū**], (thy), *your.*

U

ubi, ubī, rel. adv. [old form **cubi,** for **quō-bi,** loc. of **quī**], *where, when;* **ubi prīmum,** (when first), *as soon as.*

ubique, adv. [**ubi;** cf. **quisque, uterque,** etc.], (anywhere), *everywhere.*

Ubius, a, um, *of the Ubii.* Masc. plu. as subst., *the Ubii,* a German tribe, opposite the Ardennes, friendly to Caesar, I. **54,** 1, etc.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus sum, *avenge,* I. **12,** 7; *take vengeance,* VI. **34,** 7; *punish, take vengeance upon.*

ūllus, a, um, gen. **ūllīus,** dat. **ūllī,** *any;* as subst., *anyone, anything.*

ūlterior, ius, compar. adj., super. **ūltimus** [**ultrā**], *farther;* as subst., *those farther distant,* VI. **2,** 2; super., *farthest, most distant;* as subst., *the last, those in the rear,* V. **43,** 5.

ūltrā, prep. w. acc., *beyond.*

ūltrō, adv., *to the farther side; voluntarily, of one's own accord; besides,* V. **28,** 4; *actually,* V. **40,** 7, VI., **35,** 4; **ūltrō citrōque,** *back and forth.*

ultus, a, um, part. of **ulcīscor.**

ululātus, ūs, m. [**ululō,** *yell*], *shout, yell.*

umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*

umquam, adv., *ever.*

ūnā, adv. [abl. of **ūnus,** sc. **viā**], *together,* espec. w. **cum;** *with, along with* some one or something, supplied from context; *in one place,* VI. **22,** 2; *at the same time,* VII. **67,** 2.

unde, rel. adv., *whence, from which;* less exactly, *where,* V. **53,** 4.

ūn-decim, indeclin. card. adj. [**ūnus, decem**], *eleven.*

ūn-decimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**ūndecim**], *eleventh.*

ūn-dē-quadrāgintā, card. adj., (one down from forty), *thirty-nine.*

ūn-dē-vigintī, card. adj., (one down from twenty), *nineteen.*

undique, adv. [**unde,** cf. **ubique quisque,** etc.], (from all sides), *on all sides.*

ūni-versus, a, um [**ūnus, vertō**], (turned into one), *all together, all, the whole of.* Masc. plu. as subst., *the whole body, all the men together.*

ūnus, a, um, gen. **ūnīus,** dat. **ūnī,** card. adj., *one; alone, only, only one;* plu., *alone, only;* **ad ūnum,** *to a man.*

urbānus, a, um [**urbs**], (of the city), *in the city,* i.e. *Rome.*

urbs (pronounced as if spelled **urps**), **urbis,** f., *city;* referring to Rome, I. **7,** 1, **39,** 2, VI. **1,** 2.

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, ——, *press;* pass., *be hard pressed.*

ūrus, ī, m., an animal described by Caesar, probably the *urochs,* VI. **28,** 1.

Usipetēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe driven by the Suebi from their homes, who appeared about the lower part of the Rhine in the winter of 56–55 B.C., IV. **1,** 1, etc.

ūsitātus, a, um [perf. pass. part. of **ūsitor,** intensive of **ūtor**], (usual), *familiar.*

ūsque, adv., (all the way), w. **ad,** *even, clear;* so w. **eō** (adv.), *even to this point.*

ūsus, a, um, part. of **ūtor.**

ūsus, ūs, m. [**ūtor**], *use,* III. **13,** 6, V. **42,** 3; *experience;* **ūsuī esse** (dat. of purpose), *be of use, be useful, be advantageous;* so also **ex ūsū,** *of use, advantageous;* **ūsū venīre,** *come to pass:* of ships, *handling, management; necessity,* IV. **2,** 3, VI. **15,** 1, VII. **80,** 1.

ut or **utī,** subord. conjunc., w. subj. of purpose, *that, in order that;* w. subj. of result, *that, so that;* w. indic. or subj. in ind. dis. representing indic., *as;* in phrases of comparison where verb is omitted, *as if, as;* **ut prīmum,** *as soon as;* concessive, *although,* III. **9,** 6; *when,* I. **31,** 12.

uter, utra, utrum, gen. **utrīus,** dat. **utrī,** interrog. or rel. pro., subst. or adj., *which* of two, *whichever.*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, gen. **utrīusque,** dat. **utrīque,** indef. pro., subst. or adj., *each* of two, *both.* Plu., *each side, both forces, tribes,* etc.

utī, form of **ut.**

ūtilis, e [**ūtor**], *useful.*

ūtilitās, tātis, f. [**ūtilis**], *advantage, use.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, *use, employ,* w. abl.; w. pred. adj. modifying abl. noun, *find,* V. **25,** 2, VII. **76,** 1; *show,* II. **14,** 5, **28,** 3, IV. **24,** 4; *avail one's self* (of), *accept,* II. **32,** 4, IV. **11,** 3; *enjoy,* I. **44,** 4, **45,** 3, **47,** 4, VI. **12,** 6; *obtain,* III. **22,** 4; w. **cōnsiliō,** *adopt;* part. best translated *with,* cf. ἔχων, I. **46,** 4, IV. **13,** 4, VI. **8,** 2.

utrimque, adv. [**uterque**], *on each side, on both sides.*

utrum, coörd. conjunc. [neut. of **uter**], *whether,* used in first part of double question, not translatable unless question is indirect.

uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

V

V, as numeral = 5, this character being half of X = 10.

Vaculus, ī, m., *the Waal,* a branch of the Rhine, joining the Meuse or Maas (Mosa).

vacātiō, ōnis, f. [**vacō**], *exemption* from service.

vacō, 1st conj., *be unoccupied.*

vacuus, a, um [**vacō**], *empty, vacant; stripped.* (**ab,** *of,* II. **12,** 2.)

vadum, ī, n., *ford;* plu., *shoals,* III. **9,** 6, **12,** 1, **13,** 1, 9, IV. **26,** 2.

vāgīna, ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.*

vagor, 1st. conj., *roam, wander.*

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum, *be strong, be powerful; prevail,* I. **40,** 14; *contribute,* VI. **30,** 4, VII. **84,** 4; **minimum valēre,** *have very little power;* **tantum valēre,** *have so much weight;* **plūrimum valēre,** *be very strong, be very influential.*

Valerius, ī, m., (1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus,* governor (propraetor) of Gaul, 83 B.C., I. **47,** 4; (2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus,* a *legatus* defeated and killed in Aquitania, III. **20,** 1; (3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus,* a Gaul who received Roman citizenship, I. **47,** 4; (4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus,* son of above, I. **47,** 4, **53,** 5; (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus,* brother of above, VII. **65,** 2; (6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus,* a prominent Gaul of the Province, I. **19,** 3.

Valetiācus, ī, m., "vergobret" of the Aedui, 53 B.C., VII. **32,** 4.

valētūdō, dinis, f. [**valeō**], *health, state of health,* whether good or bad.

vallēs, is, f., *valley.*

vāllum, ī, n. [**vāllus**], *rampart, wall* of Roman fortifications, which was strengthened with stakes.

vāllus, ī, m., *stake,* VII. **73,** 4.

Vangionēs, um, m. plu., a German tribe with Ariovistus, later living about modern Worms, I. **51,** 2.

varietās, tātis, f. [**varius**], *variety, variation,* VII. **23,** 5; *different colors,* VI. **27,** 1.

varius, a, um, *various, different.*

vāstō, 1st conj. [**vāstus**], (make empty), *ravage, devastate, lay waste.*

vāstus, a, um, (empty, waste); *vast, boundless.*

vāticinātiō, ōnis, f. [**vaticinor,** *prophecy,* from **vāticinus,** *prophetical,* from **vātēs,** *prophet,* and **canō,** (sing), *predict*], *prophecy.*

-vē, enclitic conj., *or.*

vectīgal, vectīgālis, n. [**vehō**], *revenue,* I. **18,** 3, **36,** 4; *tribute,* V. **22,** 4.

vectīgālis, e [**vectīgal**], *tributary,* III. **8,** 1, IV. **3,** 4.

vectōrius, a, um [**vector,** *carrier,* from **vehō**], *adapted to carry;* **vect. navigium,** *transport.*

vehementer, adv. [**vehemēns,** *eager*], *exceedingly;* w. verbs of fighting, *vigorously, desperately;* w. **incūsō,** *severely.*

vel, conj. [orig. 2d pers. sing. of **volō,** *wish*], *or;* **vel—vel,** *either—or;* **aut—aut** is used when the two alternatives exclude each other, **vel—vel** when they do not; *very,* VII. 36.

Velānius, ī, m., *Quintus Velanius,* an officer with Crassus in Aquitania, III. **7,** 4, etc.

Veliocassēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe in

Belgic Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine, II. **4**, 9, VII. **75**, 3.

Vellaunodūnum, ī, n., a city of the Senones, somewhere between Sens and Orleans, VII. **11**, 1, etc.

Vellaviī, ōrum, m. plu., a small state in the Cevennes, under the protection of the Averni, VII. **75**, 2.

vēlōcitās, tātis, f. [**vēlōx**], *speed.*

vēlōciter, adv. [**vēlōx**], *swiftly, quickly.*

vēlōx, vēlōcis, adj., *swift, active, quick.*

vēlum, ī, n., *sail.*

vel-ut, adv., *just as.*

vēnātiō, ōnis, f. [**vēnor,** *hunt*], *hunting, the chase.*

vēnātor, ōris, m. [**vēnor,** *hunt*], *hunter.*

vēn-dō, dere, didī, ditum [**vēnum,** *sale,* **dō, dare,** (give), *put*], (put on sale), *sell.*

Venellī, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the northern coast of Brittany, II. **34**, etc.

Venetī, ōrum, m. plu., a maritime tribe on the southern coast of Brittany, II. **34**, III. **7**, 4, etc.

Venetia, ae, f. [**Venetī**], *the country of the Veneti.*

Veneticus, a, um [**Venetī**], *of the Veneti, with the Veneti.*

venia, ae, f., *pardon; permission,* VII. **15**, 6.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come;* **in spem venīre,** (come into the hope), *entertain hope, begin to hope;* often impers. pass. **ventum est,** (it was come), *they came.*

ventitō, 1st conj. [intensive of **veniō**], *come often, keep coming.*

ventus, ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, veris, n., *spring.* (**prīmus,** *the beginning of.*)

Veragrī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the Alps southeast of Lake Geneva, III. **1**, 1.

Verbigenus, ī, m., a canton of the Helvetii, east of the Tigurini, I. **27**, 4.

verbum, ī, n., *word;* **verba facere,** *speak.*

Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., one of the Averni, cousin of Vercingetorix, VII. **76**, 3, etc.

Vercingetorīx, īgis, m., one of the Averni, commander-in-chief of the Gauls in their great struggle of the seventh year of the war, VII. **4**, 1, etc.

vereor, verērī, veritus sum, *fear, be afraid.*

vergō, vergere, ——, ——, (incline), *lie, be situated, extend.*

vergobretus, ī, m., *vergobret,* title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui, I. **16**, 5.

veritus, a, um, part. of **vereor.**

vērō, adv. [abl. of **vērus,** *true*], (in truth), *indeed, in fact; but, while; and,* emphatic.

versō, 1st conj. [intensive of **vertō**], (turn), *treat in turn,* V. **44**, 14; elsewhere deponent in middle voice, (turn one's self about), *engage; move about,* V. **45**, 4; *be,* II. **24**, 2, **26**, 5; *remain,* II. **1**, 3; *ride,* VII. **40**, 5.

versus, ūs, m. [**vertō**], (a turning); *line, verse.*

versus, adv. [part. of **vertō**], (turned); following an acc. of place to which, it gives it the force *toward,* VI. **33**, 1, VII. **7**, 2, **8**, 5, **61**, 5; **quōque versus,** (turned each way),

in every direction, III. **23**, 2, VII. **4**, 5, **14**, 5; see **quōque.**

Verticō, ōnis, m., a Nervian of prominence, V. **45**, 2, **49**, 2.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn.*

Verucloetius, ī, m., a Helvetian nobleman, I. **7**, 3.

vērus, a, um, *true*, I. **18**, 2, **20**, 2; *right, fair*, IV. **8**, 2. Neut. as subst., *truth;* **vērī similis,** (like the truth), *probable*, III. **13**, 6. See **vērō.**

verūtum, ī, n. [**verū,** *spit*, for holding meat to roast], *javelin, dart.*

Vesontiō, ōnis, m., the chief city of the Sequani, now Besançon, I. **38**, 1, **39**, 1.

vesper, vesperī or **vesperis,** m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, poss. pro., 2d pers. plu. [**vōs**], *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, ī, n., *footprint, track; spot*, IV. **2**, 3; **ē vēstīgiō,** *on the spot;* w. **temporis,** *moment.*

vestiō, vestīre, vestīvī or **vestiī, vestītum** [**vestis**], *clothe; cover.*

vestis, is, f., *clothing.*

vestītus, ūs, m. [**vestiō**], *clothing; uniform*, VII. **88**, 1.

veterānus, a, um [**vetus**], *veteran.*

vetō, vetāre, vetuī, vetitum, *forbid.*

vetus, veteris, adj., plu. **veterēs, vetera,** compar. **vetustior,** super. **veterrimus,** *old*, V. **1**, 1; *former;* of soldiers, *veteran; long-standing*, I. **43**, 6.

vēxillum, ī, n. [cf. **vēlum,** *sail*], *flag*, for any special purpose or signal. (**prōpōnere,** *raise.*)

vēxō, 1st conj., *harass, assail; overrun*, II. **4**, 2; *ravage, lay waste.*

via, ae, f., *way, road, route; journey, march.*

viātor, ōris, m. [**via**], *traveller, wayfarer.*

vīcēnī, ae, a, distrib. adj. [**vīgintī**], *twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, a, um, ord. adj. [**vīgintī**], *twentieth.*

vīciēs, num. adv. [**vīgintī**], *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, tātis, f. [**vīcīnus,** *neighboring*], denoting condition, (neighborhood); collective, *people of the neighborhood.*

vicis, is, f., only gen., acc., and abl. sing., and nom., dat., acc., and abl. plu., *change;* **in vicem,** *in turn.*

victima, ae, f., *victim, sacrifice.*

victor, ōris, m. [**vincō**], *conqueror, victor*, I. **44**, 2, II. **28**, 1; elsewhere, as if adj., *victorious.*

victōria, ae, f. [**victor**], *victory.*

victus, a, um, part of **vincō.**

vīctus, ūs, m. [**vīvō,** *live*], (living), *food*, VI. **22**, 1, **23**, 9, **24**, 4; **cōnsuētūdō vīctūs,** *mode of life*, I. **31**, 11.

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see;* pass. usually as dep., *seem; seem best*, II. **20**, 4, IV. **8**, 1, V. **36**, 3, **58**, 3, VI. **20**, 3, **22**, 2; in regular sense, *be seen*, II. **18**, 3, V. **48**, 10, VI. **1**, 3; *appear*, I. **47**, 2, II. **33**, 2, V. **9**, 4.

Vienna, ae, f., principal city of the Allobroges, on the east bank of the Rhone, now *Vienne*, VII. **9**, 3.

vigilia, ae, f. [**vigil,** *watchman*], *watch*, one of the four equal divisions of the night; *sleeplessness, wakefulness*, V. **31**, 4, **32**, 1.

vīgintī, indeclin. card. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, minis, n., *twig, osier, withe.*

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *conquer, overcome, defeat; outdo, surpass,* VI. **43,** 5; *have one's way,* V. **30,** 1.

vinculum, ī, n. [**vinciō**], *chain;* **in vincula cōnicere,** (throw into chains), *imprison.* (**ex,** *in.*)

vindicō, 1st conj. [**vindex,** *defender*], (assert a claim), *assert,* VII. **76,** 2; *restore,* VII. **1,** 5; **in —vindicāre,** *punish,* III. **16,** 4.

vīnea, ae, f. [**vīnum**], (vine-arbor); movable *shed,* used for protection of soldiers engaged in siege works.

vīnum, ī, n., (vine), *wine.*

violō, 1st conj. [cf. **vīs**], *do violence to, injure; invade,* VI. **32,** 2.

vir, virī, m., *man; husband,* VI. **19,** 1, 3.

vīrēs, ium, etc., plu. of **vīs.**

virgō, ginis, f., *maiden.*

virgulta, ōrum, m. plu. [for **virgulēta,** from **virgula,** from **virga,** *twig*], *brushwood, brush.*

Viridomārus, ī, m., an Aeduan of rank, at first loyal, then opposed, to Caesar, VII. **38,** 2, etc.

Viridovīx, īcis, m., a leader of the Venelli and their allies against Sabinus, III. **17,** 2, etc.

virītim, adv. [**vir**], (man by man), *to each individual.*

Viromanduī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe in the western part of Belgic Gaul, about the headwaters of the Somme, II. **4,** 9.

virtūs, tūtis, f. [**vir**], (manliness), *bravery, valor; energy,* VII. **6,** 1, **22,** 1, **59,** 6; *spirit,* V. **8,** 4; *worth,* I. **47,** 4; plu., *virtues, merits.*

vīs, vīs, vī, vim, vī, f., *force, violence; strength,* VI. **28,** 2; *power,* VI. **14,** 6; *influence,* VI. **17,** 1; *number,* VI. **36,** 3; *attacks,* I. **11,** 4, IV. **3,** 1, **4,** 1, VI. **30,** 3, VII. **87,** 5; **summa vīs,** *main strength;* plu., **vīrēs, vīrium,** (physical forces), *strength.*

vīsus, a, um, part. of **videō.**

vīta, ae, f. [cf. **vīvō**], *life.*

vītō, 1st conj., *avoid.*

vitrum, ī, n., *woad,* a plant used by the Britons for dyeing blue.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctum, *live.*

vīvus, a, um [**vīvō**], *alive, living;* masc. plu. as subst., *the living.*

vix, adv., *barely, scarcely, hardly.*

Vocātēs, ium, m. plu., a tribe of northwestern Aquitania, III. **23,** 1, **27,** 1.

Vocciō, ōnis, m., king of the Norici, I. **53,** 4.

vocō, 1st conj. [**vōx**], *call,* usually in sense of *summon*, in sense of *name,* V. **21,** 3.

Vocontiī, ōrum, m. plu., a tribe of the Province, south of the Isère, I. **10,** 5.

Volcae, ārum, m. plu., a tribe in the southwestern part of the Province, having two divisions, *Arecomici* and *Tectosages,* the latter including the *Tolosates,* VI. **24,** 2, VII. **7,** 4, **64,** 6.

Volcātius, ī, m., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus,* an officer placed in command of the garrison which protected the second bridge over the Rhine, VI. **29,** 3.

volō, velle, voluī, ——, irreg., *wish, be willing; desire, want;* idiomatic

phrases, **sī quid mē** (acc.) **vīs**, *if you want anything of me*, I. **34,** 2; **quid tibi vīs,** *what do you mean?* I. **44,** 8.

voluntārius, a, um [**voluntās**], *willing, voluntary;* masc. as subst., *volunteer.*

voluntās, tātis, f. [**volō**], *wish, desire; consent,* esp. w. **licet;** *good-will,* I. **19,** 2, V. **4,** 3, VII. **10,** 2; w. **contrā,** *will; attitude, purpose,* V. **54,** 4.

voluptās, tātis, f. [**volō**], *pleasure; enjoyment,* V. **12,** 6.

Volusēnus, ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus,* a tribune in Caesar's army, III. **5,** 2, IV. **21,** 1, etc.

Vorēnus, ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus,* a brave centurion, V. **44,** 1.

Vosegus, ī, m., *the Vosges,* a range of mountains in eastern Gaul, IV. **10,** 1.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice,* II. **13,** 2, IV. **25,** 4, V. **30,** 1; *word,* I. **32,** 3, **39,** 5, V. **43,** 6; *expression,* III. **24,** 5, VI. **36,** 2; *speech,* V. **40,** 7; *statement,* I. **39,** 1; *talk,* III. **17,** 5; **vōcibus increpitāre,** *taunt,* II. **30,** 3.

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan,* Roman god of fire and metal-working.

vulgus, ī, n., acc. **vulgus,** n., or **vulgum,** m., *common people, multitude; common soldiers;* **in vulgus efferre,** *spread abroad.* Abl. as adv., *generally,* I. **39,** 5, II. **1,** 4, V. **33,** 6.

vulnerō, 1st conj. [**vulnus**], *wound.*

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound.*

vultus, ūs, m., *expression of the face;* **vultum fingere,** *control one's face.*

X

X, as numeral = 10.

REFERENCES TO ALLEN & GREENOUGH'S NEW LATIN GRAMMAR

App'x	New A. & G.
1–4	281–284.
5.	339.
6.	340.
7–9.	387, 388.
10, 11.	388, *b*, 395.
12.	390.
13.	397.
14.	423, 2, 425.
15.	396.
16, 17.	392, 393.
18.	220, *a*, *c*.
19–21.	362–364.
22.	366.
23–26.	367.
27.	370.
28.	376–378.
29.	381.
30.	373.
31.	374, 375.
32.	382.
33.	383–385.
34.	342.
35.	343, *d*.
36.	344.
37, 38.	343.
39–43.	343, Note 1, (2); 347, 348.
44, 45.	345.
46.	343, *b*.
47–53.	346.
54–57.	359, *b*.
58.	349.
59.	350, 351.
60.	354.
61.	352.
62.	417.
63.	355.
65, 66.	400–402.
67.	403.
68.	405.
69, 70.	406, 407.
71, 72.	409, 431.
73.	410.
74.	411.
75.	416.
76, 77.	413.
78, 79.	412.
80.	415.
81.	414.
82, 83.	418.
84, 85.	404.
86.	418, *a*.
87, 88.	419, 420.
89.	423, 1, 424.
90.	220, *b*, *c*.
91–93.	421–431.
94, 95.	425–428.
96, 97.	426–428.

App'x	New A. & G.	App'x	New A. & G.
108.	424, *g*, 631.	177–180.	552–556.
109, 110.	286, 287.	181.	550, 551.
111, 112.	288, 289.	182, 183.	544–548.
113.	293.	184–195.	511–525.
114, 115.	290.	196.	524.
116.	291, *a*.	197.	526, 527, *d*.
117.	291, *b*.	198.	527, *c*.
122.	295, *a*.	199.	527, *a*, *b*, 549.
123–126.	299–301.	200–203.	519, 520.
127–133.	296–298.	208–212.	563–566.
134–136.	303–308.	213.	567–571.
137, 138.	148.	214.	557, 558.
139, 140.	309–315.	215.	572.
141–143.	316, 317.	227–246.	577–593.
144.	207, 208.	247, 248.	448, 450.
145–149.	465–478.	250–255.	452–458.
150–153.	480–485.	256, 257.	459.
154.	439	258.	463.
155, 1.	439, Note 2.	264.	488–498.
155, 2.	443, 444.	267, 268.	501–507.
156–164.	529–533.	270.	500.
165–167.	536–538.	271–273.	503–507.
168, 169	534, 535.	275.	508, 509.
170, 171.	540.	276.	510.
172.	549.	277.	194, 195.
173, 174.	535, *e*.	278.	196.
176.	543.		



CÆSAR'S
GALLIC WAR

Towle and Jenks